This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

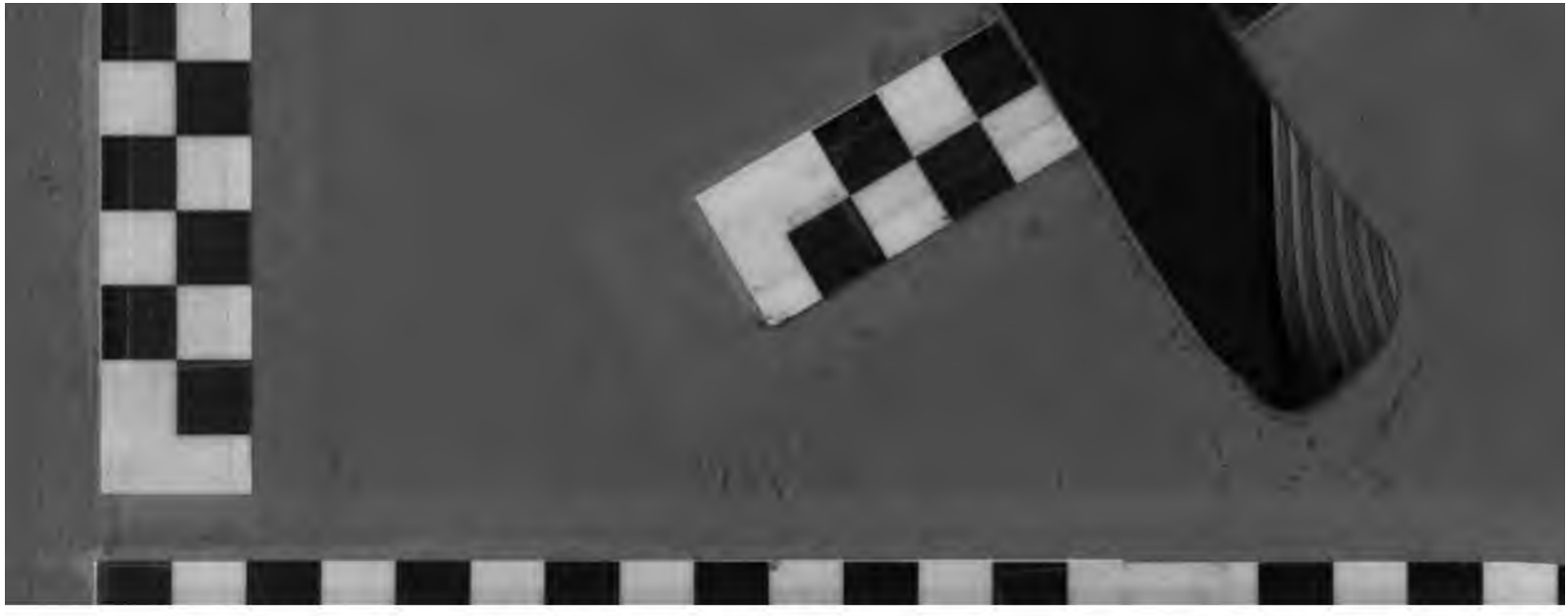
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

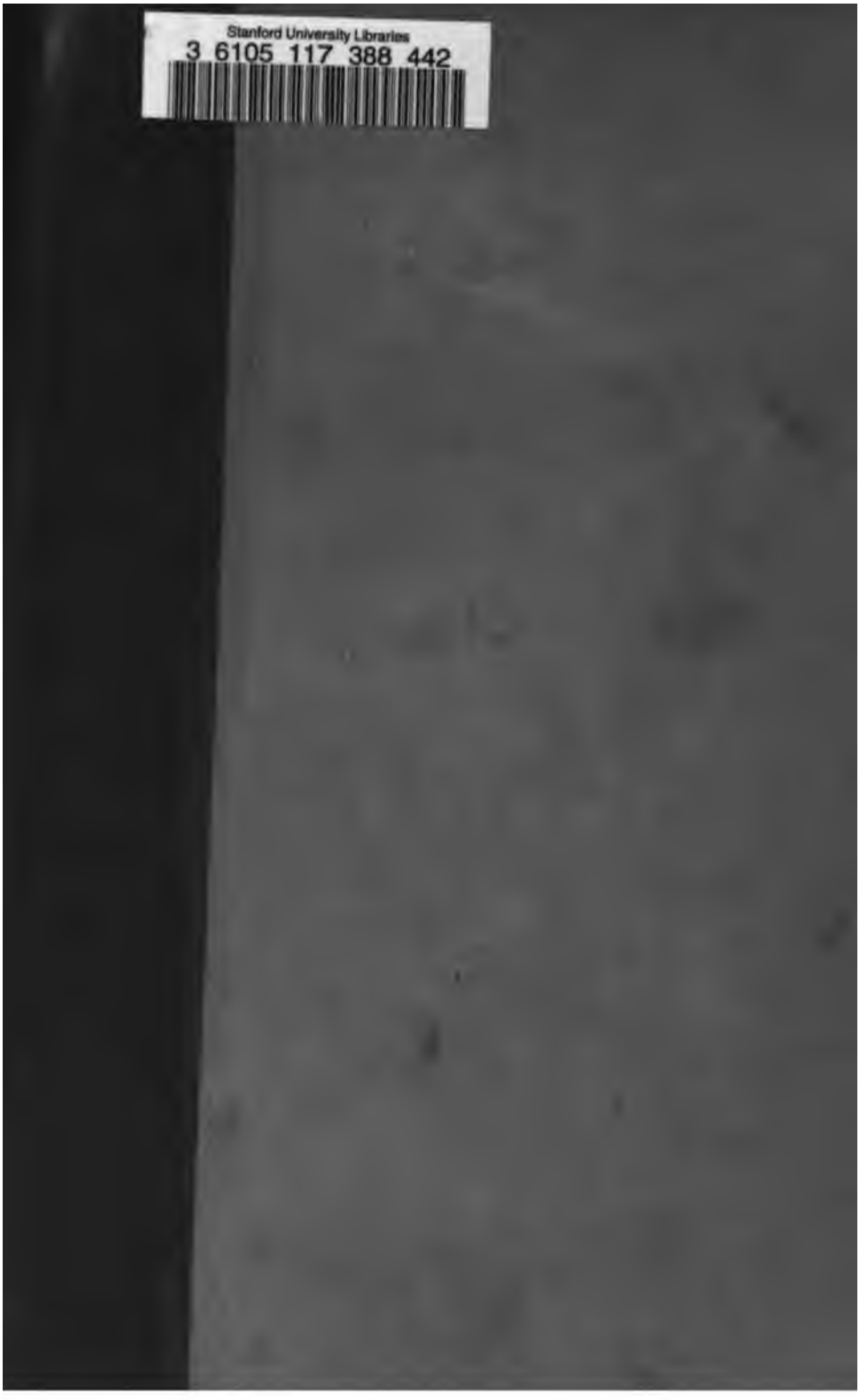
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

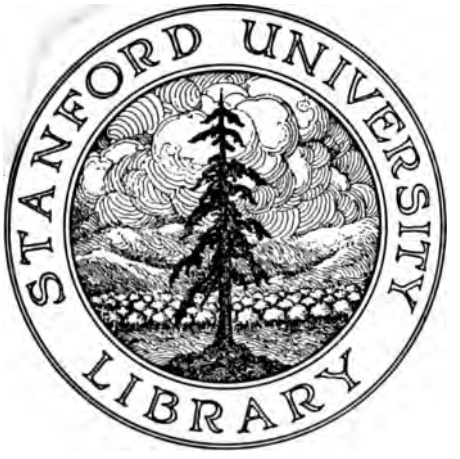
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 117 388 442




Stanford University Libraries
3 6105 117 388 442

R722



ROGERI DE WENDOVER

FLORES HISTORIARUM.

ROGERI DE WENDOVER

CHRONICA,

SIVE

FLORES HISTORIARUM,

NUNC PRIMUM EDIDIT

HENRICUS O. COXE, M.A.

VOL. IV.

LONDINI:
SUMPTIBUS SOCIETATIS.
M.DCCC.XLII.

YALE

LONDON:
PRINTED BY S. & J. BENTLEY, WILSON, AND FLEY,
Bangor House, Shoe Lane.

118305

ROGERI DE WENDOVER

LIBER, QUI DICITUR,

FLORES HISTORIARUM.

De coronatione regis Angliæ Henrici tertii et rebus ejus tempore gestis.

EFUNCTO Johanne, Anglorum rege, convenerunt apud [1] Gloverniam in vigilia apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, in præsentia Walonis apostolicæ sedis legati, Petrus Wintoniensis et Silvester Wigorniensis, episcopi, Ranulphus comes Cestrensis, Willelmus Mareschallus, comes Penbroc, Willelmus comes de Ferrariis, Johannes Mareschallus, Philippus de Albeneio, cum abbatibus, prioribus et turba multa nimis, ut Henricum, Johannis regis filium primogenitum, in regem Angliæ coronarent. In crastino autem, paratis omnibus ad corona- A.D. 1216. Coronation of Henry III.

NOTES AND VARIOUS READINGS.

[1] *Gloverniam.*] Hemingford has left an account of the mode of Henry's election, recording a speech of the earl of Pembroke on the occasion, with the answer of the barons. He afterwards commits a curious blunder in laying the scene of the coronation in London.

A.D. 1216. tionem necessariis, legatus supradictus, associatis sibi episcopis et comitibus memoratis, duxerunt ad ecclesiam conventualem cum processione solemni regem coronandum, ubi ante majus altare constitutus juravit coram clero et populo, appositis sibi sacrosanctis evangeliis et plurimorum [1]sanctorum reliquiis, quod honorem, pacem ac reverentiam portabit Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ et ejus ordinatis omnibus diebus vitæ suæ; juravit etiam, quod in populo sibi commisso rectam justitiam tenebit, quodque leges malas et iniquas consuetudines, si quæ sint in regno, delebit, et bonas observabit et ab omnibus faciet observari. Deinde fecit homagium sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ et Innocentio papæ de regno Angliæ et Hiberniæ, et juravit quod mille marcas, quas pater ejus Romanæ contulerat ecclesiæ, fideliter persolveret quamdiu prædicta regna teneret; et, his ita gestis, [2]Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, coronam posuit super caput et unxit eum in regem cum orationibus et cantuum modulationibus, quæ in coronatione regum solent decantari. Tandem, expletis missarum solemniis, duxerunt regem cum processione solemni episcopi et comites sæpedicti regalibus indutum ad mensam, ubi omnes in ordine suo considentes epulabantur in lætitia et exultatione. In crastino autem rex cepit homagia et fidelitates ab omnibus episcopis, comitibus et baronibus, aliisque omnibus,

[1] *Sanctorum reliquiis.*] Paris adds, 'Dictante juramentum Jocelino Bathoniensi;' in the Waverley Annals he is also spoken of as being present.

[2] *Petrus.*] Henry's own account of the coronation is given in his letters to the justiciary of Ireland, still preserved in the Close Rolls, Fœd. i. p. 145. Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, was then at Rome, on the subject of his suspension. In the letters just mentioned, Henry says, that he was crowned by the cardinal and bishops then present.

qui aderant, et omnes ei fidelissimum [1]obsequium promiserunt. A.D. 1216. Coronatus est autem Henricus tertius anno ætatis suæ decimo, in die apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, scilicet vicesimo octavo die mensis Octobris. Rex autem post coronationem suam remansit in custodia Willelmi comitis Penbroc, magni videlicet Mareschalli, qui protinus misit literas ad omnes vicecomites de regno Angliæ et castellanos, præcipiens singulis, ut regi nuper coronato essent intendentes, promittens omnibus possessiones pariter ac donaria multa, ita ut dicto regi fideliter adhærerent; sicque nobiles universi et castellani, qui patri ejus servierant, ei multo fidelius quam regi Johanni adhæserunt, quia patris iniquitas, ut cunctis videbatur, filio non debuit imputari; unde omnes sese ad defensionem præparantes castella sua peroptime munire cœperunt. Animabat præterea eos, qui partem regis fovebant, quamplurimum, quod singulis diebus Dominicis ac festivis Lodowicum cum et complicibus ejus et fautoribus excommunicari videbant.

Qualiter Lodowicus, audita morte regis Johannis, a Dovera recesserit.

Louis, his attempt upon Dover castle.

Cumque Lodowicus ac barones, qui apud Doverense castrum obsidionem agebant, de morte regis Johannis veridicos nuntios accepissent, invasit omnes lætitia magna, ut qui se confidebant regnum Angliæ subjugasse. [2]At Lodowicus,

[1] *Obsequium.*] 'Fidelitate et homagio omnium illorum nobis exhibitis;' *ibid.* p. 145.

[2] *At Lodowicus.*] The Cotton MS. of Mat. Paris has a different account of the attempt of Louis to bring over Hubert de Burgh, by which it appears that he sent the earl of Salisbury and a brother of Hubert, whom Louis had before taken prisoners, to use their influence with him. The result, however, was the same; see Var. Lect. Wats, ad p. 288.

A.D. 1216. Huberto de Burgo, Doverensis castri constabulario, ad suum colloquium vocato, dixit ei, 'Rex Johannes dominus tuus mortuus est, nec valet tibi castrum hoc contra me diutius tenere, cum non habeas defensorem; redde ergo castellum mihi et ad fidelitatem meam veni, et ego magnis honoribus te ditabo atque inter consiliarios meos magnus eris.' Cui Hubertus taliter fertur respondisse, 'Si dominus meus mortuus est, habet filios et filias, qui ei succedere debent; sed et de castello reddendo cum militibus sociis meis habere volo colloquium;' sicque in castrum reversus indicavit sociis verba Lodowici, qui in hoc pariter consenserunt inclusi, ut castellum Lodowico negaretur, ne illud turpiter reddendo notam proditionis incurrerent. Quod cum Lodowico et baronibus nuntiatum fuisset, decreverunt minora per Angliam castella subjugare, ut, levioribus subactis, confugerent ad majora; denique, obsidione soluta, ad urbem Londoniarum sunt reversi. Sed continuo post recessum eorum milites, qui erant in [defensione] castri memorati, exeuntes combusserunt domos et ædificia, quæ ante castrum Lodowicus construxerat, et sic per provinciam hostiliter discurrentes castrum suum omnibus rebus necessariis optime munierunt.

De obsidione et captione castelli de Hertford.

Hertford castle besieged and taken. His ita gestis, Lodowicus in crastino sancti Martini cum exercitu copioso ad municipium de Hertford perveniens illud obsidione vallavit, erectisque in gyrum machinis castelli muros subvertere nitebatur; sed Walterus de Godardvilla, miles de familia Falcasii, vir strenuus, cum suis commilitonibus defensioni vacans multam ex Galligenis stragem fecit. Tandem,

cum a [1]festo sancti Martini usque ad festum beati Nicolai laborioso nimis sumptu ibidem sedissent, reddiderunt Lodowico municipium, salvis inclusis rebus suis cum equis et armis. Reddito itaque municipio, petiit illud Robertus filius-Walteri, dicens custodiam illius ad eum antiquo jure spectare; at Lodowicus, cum super hoc a Francigenis consilium quæsivisset, responsum est ei, quod Angli non erant digni tales habere custodias, qui proprii domini proditores fuerunt. Tunc Lodowicus dicto Roberto respondit, ut patienter sustineret donec, regno subjugato, singulis redderet jura sua. Eodem tempore, in [2]die beatæ Catharinæ virginis et martyris, exivit de carcere nobilis vir Willelmus de Albeneio, facto prius fine pro redemptione sua sex millium marcarum; qui, facto homagio regi Henrico, tradidit ei idem rex castellum de Lafort ad custodiendum, quod ille strenuissime custodivit. A.D. 1216.

De captione castelli de Berchamstede.

Subjugato, ut dictum est, municipio de Hertfort, Lodowicus in die sancti Nicolai apud Berchamstede castellum se conferens illud cuneis militaribus circumcinxit. Barones vero Angliæ, qui, jubente Lodowico, a parte castri aquilonari sub foresta tentoria sua statuerant, et circa illa ordinanda ministri et servientes essent solliciti, exierunt de castello milites et servientes cum impetu, et, sarcinas baronum et bigas invadentes, vexillum Willelmi de Mandevilla rapuerunt et secum revertentes in castellum detulerunt, pœnitentia ducti, quod adversariis majora non potuerunt inferre detrimenta. Eodem Berkhampstead castle besieged,

[1] *Festo.*] From the 12th of November to the 6th of December.

[2] *Die beatæ Catharinæ,*] the 25th of November.

A.D. 1216. quoque die, baronibus ad mensam sedentibus, exierunt denuo milites et servientes prædicti de castello, et in confusionem baronum vexillum, quod paulo ante rapuerunt, præferentes cogitabant dictos barones occupare inermes; sed, aliis præmunitis, compulsi sunt ad castellum redire. Cumque dies crastinus illuxisset, jussit Lodowicus petrarias et alias belli machinas circa castri ambitum erigere, quibus undique collocatis damnosos lapides emittere non cessabant; quibus Walerannus, genere Teuthonicus, miles in opere martio probatus, cum suis commilitonibus viriliter resistentes multorum animas ex Galligenis excommunicatis ad tartara direxerunt; sed denique post diutinam obsidionem, ex præcepto regis, dictus Walerannus
Is taken. et complices ejus Lodowico castellum, salvis sibi equis et armis, reddiderunt [1]decimo tertio kalendas Januarii. In crastino autem, impositis suis in castello, Lodowicus venit ad sanctum Albanum, in die videlicet beati Thomæ apostoli, exigens ab abbate ut faceret sibi homagium; cui cum abbas respondisset, se nolle ei homagium facere, nisi prius absolveretur ab homagio quod fecerat regi Anglorum, Lodowicus vehementer indignatus juravit, se igne ipsam abbatiam cum villa tota crematurum, nisi faceret quod petebat. Tandem abbas prædictus, post comminationes terrificas, interveniente Saero comite Wintoniensi, finem fecit pro se et villa tota, dans Lodowico pro induciis usque ad purificationem beatæ Mariæ quater viginti marcas argenti; quo facto, Lodowicus ad urbem Londoniarum reversus est.

[1] *Decimo tertio kalendas Januarii,*] or the 20th. The Waverley Annals have S. Lucy's day, or the 13th.

Incidentia de terra promissionis.

Eodem[1] anno, exspirante treuga inter fideles terræ promissionis et Saracenos, in primo passagio generale post concilium Lateranense, congregatus est exercitus Domini copiosus in Achon, cum [2]tribus regibus, Hierusalem scilicet, Hungariæ et Cypri. Adfuerunt etiam duces Austriæ[3] et Moraviæ, cum militia magna regni Teuthonici et comitibus multis virisque generosis. Adfuerunt etiam archiepiscopi Nichossiensis, [4]Jovensis, Argiensis, Hungariæ, Baiocensis, Bavergensis, Cicenensis, Monasteriensis et Trajectensis, et cum eis vir nobilis et potens Walterus de Avenis. Deinde patriarcha Hierosolymitanus, cum magna humilitate cleri et populi tollens reverenter vivificæ crucis signum, feria sexta post festum Omnium sanctorum profectus est ab Achon in castra Domini, quæ processerant ad [5]Recordanam. Hoc autem Dominicæ crucis lignum post terram sanctam perditam reservatum fuit ad hæc tempora et a fidelibus occultatum; imminente enim conflictu Saracenorum tempore Salaadini cum Christianis, sicut a senioribus accepimus, crux secta fuit, cujus pars ad prælium delata et ibidem perdita, pars tunc reservata exstitit, quæ nunc exhibetur. Cum tali quoque vexillo aciebus instruc-

A.D. 1216. Progress of the crusaders.

[1] *Eodem.*] The account following is taken from that by Jacobus de Vitriaco, who was an eye-witness; compare Gesta Dei per Francos, 1129, and Hist. caption. Diametæ, Hist. Angl. Scriptt. tom. ii. p. 435.

[2] *Tribus regibus.*] John, king of Jerusalem, Andrew of Hungary, [who, having washed himself in the river Jordan, would stay no longer, but straightway returned home; Holy Warre, p. 152,] and Hugh of Cyprus.

[3] *Austriæ et Moraviæ.*] Leopold and Otho.

[4] *Jovensis;*] probably for Juvensis or Juvaviensis, the see of Salzburgh.

[5] *Recordanam.*] So in Jac. de Vitriaco; M. Paris reads 'ad fluvium Jordanem.

A.D. 1216. Progress of the crusaders.

tis, processerunt fideles per planum Fabæ usque ad fontem Tubanniæ, eo die multum laborantes ; et, præmissis explorantibus, videntes ab adversariis concitari pulverem, incerti fuerunt utrum contra nos, an fugiendo, properarent. Sequenti die per montes Gelboe, quos habuerunt ad dextram et paludem ad sinistram, profecti sunt Bethsanam, ubi adversarius noster castrametatus est ; sed, metuens adventum tam copiosi Dei viventis exercitus et tam ordinate procedentis, tentoria tollens et fugiens terram militibus Christi vastandam reliquit, unde in vigilia sancti Martini Jordanem transeuntes corpora sua laverunt in eo fideles, et pacifice quieverunt ibidem per biduum victualium copiam reperientes. Deinde super littus maris Galileæ tres fecerunt mansiones, peragrantes loca in quibus Salvator noster mirabilia operari dignatus est, corporali præsentia cum hominibus conversatus. Aspexerunt Bethsaidam, civitatem Andreæ et Petri, tunc ad modicum casale redactum ; viderunt etiam loca ubi Christus discipulos vocavit, supra mare siccis pedibus ambulavit, in deserto turbas pavit, montem oraturus ascendit, et ubi post resurrectionem cum discipulis manducavit ; et sic per Capharnaum Achon reversi sunt, infirmos suos reportantes. Deinde aliam equitationem aggressi fideles prædicti perrexerunt ad montem Thabor, ubi primo aquarum inopiam, et postmodum per defossionem copiam, repererunt ; desperabant autem capitanei exercitus de ascensu montis, donec dictum est eis, castrum fore comprehensibile, a puero Saraceno. Consilium ergo inierunt, et Dominica prima Adventus, cum legeretur evangelium ‘ Ite in castellum quod contra vos est,’ patriarcha præcessit cum signo crucis, episcopis

et clero orantibus et psallentibus, [dum] exercitus clivum montis subiret; et licet mons præruptus esset undique, et velut impossibilis in ascensu et extra semitam tortam, omnes tamen viriliter ascenderunt. Johannes vero, rex Hierusalem, cum militia Christi, castellanum ab equo stravit et admiraldum unum, qui primo impetu intrepidi extra portas ad montem defendendum hostibus occurrerunt, in stuporem eos convertentes et fugam. Sed rex quantum meruit ascendendo, tantum demeruit descendendo; nam Templarii multi et Hospitalarii et seculares, quando infideles vires receperant, vulnerati sunt, sed pauci mortui. In hoc autem et in primo, de quo diximus, equitatu multitudinem maximam virorum, mulierum ac parvulorum apud Achon Christiani reduxerunt, ubi episcopus Achonensis parvulos, quoscumque vel prece vel pretio obtinere potuit, baptizavit; fœminas vero inter sanctimoniales distribuit et literis applicare fecit. In tertio autem equitatu, cui patriarcha cum clero et signo crucis non interfuit, multa incommoda, tum per latrunculos, tum ex hyemis incommodo, perpessi sunt fideles, præsertim in vigilia nativitatis Dominicæ, per viam, in qua illa nocte sacra tempestatem ventis commotam et pluviis invenerunt; in finibus etiam Tyri et Sidonis juxta Sarepta multa perpessi fuerunt incommoda, tam aeris intemperie, quam molestia corporali.

A.D. 1216. Progress of the crusaders.

Qualiter barones Angliæ propriam miseriam ad mentem reduxerunt.

Anno Domini MCCXVII. juvenis rex Henricus fuit ad Natale apud Bristollum, præsente Walone legato et Willelmo Mareschallo, rectore ejusdem regis et regni. Erat autem ea tempes-

A.D. 1217. The barons incline to return to their allegiance.

A.D. 1217. tate inter optimates Angliæ fluctuatio maxima cui se regi committerent, juveni videlicet Henrico, an domino Lodowico; habebant enim ex Francigenis talem tantumque contemptum, quod multi eorum consolationem non admiserunt. Auxit præterea hujus perturbationis procellam, quod Lodowicus, spreto juramento, terras, possessiones et castella eorundem optimatum, quæ eorum auxilio subegerat, illis murmurantibus, in suam redegerat potestatem, ponens in eis milites et alienigenas nationes. Cæterum, turpe sibi videbatur ad regem, quem abjecerant, redire, ne viderentur canes ad vomitum revertentes; sicque hinc inde perplexi quassatum nequiverunt calamum reparare. Eodem tempore, decimo tertio kalendas Februarii, exierunt de castello, quod Monsorel appellatur, milites et servientes, ut prædis instarent et rapinis; quod cum per exploratores milites de Notingham cognovissent, venerunt eis obviam, et, facto congressu, ceperunt ex obstantibus decem milites et viginti quatuor servientes, et sic, tribus ex hostibus interfectis, cum læta victoria remearunt.

Qualiter Falcasius villam sancti Albani spoliavit.

S. Alban's wasted by Falcasius de Breaute.

Per idem tempus, undecimo kalendas Februarii, [1] Falcasius, prædo pessimus, multitudine gravi congregata de præsidiis castrorum de Oxonia, Norhantona et Bedefordia, simul et Windleshores, militum et ruptariorum, venit ad villam sancti Albani in crepusculo vespertino, nocte scilicet [2] sancti Vincentii, atque, inopinato impetu facto, villam totam spoliavit, homines et infantes cepit ac vinculis eos arctis-

[1] *Falcasius.*] Paris has much concerning this individual and his wife, Margaret Rivers, not noticed by Wendover below, under the year 1224; ed. 1640, p. 321, *seq.*

[2] *Sancti Vincentii,*] the 22nd of January.

simis mancipavit; ad ostium quoque ecclesiæ beati Albani servientem quendam de curia interfecit, ad ecclesiam fugere cupientem; et sic, opere nefario a ministris diaboli consummato, abbati Willelmo significavit, ut sub omni festinatione mitteret ei centum libras argenti, alioquin ipse injecto igne villam totam cum ipso monasterio et suis ædificiis illico concremaret. Abbas vero post multas contradictiones, aliud non habens remedium, pecuniam postulatam concessit. Quibus ita gestis, dictus Falcasius cum suis prædonibus excommunicatis, et spoliis nimis damnosis turpiterque vinctis captivis et abductis, ad castellum de Bedeford citius convolavit; deinde cum omni multitudine prædicta ad forestam de Walbergia properans cepit ibi Rogerum de Collevilla, et plus quam sexaginta cum eo clericos et laicos de provincia illa, qui prædæ causa [1] ibidem latebant. A.D. 1217.

De treugis statutis inter regem Angliæ et Lodowicum.

Circa eosdem dies nuntii Lodowici, qui pro eo steterunt in curia Romana, eidem Lodowico significaverunt, quod, nisi exiret ab Anglia, sententia excommunicationis, quam Walo legatus in eum tulerat, in die Cœnæ confirmaretur a papa. Hac itaque de causa statutæ sunt treugæ [2] inter Lodowicum et regem Henricum usque ad mensem de Pascha, ita scilicet, ut omnia remaneant in eo statu, quo fuerunt in die quo juratæ fuerunt treugæ, in castellis et rebus aliis, usque ad terminum constitutum. Truce with Louis.

[1] *Ibidem latebant.*] Paris adds a story of a vision, by which he was moved to go to S. Alban's and beg for absolution, which was granted him, on the supposition that he would make some restitution of what he had plundered from the abbey; but this, as it appears, was no part of his intention.

[2] *Treugæ.*] Rymer, i. p. 147.

A.D. 1217. Transfretavit[1] igitur Lodowicus tempore Quadragesimali, eo pacto, quod nunquam deinceps gratiam baronum Angliæ habuerit sicut prius; nam continuo venerunt ad fidelitatem regis Henrici comes Willelmus Saresbiriensis, comes Willelmus Arundel, comes Willelmus Warennæ, et alii multi, dicto regi deinceps adhærentes; sed et magnus Mareschallus, Willelmum filium suum primogenitum ad regis fidelitatem revocans, partem Lodowici non mediocriter mutilavit.

Incidentia de terra promissionis.

Progress of the crusaders.

Eodem[2] tempore exercitus, qui erat in Achon, quadrifarie divisus est; reges enim Hungariæ et Cypri Tripolim profecti sunt, ubi rex Cypri adolescens diem clausit extremum. Rex vero Hungariæ, brevi tempore ibidem commoratus, cum magno terræ sanctæ dispendio recessit; peregrinos enim et galeias, equos et jumenta, cum armis secum traxit, multum ne recederet a patriarcha rogatus, qui tandem cum sua sequela excommunicatus recessit. Alia pars [3]pigrorum et timidorum, et eorum qui divitiis affluebant, in Achone remansit. Rex vero Hierusalem et dux Austriæ, cum Hospitalariis sancti Johannis et episcopis multis et aliis fidelibus, castrum in Cæsarea Palestinæ in brevi viriliter firmaverunt, licet frequenter hostium nuntiaretur adventus; ibi in basilica principis apostolorum festum Purificationis patriarcha cum sex episcopis solemniter celebravit. Templarii quoque, cum domino Waltero de Avenis

[1] *Transfretavit.*] According to Walter of Coventry, the occasion of Louis' absence was the threat of the pope's legates at the council of Melun, that they would put all France under an interdict unless Philip consented to recall his son.

[2] *Eodem tempore.*] Jac. de Vitriac. p. 1130.

[3] *Pigrorum.*] 'Peregrinorum,' *ibid.*

et aliis peregrinis et hospitali de domo Teuto- A.D. 1217.
nicorum, castrum quod olim 'Districtum,' nunc autem 'castrum Peregrinorum,' dicitur, firmare cœperunt; hoc autem castrum situm est inter Caipham et Cæsaream, non longe distans a mari; quapropter viam strictam ascendentibus, et ad Hierusalem per eam descendentibus, 'Districtum' dicebatur. Hujus castri prima utilitas est, quod conventus Templariorum, eductus a peccatrice et omni spurcitia plena civitate Achon, usque ad reparationem murorum Hierusalem, in hujus castri præsidio residebit. Territorium ejus piscariis, salinis, silvis, pascuis, agris, herbis, vineis, hortis et pomeriis abundat. Inter Achon et Hierusalem nullum est municipium quod Saraceni teneant, quocirca ex hoc [1]plurimum damnificantur infideles. Inter Hierusalem et Jordanem portum habet naturaliter bonum, sex milliariis distans a monte Thabor; unde Saraceni in campo, qui interjacet, longo et lato, nec arare possunt nec seminare, propter hujus castri præsidium et levamen. Firmato itaque tali castro, exercitus Domini reversus est in Achon.

De signis cælestibus, unde excitata fuit Coloniensis provincia ad obsequium crucis.

Sub[2] his quoque diebus, mense Maio, feria scilicet sexta ante Pentecosten, excitata fuit provincia Coloniensis in obsequium Salvatoris; nam in villa Bebon Frisiæ apparuit in aere triplex forma crucis, una, coloris candidi, versus aquilonem, altera versus meridiem, ejusdem schematis et coloris, tertia, medio colore colorata, habens crucis patibulum et formam ho- Phænomena in the province of Cologne.

[1] *Plurimum.*] The scribe, mistaking the word in his original, has written 'privilegium.'

[2] *Sub his quoque diebus.*] Jac. de Vitriac. p. 1131.

A.D. 1217. minis in eo suspensam, brachiis elevatis et extensis, cum infixione clavorum in manibus et pedibus et capite inclinato; et hæc media fuit inter alias, in quibus corporis humani effigies non apparebat: alia quoque vice et alio loco, in villa scilicet Frisiæ, quæ Fuserhuse appellatur, crux apparuit juxta solem cærulei coloris, et hanc plures quam priorem viderunt: tertia apparuit in villa Doctham, in qua beatus Bonifacius martyrio exstitit coronatus; ubi in festo ejusdem martyris, cum multa hominum millia convenissent, visa est crux magna et alba, ac si trabes ex adverso trabis artificialiter constructa fuisset; movebatur autem paulatim ab aquilone ad orientem, et hanc multa hominum millia conspexerunt.

De obsidione castri de Munsorel.

Siege of Montsorel. Per idem tempus, post Paschalem solemnitatem, procurante Willelmo Mareschallo, regis rectore et regni Angliæ, convenerunt ad obsidendum castrum de Munsorel Ranulphus comes Cestriæ, Willelmus comes Albemarliæ, Willelmus comes de Ferrariis, Robertus de Veteri-ponte, Briennus de Insula, W. de Cantelupo, Philippus Marci, Robertus de Gaugi, Falcasius cum castellanis suis, et alii multi ex præsidiis castrorum, qui, collocatis machinis in locis congruis, dictum castellum acriter invaserunt. Erat summus in castello Henricus de Braibroc, et decem milites cum eo, viri strenuissimi, cum servientibus multis, qui hostibus assilientibus lapides pro lapidibus, tela pro telis, viriliter remiserunt; inclusi quoque, cum per multos dies castrum defendissent, ne forte longa obsidione deficere cogerentur, miserunt ad Saerum, comitem Wintoniensem, qui tunc Londoniis erat,

obsecrantes ut celeriter subveniret obsessis. Tunc A.D. 1217.
comes præfatus, cujus illud municipium erat, ad Lodowicum, qui nuper de partibus transmarinis ad urbem Londoniarum redierat, veniens, postulavit eum cum amicis obnixius, ut subsidium mitteret militare per quod obsidio solveretur; tandem, habito tractatu ad invicem, communiter decreverunt, ut legio militum mitteretur, quæ obsidionem solveret et totam Lodowico provinciam subjugaret. Exierunt itaque ab urbe Londoniarum milites sexcenti et cum eis plusquam viginti millia armatorum, qui omnes aspirabant in aliena, habentes principes illius militiæ [1]comitem Perticensem, mareschallum Franciæ, comitem Wintoniensem Saerum, Robertum filium-Walteri, cum [2]aliis multis, quos ad expeditionem hanc idoneos judicabant. Moventes autem castra pridie kalendas Maii, id est, die Lunæ proximo ante ascensionem Domini, profecti sunt apud sanctum Albanum quæque sibi obvia deprædantes. Ruptarii vero et prædones nequissimi de regno Francorum villas in gyrum perlustrantes ecclesiis et cœmeteriis non parcebant, quin omne genus hominum caperent et spoliarent ac diro membrorum cruciatu ad gravissimam redemptionem compellerent; abbatia quoque sancti Albani, cujus abbas paulo ante data pecunia magna Lodowico satisfecerat, prædonum manus evasit, ita quod nihil præter escas et pocula rapiebant.

---

[1] *Comitem Perticensem.*] Thomas, earl of Perche, son of Geoffrey earl of Perche and Mortagne; Anselme, Hist. Geneal. iii. p. 314. From a writ addressed to the sheriff of Wiltshire in behalf of the earl of Salisbury, it appears that the above-named Geoffrey had possession of lands in the manor of Aldburn at the time of his death; Rot. Claus. p. 311.

[2] *Aliis multis.*] Brito adds Simon Pissianita; Rec. des Hist. xvii. p. 110.

De miraculo Dominicæ crucis.

A.D. 1217. Miracle. In crastino autem versus villam de Dunestaplia castra moventes, ecclesiam beati Amphibali, in villa de Redburnia sitam, usque ad femoralia monachos spoliabant; sanctorum insuper reliquias super sanctum altare rapientes funestis eas manibus polluerunt. Inter quos etiam quidam ex eis crucem argenteam et deauratam, in qua portio quædam Dominicæ crucis continebatur, tollens in sinu suo funesto sociis ignorantibus abscondit, sed, antequam ab ædibus oratorii recessisset, a dæmonio arreptus corruit in terram dentibus stridens et ore spumans, surgensque festinanter a dæmonio agitatus in socios ensem vibrare disposuit; at illi ejus miseriæ condolentes, ligatis manibus illius, causam penitus ignorantes, ad ecclesiam de Flamstede perduxerunt in suprema furia constitutum. Intrantes autem ecclesiam prædones, ut eam spoliarent, obviavit presbyter indutus vestibus albis, ut malitiam comprimeret impiorum; veruntamen aliquantulum de socio, quem furiosum ducebant, perterriti manus cohibuerunt a rapina, ubi, vidente presbytero et multis aliis, crux prædicta cecidit in terram, de sinu exsiliens furiosi; quam reverenter ac stupens presbyter arripiens, et a terra in editum elevans, quid hoc esset a prædonibus requisivit. Tandem in se reversi cognoverunt per virtutem animadversionis divinæ, quod a monachis, quos in proxima villa spoliaverant, crucem furtim sustulisset; in summa igitur angustia prædones constituti timuerunt valde, ne etiam ipsos spiritus nequam invaderet et, sicut socium suum fecerat, cruciaret. Tunc prædones nequissimi crucem illam cum tremore presbytero tradiderunt, adjuran-

tes per virtutem Dei et in periculo ordinis sui, A.D. 1217. ut, antequam cibum sumeret, ad locum accedens crucem monachis restitueret ; presbyter vero cum festinatione ad oratorium beati Amphibali martyris veniens crucem reverenter tradidit, et omnia, quæ circa illam mirabiliter acta sunt, priori et fratribus enarravit.

De solutione obsidionis castri Munsorel et obsidione castri Lincolniæ.

Exercitus igitur Lodowici ac baronum Angliæ apud Dunestapliam perveniens ibidem pernoctavit. Mane autem facto, versus aquilonem vexilla direxit et arma, ut obsidionem prædictam solvere maturaret ; sed comes Cestrensis Ranulphus et alii, qui cum illo obsidionem agebant, ab exploratoribus præmuniti, expeditione dimissa, ad castrum sese de Notingham conferentes decreverunt communiter, ut hostium supervenientium ibidem explorarent progressum. Barones itaque, cum, cunctis cœmeteriis et ecclesiis omnibus more solito per viam spoliatis, ad castellum de Munsorel pervenissent, communi omnium consilio decretum est, ut versus Lincolniam properarent, ubi Gilebertus de Gant cum aliis baronibus supradictis diutinam obsidionem egerant, sed inanem. Transeuntes igitur barones per vallem de Belvero, omnia ibi in usus prædonum cesserunt, quia pedites de regno Francorum, qui quasi spurcitia illius regionis et spuma erant, nihil omnino reliquerunt intactum ; tanta namque in illis vigebat paupertas et miseria, quod in vestibus corporeis unde pudenda contegerent [1]natura eis minime concessit. Denique ad Lincolniam per- Siege of Montsorel raised.

[1] *Natura.*] Unless put for ' naturalia,' it is difficult to see what is here intended.

A.D. 1217. venientes barones insultus fecerunt acerrimos in castellum, [1]quibus resistentes inclusi lapides et tela mortifera pro lapidibus et jaculis pro viribus remiserunt.

Quomodo rex Angliæ congregavit exercitum, ut dissolveret obsidionem castri Lincolniæ.

Preparations to relieve Lincoln. Cum hæc ibidem agerentur, Willelmus Mareschallus, regis custos et regni, de consilio Walonis legati et Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, et aliorum, quorum consilio regni gerebantur negotia, fecit convocare omnes castellanos ad regem spectantes et milites, qui erant in præsidiis castrorum in partibus diversis, præcipiens ut feria secunda in hebdomada Pentecostes apud Newerc ad edictum regis convenirent, et pariter cum [ipsis] obsidionem castri Lincolniensis dissolvere laborarent. At illi, quibus ardens inerat desiderium bellum conserere cum Francigenis excommunicatis et etiam pro patria pugnare, venerunt gaudenter ad diem præfixum et locum; cum quibus utique et ipse legatus cum aliis regni prælatis cum equis et viris bellicosis apparuit, ut regi inobedientes et domino papæ rebelles precibus insequerentur et armis; habuerunt enim justam, ut sibi videbatur, causam, cum præcipue innocens esset et quasi a peccato alienus, quem adversarii ejus exhæredare per superbiam laborabant. Cumque omnes in unum fuissent congregati, recensiti sunt in exercitu milites quadringenti, balistarii ferme ducenti quinquaginta; servientes quoque et equites tot et tales adfuerunt innumeri, quod vices militum possent pro necessitate supplere. Principes autem exercitus fuerunt Willelmus Mareschallus et Wil-

[1] *Quibus resistentes inclusi.*] Holinshed states that the castle was defended by a noble lady named Nichola [de Camville.]

lelmus filius ejus, Petrus Wintoniensis episco- A.D. 1217.
pus in opere martio eruditus, comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, comes Saresbiriensis Willelmus, comes de Ferrariis Willelmus, comes Albemarlensis Willelmus ; adfuerunt et barones, Willelmus scilicet de Albeneio, Johannes Mareschallus, Willelmus de Cantelo et Willelmus filius ejus, Falcasius in opere illo laudabilis, Thomas Basset, Robertus de Veteri-ponte, Briennus de Insula, Gaufridus de Luci, Philippus de Albeneio, cum castellanis multis in opere militari expertis. Hi autem, apud Newerc triduanam facientes moram ad respirationem hominum et equorum, confessioni interim vacabant, corporis et sanguinis Dominici perceptione sua corpora muniebant, contra hostium incursiones Dominum protectorem habere quærentes ; sicque universi ad omnia provocati pro justitia mori vel vincere affectabant.

Qualiter, exercitu regis congregato, legatus omnes ad pugnam animaverit.

Tandem in hebdomada Pentecostes, feria sex- March of the king's army,
ta, post divinorum celebrationem sacramentorum, surgens legatus sæpe dictus ostendit coram omnibus quam iniqua erat Lodowici ac baronum, qui ei adhæserant, causa, pro qua fuerant excommunicati et ab unitate ecclesiæ segregati ; et, ut denique exercitum illum animaret ad pugnam, albis indutus vestibus cum clero universo Lodowicum nominatim excommunicavit cum complicibus et fautoribus suis, et præcipue omnes illos, qui apud Lincolniam contra regem Angliæ obsidionem agebant, cum tota civitate, continens scilicet et contentum. Eis autem, qui negotium hoc in propriis personis expediendum susceperunt, de concessa sibi potestate ab omnipotente

A.D. 1217. Deo et sede apostolica plenam suorum veniam peccatorum, de quibus veraciter confessi fuerunt, indulsit et in retributione justorum salutis æternæ præmia repromisit. Deinde, collata omnibus absolutione et Dei benedictione, ad arma convolarunt universi, equosque cum festinatione ascendentes castra moverunt ovantes; venientes itaque ad villam de Stowe, quæ octo milliariis a Lincolnia distat, ibidem intrepidi pernoctarunt. Mane autem facto, bellis septem eleganter ordinatis densis agminibus, processerunt in hostes, nihil adeo metuentes quam fugam eorum, antequam ad civitatem venirent; balistarii quoque eorum exercitum semper præibant uno fere milliario; sarcinæ bigarum et summariorum cum victualibus et rebus necessariis exercitum tantundem sequebantur a tergo; vexillis undique micantibus et scutis, quæ terrorem non minimum videntibus incusserunt.

Qualiter barones ab urbe Lincolniæ exeuntes regis exercitum æstimaverint.

reconnoitred by the barons. Barones vero, qui erant in civitate, et Francigenæ tantam conceperunt securitatem in causa sua obtinendi, ut referentibus sibi nuntiis de adventu adversariorum sannas redderent et cachinnos, non cessantes ex mangonellis lapides damnosos projicere, ut castelli muros dissolverent. Sane Robertus filius-Walteri et S. comes Wintoniensis, cum audissent hostes appropinquare ad civitatem, exierunt ab urbe, ut progressum eorum inspicerent et bellatorum numerum æstimarent; qui, cum diligenter hostium adventantium circumstantia conspexissent, redierunt in urbem ad socios, dicentes, 'Ordinate procedunt contra nos bellatores isti, sed nos tamen multo plures sumus quam illi; unde con-

silium nostrum est, ut exeamus obviam eis usque ad ascensum montis, quia, si ita fecerimus, capiemus omnes illos ut alaudas.' Quibus comes Perticensis et Mareschallus respondentes dixerunt, 'Vos æstimastis illos juxta scientiam vestram; et nos exibimus modo, ut æstimemus eos juxta consuetudinem Gallicanam.' Exierunt ergo ut æstimarent exercitum regis venientem, sed in æstimatione decepti fuerunt; nam, cum primo vidissent a tergo exercitus bigas et sarcinas cum custodibus earum, qui cuneos jam ad bellum dispositos sequebantur, æstimaverunt unum esse per se exercitum, quia ibi multitudinem multam cum vexillis micantibus inspexerunt; habuerunt enim singuli magnatum duo vexilla, unum, ut jam diximus, cum sarcinis a tergo remotius cuneos sequens, et aliud corpora singulorum præcedens, per quod cognoscerentur prælia conserentes; sicque comes Perticensis cum Mareschallo illusus ad socios remeavit incertus. Dederunt ergo consilium isti sodalibus reversi in civitatem, quorum consilium præterire nefas erat, ut divisis optimatibus custodirentur portæ civitatis ab eis hostesque ab ingressu ejus arcerentur donec cepissent castellum, cujus jam captio imminebat. Placuit multis consilium, veruntamen pluribus displicebat. Obseratis itaque portis et custodibus adhibitis, omnes sese ad defensionem parabant. A.D. 1217.

De prælio apud Lincolniam commisso, quod quidam 'Nundinas' appellant.

Interea exercitus regis a parte castelli urbi appropinquans, cum a castellanis cognitus fuisset, miserunt clam nuntium per posticum, quod erat a tergo castelli, ad majores exercitus, qui eis omnia quæ fiebant interius nuntiavit. Dixit Battle of Lincoln.

A.D. 1217. Battle of Lincoln.

etiam, quod, si vellent, potuerunt ingressum habere per posterulam, quæ propter adventum eorum fuerat jam aperta; at illi per eam noluerunt omnes intrare, sed miserunt Falcasium cum agmine toto cui præerat, et cum balistariis omnibus, qui portam civitatis saltem unam exercitui aperirent. Deinde omnis multitudo ad portam se aquilonarem conferens illam confringere vacavit; nec propter hæc barones cessabant de petrariis ad castellum lapides emittere ponderosos. Sed Falcasius interim castrum cum agmine, cui præerat, ac balistariis omnibus ingressus statuit eos subito supra muros domorum et in propugnaculis castri, qui illico tela mortifera in dextrarios baronum dirigentes equos cum sessoribus suis prostraverunt in terram, ita quod quasi in ictu oculi peditum maximam, militum ac magnatum, multitudinem effecerunt. Videns autem Falcasius ex nobilioribus adversariorum suorum plurimos in terram prostratos, prorupit de castro cum suis audacter in medium hostium; sed ab irruentibus in eum legionibus captus est et abductus, donec per probitatem balistariorum ac militum suorum liberatus est. Interea moles totius exercitus regis, januis civitatis licet cum difficultate confractis, villam ingrediens audacter prorupit in hostes. Tunc videres igitur ex ictibus gladiorum igneas prosilire scintillas et ad modum tonitrui horribilis fulminare contra capita galeata; sed tandem per balistarios, quorum probitate equi, in quibus sedebant barones, telis confossi sunt et ad instar porcorum jugulati, pars baronum fuit penitus infirmata, nempe, quando equi in terram corruerunt interfecti, sessores eorum capiebantur, cum non esset qui eos liberaret. Tandem cum regis militia, baronibus pe-

nitus enervatis, cepisset ex eis militum multitudinem numerosam ac vinculis omnes mancipasset, irruit densis agminibus in comitem Perticensem, circumvallando eum undique; sed demum, cum impetum irruentium in eum sustinere non potuit, hortati sunt ut se redderet, quatenus vivus evadere potuisset. At ille cum juramento affirmavit, quod se non redderet Anglis, qui proprii regis proditores fuerunt; et, his auditis, irruit quidam in eum percutiensque illum in oculo cerebrum perforavit, et corruens in terram [1]verbum ultra non edidit. Videntes itaque Galligenæ phalanges quod major eorum cecidisset, inierunt fugam, tam pedites quam equites, sibi nimis damnosam; nam flagellum portæ australis, per quam fugerunt, quod ex transverso illius portæ fuerat fabricatum, fugientes non mediocriter impedivit; etenim, quotiescunque aliquis adveniens exire voluit, oportebat eum ab equo descendere et portam aperire, quo exeunte, porta denuo claudebatur flagello ut prius posito ex transverso, sicque porta illa fugientibus nimis molesta fuit. Insecuti sunt autem fugientes barones et Francos milites regis; sed, licet plures in fugiendo capti fuissent, ficte tamen insecuti sunt eos, quia, nisi consensus consanguinitatis et carnis intervenisset, nec pes unus ex omnibus evasisset. Sed, ne sermonem inaniter diutius protraham, capti sunt ex baronibus capitaneis Saerus comes Wintoniensis, Henricus de Buhun comes Herefordiæ, comes Gilebertus de Gant, quem nuper Lodowicus fecerat comitem Lincolniensem; comes Perticensis ibi remansit in æternum.

A.D. 1217. Battle of Lincoln.

[1] *Verbum ultra non edidit.*] According to Brito, he had not then completed the twenty-second year of his age; p. 111. The Waverley Annals say that he was not yet thirty.

A.D. 1217. Prisoners taken at Lincoln.

Capti sunt etiam barones, [1]Robertus filius-Walteri, Richardus de Muntfichet, Willelmus de Mubrai, Willelmus de Bello-campo, Willelmus Maudut, Oliverius de Haencurt, Rogerus de Creisi, Willelmus de Colevilla, Willelmus de Ros, Robertus de Roppele, Radulphus Chaincdut, et alii multi, quos longum esset enumerare. Capti sunt etiam milites trecenti, præter servientes, equites et pedites, qui facile sub numero non cadebant. Comes Perticensis in pomerio hospitalis extra villam sepultus est. Reginaldus etiam cognomento Crocus, miles de familia Falcasii, vir strenuus, ibi interfectus est et apud abbatiam de Crocstune honorifice sepultus. Interfectus est præterea in illo conflictu serviens quidam ex parte baronum, omnibus ignotus, qui extra civitatem in quadrivio quasi excommunicatus sepultus est. Isti tres tantummodo ex omnibus in tanti discrimine belli occisi referuntur.

De spoliis civitatis et rapinis.

Plunder of the city.

His ita gestis, invenerunt regii bellatores in plateis civitatis bigas baronum et Francorum, cum summariis et sarcinis vasis argenteis et varia supellectili simul et utensilibus onustas, quæ omnia in usus eorum sine contradictione cesserunt. Spoliata itaque civitate universa usque ad ultimum quadrantem, ecclesias omnes totius urbis consequenter spoliantes, arcas universas cum armariis securibus ac malleis confregerunt, rapientes in eis aurum et argentum, pannos omnis coloris ac muliebria ornamenta, annulos aureos, cum scyphis et lapidibus pre-

[1] *Robertus filius-Walteri.*] In the Close Rolls may be seen writs to the sheriffs ordering the restitution of lands to Fitzwalter, Montfichet, Beauchamp, Chenduit and others, who returned to their allegiance to the king.

tiosis. Nec etiam ecclesia cathedralis hanc A.D. 1217.
pestem evasit quin subiret judicium aliarum, datum enim erat militibus in mandatis a legato, ut canonicos omnes tractarent velut excommunicatos, sicut tales qui hostes fuerunt Romanæ ecclesiæ ac regis Angliæ ab initio guerræ motæ; præcentor autem ecclesiæ illius, Gaufridus scilicet de Drepinges, undecim millia marcas argenti se doluit amisisse. Tandem cum omnia mercimoniorum genera rapuissent, ita quod nihil in aliquo domatis angulo remansit intactum, reversi sunt singuli ad dominos suos omnes divites effecti, atque, ab omnibus pace regis Henrici per civitatem denuntiata, epulabantur et bibebant cum jocunditate. Facta est autem ista belli congressio, quam in opprobrium Lodowici ac baronum 'Nundinas' appellabant, quarto decimo kalendas Junii, sabbato scilicet in hebdomada Pentecostes, habens initium hora inter primam et tertiam media, sed ante horam nonam a bonis negotiatoribus sunt omnia consummata. Verum ex matronis civitatis multæ fuerunt aquis submersæ, quæ, ut scandalum evitarent, parvas ingressæ naviculas cum pueris et ancillis et rebus domesticis defecerunt in via, sed postmodum a quærentibus inventa fuerunt in flumine vasa argentea cum rebus aliis multis, quæ suis inventoribus profuerunt; erant enim naviculæ nimis oneratæ, et ideo subito perierunt omnes matronæ naves regere nescientes, impetus enim male solet omnia ministrare. Omnibus igitur hunc in modum consummatis, præcepit Willelmus Mareschallus castellanis omnibus, ut cum prisonibus suis redirent ad propria, eosque sub arcta servarent custodia donec de illis regis voluntatem audirent. At idem Mareschallus eodem die, antequam

A.D. 1217. cibum sumeret, ad regem reversus retulit coram legato omnia quæ acciderant, qui gratias Deo cum lachrymis agentes fletum citius converterunt in risum. Mane autem facto, venerunt nuntii ad regem, qui dixerunt, milites de Munsorel castrum reliquisse et aufugisse; unde rex vicecomiti de Notingham dedit in mandatis, ut, personaliter accedens ad castellum, illud subverteret ac penitus complanaret.

De fuga baronum et Francorum a Lincolnia.

Flight of the French. Interfecto, ut dictum est, comite Perticensi, inierunt fugam omnes, tam equites quam pedites, versus urbem Londoniarum, quorum primus erat Mareschallus Franciæ cum castellano de Arras et Galligenis universis; veruntamen multi ex illis, et præcipue pedites fere omnes, interfecti fuerunt, antequam ad Lodowicum pervenissent, exierunt enim eis obviam homines villarum, per quas fugam fecerunt, cum gladiis et fustibus, et multos plagis impositis peremerunt. Milites quoque circiter ducenti ad urbem Londoniarum venientes Lodowico sese præsentaverunt, luctuosa ei damna nuntiantes; quibus ipse subsannando respondens ait, quod per eorum fugam socii eorum capti fuerunt, quia, si ipsi in prælio remansissent, et se forte et socios suos a captione et periculo liberassent. Credendum est itaque confusionem hanc Lodowico ac baronibus Angliæ justo Dei accidisse judicio, qui, jam fere per biennium in sententia excommunicationis inveterati, nisi per divinam plecterentur severitatem, dicerent homines in cordibus suis 'Non est Deus,' et sic non inveniretur qui faceret bonum, nec etiam usque ad virum.

De morte Innocentii papæ.

Eodem anno papa Innocentius, postquam sedisset annis octodecim, mensibus quinque et diebus quatuor, decimo septimo kalendas Augusti humanæ naturæ debitum solvit; cui succedens Honorius, qui [1]Cincius antea dicebatur, sedit in cathedra Romana annis decem, mensibus septem et diebus novendecim. A.D. 1217. Death of Innocent III.

Ut Lodowicus ad patrem suum propter milites miserit.

Eodem tempore Lodowicus de infortunio, quod sibi apud Lincolniam acciderat, prolapsus in desperationem, ne propositum suum ad effectum perduceret, exquisito usus consilio nuntios suos ad patrem suum et uxorem suam dominam Blancam destinavit, proponens eis damna irreparabilia, quæ sibi apud Lincolniam et baronibus Angliæ contigerant, quæ magis a Deo quam hominibus sibi doluit irrogata; rex namque Anglorum adeo jam invaluit, quod in manu armata omnes provincias circa urbem Londoniarum perlustrans exitum civitatis prædictæ sibi et suis complicibus jam præclusit. 'Deficiunt præterea,' ait, 'nobis et nostris in urbe omnia victualium genera, quæ etiam si abundarent in civitate, non habemus unde illa emamus; quocirca vobis significo, quod nec habeo facultatem resistendi, nec ab Anglia recedendi, nisi mihi provideatis potenter in subsidio militari.' Cumque ad patrem de filio et ad uxorem de marito talia pervenissent, doluerunt valde illum in tali articulo esse constitutum; et quoniam rex timuit filio excommunicato opem ferre, velut qui mul- State of Louis' affairs in England.

[1] *Cincius.*] Cencio Savelli, afterwards Honorius III.; he died in March 1227.

A.D. 1217. toties de consensu filii fuerat acriter increpatus a papa, summam negotii imposuit uxori Lodowici, quæ non segniter rem sibi impositam exsequens milites trecentos strenuos et in rebus militaribus bene paratos in subsidium viri sui cum multa armatorum manu transmittit. Sed hæc omnia regem Anglorum latere non poterant, qui jam viribus resumptis cum ingenti exercitu australia maris littora occupaverat et urbem Londoniarum nunc decreverat obsidione vallare; assignavit ergo rex, de consilio magni Mareschalli, Philippum de Albeneio et Johannem Mareschallum simul cum quinque portubus et aliis armatis multis, qui semitas maris solerter speculantes Francorum explorarent et præpedirent adventum.

Sea-fight in the channel. Igitur in die sancti apostoli Bartholomæi classis Francorum Eustachio Monacho, viro flagitiosissimo et [1] piratæ nequissimo, commissa est, ut eam sub salvo ad urbem Londoniarum conduceret et integram Lodowico præsentaret. Ingressi itaque mare milites supradicti habuerunt a tergo flatum turgidum, qui eos versus Angliam vehementer urgebat, sed insidias sibi fuisse paratas funditus ignorabant. Cum itaque rapido volatu multam maris viam emensi fuissent, piratæ regis Anglorum ex obliquo venientes recensitæ sunt in parte adversa naves quater viginti, quapropter timuerunt bellum conserere navale cum navibus paucis, quæ inter galeias et naves alias numerum quadragenarium non excesserunt; sed tandem de casu, qui apud Lincolniam acciderat, in quo pauci de multis triumpharunt, animati audacter a tergo irruerunt in hostes; quod cum Francigenæ cogno-

[1] *Piratæ.*] 'Pietate' in MS.

verunt, ad arma prosiliunt et hostibus viriliter A.D. 1217.
restiterunt. Philippus quoque de Albeneio et balistarii, cum sagittariis, inter Francos tela mortifera dirigentes nimiam ex obstantibus in brevi stragem fecerunt. Habuerunt præterea galeias ferro rostratas, quibus naves adversariorum perforantes multos in momento submerserunt; calcem quoque vivam et in pulverem redactam in altum projicientes, vento illam ferente, Francorum oculos excæcaverunt. Fit gravissimus inter partes conflictus, sed tamen pars Francorum, quorum usus non fuerat prælium navale conserere, in brevi erat funditus infirmata; nam ab Anglis bellatoribus et in navali prælio eruditis telis confodiebantur et sagittis, lanceis jugulabantur, gladiis truncabantur, navibus perforatis submergebantur, nec erat spes ulla Francigenis evadendi, unde, ne caperentur ab hostibus vivi, sponte sese in maris fluctibus projecerunt, eligentes potius mori quam ab Angligenis subjugari. Omnibus igitur subjugatis qui vivi remanserant ex nobilioribus Francigenis, victores Angli naves omnes viribus obtentas funibus colligabant, atque cum læta victoria versus Doveram æquora sulcantes Deum in suis operibus collaudabant. Videntes ergo milites castelli inopinatam Dei virtutem exierunt obviam venientibus Anglis, atque Gallos malefatatos vinculis arctioribus constrinxerunt. Inter cæteros autem de fundo cujusdam navis extractus est, diu quæsitus sed tandem repertus, Eustachius Monachus, proditor regis Angliæ et pirata nequissimus, qui, cum se deprehensum cognovisset, obtulit pro vita sua et membris magnam pecuniæ quantitatem, et quod de cætero sub rege Anglorum fideliter militaret; quem arripiens Richardus, filius regis Johannis no-

A.D. 1217. thus, ait, 'Nunquam de cætero falsis tuis promissionibus quenquam in hoc seculo seduces, proditor nequissime;' et sic educto gladio caput ejus amputavit. Spolia itaque navium in auro, argento, pannis sericis et armis collegerunt regales ministri; atque, prisonibus sub salvo deputatis, significavit regi Philippus de Albeneio quæ gesta fuerant, qui pro victoria sibi cælitus concessa Dominum glorificavit, qui in rebus humanis semper est et ubique mirabilis. Hujus autem rei eventus cum ad Lodowici notitiam pervenisset, multo fortius doluit quam de infortunio sibi apud Lincolniam irrogato.

De pace et concordia facta inter Henricum regem Angliæ et Lodowicum.

London besieged by the earl of Pembroke.

Mareschallus igitur, regis et regni rector, congregavit exercitum grandem militum pariter et clientum, atque in fortitudine gravi ad urbem Londoniarum se conferens obsedit eam per gyrum, id est, per terram simul et aquam, omneque inclusis victualium genus subtrahens ad deditionem eos compellere satagebat; at Lodowicus in arcto positus significavit legato pariter ac Mareschallo, quod ipse voluit consilio eorum in omnibus obedire, ita tamen quod, salvo honore suo et sine suorum scandalo, pacem congruam providerent. At illi, in quibus totum pendebat negotium, et qui Lodowici liberationem supra modum desiderabant, quandam pacis formam in scripto redactam ei remiserunt; cui si consentire vellet, ipsi providerent et ad hoc sese obligarent, quod liberum sibi ac suis omnibus imprisiis ab Anglia facerent habere recessum; sin autem, ipsi subversionem ipsius et scandalum omnibus modis procurarent. Hanc autem pacis formam cum Lodowicus et ejus

consiliarii inspexissent, placuit valde quod licuit eis ab Anglia recedere, ubi sibi inutile videbatur diutius commorari; mandavit itaque Lodowicus legato et magno Mareschallo, ut diem certum providerent et locum, ubi hæc prætaxata possint celeriter ad effectum perduci. Partibus autem in hoc consentientibus, convenerunt ad colloquium prope villam de Stanes, juxta flumen Thamisiæ, ad pacem reformandam, rex Henricus cum legato et magno Mareschallo et aliis multis ex una parte, Lodowicus cum comitibus ac baronibus et aliis imprisiis suis ex altera; ubi, divina cooperante gratia, in subscriptam pacis formam communiter consenserunt tertio idus Septembris. A.D. 1217.

De forma pacis, et de gravi punitione eorum qui excommunicati erant pro rege.

Juravit[1] in primis Lodowicus et omnes excommunicati et imprisii ejus cum eo, tactis sacrosanctis evangeliis, quod starent judicio sanctæ ecclesiæ et quod de cætero fideles erunt domino papæ et ecclesiæ Romanæ. Juravit etiam, quod incontinenti recederet cum omnibus suis de regno Angliæ, nunquam in vita sua malo animo reversurus; et quod pro posse suo patrem suum Philippum induceret, ut Henrico, Anglorum regi, redderet omnia jura sua in partibus transmarinis. Juravit insuper, quod omnia castra cum terris omnibus, quas ipse et sui per werram occupaverant in regno Angliæ, regi et suis redderet incontinenti. Rex autem Anglorum, tactis sacrosanctis evangeliis, juravit cum legato et Mareschallo, quod redderent baronibus Angliæ et aliis omnibus de regno omnia jura et hæ- Form of peace concluded with Louis.

[1] *Juravit.*] See the articles in Rymer, i. p. 148.

A.D. 1217. reditates suas, cum omnibus libertatibus ante petitis, pro quibus discordia fuit exorta inter Johannem, regem Angliæ, et barones. Prisones omnes, qui ante hanc pacem provisam se redemerant, et suæ redemptionis jam factæ pecuniæ partem suis creditoribus solverant, quod solutum est non reddatur eis; sed, si quid superfuerit ad solvendum, debitori penitus relaxetur. Prisones universi, qui apud Lincolniam capti erant vel in prælio navali apud Doveram, sive in parte regis, vel in parte Lodowici, ubicumque statim sine omni difficultate et sine omni redemptione et censu [1]liberarentur. Et, his ita gestis, absolutus est [2]Lodowicus cum omnibus sectatoribus suis, servata ecclesiæ forma, ac deinde singuli ruentes in pacis osculum tristem lætitiam sub fraudis prætextu plurimi palliabant; quo facto, Lodowicus Londonias reversus est, ubi præ nimia a civibus paupertate quinque millia libras sterlingorum mutuo accipiens sub conductu magni Mareschalli ad mare cum festinatione pervenit et cum opprobrio sempiterno ad[3] Gallias transfretavit. Ab hoc quoque absolutionis et pacis beneficio excepti fuerunt episcopi, abbates, priores, canonici seculares et clerici multi, qui Lodowico ac baronibus consilium præstiterant et favorem, et maxime magister Simon de Langetuna, cum magistro Gervasio de Hobregge, qui in tanta obstinatione

[1] *Liberarentur.*] In the Chron. of Mailros it is stated that Henry paid Louis ten thousand marks to meet the expenses he had incurred; p. 195. In the Close Rolls are several entries of writs ordering the payment of monies to discharge a debt of six thousand marks due to Louis; pp. 360, 369.

[2] *Lodowicus.*] He walked ungirded and barefoot from his own tent to that of the cardinal; Chron. Mailros. p. 195.

[3] *Ad Gallias transfretavit.*] See letters of safe conduct in behalf of Louis and his followers, in Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex, and Hertford, in Rymer, i. p. 148.

diu perstiterant, ut Lodowico et baronibus excommunicatis divina facerent celebrare mysteria a presbyteris excommunicatis, unde ab omnibus beneficiis spoliati a legato [1]Romam ire compulsi sunt; nam illico post recessum Lodowici ab Anglia legatus misit inquisitores per omnes Angliæ provincias, qui quoscumque de consensu etiam levissimo culpabiles invenerunt, cujuscumque essent ordinis vel dignitatis, suspensos miserunt ad legatum et ab omni beneficio spoliatos, qui illorum beneficia suis clericis abundanter distribuit atque de damnis aliorum suos omnes divites fecit. Hugo quoque, Lincolniensis episcopus, in Angliam veniens mille marcas pro episcopatu suo recuperando ad opus domini papæ, et centum marcas legato, de probata pecunia numeravit; cujus exemplum multi, tam episcopi quam viri religiosi, insecuti sumptibus nimis damnosis gratiam sibi reconciliabant legati. Clericorum vero et canonicorum secularium ubique haustu tam immoderato loculos evacuavit, ut, juxta evangelicam sententiam, ea quæ erant dispersa congregaret in unum et multis ex portionibus unum grandem accumularet acervum. A.D. 1217.

De Coloniensibus et Frisonibus iter ad terram sanctam agentibus.

Circa[2] dies istos facta est motio maxima ex Coloniensium et Frisonum provinciis virorum fortium et bellatorum, qui a principio prædicationis crucis post generale concilium trecentas Progress of the crusaders.

[1] *Romam ire compulsi sunt.*] The order for their leaving the kingdom is printed in Rymer, from the Rot. Claus. dated Stoke, the 18th of February; see also Rot. Claus. p. 377.

[2] *Circa dies istos.*] Upon the works to be consulted for the history of this crusade, see Michaud, Hist. des Croisades, iii. p. 435.

A.D. 1217. naves magno studio fabricatas ingressi sunt, ut vota suæ peregrinationis exsolverent Crucifixo, qui sulcantes æquora velis patentibus, major pars eorum cum magna bellatorum virtute applicuit Lissebonam, ubi inter eos exorta dissensio in obsidione cujusdam castri fortissimi, quod Alchacia nuncupatur, quibusdam procedere cupientibus, aliis ibidem volentibus hyemare; sicque classe divisa, pars apud [1]Cajetam et Tornetum hyemavit, et pars altera duos habens capitaneos, Willelmum scilicet Holandiæ ducem et comitem de Weiz Georgium, Alchaciam obsedit, qui cum adhuc in obsidione essent, congregata est contra eos Saracenorum maxima multitudo, contra quam fideles viriliter decertantes virtute divina infideles vicerunt. Rex unus paganorum occisus est, et multi trucidati atque in captivitatem adducti; castellum vero tandem per Teuthonicos captum est et a Christianis possessum.

De obsidione castelli de Newerc et Roberto de Gaugi.

A.D. 1218. Siege of Newark. Anno gratiæ MCCXVIII. rex Henricus ad natale Domini fuit apud Norhantonam, Falcasio regiæ festivitati necessaria omnia ministrante. Erant autem his diebus multi in Anglia, quibus tempore belli præteriti dulcissimum fuerat de rapinis vixisse, unde nunc post pacem denuntiatam et omnibus concessam non potuerunt manus a præda cohibere; horum autem principales fuerunt incentores, Willelmus comes Albemarliæ, Falcasius cum suis castellanis, Robertus de Veteri-ponte, Brienus de Insula, Hugo de Baillul, Philippus Marci et Robertus de Gaugi, cum aliis multis, qui castella quorun-

[1] *Cajetam et Tornetum.*] 'Gaetam et Cornetum;' Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1131; probably for Gaetta and Sorrento.

dam episcoporum ac magnatum cum terris et possessionibus, contra regis prohibitionem et illorum voluntatem, detinere præsumpserunt eisdem; inter quos Robertus de Gaugi, post multas regis admonitiones, castellum de Newerc cum villa tota et pertinentiis, quæ ad jus Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi, spectabant, ei reddere contradixit. Ex qua re magnus Mareschallus in indignationem versus, jubente rege, exercitum grandem congregavit, atque, eodem rege[1] comite, ad castellum prædictum hostiliter accessit; et, cum tandem appropinquassent ad castellum, præmiserunt armatos, ut inclusis exitum præcluderent, ne, sicut fieri solet, exeuntes villam injectis ignibus concremarent. Quos cum Robertus ejusque commilitones venire cognovissent, exierunt cum impetu de castello, sed ab irruentibus in eos militibus regis compulsi sunt denuo in castellum redire, ubi Willelmus[2] de Diva, miles de familia Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi, dum eos castellum ingredientes insequeretur, interfectus est et plures alii vulnerati; ex quo facto rex et Mareschallus perturbati jusserunt machinas collocari in gyrum castelli, ut muros petrariarum continua verberatione dissolvere laborarent. Duravit autem obsidio octo fere diebus, in quibus amici prædicti Roberti cum episcopo Lincolniensi de pace tractantes in hoc, rege annuente, pariter A.D. 1218.

[1] *Rege comite.*] The following rather curious writ to the mayor of Lincoln, issued at the time that the king was before Newark, is in the Close Rolls, p. 365. 'Precipimus tibi, quod sicut te ipsum et omnia tua diligis, statim visis litteris istis, venire facias usque Newerc mille cordas de Kanne ad petrarias et mangonellos trahendos et ducentos pikosios, et custum quod ad hoc posueritis computabitur tibi ad scaccarium.'

[2] *Willelmus de Diva.*] The writ, ordering the restitution of his property upon returning to his fealty, is dated Oxford, 23rd July 1217.

A.D. 1218. consenserunt, ut episcopus memoratus daret Roberto de Gaugi pro victualibus, quæ erant in castello, centum libras sterlingorum; et sic, obsidione soluta, unusquisque ad propria remeavit.

De motione facta a peregrinis terræ sanctæ ab Achon usque ad Damietam.

March of the crusaders on Damietta. Eodem anno confirmatum fuit consilium domini papæ Innocentii, sicut provisum fuerat in concilio Lateranensi, de introducenda Christi militia in terram Ægypti; mense enim Maio, præparatis cogonibus, galeiis et aliis navibus onerariis multis, profecti sunt de Achon, Johannes rex Hierusalem, patriarcha, cum episcopis Nichossiensi, Achonensi, [1]Bethlemitano, duce Austriæ, magistris Templi et Hospitalis sancti Johannis et sanctæ Mariæ Teuthonicorum, ac Christianorum multitudine copiosa. Borea itaque aliquantulum turgescente, exercitus Domini prosperis velis die tertio ad portum applicuit Damietæ. Applicantes autem quidam de exercitu terram ceperunt hostilem sine sanguinis effusione; sed, paucis sibi occurrentibus Saracenis equitibus, Friso quidam, fixo in terram genu dextro, et manu sinistra circumducens ancile, dextra lanceam vibrat et ferrum. Intuitus eum quidam Saracenus existimavit eum ludere, sed subito Saracenus a Frisone percussus, aliis fugientibus, cum equo eques prostratus est in terram; et sic absque omni impedimento castrametati sunt fideles inter littus maris et ripam Nili fluminis, et ibi tentoria fixerunt. Hoc etiam miraculum fecit Deus fidelibus suis, quod in primo adventu eorum aqua fluminis ma-

[1] *Bethlemitano.*] 'Gyrmideno;' Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1132.

ri conjuncti dulcis hauriebatur, quæ postmodum salsa fuit usque ad Casale, quod sursum per miliare a Damieta distat. Itaque post adventum Christianorum apud Damietam facta est eclipsis lunæ fere generalis, quam in defectum Saracenorum interpretati sunt Christiani, qui sibi incremento et decremento ejus magnam attribuunt conjecturam. A.D. 1218.

De obsidione turris Damietæ in Nilo flumine sitæ.

His[1] ita gestis, viderunt fideles Christi turrim quandam altam, et ex structura lapidum fortem nimis et pulcherrimam, non longe ab urbe Damietæ in medio Nili fluminis sitam, a qua catena quædam ferrea et enormiter grossa ex transverso flumine protendebatur usque ad urbem super aliam ripam Nili fluminis constitutam. Hæc autem turris omnium judicio ante obsidionem Damietæ fuerat subjuganda, sed Frisones more solito impatientes, Nilo transito, jumenta Saracenorum tulerunt, et volentes in ulteriori ripa castrametari stabant pugnantes contra paganos, qui eis de civitate obviam processerunt; sed a patriarcha per obedientiam revocati fuerunt, quia inutile videbatur principibus Christianis, quod turris relinqueretur post tergum eorum paganis repleta. Principes interea militiæ Crucifixi de captione turris nimis solliciti viderunt eam capi non posse fame, propter civitatis vicinitatem; neque suffossione, propter aquæ circumfluentis importunitatem; neque insultu petrariarum aut trebuculorum ictibus, quia, cum id multis esset diebus attentatum, parum vel nihil profecerunt. Sane in hoc tandem omnes pariter consenserunt fideles, ut, navibus Siege of the tower near Damietta.

[1] *His ita gestis.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1132.

A.D. 1218. simul et cogonibus conjunctis, in malorum summitatibus scalas præpararent et in eis balistarios statuerunt et armatos, unde suum propositum perducerent ad effectum. Igitur dux Austriæ et Hospitale sancti Johannis super duos cogones duas scalas fabricarunt, quæ circa festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ contra turrim fuerunt erectæ, illam viriliter defendentibus Saracenis. Hospitalariorum scala, proh dolor! confracta suos prius præcipitavit in flumen bellatores; secunda vero scala, ducis videlicet Austriæ, simili modo cum malo cecidit et milites strenuos et alios armatos in Nilum demersit, sed horum omnium animas Christus in cælum levavit victrici martyrio coronatas. Lætati sunt Ægyptii vehementer, fidelibus subsannantes et in opprobrium eorum buccinis perstrepentes, et e contrario mœror et luctus Christianos invasit. Tunc Frisones et Teutonici, quorum dux fuit comes Adulphus de Monte, vir nobilis et potens, navem quandam cum propugnaculis munierunt et in summitate mali castellulo ordinato. Ipsa vero navis a bellatoribus civitatis, turris et pontis, igne Græco impetebatur et jaculis vehementer, quæ tandem igne correpta, cum timerent Christiani ne penitus consumeretur, defensores ejus ignem viriliter exstinxerunt, ac deinceps damna plurima per balistarios, qui intus erant, Saracenis fecerunt; sed et aliæ fidelium naves propugnaculis munitæ, hujus assultus tempore quæ anchoris turri adhærebant fixæ, multa sustinuerunt rerum et hominum detrimenta.

De captione turris prædictæ et mira Christianorum probitate.

The tower taken. Tandem, Domino demonstrante et architectoribus, eo donante, providentibus, Teutonicorum

sumptibus et Frisonum et labore eorundem duos cogones conjunxerunt fideles trabibus fortissime, ac funibus cohærentes et socia compaginatione vacillandi periculum prohibentes quatuor malos et totidem antennas erexerunt; et in illis in summitate castellulum firmum, asseribus et opere reticulato contextum, contra machinarum insidias collocantes coriis operuerunt illud per circuitum architectores, et desuper tectum erat contra ignem Græcum. Sub castellulo autem fabricaverunt scalam fortissimis funibus suspensam et triginta cubitis ultra proram protensam, opere maximo brevi tempore consummato. Invitati sunt ad illud videndum principes militiæ Christi, ut siquid deesset, quod sumptibus aut humano indigeret ingenio, suppleretur; et accepto responso, quod antea tale opus ligneum nunquam fuerat fabricatum, properandum esse censuerunt fideles, ut hoc ingenium adhiberetur ad turrim, quia crebris ictibus machinarum pons pro magna parte destructus fuerat, qui de civitate hostes fidei ducebat ad turrim. Sexta itaque feria ante festum sancti Bartholomæi apostoli nudis pedibus cum processione solemni devotissime processerunt ad crucem sanctam fideles, clero cum psalmis et litaniis præcedente, auxilium humiliter implorantes divinum, ut res omni careret invidia et jactantia vana de omni gente, quæ tunc in exercitu erat. Plures ad hujus negotii exsecutionem invitaverunt majores, licet gens Frisonum et Teutonicorum ad naves implendas sufficeret et regendas. Die tandem beati Bartholomæi, quæ tunc feria sexta erat, cum Nilus vehementer excrevisset et aquarum impetus negotium plurimum impedisset, cum multa licet difficultate et periculo instrumentum trahebatur ad turrim; navis autem, hujus ma-

A.D. 1218. Tower near Damietta taken.

A.D. 1218. Tower near Damietta taken.

chinæ socia, velificando processit; patriarcha et clerus nudis pedibus ambulabant per littora, Domino supplicantes. Cum vero ad turrim perventum fuisset, duplex illa compositio ad latus occidentale converti non poterat, sed ascendendo directe ad plagam aquilonarem applicabatur; funibus tandem et anchoris fixa manebat, licet vis aquarum inundantium illam repellere moliretur. Quod cum cognovissent Saraceni, machinas sex erexerunt super turres civitatis ad instrumentum illud concutiendum, sed una cæteris perniciosior post paucos ictus confracta quievit; nec tamen cessaverunt, sed sine intermissione emittere cœperunt crebros lapides et damnosos. Nec in minori periculo prior navis, hujus machinæ socia, ad pedem turris substitit collocata; nam ignis Græcus, de turri eminus projectus, fulminis instar veniens pavorem non minimum fidelibus incussit, sed per liquorem acetosum ac sabulum et exstinctoria cætera laborantibus est subventum. Tunc, facto insultu acerrimo ab his qui instrumentum regebant supradictum, jacebat patriarcha ante lignum crucis prostratus in terram, stansque clerus nudis pedibus clamavit in cælum. Inimici crucis et turris defensores extensis lanceis anteriorem scalæ partem asperserunt oleo, ac deinde ignem Græcum adhibentes scalam accenderunt; sed fideles Christi, qui intus erant, ad ignis suffocationem accurrentes suo pondere caput scalæ depresserunt, ita ut pons tornatilis fronti turris appositus inclinaretur deorsum. Signifer ducis Austriæ de scala corruit, et pagani vexillum ducis cum irrisione tulerunt; se vicisse existimantes, vociferati sunt clamore nimio, aerem verberando. Christiani vero, hoc viso, ad supplicationem se prosternunt, complosisque manibus Dominum invocare non

cessant. Ad hanc autem populi Christiani devotionem et manuum in cælum elevationem levavit scalam divina pietas, ignemque accensum fidelium lachrymæ exstinxerunt; et sic fideles Crucifixi, viribus resumptis, cum defensoribus turris lanceis, gladiis, clavis, sagittis, aliisque bellicis instrumentis viriliter pugnaverunt. Juvenis quidam Leodiensis diœcesis, in militia expertus, turrim prius ascendit; Friso quidam juvenculus, turrim ascendens, flagellum tenebat ferreum quo granum excuti solet, sed ad pugnandum paratum, unde fortiter trans murum ad dextram percutiens hostes fidei et ad lævam, quendam Saracenum, croceum Soldani ferentem signum, stravit et vexillum tulit; ac deinde alii post alios ascendentes hostes resistentes senserunt durissimos et crudeles. Paganis tandem superatis, post fletum et gemitum, gaudium successit fidelibus et triumphus; nam multi Saracenorum, turris angustiam perferre non valentes, per fenestras præcipites evadere cupiebant, quorum multi submersi perierunt, flumen ebibere non valentes; ad centum quoque ex eis vivi capti sunt et ad redemptionem reservati. Tunc Saraceni, qui in interioribus sese receperant turribus, igne supposito, superficiem turris combusserunt, unde Christiani victores calorem sustinere non valentes regressi sunt super scalam; ac deinde pontem, qui in inferiori parte operis præparatus fuerat, demiserunt Christi milites usque ad pedem turris, aquis profundis et undique circumfluentibus angustum, sed malleis ferreis januam turris aggressi sunt fideles, defendentibus eam intrinsecus Saracenis. Stabat utrumque opus immobile turri adhærens, sed asseres scalæ pro parte discussi fuerunt. Ambitus tamen operis machinarum ictibus multis per-

A.D. 1218. Tower near Damietta taken.

A.D. 1218. Siege of Damietta.

foratus in locis, [1]ab hora nona sextæ feriæ usque ad horam decimam sequentis sabbati immobile perseverat. Tandem Saracenis in defensione turris omnino deficientibus, colloquium de pace petebant, ac sese sub pactione vitæ duci Austriæ reddiderunt. Capta itaque turri, munierunt eam fideles victualibus et armatis, sperantes de cætero ut civitatem similiter subjugarent.

De morte Saphadini, et destructione murorum Hierusalem.

Death of Saphadin.

Post[2] captam itaque turrim in Nilo flumine sitam, [3]Saphadinus, dierum malorum inveteratus, fratrueliumque suorum exhæredator ac regni Asiæ usurpator nequissimus, dolore cordis, ut asseritur, tactus intrinsecus mortuus est et sepultus in inferno; cui successit filius ejus Coradinus, vir crudelis et sævus, qui, ob ultionem obsidionis Damietæ, Hierusalem famosissimam civitatem foris et intus destruens, muros ejus et turres omnes, præter templum Domini et turrim David, in acervos redegit. De sepulchro quoque Domini glorioso destruendo consilium habuerunt Saraceni, quod per literas comminati sunt, quas civibus Damietæ ad eorum solatium transmiserunt. Veruntamen propter tanti loci reverentiam nemo eorum manum apponere præsumpsit; nam in Alchorano, libro legis eorum, scriptum habetur, Jesum Christum Dominum nostrum de Maria virgine fuisse conceptum et natum, quem sine peccato vixisse inter homines, prophetamque et plusquam prophetam esse pro-

[1] *Ab hora nona.*] In Jac. de Vitriaco this is a new paragraph: 'Ab hora nona, feria sexta, usque ad horam decimam sequentis sabbati duravit hoc periculum;' p. 1134.

[2] *Post captam.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135.

[3] *Saphadinus,*] or Seïf-eddin, the sword of religion, the name by which Malek-Adel is known in the histories of the Crusades; Michaud, iii. p. 446.

fitentur; cæcos enim illuminasse, leprosos mundasse, et mortuos suscitasse, astruunt; verbum quoque ac spiritum Dei vivi ad cælos ascendisse non discredunt. Unde, quando tempore treugarum sapientes eorum Hierusalem ascendebant et postulabant sibi [1]codices evangeliorum exhiberi, deosculabantur eos ac mirabantur propter legis munditiam, quam Christus docuit, et præcipue propter evangelium Lucæ 'Missus est Gabriel,' quod sæpius retractant et repetunt literati eorum. Lex autem illorum, quam, diabolo dictante, ministerio Sergii monachi apostatæ et hæretici, Mahometus Arabice scriptam Saracenis dedit ac docuit, a gladio cœpit, per gladium tenetur, et in gladio terminatur. Iste Mahometus illiteratus fuit, sicut ipse in Alchorano suo testatur; qui, quæ prænominatus hæreticus dictavit, ipse prædicavit, et, quia potens erat et Arabum princeps, per comminationes suas legem statuit observari. Luxuriosus autem fuit et bellicosus, et ideo de immunditia ac vanitate legem dedit, quam carnaliter viventes in partem voluptatis observant; et sicut legem Christi veritas et munditia muniunt, ita errorem ipsorum timor mundanus et humanus voluptasque carnalis extollunt. A.D. 1218. Siege of Damietta.

De adventu Pelagii legati apud Damietam et aliorum peregrinorum.

Subjugata igitur, ut dictum est, turri Damietæ, venerunt ad passagium sanctæ crucis, quod tunc instabat, de diversis mundi partibus peregrini multi; inter quos venerunt Pelagius, Albanensis episcopus et apostolicæ sedis legatus, cum magistro Roberto de [2]Curcun et Romanis multis. Arrival of Pelagius.

[1] *Codices evangeliorum.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1137.

[2] *Curcun.*] 'Turrum' in MS.; 'Corteon' in Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1134: his name appears to have been 'Courçon.'

A.D. 1218. Venerunt et episcopi multi cum comite Nivernensi, qui, imminente periculo, cum Christianorum confusione recessit. Venit etiam tunc temporis vir illustris comes Cestrensis Ranulphus de regno Angliæ, cum comitibus [1]Saero Wintoniensi et Willelmo Arundelensi, et baronibus Roberto filio-Walteri, Johanne constabulario Cestrensi, Willelmo de Harecurt cum sequela multa, et Oliverio filio regis Angliæ. Venerunt etiam comites de Marchia et Barri cum filio suo, Willelmus de Carnoto, Iterius de Tocce, et Hervæus de Ursone, cum aliis multis.

De duabus invasionibus factis a Saracenis contra Christianos apud Damietam.

Siege of Damietta. Saraceni[2] postmodum in festo [3]sancti Dionysii cum galeiis et viris armatis ex improviso venientes, et principia castrorum ubi Romani tentoria fixerant invadentes, modica manu Christianorum repulsi sunt, ad galeias suas celeriter recurrentes; sed gladios insequentium ac fluminis voraginem effugere nequiverunt, submersi sunt enim in Nilum ad viros mille quingentos, sicut fideles didicerunt postea a paganis. In festo iterum beati Demetrii summo diluculo castra Templariorum invaserunt hostes, sed modicum fidelibus damnum intulerunt; quia per expeditos eorum equites fugati sunt ad pontem, quem procul construxerant, ubi interempti sunt a fidelibus ad numerum quingentorum.

[1] *Saero Wintoniensi.*] He died soon after his arrival, and was buried at Acre. On his deathbed he directed his friends to convey his heart to Geroldon abbey. Annal. Waverl. p. 185.

[2] *Saraceni.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186, whose account agrees almost verbatim with that of the former.

[3] *Sancti Dionysii.*] Wendover, or his scribe for him, has here reversed the order of the respective days of these saints; placing the events which occurred on Demetrius' day, the 8th, on that of Dionysius, the 9th of October.

De inundatione Nili fluminis, unde Christiani nimis damnificati fuerunt.

His[1] ita gestis, in vigilia beati Andreæ apostoli, nocte media, intumuerunt fluctus maris, crescentes et excursum facientes terribilem usque ad castra fidelium, quos ab alia parte fluvius inundans occupavit incautos. Natabant tentoria, perierunt cibaria; pisces fluviales et marini, quasi nihil metuentes, fidelium se cubiculis ingerebant, quos manibus capientes illis tamen carere deliciis maluissent; et nisi salubri consilio antea provisum fuisset de fossato, quod tamen ad alios usus factum fuerat; mare conjunctum flumini homines cum jumentis, naves cum victualibus et armis, detraxisset ad hostes. Nec tamen hoc periculum evaserunt quatuor cogones, super quos fabricata fuerant propugnacula ad turrim capiendam, quæ uno impetu cum quinta navi, quæ inter eas hærebat, ad oppositam ripam vi ventorum præcipitatæ ante oculos eorum igne Græco sunt combustæ. Pepercit siquidem Deus operibus Frisonum et Teutonicorum, quibus turris capta fuerat; sed naves oneratæ, quæ in portu maris stabant, ruptis repente funibus, perierunt. A.D. 1218. Siege of Damietta.

De quadam peste, quæ multos in exercitu Christianos afflixit.

Invasit[2] ea tempestate multos de exercitu pestis quædam, contra quam physici nullum ex arte sua poterant remedium invenire; dolor enim occupavit repente pedes et crura, in quibus apparuit caro corrupta et nigra, gingivas et den- A plague in the camp.

[1] *His ita gestis.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186.

[2] *Invasit.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186.

A.D. 1218. tes, nigredo obdurata potentiam abstulit masticandi, sicque longo doloris tractu afflicti multi ad Dominum migraverunt; quidam vero usque ad tempus vernale laborantes caloris beneficio mortis periculum evaserunt. Eodem anno, procurante Walone apostolicæ sedis legato, Richardus de Marisco clericus, de familia et [1]moribus regis Johannis, factus est episcopus Dunelmensis, qui nono kalendas Augusti munus consecrationis suscepit.

Willelmus Mareschallus diem clausit extremum.

A.D. 1219. Death of the earl of Pembroke. Anno Dominicæ incarnationis MCCXIX. rex Henricus quarto regni sui anno fuit ad natale Domini apud Wintoniam, cui Petrus, ejusdem civitatis episcopus, omnia necessaria ministravit. Quo etiam tempore Willelmus Mareschallus, regis rector et regni, [2]diem clausit extremum; post cujus mortem memoratus rex in custodia Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, remansit.

De obsidione urbis Damietæ et Christianorum afflictione.

Siege of Damietta. Eodem[3] tempore Pelagius, apostolicæ sedis legatus, [4]ardens habensque desiderium civitatem Damietam obsidendi, Christianos post turrim

---

[1] *Moribus.*] His character is given in the Waverley Annals, where he is spoken of as being 'astutissimus,' and as one 'nullius egestatis misertus vel qui miseriæ condescendit,' p. 183. He died suddenly at Peterborough on the 1st of May 1226, leaving debts to the amount of 40,000 marks.

[2] *Diem clausit extremum.*] He was buried in the Temple church in London; his epitaph is thus given by Paris:

'Sum quem Saturnum sibi sensit Hibernia, Solem
Anglia, Mercurium Normannia, Gallia Martem.'

[3] *Eodem tempore.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1135; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1186.

[4] *Ardens.*] There was a prophecy that a Spaniard should win Jerusalem, 'which,' says Fuller, 'accounts for the zeal of the legate in this crusade.' H. Warre, p. 156.

captam hortabatur ad Nili fluminis transitum. A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta. Illi autem, cum magno periculo per flumen sursum cum navibus ascendentes inter civitatem et turrim captam, machinis civitatis et igne Græco sunt non mediocriter impediti; unde accidit, ut una navis Templariorum, vi torrentis impulsa, prope ripam civitatis capta fuisset, quæ cum præcipitaretur ad hostes cum barbotis et uncis ferreis ipsam diutius impugnarunt, ignem Græcum super eam projicientes de turribus civitatis; et cum prævalere, propter defensorum audaciam, non valerent, certatim navem ascendentes increduli præcipites in eam ad Templarios descenderunt, ubi cum diutius pugnaretur, navis tandem perforata, sive ab hostibus, sive a fidelibus, ut potius creditur, profundum fluminis [petiit], submergens Ægyptios et Christianos, ita ut vix mali summitas appareret; et sicut Sampson plures stravit moriens quam vivens, sic et isti martyres Christi plures secum in aquæ voraginem traxerunt, quam gladiis perdere potuerunt. Deinde pontem reparantes pagani aperturam adeo reliquerunt angustam, ut naves fidelium sine periculo fluminis ascendere non valerent, sed Frisones et Teutonici, zelo justæ indignationis accincti, cum majori navi, cujus ministerio turris capta fuerat, pontem viriliter invaserunt; auxilium nullum habentes nisi de cælo, pauciores quam decem viri de gente prædicta contra omnem fortitudinem Babylonis pontem ascendentes, spectante Christianorum multitudine et hanc audaciam plurimum admirante, fregerunt eundem, et sic cum quatuor navibus, super quas erat pons fundatus, reversi sunt cum triumpho, liberam viam et apertam Christianis sursum velificare volentibus relinquentes. Et, his ita gestis, Saraceni periculum,

A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

quod illis imminebat, attendentes ripam fluminis fidelibus oppositam fossatis et argillosa materia cum propugnaculis ligneis et rebus aliis munierunt, machinas cum petrariis locantes ibidem, per locum illum transeundi spem omnimodam fidelibus auferentes. A Casali etiam, quod per miliare fere distabat a civitate, ubi nova hæc munitio terminabatur, per transversum fluminis navium fecerant subversiones, cum palis gurgiti latenter infixis; sed [1]Christi milites, cogones cum castellulis ac propugnaculis, armatis muniti bellatoribus, cum galeiis aliisque navibus subsequentibus, præscriptas submersiones, Christo duce, penitus evaserunt. Hostes vero fidei, omni metu dissimulato, tres ordines armatorum stationi navium Christianorum opposuerunt, unam peditum, super ripam fluminis, cum targiis eleganter ordinatam, secundam post tergum eorum, similem priori, tertiam equitum, longam et terribilem, ictibus lapidum et telorum plurimum vexantes fidelium stationem. Sed fidelis Deus, qui non patitur tentari suos super id quod possunt sustinere, respiciens ad castra servorum suorum, mœrorem fidelium et tristitiam in gaudium et exultationem convertit; nam in nocte solemnitatis beatæ Agathæ martyris, cum ordinatus esset exercitus Christi, qui sequenti die fluvium erat transiturus, pluviæ et venti magnam difficultatem Christicolis intulerunt, sed nocte eadem, Deo procurante, [2]tantus pavor Sol-

[1] *Christi milites.*] The words 'Christi milites' are here superfluous: in the narrative by Jac. de Vitriaco and Oliverus the passage is as follows; having stated that it was owing to the zeal of Pelagius that the attack was made, it goes on, 'unde cogones propugnaculis et castellulis viris etiam armatis muniti, cum galeiis et aliis navibus, Christo duce, prædictas immersiones evaserunt,' p. 1136.

[2] *Tantus pavor.*] The account of the conspiracy in the camp amongst the emirs is given by Michaud from the Arab historians; iii. p. 456, *seq.*

danum Babylonis et ejus exercitum invasit, ut relictis tentoriis, ignorantibus etiam paganis, quos ad resistendum fidelibus ordinaverat, in sola fuga spem haberent; unde quidam apostata, qui multo tempore Christianorum legem transgressus sub Soldano militaverat, stans in ripa fluminis Gallica lingua clamare cœpit, 'Quid moramini? quid trepidatis? Soldanus recessit;' et, hoc dicto, se recipi in Christianorum naviculam postulavit, sicque fidelibus fidem faciens illos ad transitum fluminis animabat; et summo diluculo, cum inchoatum esset missæ officium 'Gaudeamus omnes in Domino,' per oratoria Christianorum nuntiata sunt hæc regi et legato. Itaque, fugientibus Saracenis, Christiani absque sanguinis effusione et omni impedimento flumen transierunt; sed adeo limosa et aquis profundioribus difficilis fuit ad applicandum terra hostilis, ut vix eam equi ascendere potuissent. Templarii autem, præduces in ascensu, prospero cursu ad civitatem festinaverunt, sternentes perfidos, qui audacter de portis egressi Christicolis venientibus occurrerunt; sed, illis in civitatem redire compulsis, exercitus Christi tentoria Soldani occupavit ac spolia fugientium paganorum. Targias multas et galeias, cum barbotis et navibus aliis, quæ infra Casale usque ad civitatem inveniebantur, Christicolæ rapuerunt; unde perfidorum multitudo, relictis uxoribus ac parvulis propter fidelium inopinatum transitum, de Damieta fugerunt. Deinde per gyrum obsessa est Damieta, exercitu exercitui per pontis compositionem continuato, utramque ripam fluminis contingentem.

A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

De primo impetu Saracenorum post obsidionem contra fideles.

A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

Civitate itaque obsidione vallata, hostes fidei, resumptis viribus, cum [1]Soldano et Alapinis ac multitudine copiosa, locum occupant, ad quem fideles transitum fecerant insperatum, et nisi per consilium divinum et auxilium prima castra, quæ erant inter mare et fluvium, retenta fuissent, et maxime per probitatem Teutonicorum, negotium Christi magnum periculum incurrisset; nam pleni anfractibus Saraceni ad tantam prorupti sunt temeritatem, ut, diluculo die sabbati ante Dominicam, qua cantatur 'Oculi mei semper ad Dominum,' fidelibus ignorantibus, cum multitudine gravi bellatorum usque ad fossatum suum sese præcipitarent, sed peditum illorum et equitum fuerunt probitate repulsi; fecerant enim Christiani fossatum a tergo suo latum satis et altum ad cautelam, ut, si forte hostes fidei impetum facere vellent in eos, hujus fossati præsidio munirentur.

De secundo impetu facto contra Christianos.

In[2] die iterum Palmarum inimici crucis, collecto innumerabili exercitu ac nimis terribili, fossatum undique fidelium invaserunt, et præcipue pontem Templariorum et ducis Austriæ, quem ipsi cum Teutonicis viriliter defendere studuerunt; sed illi cum electis militibus suis ab equis descendentes cum Christianis atrociter pugnaverunt. Ceciderunt hinc inde mortui ac vulnerati multi; sed tandem adeo prævaluerunt increduli, quod pontem ascendentes partem ejus combusserunt. Tunc dux Austriæ præce-

[1] *Soldano.*] 'Coradino, filio Saphadini;' Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1137.

[2] *In die.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1137; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1188.

pit suis, ut sese retrahentes hostibus darent ingressum, sed illi ingredi non audebant; mulieres quoque bellatoribus Christianis aquam, vinum, panem, ac lapides intrepide ministrabant; sacerdotes vero orationi insistebant, Dominum benedicentes et sauciatorum vulnera alligantes. In ipso die sancto non est Christianis spatium datum alias gestandi palmas quam balistas, arcus, lanceas, gladios, clypeos et sagittas; adeo enim instabant inimici eorum atrociter studio liberandæ civitatis, quod ab ortu solis usque ad horam diei decimam fidelibus requiem non dederunt, sed tandem fatigati sese cum damno maximo [1]de loco certaminis retraxerunt. In festo iterum Dominicæ ascensionis more solito per terram et aquam irruerunt perfidi in Christianos, ac multoties illos attentantes, prævalere non potuerunt, sed prope castra eos provocantes mutuo ad invicem damna pertulerunt. A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

De tertio impetu crudeliter facto ab incredulis contra Christianos.

Collegerunt[2] denique hostes fidei pridie kalendarum Augusti omnem quam poterant habere copiam bellatorum, qui post diutinos assultus fossatum contra militiam Templi tandem transeuntes, ac violenter licias dirumpentes, pedites Christianorum in fugam verterunt, ita quidem ut universo exercitui periculum immineret. [3]Milites, equites simul et pedites seculares ter co-

[1] *De loco certaminis retraxerunt.*] At this time, as Jac. de Vitriaco records, the duke of Austria, who had been now a year and a half with the crusaders, and a great multitude of foreigners, returned home, 'nobis in summo periculo relictis;' p. 1138.

[2] *Collegerunt.*] Jac. de Vitriac. p. 1138; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1189.

[3] *Milites.*] 'Milites de Francia;' *ibid.*

A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

nati sunt ipsos a fossato repellere, sed nihil profecerunt; clamor exortus est insultantium paganorum, aucta est timiditas Christianorum. Sed spiritus consilii et fortitudinis Templarios animavit, nam magister Templi cum marcschallo cæterisque fratribus, per exitum satis angustum impetu facto, viriliter incredulos convertit in fugam. Domus Teutonicorum et Frisones, comites et barones, atque ex diversis nationibus milites, videntes Templi militiam in periculo, per exitus sibi expositos illis in auxilium proruperunt; tunc pedites perfidorum, projectis clipeis, truncabantur ad centum, præter illos qui in fossato præcipites perierunt. Deinde, peditibus Christianis egressis, per modicum spatium sese subtraxerunt hostes; acies hinc inde substiterunt armatæ donec crepusculum vespertinum certamen diremit, Saraceni prius recesserunt. Occisorum corpora jacebant juxta fossatum multa, præter illos qui sauciati lethaliter ad castra sunt reducti. Pauci de fidelibus per virtutem Dei et Templariorum audaciam perempti fuerunt et captivi. Dum hæc agerentur ibidem, combusta sunt fere omnia instrumenta fidelium, quæ erecta erant contra civitatem, a defensoribus ejus, præter scalas, in magnum Christianorum detrimentum. Post has igitur factas a Soldano invasiones non est ausus congredi cum Christianis, sed non longe ab obsidione fixis tentoriis in insidiis manebat.

De prælio campestri inter Christianos et Saracenos.

Exercitus autem Christi, cum diutius usu petrariarum et trebuculorum aliarumque machinarum muros civitatis subvertere laborassent, nec quicquam profecissent, a prudentioribus populi perspicue deprehensum est et veraciter intellec-

tum, non nisi sola virtute divina Damietam fore capiendam, unde inter multos surrexit murmuratio in castris, communibus exigentibus peccatis et discordiæ fomentis; nam quorundam fuit præsumptio, ut cum Soldano, qui non longe a castris Christianorum fixis tentoriis manebat in insidiis, campestre prælium consererent, ut, eo subjugato, cum ipso subjugarent et Damietam. E contrario consilium regis Hierusalem erat et multorum cum eo, ut obsidio tam diu ageretur incœpta, quousque vel virtute divina vel etiam fame inclusi deficerent; nam quicumque per posticum vel de muris civitatis præcipites evadebant, inflati et fame afflicti, concivium suorum evidenter angustiam indicabant. Sed illis tandem prævalentibus, qui decreverant immutabiliter cum Soldano certamen inire, in die decollationis sancti Johannis Baptistæ ad castra Babyloniorum ita, licet discordes, confluebant, ut vix invenirentur viri, qui in obsidione urbis remanerent. Tandem inter mare et flumen, ubi dulcis aqua reperiri non poterat ad bibendum, proficiscentes invenerunt hostes fidei in tentoriis commorantes, sed ipsi, papilionibus sublatis, fugam simulabant; et cum a fidelibus processum fuisset adeo, quod appareret adversarios nolle directa fronte confligere, capitanei fidelis populi longum inierunt consilium, utrum procederent, an redirent. Discors inter eos fuit sententia, unde inter consilia sine consilio solutæ sunt acies, præter ordinationem illorum, quos disciplina ligavit et obedientia militaris; equites Cypri in dextro cornu constituti, Saracenis incursum a latere facientibus, timiditatem suam ostenderunt; Romani pedites primi fugerunt, et postea equites ex nationibus diversis, cum quibusdam Hospitala-

A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

riis sancti Johannis; legatus et patriarcha, qui crucem portabat, multum, sed frustra, ut resisterent, supplicabant. Æstus solis vehemens erat, unde pedites armorum pondere premebantur, calor auxit laborem viæ, et qui secum detulerant vinum biberunt illud purum, propter aquæ defectum, in angustia sitis, qui post primos fugientes anhelo cursu terga dederunt exstinctique sine vulneribus corruerunt. Rex vero Hierusalem, cum Templariis et domo Teutonicorum et hospitali sancti Johannis, de Houtlandia, de Wiche, de Salebregge, et Cestriæ comitibus, cumque Waltero Bertoldi, Reginaldo de Ponte, Francigenis, Pisanis, et militibus ex nationibus diversis, impetum sustinuerunt paganorum, et [1]pro muro fuerunt fugientibus, quoties illis suas facies ostendebant; rex vero Hierusalem igne Græco fere fuit combustus. Capti sunt autem in illo conflictu ex Christianis electus Belvacensis et frater ejus Andreas de [2]Nantes, vicecomes Belli-montis, Walterus, regis Francorum camerarius, ac filius ejus Johannes de Arcis, Henricus de Ulmo. Templarii triginta tres capti sunt vel interfecti, cum mareschallo hospitalis sancti Johannis et fratribus quibusdam ejusdem domus; nec domus Teutonicorum absque damno evasit. Sunt præterea alii multi trucidati et in captivitatem abducti. Militia autem Templi, quæ in congressione solet esse prima, in regressu fuit ultima; unde, cum ad fossatum Christianorum novissima rediret, tamdiu fortis substitit quousque anteriores intra mœnia fuissent ingressi. Tunc increduli reversi sunt ad abducendos captivos suos et spolia col-

[1] *Pro muro fuerunt fugientibus, quoties illis suas facies ostendebant.*] 'Quoties facies suas ostenderunt, toties Saraceni fugerunt;' Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1139.

[2] *Nantes.*] 'Nantolio;' *ibid.*

ligenda ; et, sicut a perfidis postmodum didicerunt fideles, quingenta capita Christianorum Soldano præsentata fuerunt. Christianis vero hoc certissime constat, quod in præcipua militia sua damna sibi luctuosa sustinuerunt increduli, unde Soldanus unum de captivis suis ad Christianos mittens de treuga vel pace tractare cœpit, in quo tractatu reparaverunt fossatum suum eleganter et alias machinas Christiani. A.D. 1219. Siege of Damietta.

Qualiter peregrini quidam a Damieta non licentiati recesserunt.

Nautæ quidam eo tempore Christianitatis proditores, et cum eis Christiani multi, ante tempus consueti passagii exercitum Christi in summo periculo reliquerunt, qui recedentes Christicolis mœstitiam, Babyloniis audaciam, contulerunt; unde tractatum pacis intermittentes increduli, in [1]vigilia sanctorum Cosmæ et Damiani et proximo die sequenti, cum galeiis et barbotis armatis per flumen et terram, cum mangonellis, targiis, et fruticibus pro implendo Christianorum fossato, [2]petierunt eos impetu consueto et barbarica feritate multosque fideles hoc subito impetu peremerunt ; sed triumphator in Israel, omnipotens Deus, castris suis providit, misso per mare Savarico de Malo-leone cum galeiis armatis et bellatoribus multis. Tunc Christiani, hoc viso, in illo necessitatis articulo clamaverunt in cælum, Deum laudantes et non trepidantes, sed in prælio hostibus viriliter resistentes incredulos recedere compulerunt Illius virtute qui salvat sperantes in se.

[1] *Vigilia sanctorum Cosmæ et Damiani,*] 26th of September.

[2] *Petierunt.*] 'Perierunt' in MS.

De mortalitate qua affligebantur inclusi urbis Damietæ.

A.D. 1219. State of the besieged.

Nunc autem de his quæ in civitate gesta sunt aliquid referamus. [1]Damieta igitur obsidione longa, ferro, fame, et pestilentia graviter, et ultra quam credi vel scribi possit, afflicta, in spe sola fidem habuit, quam civibus Soldanus promisit, ut pro eis, si necessitas instaret, cum Christianis componeret, ut mortem evadere potuissent; sed hoc tempore in urbe tanta fames invaluit, ut vitalis refectio deesset inclusis, durabilis enim non est annona Ægypti, propter molles glebas in quibus crescit, nisi superius circa partes Babyloniæ servetur per annum. Postremo autem portas suas obstruxerunt increduli, ne aliquis exiret qui calamitatem eorum fidelibus nuntiaret, quia dies afflictionis miseros possederunt; illis etiam, qui foris in exercitu Soldani fideles obsederunt, copia pabuli decrescere cœpit, et ita quidem, quod coctanum unum duodecim bizantiis vendebatur. Inter cætera incommoda, quæ miseri sustinebant diebus ac noctibus, velut aurisia percussi oculis apertis nihil videbant. Nilus præterea, qui post festum sancti Johannis Baptistæ usque ad exaltationem sanctæ Crucis solet excrescere et Ægypti planitiem irrigare, hoc anno more solito non ascendit, sed magnam terræ partem siccam relinquens in terra illa nec seminari poterat nec arari; unde Soldanus famem timens, amore retinendæ Damietæ, cum Christianis pacifice componere cogitavit. Auxit autem propositum ejus ad compositionem miraculosa turris subjugatio, et Christianorum constantia præliandi, qui toties cum admodum paucis fidelibus omnem paganismi

[1] *Damieta.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1140; Oliver. Scholast. p. 1190.

fortitudinem audacter invadentes de prælio turpiter fugaverunt et multa ex eis millia peremerunt. A.D. 1219.

Qualiter Soldanus regnum Hierusalem obtulit Christianis, ut a Damieta [1] *recederent.*

Soldanus igitur, convocatis magnatibus suis et consiliariis fidelissimis, dum esset in mentis angaria constitutus, coram eis est locutus hunc in modum; 'Deus,' inquit, 'Christianorum magnus est, fidelis et potens in prælio, quod nos comprobavimus omnes, et maxime in hoc instanti articulo, in quo manifeste pugnat contra nos pro inimicis nostris, et procul dubio inanis erit actio nostra tota, quamdiu fideles ipsum habebunt placabilem adjutorem. Ecce, imminet captio Damietæ, quæ clavis est totius Ægypti; quæ si capta fuerit, in maximum nostrum et legis nostræ proveniet detrimentum, quia, cum multoties legatur a Christianis obsessa, nunquam tamen legitur subjugata. Unde nobis utile reor, ut reddamus Deo Christianorum ea quæ sua fuerunt omnia, ne simul cum suis auferat a nobis quæ nostra esse videntur; sicque cum justus sit et aliena non concupiscat, si hanc pacem recusarint et æquitatem Christiani, maxime sibi tam honorabilem, provocabunt Deum suum in odium sui per concupiscentiam iniquam, et sic superborum aspernator ab eis recedet, habebuntque impugnatorem, quem habuerunt propitium adjutorem.' Et licet hoc consilium multis displiceret, missis tamen nuntiis Christianis [2] obtulit veram crucem, quæ olim a Salaadino capta fuerat, cum captivis omnibus qui per regnum Babylonis et Damasci vivi poterant reperiri, cum sumptibus

Proposals of peace by the sultan of Cairo.

[1] *Recederent.*] 'Recederet' in MS.

[2] *Obtulit veram crucem.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1140; compare Michaud, Hist. des Crois. iii. p. 469.

A.D. 1219. necessariis ad reparandos muros Hierusalem et civitatem in statum pristinum reducendam. Obtulit insuper totaliter regnum Hierosolymitanum, præter Craccum et Montem-regalem, pro quibus retinendis tributum obtulit singulis annis, videlicet duodecim millia bizantios, quamdiu illa teneret; sunt autem duo castra hæc in Arabia, septem firmissimas munitiones habentia, per quæ negotiatores paganorum et peregrini Mecham tendentes vel ab illa revertentes transire solent, et qui hæc tenuerit Hierusalem cum vineis graviter et agris lædere valebit. Hanc compositionem esse acceptandam et utilem esse Christianitati rex Hierusalem, comes Cestrensis et omnes Francigenæ cum capitaneis Teutonicorum pertinaciter censuerunt; nec hoc mirandum est, cum multo minore pace, quæ prius oblata fuerat, contenti fuissent Christiani, nisi in sano consilio eis fuisset obviatum. Legatus[1] autem, concupiscentia retinendæ civitatis ductus, et per eum patriarcha cum clero universo, huic compositioni sese opponunt, asserentes constanter ante omnia Damietam fore capiendam; opinio diversa peperit discordiam, unde nuntii Soldani læti recesserunt. Cumque hæc Soldano nuntiata fuissent, misit clam multitudinem magnam peditum per palustria ad Damietam, quorum ducenti quadraginta, Christianis dormientibus, Dominica nocte post festum Omnium sanctorum licias eorum intraverunt, sed per clamorem vigilum exercitus capti sunt vel interfecti, quos ad centum vel plures numeraverunt ex captivis.

[1] *Legatus.*] 'Herein, no doubt, he followed the instructions of his master, whose end in this warre was that this warre should have no end, but be alwayes in doing, though never done.' Holy Warre, p. 155.

De captione miraculosa urbis Damietæ.

His ita gestis, cum populus Christianus civitatem Damietæ acerrime invasisset, perspexerunt murorum propugnacula omni carere defensore, unde cum festinatione scalis ad murum applicatis civitatem certatim intraverunt fideles; sicque, Salvatore mundi procurante, [1]nonis Novembris capta est Damieta sine defensione, absque tumultu et violenta deprædatione, ut soli Filio Dei victoria ascribatur; et, cum caperetur civitas in oculis regis Babylonis, non fuit ausus more solito Christianos aggredi, sed confusus aufugiens propria castra combussit. Christo itaque duce, milites Christi Damietam ingressi plateas invenerunt stratas cadaveribus mortuorum, ex quibus eis occurrit [2]fœtor intolerabilis et miserabilis humanitatis aspectus. Mortui [3]nimios interfecerunt; vir et uxor, pater et filius, dominus et servus, mutuis fœtoribus perierunt. Nec solum plateæ civitatis mortuis erant plenæ, quia in ædificiis et cubiculis jacebant defuncti; juvenes et parvuli petierunt panem, sed non erat qui frangeret eis; infantes ad ubera matrum pendentes inter amplexus morientium oscitabant; divites delicati inter acervos tritici fame perierunt. Octoginta millia a tempore obsidionis perierunt in urbe, exceptis illis quos sanos vel languidos invenerunt fideles, qui ad tria millia et amplius numerantur; ex his autem trecenti nobiliores ad redemptionem captivorum suorum vivi reser-

A.D. 1219. Damietta taken.

[1] *Nonis Novembris.*] So Jac. de Vitriaco and Oliver. Scholast. M. Michaud (p. 476, *note*) has said that Oliver places the capture of the city on the 9th of November; but in the Gesta Dei the reading is rightly 'nonis Novembris,' or the 5th.

[2] *Fœtor intolerabilis.*] 'The sight was bad, and the scent was worse, for the dead killed the living; yea, God's sword had left their sword no work;' Holy Warre, p. 156.

[3] *Nimios.*] 'Vivos;' Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1142.

A.D. 1219. vantur a populo Christiano, præter baptizatos, qui crediderunt in Christum. [1]Hæc civitas primo a Græcis obsessa legitur, qui in ejus captione defecerunt; secundo obsessa fuit a Latinis sub Amalrico, rege Hierosolymorum, sed minime profecerunt; hac tertia vice tradidit eam servis suis Rex regum et Dominus dominantium, Jesus Christus Dominus noster, qui vivit et regnat in secula seculorum.

De spoliis Damietæ impretiabilibus.

Spoils taken in the city. Invenerunt autem in civitate fideles aurum et argentum multum nimis, pannos sericos, vestes pretiosas, cum ornatu seculari et varia supellectili in abundantia magna valde. In commune juraverunt omnes, quod asportata de civitate spolia redderentur inter victores æqualiter dividenda; hoc etiam sub anathemate præceptum fuit a legato, sed concupiscentia oculorum multos fures fecit. Perceperunt autem ad utilitatem reipublicæ magnam partem divitiarum Ægypti in auro et argento, perlis, pomis, ambre, filis aureis, philacteriis et pannis pretiosis, quæ distributa sunt per exercitum Domini cum annona in civitate reperta. Episcopus Achonensis parvulos omnes, qui in urbe reperti sunt vivi, baptizavit, solvens ex ea Deo primitias animarum. Legatus quoque de maxima mahomeria civitatis fecit ecclesiam in honorem beatæ virginis Mariæ et omnium apostolorum, ad gloriam et exaltationem fidei Trinitatis. Civitas autem Damietæ, præter naturalem loci situm, quo munitur, triplici muro cingitur, habens extrinsecus murum humilem ad custodiam fossati exterioris, secundum altiorem, ac tertium secundo eminentiorem. Mu-

[1] *Hæc civitas.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1141.

rus medius viginti octo turres habet principales, A.D. 1219.
binas vel ternas testudines continentes, quæ omnes integræ remanserunt præter unam, quæ crebris ictibus trebuculi Templariorum aliquantulum concussa fuit; voluit enim Deus integram tradere eam servis suis, ut clavem et antemurale totius terræ Ægypti. Sita est autem civitas inter Ramesse et campum Taphneos in terra Gersen,[1] ut conjicere possunt Christiani, quæ pascualis est, quam filii Israel tempore famis petierunt a Pharaone, sicut legitur in veteri Testamento.

De captione castri Taphneos.

Capta[2] igitur Damieta, missi sunt explora- Capture of Tannis.
tores ad virorum mille, in festo sancti Clementis, in naviculis per parvum flumen, quod Taphnis appellatur, ut de castellulis et villis victualia quærerent et situs locorum diligentius explorarent. Cum autem appropinquassent ad castrum quoddam de nomine fluminis appellatum, Saraceni qui in ejus præsidio erant, visis Christianis, existimabant exercitum totum advenire, unde portis obseratis fugerunt; Christiani vero Christum ibi solum capitaneum invenientes castrum alacriter intraverunt. Testati sunt fideles reversi, se nunquam in plano castellum fortius inspexisse; habet enim turres septem fortissimas, et desuper testudines per gyrum; duplici fossato cingitur et utroque murato, habens antemurale. Lacus se diffundunt in latum per circuitum, unde in hyeme aditus equitibus difficilis est, atque in æstate adeo impossibilis, ut nunquam per obsidionem a quolibet caperetur. Lacus ille valde piscosus est, nam de piscariis ejus quatuor millia marcarum

[1] *Gersen.*] 'Gressen' in *C.*; 'Gessen,' Jac. de Vitriaco.

[2] *Capta.*] Jac. de Vitriaco, p. 1143.

A.D. 1219. Soldano annis singulis solvebantur. Avibus abundat et salinis. Casalia multa per gyrum serviebant ei, nam civitas ante castrum olim famosissima fuit ac major Damieta, sed postea ruinosa. Hæc est Taphnis, cujus campi in psalmo meminit propheta David, et Esaias, 'Stulti principes Taphneos,' et cætera. In hac autem urbe Jeremias dicitur lapidatus, ut habes in veteri Testamento. Distat autem Taphnis a Damieta itinere unius diei per mare versus terram promissionis, ut facile sit de Achon vel de Damieta per mare vel per terram præsidium ibidem ponere et victualia destinare. Damna plurima Christianis fecit in obsidione Damietæ, quando naves ad exercitum accedentes vel ab eo recedentes delatæ fuerunt illuc, nam littus maris ante Taphnis arenosum est et sine portu, sinum autem habet latum, in quo naves devolutæ recedere non valent absque vento multum opportuno. Eodem tempore vir nobilis Ranulphus comes Cestrensis, postquam fere per biennium in servitio Dei militaverat, cum legati licentia et benedictione, et totius exercitus favore, repatriavit.

Ut Lodowicus ad Tholosam hostiliter accedens confusus redierit.

Louis besieges Thoulouse. Circa hæc tempora Lodowicus, filius Philippi regis Francorum primogenitus, ad instantiam patris sui innumerabilem collegit exercitum, ut hæreticos[1] Albigenses impugnaret, veniensque cum[2] omni multitudine sua ad urbem Tholosa-

[1] *Hæreticos Albigenses.*] Amongst the hitherto inedited works upon the history of France, M. Fauriel has published a history of the crusades against the Albigenses, written in Provençal verse by a contemporary poet, ending with the commencement of this expedition of Louis; ll. 9323, *seqq.*

[2] *Cum omni multitudine.*] The dukes of Bretagne, Noyon, Sen-

nam, cujus habitatores ex diu dicebantur hæretica pravitate fœdati, [1]illam obsidione vallavit. Machinisque igitur per gyrum collocatis, insultus acerrimos crebrius iterabant; quod cum cives cognovissent, ad defensionem sese præparabant machinasque contra machinas erigebant, ubi cum Francorum exercitus diu et inaniter laborasset, facta est in populo fames valida, quam etiam subsecuta est dira mortalitas tam hominum quam equorum. Simon quoque comes Montis-fortis, qui princeps militiæ erat, ante portam civitatis, lapide de petraria emisso in capite percussus, toto contrito corpore, [2]subito exspiravit; frater quoque ejusdem Simonis in obsidione cujusdam castri, quod non longe a Tholosa distat, ad cumulum doloris multorum, lapide similiter ictus diem clausit extremum. Igitur in exercitu Lodowici, ut prædictum est, ingruente fame cum hominum mortalitate et rerum omnium damnosa nimis diminutione, idem Lodowicus cum reliquiis populi sui confusus ad Gallias remeavit. A.D. 1219.

De secunda coronatione regis Henrici.

Anno Domini MCCXX. rex Henricus fuit ad natale Domini apud Merlebergiam, adhuc sub custodia Petri Wintoniensis episcopi constitutus; quo etiam anno coronatus est idem rex apud [3]Cantuariam in die sancto Pentecostes a Stephano ejusdem civitatis archiepiscopo, præ- A.D. 1220. Henry crowned.

lis and Tournay; Brito, p. 113.

[1] *Illam obsidione vallavit.*] 'Tepide oppugnaverunt eam;' *ibid.*

[2] *Subito exspiravit.*] He died the year before the arrival of Louis, on the 25th of June; *ibid.* p. 112: see also the metrical history before mentioned, ll. 8447, *seqq.* In the Close Rolls is a grant of lands, before held by him, to Stephen de Segrave, which begins, 'Audivimus, quod comes Simon de Monte-forti in fata concessit;' it is dated the 28th July: p. 366.

[3] *Cantuariam.*] Henry was crowned at Westminster according to all the chroniclers; which is proved by various writs in the Close Rolls.

A.D. 1220. sente clero et populo totius regni, decimo sexto kalendas Junii, anno regni sui quinto. Deinde in[1] festo sancti Barnabæ apostoli convenerunt ad colloquium apud Eboracum rex Anglorum Henricus et rex Scotorum Alexander, ubi inter eos [2]tractatum est de matrimonio contrahendo inter regem Scotiæ et sororem regis Angliæ, atque, ibi fœdere confirmato, rex Scotorum ad propria remeavit.

De canonizatione sancti Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi.

Canonization of Hugh bishop of Lincoln.

Eodem anno sanctus Hugo, Lincolniensis episcopus, a papa Honorio canonizatus est et in catalogo sanctorum admissus, facta prius miraculorum ejus inquisitione a Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, et abbate de Fontibus Johanne, sicut in hoc sequenti domini papæ authentico continetur; [3]' Honorius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, dilectis filiis universis Christi fidelibus præsentem paginam inspecturis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Divinæ dignatio pietatis sanctos et electos suos in cælestis regni felicitate locatos adhuc in terra miraculorum coruscatione clarificat, ut fidelium per hoc excitata devotio eorum suffragia digna veneratione deposcant. Cum igitur sanctæ recordationis Hugonem, Lincolniensem episcopum, quem, sicut nobis plenarie constat, divini muneris largitas, tam in vita quam etiam post vestem mortalitatis exutam, insignium miraculorum multitudine illustravit, sanctorum catalogo adscripsimus, universitatem vestram monemus et

[1] *In festo sancti Barnabæ;*] the 11th of June.

[2] *Tractatum est.*] See the agreement made between the kings in Rymer, i. p. 160, *seq.*

[3] *Honorius.*] Rymer, tom. i. p. 165.

exhortamur in Domino, quatenus ejus apud Deum patrocinia devote imploretis; ad hæc statuentes, ut die depositionis ipsius ejusdem festivitas annis singulis devote de cætero celebretur. Data Viterbii, decimo tertio kalendas Martii, pontificatus nostri anno quarto.' A.D. 1220.

De captione castrorum de Sanneia et de Rokingeham.

Eodem anno rex Henricus, Willelmo comite de Albemarlia invito, cepit subito castella de Rokingeham et de [1]Sanneia [2]in vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli; veniente autem præfato rege hostiliter ad castella prædicta, invenit illa penitus omni victualium genere destituta, ita quidem quod nec etiam tres panes invenirentur in eis. Rockingham castle taken.

Translatio sancti Thomæ, archiepiscopi Cantuariensis.

Eodem[3] tempore levatum est de lapide marmoreo corpus beati Thomæ archiepiscopi et martyris a Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, præsente rege et omnibus fere episcopis totius regni, cum abbatibus, prioribus, comitibus, baronibus, clero et populo multo, in crastino octavarum apostolorum Petri et Pauli; cujus corpus sanctissimum collocatum est honorifice in pheretro ex auro et lapidibus pretiosis mirabiliter fabrefacto. Interfuerunt etiam huic trans- Translation of Thomas Becket.

[1] *Sanneia.*] In the writs occurring in the Close Rolls concerning the earl of Albemarle, this castle is called 'de Salvata.' Walter of Coventry has a more particular account of the affair in question; see Tyrrell, ii. p. 841.

[2] *In vigilia . . . Petri et Pauli;*] 28th of June.

[3] *Eodem tempore.*] In the Waverley Annals it is said, that never before in England had such a crowd been gathered at one spot. Notice, it appears, had been given by the archbishop nearly two years before of his intention, and the tidings had been carried into different kingdoms and countries; p. 185. See the pope's bulls on this occasion, Rymer, i. p. 153, *seq.*

A.D. 1220. lationi archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores, et alii multi de regno Francorum aliarumque diversarum regionum, qui ob honorem et reverentiam beati martyris, ut tantæ adessent solemnitati, alacriter convenerunt; nam dignissimum omnibus videbatur, ut sanctum martyrem Christi generaliter honorarent et colerent, qui pro universali ecclesia sanguinem suum fundere et ad finem usque non timuit fideliter decertare.

De obsidione castri de Biham et perturbatione regni.

A.D. 1221. Siege of Biham castle. Anno Domini MCCXXI. rex Henricus ad natale Domini apud Oxoniam tenuit curiam suam, præsentibus comitibus et baronibus regni; ubi regiis obsequiis cum lætitia et pace transactis, singulis quod justum erat, secundum antiquam regni consuetudinem, distribuit affluenter. Willelmus quoque de [1]Foret, volens pacem regni turbare, sequenti nocte non licentiatus recedens ad castellum de [2]Biham cum festinatione perrexit, ubi post dies paucos, collectis viris armatis, ad villam de Tenham hostiliter accedens illam spoliavit et bladum canonicorum de Bridlintona ad castellum de Biham asportari fecit; villam etiam de Depinge cum aliis ejusdem provinciæ villis spoliavit, homines cepit et post gravissimum membrorum cruciatum ad redemptionem coegit. Habuit autem, ut dicebatur, hujus factionis incentores Falcasium, Philippum Marc, Petrum de Malo-leone, Engelardum de Athie, et alios multos, qui clam miserunt ei viros armatos, ut pacem regni turbaret. Inter hæc quoque homines regionis illius ad ecclesias convolantes bona sua in cœmeteria detulerunt.

[1] *Foret.*] 'For' in *C.*; William de Fortibus, the earl of Albemarle above mentioned.

[2] *Biham;*] in Lincolnshire.

Convenerunt interim magnates Angliæ ad regem apud Westmonasterium, ut de negotiis regni tractarent; comes vero, qui cum cæteris vocatus fuerat, simulavit se illo ire, sed callidus viator propositum mutans ad castellum de Fotheringeia divertit. Erat tunc castellum in custodia Ranulfi comitis Cestrensis, a militibus fere ac servientibus destitutum; quod cum comes prædictus cognovisset, scalas ad murum adhibens armatis suis ingressum paravit, et sine mora, [1]subjugato castello, paucos quos invenerunt custodes vinculis constrinxerunt. Deinde, impositis in castello armatis, ad municipium de Biham celeriter convolavit; quo facto, cum armatis suis totam adjacentem provinciam spoliavit, castrumque suum de damnis aliorum munivit. Sed cum tandem ista præsumptio ad regem et ejus concilium pervenisset, exercitu magno celeriter convocato, feria quarta post purificationem beatæ Mariæ castellum de Biham cuneis militaribus circumcinxit, et, ne diutius protrahamus sermonem, locatis in gyrum castelli machinis, muros ejus et ædificia [2]diruerunt in brevi, ita quod defuit locus inclusis ubi sub salvo capita reclinarent, qui aliud refugium non habentes exierunt omnes de ruina castelli et sexto idus Februarii sese regi præsentarunt; at rex jussit eos vinculis mancipari donec consilium haberet, quid de illis sibi foret agendum. Venit interea comes de Albemarlia sub conductu Walteri, Eboracensis archiepiscopi, ad regem, et, [3]Walone legato impetrante, cum ipso pacificatus est, eo quod ei- A.D. 1221.

[1] *Subjugato castello.*] They found the castle empty, according to the Chron. Dunst. p. 103.

[2] *Diruerunt.*] It held out for five days, and was then taken and burned to the ground; *ibid.*

[3] *Walone.*] Paris has 'Pandulph,' which is probably the right reading.

A.D. 1221. dem regi et patri suo in guerra sua servierat fideliter ac potenter; milites etiam omnes et servientes sine pœna et redemptione relaxati sunt a rege, qui pessimum aliis dedit exemplum, ut contra eum hac fiducia in casu consimili rebellarent.

De dissensione inter Richardum, Dunelmensem episcopum, et monachos exorta.

Dissension between the bishop and the monks of Durham.

Sub his denique diebus exorta est magna inter Richardum de Marisco, episcopum Dunelmensem, et ejusdem ecclesiæ monachos [1]dissensio pro quibusdam libertatibus antiquis et consuetudinibus, quas iidem monachi se gavisi sunt multis retro temporibus habuisse. Episcopus autem fraudulenter monachis significavit prædictis, ut venirent ad eum cum privilegiis suis et ecclesiæ suæ instrumentis, ut, siquid in eis esset corrigendum ad perfectam eorum libertatem, ipsius arbitrio suppleretur; prior vero et monachi, fraudem episcopi habentes suspectam, instrumenta sua ei nullatenus ostendere voluerunt. Episcopus itaque, cum munimentorum inspectionem habere non potuit, juravit quod omnia bona eorum in usus suos converteret, adjiciens quod, si aliquem ex monachis extra portas curiæ suæ inveniret, non aliam quam caput redemptionem acciperet; juravit etiam, audientibus multis, quod, eo vivente, pacem Dunelmensis ecclesia non haberet. Nec multo post, cum servientes episcopi monachum quendam ab ecclesia quadam violenter extraxissent, monacho conquerenti et super hoc coram episcopo querelam deponenti respondit episcopus, quod melius fecissent ministri si monachum oc-

[1] *Dissensio.*] 'Eo quod esset substantiæ ecclesiasticæ indiscretus et prodigus dilapidator;' Mat. West. p. 110.

cidissent ; sicque deinceps ita monachis præfatis idem episcopus injuriosus exstitit et infestus, ut, necessitate cogente, ad præsentiam domini papæ appellantes sese et sua omnia sub ejus protectione ponerent, ac deinde Romam clericos mittentes et monachos episcopum accusaverunt in multis, contra quam accusationem hoc sequens rescriptum impetraverunt a papa ; A.D. 1221.

The pope orders an inquiry into the bishop's conduct.

' Honorius episcopus Saresbiriensi et Eliensi, et cætera, episcopis, salutem, et cætera. Ita nobis in odore bonæ opinionis fratrum et cooperatorum nostrorum convenit delectari, ut in pestilentibus vitia non palpemus, cum non deceat pro reverentia ordinis sustinere peccantes, quorum culpa tot eos mortibus dignos facit, quot ad subjectos perditionis exempla transmittunt, qui sola quæ pravitatis exempla conspiciunt imitantur. Hinc est quod, cum de venerabili fratre nostro Dunelmensi episcopo sæpius nobis insinuata fuissent quæ ab episcopali honestate nimium dissonabant, tandem inculcatis funibus clamoris excitati, ut non pateremur cum perditione multorum quiescere amplius in suis enormitatibus episcopum memoratum ; de quo insinuatio clamosa processit, quod, postquam fuit ad officium pontificale promotus, reus sanguinis, simoniæ, adulterii, sacrilegii, rapinæ, perjurii ac dilapidationis multiplicis est effectus, non formidans clericos, orphanos ac viros religiosos opprimere, testamenta decedentium impedire, regia jura contra scientiam dilecti filii nostri Pandulphi, Norwicensis electi, munire, ac excommunicatione ligatus ingerere se divinis. Item etiam appellationibus non defert ad Romanam ecclesiam interpositis, statuta generalis concilii non observat, nunquam proponit populo verbum Dei, lingua et exemplo vitæ pravum subditis præ-

A.D. 1221. bet exemplum. Coram multis juravit, quod pacem, ipso vivente, Dunelmensis ecclesia non habebit. Conquerente sibi quodam monacho Dunelmensi, se a servientibus suis ab ecclesia quadam fuisse extractum et usque ad sanguinis effusionem pulsatum, respondit ei, quod melius factum fuisset si servientes episcopi monachum peremissent. Ipse insuper apostolicam regulam, continentem qualis debeat esse episcopus, penitus calcavit in cunctis. Nos ergo, ne alienæ culpæ simus auctores, si clausis oculis tot et tanta prædicti episcopi transeamus errata, cum adeo ad nos clamor super his ascenderit ut dissimulationi amplius non sit locus, dignum duximus ex officii nostri debito descendere, ut hæc an ita sint, vel aliter, videamus. Quocirca fraternitati vestræ per apostolica scripta mandamus, quatenus, inquisita super his et cognita sollicite veritate, quæ inveneritis, vestris fideliter inclusa sigillis, ad nostram præsentiam remittatis, ut, auctore Deo, quod super hoc faciendum fuerit statuamus. Datum Viterbii, pontificatus nostri anno quarto.'

Ut episcopus Dunelmensis contra monachos Romam petierit.

Appeal made to Rome. Cum autem literæ domini papæ ad notitiam exsecutorum pervenissent, ex officio sibi injuncto vocaverunt episcopum Dunelmensem, cum abbatibus, prioribus, archidiaconis, decanis, apud Dunelmum ad suum consistorium, et alios laicos et clericos illius provinciæ, quoscumque hujus rei esse conscios crediderunt. Illis autem omnibus die sibi et loco statuto coram exsecutoribus comparentibus, recitatæ fuerunt literæ domini papæ, audientibus cunctis, aperte et distincte ad intelligendum; quibus perlectis et in-

tellectis, surrexerunt clerici Dunelmensis epi- A.D. 1221.
scopi, quasdam recusationes frivolas et fallaces allegantes contra exsecutores prædictos, atque, ne procederent in inquisitione prædicta, præsentiam domini papæ appellarunt; et sic facta appellatione episcopus cum clericis suis recessit, diem statuens adversariis, qua contra eum in domini papæ præsentia comparerent. Interposita itaque appellatione, sæpedictus episcopus Romanam[1] adivit curiam, præmissis clericis suis, qui sibi supervenienti domini papæ gratiam præpararent; unde contigit, ut, antequam monachi Dunelmenses Romam venissent, clerici memorati actionem eorundem monachorum non mediocriter infirmaverant, unde post multas hinc inde coram papa altercationes tam episcopus quam monachi, [2]immoderatis profusis expensis, remissi sunt in Angliam ad exsecutores supradictos, ut coram eis quod justum fuerit sententialiter statuatur. Duravit autem hæc diu inter eos semel suborta contentio, donec mors episcopi litem, sicut ipse prædixerat, terminavit.

De constructione novi castelli apud Montem-Gomericum.

Eodem anno, circa nativitatem beatæ Mariæ, Insurrection in Wales.
Loelinus,[3] rex Walliæ, cum exercitu copioso cas-

[1] *Romanam adivit curiam.*] In the Dunstable Chronicle it is said that the archbishop of Canterbury and the bishop of Durham went both to Rome; that, after they had gone, the bishops of Salisbury and Ely had their commission to inquire into the charges against the latter, and, having done so, they forwarded to Rome the result of their examinations; pp. 100, 109.

[2] *Immoderatis profusis expensis.*] In this journey he expended, according to Matthew of Westminster, more than thirty thousand marks; p. 110.

[3] *Loelinus.*] There are two letters from the king to Llewellyn, printed in Rymer, upon the Welch king's attacks upon the property of the earl of Pembroke, which give a concise history of the whole state of the case; they are dated the 5th of October 1220.

A.D. 1221. tellum, quod [1]Buet appellatur, obsedit; Reginaldus quoque de Brausia, cujus illud municipium erat, regis constanter imploravit auxilium, ut per eum, cum ipse ad hoc non sufficeret, obsidio solveretur. Rex autem, qui suis magnatibus deesse non debuit, cum exercitu magno illuc tendens, fugientibus ex more Wallensibus, obsidionem amovit. Tunc rex versus Montem-Gomericum tendens cum exercitu suo, quæque sibi obvia de rebus Wallensium, in armentis pecorum, cum spoliis damnosis multis, secum ad sustentationem suorum conducere præcepit. Deinde cum ad Montem-Gomericum pervenisset et loca illa vagando perlustrasset, deprehenderunt prudentiores exercitus locum idoneum ad castellum exstruendum, cujus situs cunctis inexpugnabilis videbatur. Jussit itaque rex ad securitatem regionis illius, propter creberrimas Wallensium irruptiones, ibidem castellum firmari; et ita singuli, accepta licentia, [2]ad propria remearunt, concessis magnatibus de quolibet scuto duas marcas argenti.

De statu terræ sanctæ post captionem Damietæ et Taphneos.

Letter from the master of the Temple on the affairs of Palestine.

[Per idem tempus mandavit magister militum Templi literam quæ sequitur de statu terræ sanctæ;] ‘Fratri in Christo reverendo N., Dei gratia Elimenensi episcopo, frater Petrus de Monteacuto, magister militum Templi, salutem. Quomodo autem in negotio Domini nostri Jesu Christi post captionem Damietæ et castri Taph-

[1] *Buet.*] Builth, or Llanfair, in Brecon.

[2] *Ad propria remearunt.*] It appears from a charter printed in Rymer upon its extension, that a truce was now concluded before the king and Pandulph, at Shrewsbury, between Llewellyn and the earl of Pembroke and Reginald de Breose; p. 166.

neos hactenus sit processum, paternitati vestræ A.D. 1221.
literis præsentibus declaramus. Noveritis igitur quod in primo passagio post captionem prædictam apud Damietam tot peregrini applicuerunt, quod una cum residuo remanentis exercitus possint sufficere ad munitionem Damietæ et defensionem castrorum. Dominus quidem legatus una cum clero, promotionem exercitus Jesu Christi præoptans, populum pluries ac diligenter admonuit de faciendo equitatu super infideles, sed barones exercitus, tam transmarini quam cismarini, considerantes quod gentes exercitus ad munitionem dictarum civitatum et castrorum, et ad progressum ulterius faciendum ad Christianitatis utilitatem, non possent sufficere, in hoc consentire noluerunt ; Soldanus enim Babyloniæ cum infinita perfidorum multitudine non longe a Damieta castrametatus super utrumque fluminis brachium pontes construxit ad impediendum Christianorum progressum, qui cum tanta multitudine ibidem exspectat armatorum, quod maximum periculum de ulterius equitando fidelibus immineret. Veruntamen civitatem prædictam et castra fossatis et littus undique munivimus, exspectantes a Domino consolari per subsidium nobis advenientium in succursum ; sed Saraceni, nostrum perpendentes defectum, quamplures armaverunt galeias et mense Septembrio eas constituerunt per mare, quæ Christianis in subsidium terræ sanctæ adventantibus damna immania intulerunt. Tantus enim in exercitu nostro erat defectus pecuniæ, quod galeias nostras per aliquod tempus magnum tenere non potuimus. Comperientes igitur per prædictas Saracenorum galeias exercitui Christiano maximum imminere dispendium, galeias nostras et galiones aliaque vasa incon-

A.D. 1221. tinenti armavimus ad prædictis galeiis resistendum. [1]Et sciatis, quod Coradinus, Soldanus Damasci, congregata Saracenorum multitudine infinita, comperiens civitates Achon et Tyri militia et populo sibi resistere valenti penitus destitutas, damna illis gravissima clam et palam frequenter infert; ante præterea castrum nostrum, quod Peregrinorum dicitur, sæpius veniens sua tentoria fixit, dispendia nobis multimoda inferendo; castrum quoque Cæsareæ Palestinæ obsidens subjugavit, quamvis plures peregrini tunc apud Achon morarentur. Cæterum noveritis, quod Seraph, filius Saphadini, frater Soldanorum Babylonis et Damasci, contra Saracenos orientales in manu forti dimicans in potentioribus sibi obsistentibus multum prævaluit, licet non de omnibus, quia, Domino procurante, de facili non omnes poterit superare; nam, si guerram illam posset ad effectum perducere, terra Antiochiæ vel Tripolis, Achonensis sive Ægyptiaca, ad quamcumque illarum declinaret, maximo periculo subjaceret, et, si aliquod castrorum nostrorum obsidione vallaret, nullatenus eum amovere possemus; veruntamen dicta dissensio gaudium nobis confert et solamen. Expectavimus præterea jam diu imperatorem et nobiles alios, per quos speramus relevari, in quorum adventu opus multorum manibus inchoatum ad finem speramus perducere optatum; si vero de spe succursus hujus in proxima æstate, quod absit, frustraremur, utraque terra, Syriæ videlicet et Ægypti, tam illa quæ nuper est adquisita, quam illa quæ diu possessa est, in casu sunt dubio constitutæ. Nos itaque et aliæ gentes cismarinæ tot et tantis sumptibus

[1] *Et sciatis.*] Compare Bernard. Thesaur., Muratori, Rer. Ital. tom. vii. col. 841.

in exsequendis Jesu Christi negotiis adeo præ- A.D. 1221.
gravamur, quod ad consuetas expensas non sufficimus, nisi divina clementia et fidelium virorum subsidio nobis in proximo succurratur. Data Achon duodecimo kalendas [1]Octobris.'

De peregrinatione Philippi de Albeneio ad terram sanctam.

Anno Domini MCCXXII. rex Anglorum Henri- A.D. 1222. Philip d'Albiney goes to the Holy Land;
cus fuit ad natale apud Wintoniam, episcopo civitatis Petro omnia sibi necessaria ministrante. Quo etiam tempore [2]Philippus de Albeneio, miles strenuus ac morum honestate commendabilis, regisque Anglorum magister et eruditor fidelissimus, iter Hierosolymitanum arripiens illuc cum prosperitate ac sine rerum diminutione pervenit, qui, protinus ut statum terræ didicisset, Ranulpho comiti Cestriæ literas in hæc verba direxit;

De amissione Damietæ.

'Reverendo domino et amico, R. comiti Ces- his letter to the earl of Chester.
triæ et Lincolniæ, suus ubique P. de Albeneio, salutem et veræ dilectionis affectum. Vestræ notifico excellentiæ, quod in die assumptionis virginis Mariæ extra portum Marsiliæ velificavimus et in die Lunæ ante nativitatem ejusdem virginis ante Damietam venimus, ibique invenimus multas naves recedentes de villa; et tantum locutus fui cum quadam barca et tantum hominibus dedi, quod ad nos loqui venerunt et nobis rumores multum tristes narraverunt. Quod videlicet gens nostra de Damieta et mag-

[1] *Octobris.*] Paris inserts here the marriage of Alexander, king of Scotland, with Joan, Henry's eldest sister, as also the marriage of Hugh de Burgh with Margaret, the sister of the king of Scotland: both weddings were celebrated at York.

[2] *Philippus de Albeneio.*] William d'Albiney had died there, according to Paris, in the previous year.

A.D. 1222. Letter of Philip d'Albiney to the earl of Chester.

nates qui intus erant, rex scilicet Hierusalem et legatus, dux Balvariæ, Templum et Hospitale, cum aliis multis, ita quod bene fuerunt mille milites cruce signati, et alii equites quinque millia, cum quadraginta millibus peditum, hii omnes fecerunt unam equitaturam erga terram Babylonis, contra voluntatem regis Hierusalem, ut dicitur, et iter arripuerunt ad festum sancti Petri ad vincula; et in illa equitatura per tres septimanas vel plus morati fuerunt, et fere in media via fuerunt Damietæ et Babylonis. Tunc Soldanus Babyloniæ et Coradinus frater ejus venerunt cum quanto exercitu habere potuerunt, et sæpius gentes nostras appropinquando invaserunt et sæpius de gentibus suis amiserunt; et, quando gentes nostræ ad Damietam redire voluerunt, flumen excrevit et per dies plurimos exivit, et gentes nostræ inter duo brachia fluminis erant; et fecerunt Saraceni de uno brachio ad aliud foveam quandam retro exercitum nostrum, flumenque tam magnum excrevit, quod gentes nostræ in aqua erant usque ad braccarios et cinctoria ad magnam miseriam et dolorem, itaque mortui et capti fuissent si Soldanus Babyloniæ voluisset. Treugas sumpserunt gentes nostræ usque ad octo annos erga Soldanum tali pacto, quod gentes nostræ Damietam redderent et omnes esclavos quos tenebant in captivitate. Propter hanc pactionem tenendam rex Hierusalem, et legatus, et dux Balvariæ, et alii divites in hostagio remanserunt; Soldanus vero pro jam dicta pactione ex parte sua viginti in hostagio tradidit. Quando vero hos rumores audivimus, magnum dolorem habuimus, sicut omnes Christiani habere debent; ideoque consilium habuimus, quia ad reddendam Damietam esse noluimus, ut versus Achon iter arripere-

mus, ubi in crastino beatæ virginis Mariæ nativitatis applicuimus; et in die proximo post reddita fuit Damieta ad Soldanum, et ipse omnes esclavos suos, quos tenebat, deliberavit. Item vobis significo, quod dominus rex Hierusalem in partes vestras venturus est; ideo vobis precor, quod super promissa ei facta erga regem et alios magnates auxilium præbeatis, debitum enim ejus tam magnum est quod mirum est enarrare. Valete.' A.D. 1222.

Item alia epistola de eodem.

'Frater P. de Monte-acuto, militum Templi magister humilis, dilecto fratri in Christo, A. Martel, locum præceptoris tenenti in Anglia, salutem. Etsi quandoque prospera, quæ nobis in negotio Jesu Christi succedebant, vobis significavimus, nunc sinistra, peccatis nostris exigentibus, in terra Ægypti nobis inflicta, præsenti vobis scripto secundum rei seriem declaramus. Sane cum post captam Damietam exercitus Christianus otio ibidem tempore longo vacaret, gens tam cismarina quam transmarina super hoc nobis convitia et redargutiones assiduas inferebat; veniens igitur dux Balvariæ, locum tenens imperatoris, hominibus patefecit se ad hoc venisse, ut expugnaret inimicos fidei Christianæ. Habito igitur super hoc consilio domini legati, ducis Balvariæ, magistrorum Templi et Hospitalis ac domus Teutonicorum, comitum, baronum et aliorum omnium, super progressu faciendo omnes unanimiter consenserunt. Illustris autem rex Hierosolymitanus vocatus venit cum baronibus suis et galeiis navibusque armatis apud Damietam, inveniens exercitum Christianorum in tentoriis extra licias habitantem. Post festum vero apostolorum Petri et Pauli, dominus rex et le- Letter from the master of the Temple on the affairs of the crusaders after the taking of Damietta.

A.D. 1222. Letter from the master of the Temple on the progress of the crusaders after the taking of Damietta.

gatus, totusque exercitus Christianus, tam per fluvium quam per terram ordinate procedentes invenerunt Soldanum, et cum eo inimicos crucis innumeros, sed tamen ante faciem ejus fugientes, sicque processum est sine damno donec perventum fuit ad tentoria Soldani, flumine tamen medio, quod nequivit exercitus pertransire; sed in ripa fluminis fixit tentoria, præparans pontes ad faciendum transitum ad Soldanum; itaque flumen Taphneos, a magno flumine Nili se derivans, a castris Soldani nos separavit. Cumque ibidem moram faceremus, recesserunt ab exercitu multi non licentiati, ita quod in decem millibus armatorum et amplius fuit exercitus diminutus. Soldanus interim per vallum antiquitus factum galeias et galiones, Nilo crescente, misit in flumen ad impediendum navigium nostrum, ne nobis victualibus destitutis a Damieta venirent alimenta, cum per terram, prohibentibus Saracenis, venire minime potuissent. Interclusa itaque via tam terræ quam fluminis ad necessaria nobis deferenda, habuit consilium exercitus de reditu faciendo; sed fratres Soldani, Seraph scilicet et Coradinus, Soldani Alapiæ et Damasci, atque Soldani alii, Camelæ videlicet et Haman et Coilanbar, cum regibus paganorum quamplurimis et multitudine paganorum, qui in ejus subsidium advenerant, nobis reditum denegabant. Exercitus tamen noster, de nocte recedens per flumen et per terram, amisit victualia quæ ferebat in flumine et homines multos; quia, excrescente Nilo, Soldanus fecit aquam derivari per meatus occultos et canales rivulosque antiquitus constitutos ad impediendum regressum populi Christiani. Cum igitur in paludibus summarios, supellectilia, clitellas, currusque ac omnia fere necessaria exercitus Christi amisisset, nec ultra procedere vel reverti aut alicubi con-

fugere potuisset victualibus destitutus, nec pug- A.D. 1222.
nam facere cum Soldano propter lacum medium, inter aquas inclusus sicut piscis reti includitur; fecit invitus et in angaria positus pactum de reddenda Damieta Soldano, et esclavis ejus qui inveniri poterant in Tyro et Achon, pro vera cruce et pro esclavis Christianis regnorum Babyloniæ et Damasci. Nos igitur cum aliis nuntiis de communi legatione totius exercitus Damietam adivimus, populo civitatis pactiones nobis injunctas omnibus ostendentes, quæ episcopo Achonensi, cancellario, et Henrico comiti de Malta, quos ibidem invenimus, plurimum displicebant; voluerunt enim civitatem defendere, quod nos multum approbaremus si utiliter fieri potuisset, mallemus quidem in carcere perpetuo detrudi, quam civitas a nobis ad dedecus Christianitatis incredulis redderetur; sed, habita per civitatem indagatione sagaci rerum et personarum, nec pecuniam invenerunt nec gentem, quibus civitatem defendere potuissent. Nos itaque huic pactioni adquiescentes sacramento et obsidibus eam firmavimus, treugamque firmam octo annorum statuimus. Soldanus igitur usque ad compositionem factam fideliter tenuit quod spopondit, exercitui nostro famelico per dies fere quindecim panem conferens et [1]polentam. Vos ergo nostris miseriis compatientes nobis in quantum poteritis subveniatis. Valete.'

De luctamine et dissidio Londoniensis urbis.

Eodem anno in [2]die sancti Jacobi apostoli con- Riots in London.
venerunt ad luctamen apud hospitale Matildis reginæ extra urbem Londoniarum cives urbis

[1] *Polentam.*] 'Præbendam' in MS.

[2] *Die sancti Jacobi;*] the 25th of July. Compare the account as given in the Chron. Dunst. p. 129, *seq.*

A.D. 1222. Riots in London.

prædictæ contra comprovinciales extra urbem positos, scirent ut quis eorum videretur viribus esse major. Illis autem diu decertantibus et hinc inde tumultuantibus, cives, aliis confusis, victoriam reportarunt. Inter alios quoque seneschallus abbatis Westmonasterii confusus recedens, quomodo se suosque complices vindicaret, anxius cogitabat. Tandem hunc vindictæ modum excogitans statuit arietem in [1]die sancti Petri ad vincula, denuntians per provinciam, ut omnes ad luctamen venirent apud Westmonasterium, et qui melior in luctamine inveniretur arietem pro mercede acciperet. Prædictus interea seneschallus congregavit viros robustos et in luctamine expeditos, ut sic saltem victoria potiretur; cives vero ex victoria iterata gaudere cupientes in manu valida convenerunt ad ludum, atque, hinc inde certamine inchoato, diu et fortiter se mutuo prosternebant. Seneschallus quoque sæpedictus cum suburbanis et comprovincialibus, qui potius vindictam quam ludum sitiebant, sine causa ad arma prosiliunt, atque cives, qui inermes advenerant, graviter et non sine sanguinis effusione pulsaverunt. At cives turpiter vulnerati fugam arripientes cum maxima confusione ingressi sunt civitatem; quibus ingressis, surrexit tumultus in populo, signoque communi pulsato, cives pariter convenerunt, et, re gesta cunctis per ordinem declarata, diversi diversam vindictæ sententiam protulerunt. Serlo tandem major civitatis, vir prudens et pacificus, consilium dedit, ut abbas Westmonasterii super illa conveniretur injuria, quam si vellet pro se suisque corrigere competenter, hoc sufficeret universis. Ad hæc [2]Con-

[1] *Die sancti Petri ad vincula;*] August the 1st.

[2] *Constantinus,*] surnamed Fitz-Arnulph. Paris relates that the execution of this Constantine was one of the pleas urged by Louis

stantinus, vir quidam magnus in civitate, cum tumultu populi sententiam protulit, ut omnia ædificia abbatis Westmonasterii et domus seneschalli prædicti diruerentur et solo tenus complanarentur, et his dictis exivit edictum, ut quantocius Constantini sententia compleretur. Quid plura? Irrationabile vulgus cum aliis de civitate sine ordine procedentes civile bellum Constantino prævio commiserunt, atque, multis subversis ædibus, damnum non modicum abbati intulerunt. Sed res gesta, quæ diu latere non potuit, cum ad aures Huberti de Burgo, Angliæ justiciarii, pervenisset, collectis copiis, ad turrem Londoniarum perrexit, ac nuntios mittens in civitatem præcepit, ut majores natu ad eum cum festinatione venirent; qui cum essent in ejus præsentia constituti, sciscitabatur ab eis, qui factæ seditionis principales erant auctores ac subversores regiæ civitatis, et qui pacem regis infringere præsumpserant. Tunc Constantinus, qui constans fuit in seditione, constantior exstitit in responsione, asserens se illud factum warrantizaturum, atque audientibus cunctis conqueritur se minus fecisse quam de jure fieri debuisset. At justiciarius, audita ejus confessione, retinuit eum absque omni tumultu, et duos alios cum eo; et, facto mane, misit Falcasium cum armatis multis per Thamensem fluvium, qui Constantinum prædictum ad suspendium perduxerunt. Cum autem laqueum collo suo appositum et se omni auxilio destitutum conspexisset, obtulit pro vita habenda quindecim millia marcas argenti, sed nihil omnino profecit. Suspensus autem est ille et Constantinus nepos ejus, cum quodam Gaufrido, qui edictum Constantini in civitate

A.D. 1222.

for not fulfilling the conditions of the treaty between himself and Henry, on coming to the throne.

A.D. 1222. proclamaverat; et sic, civibus ignorantibus et sine tumultu, lata in eum sententia exsecutioni exstitit demandata. Et, his ita gestis, ingressus est in civitatem justiciarius cum Falcasio et aliis armatorum copiis, et quoscumque prædictæ seditionis deprehendit culpabiles capi fecit et in carcerem retrudi, quorum truncatis pedibus sive manibus, illos abire permisit; unde multi præ timore ab urbe fugientes nunquam postea sunt reversi. Rex vero, ad majorem vindictam omnes urbis magistratus deponens, novos constituit in civitate præfectos.

De tonitruis et aliis tempestatibus.

Thunder storms. Eodem anno, sexto idus Februarii, audita sunt tonitrua[1] terribilia, ex quorum collisione fulmen exsiliens ecclesiam de Graham in comitatu Lincolniæ sitam terribiliter accendit, ubi tantum talemque fœtorem emisit, quod multi, qui in ecclesia erant, fugientes fœtorem sufferre non valebant; tandem sacræ candelæ illuminatione et aquæ benedictæ aspersione vix ignis exstinctus est; vestigia hujus rei adhuc in illo monasterio manent. Item eodem anno, in [2]die exaltationis sanctæ Crucis, per totam Angliam mugierunt horrenda tonitrua, et secuta est inundatio pluviarum cum turbine et impetu ventorum, quæ tempestas cum aeris intemperie usque ad purificationem beatæ Mariæ perseverans multis, et maxime colonis, molesta fuit; in æstate vero sequenti frumentum duodecim solidis vendebatur. Eodem etiam anno, [3]in festo sancti Andreæ apostoli, [4]au-

[1] *Tonitrua terribilia.*] In the Annal. Dunst. the damage sustained from these storms is more particularly noticed.

[2] *Die exaltationis sanctæ Crucis;*] September the 14th.

[3] *In festo sancti Andreæ;*] 30th of November.

[4] *Audita sunt tonitrua.*] Annal. Waverl. p. 187.

dita sunt tonitrua per totam Angliam generalia, A.D. 1222.
quæ ecclesias et ecclesiarum turres, domos et ædificia, castrorum muros et propugnacula, subverterunt. In villa quoque quæ Pilardestuna dicitur, in pago Warewicensi sita, irruit tempestas illa in ædificiis cujusdam militis, opprimens uxorem ejus cum octo hominibus utriusque sexus, in admiratione multorum, qui casum inspexerunt; deinde tempestas illa debacchando invalescens turbariam quandam in eadem villa, aquis profundis et palude circundatam, quasi in ictu oculi adeo reddidit siccam, quod, nec herbam nec lutum in ea relinquens, sicci lapides tantummodo remanserunt. Item in [1]vigilia sanctæ Luciæ virginis ventus vehemens et repentinus superveniens crudelius præfata tempestate desævit, nam generaliter per totam Angliam, quasi flatu diabolico agitata, ædificia diruit, ecclesias et earum turres prostravit, arbores silvarum cum pomeriis radicitus evulsit, ita quidem quod vix aliquis immunis evasit a cujus se injuria [2]refrænaret.

Ut Stephanus, archiepiscopus Cantuariensis, libertates a rege exegerit.

Anno Domini MCCXXIII. rex Henricus ad Na- A.D. 1223. Confirmation of the Great Charter demanded.
tale tenuit curiam suam apud Oxoniam. Et postmodum, in octavis Epiphaniæ, apud Londonias veniens cum baronibus ad colloquium requisitus est ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et magnatibus aliis, ut libertates et liberas consuetudines, pro quibus guerra mota fuit contra

[1] *Vigilia sanctæ Luciæ ;*] 12th of December.

[2] *Refrænaret.*] Paris inserts here a notice of the council held at Oxford by the archbishop of Canterbury, the particulars of which are in Wilkins' Concil. tom. ii. p. 585. This year came also a bull from the pope to the archbishop of York, urging him to all diligence in establishing quiet.

A.D. 1223. patrem suum, confirmaret; et, sicut archiepiscopus ostendit evidenter, idem rex diffugere non potuit quin hoc faceret, cum in recessu Lodowici ab Anglia juravit, et tota nobilitas regni cum eo, quod libertates præscriptas omnes observarent et omnibus traderent observandas. Quod audiens Willelmus Briwere, qui unus erat ex consiliariis regis, pro rege respondens dixit, 'Libertates quas petitis, quia violenter extortæ fuerunt, non debent de jure observari.' Quod verbum archiepiscopus moleste ferens increpavit eum dicens, 'Willelme,' inquit, 'si regem diligeres, pacem regni non impedires.' Videns autem rex archiepiscopum in iram commotum dixit, 'Omnes libertates illas juravimus, et omnes astricti sumus, ut quod juravimus observemus;' et rex protinus, habito super hoc consilio, misit[1] literas suas ad singulos vicecomites regni, ut per milites duodecim vel legales homines uniuscujusque comitatus per sacramentum facerent inquiri, quæ fuerunt libertates in Anglia tempore regis Henrici avi sui, et factam inquisitionem apud Londonias mitterent ad regem in quindecim diebus post Pascha.

De altercatione inter Walenses et Willelmum Marescallum.

Disturbances in Wales.

Eodem[2] anno, dum Willelmus Marescallus, comes Penbroc, fuit in Hibernia, Loelinus, rex

[1] *Misit literas suas,*] dated the 30th of January; Rymer, vol. i. p. 168.

[2] *Eodem anno.*] The extension of time given to this treaty was to expire at Easter, 1223. It appears that Llewellyn took advantage immediately of its expiration to recommence hostilities. Hemingford gives an account of these disturbances, and adds, that, the king sending forces to aid the earl, Llewellyn was glad to conclude a peace. There is a safe-conduct granted to Llewellyn to come to the king at Worcester, on the Monday after St. John Baptist's day (24 June), printed in Rymer, i. p. 168.

Walensium, in manu forti cepit duo castella prædicti Willelmi, et omnes quos in eis invenit capitibus privari fecit, et impositis in eisdem castellis Walensibus suis recessit. Sed, cum post dies paucos ad notitiam prædicti Marescalli res gesta pervolasset, rediit cum festinatione in Angliam; [1]exercitu magno congregato, castella prædicta obsedit et cepit; et quia Loelinus prius omnes homines Marescalli, quos in castellis ceperat, capitibus amputatis interfecerat, Willelmus Marescallus Walensibus talionem reddens eorum capita detruncari fecit; et deinde, ad majorem vindictam, terram Loelini hostiliter ingressus igne et ferro quæque sibi obvia devastavit. Quod audiens Loelinus venit contra Marescallum in fortitudine gravi; sed Marescallus, Marte sibi propitio, hostes acriter invadens, multis ex Walensibus interfectis, omnes in fugam coegit, quos Marescallus potenter insecutus immisericorditer trucidavit; æstimati sunt autem interfecti et vinculis mancipati ad novem millia hominum, paucissimis ex omnibus per fugam elapsis. Eodem anno, circa festum Dominicæ ascensionis, [2]Walterus Malus-clericus consecratus est Carleolensis episcopus per manum Walteri, Eboracensis archiepiscopi. Circa idem tempus prorupit oleum lucidissimum in magna ecclesia apud Eboracum de tumba beati Willelmi, ejusdem ecclesiæ quondam archiepiscopi. Eodem anno Romæ pluit terra sanguinea per tres dies, admirantibus multis. A.D. 1223.

[1] *Exercitu.*] The summonses issued by the king to the barons and the army to meet him at Gloucester, after the siege of Builth castle, are in Rymer, i. p. 170.

[2] *Walterus Malus-clericus.*] It appears from a letter of his printed in Rymer, i. p. 120, that he was John's messenger to the court of Rome, to argue his cause there against the barons in 1214.

De morte Philippi, regis Francorum.

A.D. 1223. Death of Philip of France.

Eodem tempore, circa festum sancti Petri ad vincula, Philippus, rex Francorum, [1]diem clausit extremum, cujus mortem cometa ardens et crinita, quæ paulo ante apparuerat, indicavit; cujus obitu divulgato, Henricus, rex Anglorum, misit archiepiscopum Cantuariensem cum tribus episcopis ad Lodowicum filium ejus, jam in regem coronatum, constanter rogans, ut redderet sibi Normanniam cum aliis terris transmarinis, sicut juraverat[2] in recessu suo de regno Angliæ, quando pax facta fuerat inter ipsum et regem Angliæ, [consentientibus] magnatibus universis. Ad hæc Lodowicus respondens dixit, se Normanniam et terras alias juste possidere, sicut ostendere paratus erit in curia sua, si rex Angliæ ad eam voluerit venire et ibidem juri parere. Respondit præterea, quod juramentum in Anglia factum ex parte regis Anglorum fuerat violatum, dum imprisii sui, qui apud Lincolniam capti fuerant, ad redemptionem gravissimam sunt compulsi; de libertatibus autem regni Angliæ, pro quibus guerra mota fuerat, quæ in recessu suo concessæ erant et ab omnibus juratæ, ita actum est, quod non solum illæ leges pessimæ ad statum pristinum sunt reductæ, sed et illis nequiores per totum regnum Angliæ sunt generaliter constitutæ. Quod audientes archiepiscopus et episcopi, cum aliud responsum habere nequiverant, ad propria sunt reversi, regi Angliæ ea quæ audierant referentes.

---

[1] *Diem clausit extremum.*] See his character by Brito, and epitaph; Rec. des Hist. xvii. p. 115.

[2] *Juraverat.*] These conditions do not appear in the treaty, as in Rym. p. 148; but, as Rapin observes, 'it is very likely they were stipulated in the secret articles, since the French historians do not scruple to own them.'

De quodam Albigensium antipapa.

A.D. 1223. The Albigenses elect an antipope.

Circa dies istos hæretici Albigenses constituerunt sibi antipapam in finibus Bulgarorum, Croatiæ et Dalmatiæ, nomine Bartholomæum, cujus error in partibus illis adeo invaluit, ut etiam episcopos et alios multos regionum illarum ad suam allexerit pravitatem; contra quem [1]C., Portuensis episcopus et in partibus illis apostolicæ sedis legatus, Rothomagensi archiepiscopo scripsit in hæc verba; 'Venerabilibus patribus, Dei gratia Rothomagensi archiepiscopo et ejus suffraganeis episcopis, salutem in Domino Jesu Christo. Dum pro sponsa veri Crucifixi vestrum cogimur auxilium implorare, potius compellimur lacerari singultibus et plorare. Ecce, quod vidimus, loquimur; et, quod scimus, testificamur. Ille homo perditus, qui extollitur super omne quod colitur aut quod dicitur Deus, jam habet perfidiæ suæ præambulum hæresiarcham, quem hæretici Albigenses papam suum appellant, habitantem in finibus Bulgarorum, Croatiæ et Dalmatiæ, juxta Hungarorum nationem. Ad eum confluunt hæretici Albigenses, ut ad eorum consulta respondeat; est enim de Carcasona oriundus, vices illius antipapæ gerens, Bartholomæus hæreticorum episcopus, funestam ei exhibendo reverentiam; sedem et locum concessit in villa, quæ Porlos appellatur, et se ipsum in partes Tholosanas transtulit. Iste Bartholomæus in literarum suarum undique discurrentium tenore se in primo salutationis alloquio intitulat in hunc modum, 'Bartholomæus, servus servorum sanctæ fidei, tali salutem.' Ipse etiam inter alias enormitates creat episcopos et ecclesias perfide ordi-

[1] C.] 'Conradus.' See the letter, here much abridged, printed at length in Martene, Thes. Anecdot. tom. i. col. 901.

A.D. 1223. nare contendit. Rogamus igitur attentius et per aspersionem sanguinis Jesu Christi, et propensius obsecramus, auctoritate domini papæ, qua fungimur in hac parte, districte præcipientes, quatenus veniatis Senonis in octavis apostolorum Petri et Pauli proxime futuris, ubi et alii prælati Franciæ, favente Domino, congregabuntur, parati consilium dare in negotio prædicto, et cum aliis, qui ibidem aderunt, providere super negotio Albigensi; alioquin inobedientiam vestram domino papæ curabimus significare. Data Planium,[1] sexto nonas Julii.' Sed hunc tandem tumultum mors prædicti antipapæ celeriter terminavit.

De quibusdam baronibus schisma excitare volentibus.

The barons murmur against Hubert de Burgh.

Eodem anno surrexit murmuratio non modica a magnatibus Angliæ contra Hubertum de Burgo justiciarium, [2]qui pacem regni conati sunt perturbare; dicebant enim ad invicem, quod animum regis exasperabat contra illos, et quod similiter non æquis legibus regnum regebat. Accessit præterea ad majoris odii incentivum adventus nuntiorum regis, quos Romam miserat, qui bullam domini papæ archiepiscopis Angliæ et eorum suffraganeis deferebant, quæ talem continebat sententiam, videlicet, quod dominus papa regem Angliæ plenæ ætatis adjudicaverat, ut de cætero negotia regni idem rex principaliter cum suorum domesticorum consilio ordinaret. Significavit etiam exsecutoribus prælibatis dictus

[1] *Planium.*] 'Provin;' Thes. Anecd. col. 903.

[2] *Qui pacem regni conati sunt perturbare.*] In Rymer are printed two letters of the king to the pope and Gualo the legate, on the state of the country, in which he asks them to write to the barons, urging them to peace and obedience. They are dated 19th November, in the presence of H. de Burgh, and the bishops of Bath and Salisbury.

papa in literis supradictis, quatenus auctoritate apostolica denuntiarent comitibus, baronibus, militibus et aliis universis, qui custodias habebant castrorum, honorum et villarum, quæ ad regis dominium spectabant, ut continuo visis literis regi illas redderent, contradictores autem per censuram ecclesiasticam ad satisfactionem compellerent; unde pars maxima comitum et baronum, quorum corda concupiscentia possidebat, hujusmodi præcepta indigne ferens bellumque suscitare disponens convenit in unum, et, conspiratione absque follibus conflata, supradictas occasiones prætendebat, ut pacem regni perturbaret; custodias autem jam dictas, per admonitionem archiepiscoporum et episcoporum, regi reddere supersedit, volens potius arma movere quam regi satisfacere de præmissis. Sed hæc infra. A.D. 1223.

De cruce Dominica apud Bromholm delata.

Eodem anno apud [1] Bromholm crebuerunt divina miracula, ad gloriam et honorem salutiferæ crucis, in qua Salvator mundi pati dignatus est pro redemptione generis humani; et, quoniam tanto thesauro Britannia in oceano constituta divina largitate meruit beatificari, dignum est, imo dignissimum, memoriis posterorum imprimere, quo ordine a tam remotis partibus in Britanniam sit delata. Verum comes Flandrensis Baldewinus, ex comite Constantinopolitanus imperator effectus, ubi per multorum curricula annorum strenue vixit, contigit illum a perfidis regibus quodam tempore graviter infestari, contra quos cum impetu et absque deliberatione progrediens lignum Dominicum cum aliis reliquiis, quæ sem- Miracles at Bromholm.

[1] *Bromholm.*] Chron. de Dunst., where they are recorded as happening in the year 1225; p. 158.

A.D. 1223. Miracles at Bromholm.

per ante illum a patriarcha et episcopis deferri consueverant, quotiescunque adversum inimicos crucis prælium commissurus perrexit, hac vice portare neglexit, quod eodem die experimento miserrimo recognovit; nam, dum temere cum exercitu modico, non habito respectu ad multitudinem barbarorum, qui in decuplo exercitui suo superabundabant, in hostes prorupit, in momento tam ipse imperator quam totus ejus exercitus ab inimicis Crucifixi circumvallati omnes aut interfecti sunt aut in captivitatem adducti; pauci quoque ex omnibus qui per fugam elapsi sunt, de imperatore quid actum sit vel quo devenerit, penitus ignorabant. Erat autem ea tempestate capellanus quidam natione Anglicus, qui in capella imperatoris cum suis clericis divina celebravit mysteria, qui unus fuit ex custodibus reliquiarum et annulorum aliarumque rerum dicti imperatoris. Hic itaque cum casum cognovisset de morte, ut omnes prædicabant, domini sui imperatoris, ab urbe Constantinopolitana cum dictis reliquiis et annulis et rebus aliis multis, cum lapidibus pretiosis, latenter recedens ad Angliam usque pervenit, veniensque ad sanctum Albanum cuidam ibidem monacho quandam crucem argenteam et deauratam, cum duobus digitis de sancta Margareta et annulis aureis lapidibusque pretiosis, vendidit, quæ omnia nunc in monasterio sancti Albani in magna veneratione habentur; deinde dictus capellanus de mantica sua quandam crucem ligneam extrahens ostendit eam quibusdam monachis, de qua etiam affirmavit cum juramento quod indubitanter erat ex ligno illo, in quo Salvator mundi pro redemptione generis humani pependit, sed, quia non credebatur dictis ejus ibidem, recessit inde, thesaurum impretiabilem, licet ignotum, secum

gerens. Habuit autem dictus capellanus duos filios parvulos, de quorum sustentatione et cura nimis erat sollicitus, qua curiositate ductus in pluribus monasteriis tali conditione prædictam obtulit crucem, ut ipse et filii ejus reciperentur ad ordinem monachatus; qui, cum multis in locis inter divites repulsam passus fuisset, venit tandem ad cellam quandam, quæ Bromholm nuncupatur, pauperrimam et ædificiis omnimodis destitutam, in territorio Norfolcensi sitam, et, accersito ad se priore cum quibusdam de fratribus, ostendit eis crucem supradictam, quæ duplici ligno ex transverso fuerat fabricata, habens fere longitudinem manus humanæ, et rogavit humiliter, quatenus cum ipsa cruce et aliis reliquiis quas habebat ipsum et filios suos reciperent ad ordinem monachorum. Prior vero et fratres ejus de tanto exhilarati thesauro illico, procurante Domino, qui honestam semper amplectitur paupertatem, dictis capellani adhibuerunt fidem, et lignum Dominicum reverenter accipientes detulerunt illud in oratorium suum et cum quanta potuerunt devotione in loco honestissimo servaverunt. Hoc denique anno, ut prædictum est, cœperunt divina celebrari miracula, ad laudem et gloriam vivificæ crucis, in monasterio prædicto; ubi mortuis vita, cæcis visus, claudis gressus restituitur, leprosis caro munda donatur, obsessi a dæmonibus liberantur, et quicumque infirmus cum fide ad lignum prædictum accesserit incolumis et sanus recedit. Frequenter autem adoratur et colitur crux præfata non solum a gente Anglicana, verum etiam ab hominibus de regionibus longe positis, et, qui de illa divina audierunt miracula, devotissime venerantur.

A.D. 1223. Miracles at Bromholm.

Qualiter rex Anglorum, invitis baronibus, dominica castella in usus suos receperat.

A.D. 1224. The king demands of the barons the custody of their castles.

Anno Domini MCCXXIV. rex Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Norhamptonam, præsente archiepiscopo Cantuariensi cum suis suffraganeis et militia magna nimis; comes vero Cestrensis cum suis conspiratoribus apud Leicestriam tenuit festum suum, tumens et minas contra regem et [1]justiciarium intendens pro custodiis castrorum ac terrarum, quas idem rex exigebat ab illo. In crastino autem post missarum solemnia archiepiscopus Cantuariensis cum suis suffraganeis episcopis, albis induti vestibus et candelis accensis, excommunicaverunt omnes regis et regni perturbatores et sanctæ ecclesiæ et rerum ecclesiasticarum invasores; deinde idem archiepiscopus misit solennes nuntios apud Leicestriam ad comitem Cestriæ et suos complices, firmiter denuntians singulis et universis, quod, nisi in crastino resignarent in manus regis omnia castella et honores ad coronam spectantes, ipse et omnes episcopi nominatim excommunicarent illos, sicut eisdem a domino papa fuerat demandatum. Tunc comes Cestrensis et ejus complices, cum per exploratores edocti fuissent quod rex majorem quam ipsi habuit numerum armatorum, consternati sunt valde, quia, si facultas eis suppeteret, in regem propter justiciarium potenter arma moverent; sed, cum proprium conspexissent defectum, verebantur dubium certamen inire, et præterea timuerunt archiepiscopum et episcopos, ne forte illos excommunicarent nisi desisterent ab incœptis; unde saluberrimo usi

[1] *Justiciarium.*] Whose stratagem it was, by taking the castles out of their hands, to diminish their power; Rad. de Coggeshale.

consilio venerunt apud Norhamtonam ad regem universi, et a comite Cestrensi incipientes reddiderunt singuli castella et municipia, honores et custodias, regi, quæ ad coronam spectare videbantur; mansit nihilominus eorundem magnatum indignatio adversus regem, quia noluit ad illorum instantiam justiciarium amovere. Erant autem hujus dissidii incentores comes Cestrensis, comes Albemarlensis, Johannes constabularius Cestriæ, Falcasius cum suis castellanis, Robertus de Veteri-ponte, Brienus de Insula, Petrus de Malo-leone, Philippus Marc, Ingelardus de Athie, Willelmus de Cantelo et Willelmus filius ejus, et multi alii, qui omnes pacem regni perturbare summopere conabantur. A.D. 1224.

Qualiter Lodowicus, rex Francorum, Rupellam cum residuo Pictaviæ subjugavit.

Eodem anno rex Francorum Lodowicus duxit exercitum grandem ad Rupellam, ut et illam vel armis vel pretio subjugaret; quo cum pervenisset, obtulit civibus non modicam pecuniam, ut villam suam ei reddentes fidelitatem sibi facerent essentque illi de cætero intendentes; at cives, cum a rege Anglorum se quasi [1]derelictos reputassent, tam prece quam pretio inducti regi Francorum [2]Rupellam tradiderunt. Tunc rex tam in villa quam in castello milites posuit et servientes, ac deinde, de tota Pictavia securi- Rochelle given up to the French.

[1] *Derelictos.*] In the Close Rolls is a writ to Savary de Mauleon as seneschal of Poitou, charging him with neglect in not having appointed B. de Podio (according to his own previous recommendation) to the government of Rochelle; p. 582. After Rochelle was taken, according to the French chronicles, fearing to return to England, de Mauleon went over to the enemy. Rec. des Hist. tom. xvii. p. 307.

[2] *Rupellam tradiderunt.*] Letters upon the loss of Rochelle, from the mayor and council of Bayonne, are printed in Rymer, i. p. 173.

A.D. 1224. tate recepta, [1]sine sanguinis effusione ad propria pacifice remeavit. Est autem Rupella portus in Pictavia, ubi reges Anglorum et milites ad defensionem regionum illarum applicare consueverant, quibus nunc via præclusa est per insidias, quæ sibi a suis baronibus in Anglia parabantur.

De obsidione castri Bedefordensis et de concilio Norhamtonensi.

Council of Northampton. Per idem tempus convenerunt ad colloquium in octavis sanctæ Trinitatis apud Norhamtonam rex cum archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, baronibus et aliis multis, de regni negotiis tractaturi; voluit enim rex uti consilio magnatum suorum de terris transmarinis, quas rex Francorum paulatim occupaverat, sed secus accidit quam sperabat. Nempe fuerunt eo tempore apud Dunstapliam justiciarii regis, quos 'itinerantes' appellamus, Martinus scilicet de Pateshulle, Thomas de Muletona, Henricus de Braibroc, et alii, qui ibidem tenebant placita regis de nova dissaisina; ubi Falcasius inter alios, qui multos spoliaverat, cecidit in misericordia regis de plusquam triginta paribus literarum, de quibus singulis in centum libris erga regem debuerat condemnari. Hoc itaque cum Falcasio fuerat intimatum, iratus est valde; unde nimis inconsulte agens jussit militibus, qui in præsidio castri Bedefordensis erant, quatenus in manu armata ad Dunstapliam accedentes justiciarios præfatos caperent atque vinculis constrictos apud castrum de Bedeford in obscuritatem detruderent carceralem. Sed justiciarii talia cognoscentes recesserunt cum festinatione, quo im-

[1] *Sine sanguinis effusione.*] In the Dunst. Chron. Savary de Mauleon is said to have resisted, and killed many of the enemy; p. 140.

petus eos ducebat; inter quos [1]Henricus de Brai- A.D. 1224.
broc incaute fugiens captus a militibus sæpe dictis et satis inhumane tractatus apud castrum prælibatum est carcerali custodiæ mancipatus. Rumore itaque divulgato, venit uxor prædicti Henrici apud Norhamtonam ad regem, et, audiente universo concilio, de viro suo cum lachrymis querelam deposuit; quod rex factum nimis indigne ferens quæsivit consilium a clero simul et populo, quid sibi super tanta injuria foret agendum. At omnes una voce consilium regi dederunt, quatenus sine mora, et omnibus aliis prætermissis negotiis, in manu valida et armata ad castrum prælibatum accedens tantam temeritatem studeat vindicare; cumque domino regi dicta placuisset sententia, ipso jubente, omnes ad arma quam citius convolantes ad castellum de Bedeford, tam [2]clerus quam populus, pervenerunt. Missis igitur a rege nuntiis ad magistros castellanos, petiit ingressum sibi dari, et Henricum de Braibroc justiciarium suum reddi mandavit. Willelmus quoque de Breaute, frater Falcasii, et alii inclusi, nuntiis responderunt, se castellum non reddituros nisi inde a domino suo Falcasio præceptum haberent, et ob hoc præcipue, quod regi de homagio vel fidelitate non tenebantur astricti. Quod responsum cum regi renuntiatum fuisset, indignatus est valde, et iratus jussit castellum cuneis militaribus circumcingi; illi vero, sese ad defensionem præparantes, muros et propugnacula undique defendere vacaverunt. Tunc archiepiscopus et episcopi

Siege of Bedford castle.

[1] *Henricus de Braibroc.*] In Rymer is a writ of the king, by which he remits his anger against Colin de Breaute, which he had entertained against him for the imprisonment of Henry de Braibroc by his brother, i. p. 175.

[2] *Clerus.*] An account of the aid furnished by the clergy on this occasion is in a writ by the king, dated Bedford, 18th Aug.; Rym. i. p. 175.

A.D. 1224. Siege of Bedford castle.

universi ipsum Falcasium et omnes, qui in castelli præsidio erant, candelis accensis, [1]excommunicationis mucrone percusserunt. Obsessum est autem castellum decimo sexto kalendas Julii, die videlicet Jovis proximo post octavas Trinitatis. Et, his ita gestis, venerunt ex præcepto regis [2]bellica instrumenta, petrariæ scilicet et mangonella, quibus in gyrum locatis, insultus acerrimos assidue faciebant; inclusi e contrario defensioni vacantes tela mortifera viriliter emittebant. Quid plura? vulnerabantur mutuo multi et occidebantur. Interea rex misit manum armatam, ut Falcasium quæreret et inventum regi præsentaret, sed ille per exploratores præmonitus ad Walliam usque confugit; unde nuntii ad regem revertentes se laborasse inaniter fatebantur. At rex in iram provocatus juravit per animam patris sui, quod, si per vim caperentur inclusi, patibulo suspenderet universos; illi vero per minas regis ad majores provocati injurias prohibuerunt regiis nuntiis, ne quis eos ulterius de reddendo castello sollicitaret. Crevit igitur hinc inde mortale odium ex multitudine peremptorum, ita quod nec fratres fratribus, nec parentes filiis, pepercerunt. Tandem vero, post stragem nimiam mutuo illatam, artifices regis castellum fecerunt ligneum, altum et [3]geometrica arte fabricatum, in quo balistarios collocaverunt, qui

---

[1] *Excommunicationis mucrone percusserunt.*] The bishop of Coventry writes to the king, that, finding Faulkes de Breaute was staying in the neighbourhood of Chester, he, with the bishop of Exeter, had excommunicated him; *ibid.*

[2] *Bellica instrumenta.*] See a more particular account of the siege and taking of the castle in the Chron. Dunst. p. 142, *seq.* The Close Rolls contain many writs for arms, provisions, etc. for the use of the king and the army before Bedford castle; p. 605, *seqq.*

[3] *Geometrica arte fabricatum.*] 'Erant ibi duæ machinæ ligneæ arte fabrili supra eminentiam turris et castri erecta ad opus balistariorum;' *ibid.*

omnem castelli possent circumstantiam perscru- A.D. 1224.
tari; nec deinceps erat aliquis in castello, qui ab armis exiret, quin protinus mortaliter læderetur. Nec idcirco inclusi prosternere adversarios omiserunt; nam in confusionem propriam duos milites de exercitu regis, qui se nimis temere morti exposuerunt, cum multis aliis peremerunt, undecunque in se adversariorum suorum animos provocantes.

De captione castri prædicti et militum suspensione.

Rex autem interim de maneriis Falcasii et Bedford castle taken.
terris ubique per Angliam fecit fruges et armenta cum rebus aliis distrahi et infiscari, ut inde in obsidione diutina ex ejus damnis haberet auxilium. Tandem, cum a regis bellatoribus duæ testudines, quas Gallice [1] 'Brutesches' appellant, non sine multorum læsione subactæ fuissent, invaserunt castellum undique consequenter inclusosque, vellent nollent, ingredi compulerunt. At regales castellum ingressi, equos, arma, cum victualibus multis et innumeris rebus aliis, lucrati, hilares revertuntur; deinde turrim aggredientes regii victores magnam murorum partem contriverunt. Et his ita gestis, cum viderent inclusi se diutius resistere non posse, in vigilia assumptionis beatæ Mariæ de castello quidam ex eis exeuntes misericordiam regis implorabant, quos rex omnes vinculis jussit arctissimis constringi donec residuos subjugasset. In crastino autem, cum omnes vulnerati et plagis lethiferis afflicti exiissent et ad præsentiam regis adducti fuissent, addicti sunt ad suspendium universi; suspensi sunt itaque inter milites et servientes, qui propter superbiam suam, quam

[1] *Brutesches.*] See Du Cange's Glossary, under the word 'Bretachiæ.'

A.D. 1224. regi ostenderant in obsidione jam finita, non potuerunt misericordiam impetrare, [viginti quatuor.] Henricus vero de Braibroc sanus et incolumis ad regem veniens multas ei gratiarum retulit actiones. Falcasius autem, spe falsa seductus, credidit suos per annum integrum castellum posse a captione defendere; sed tandem, cum fratres suos et alios omnes suspensos certa relatione cognovisset, sub conductu Alexandri, Coventrensis episcopi, apud Bedeford venit ad regem et corruens [1]pronus ad pedes ejus postulavit, quatenus pro magnis obsequiis suis et laboribus sumptuosis sibi ac patri suo tempore hostilitatis impensis misericordiam adhiberet. Tunc rex per consilium tradidit illum, castellis, terris ac rebus omnibus spoliatum, sub custodia Eustachii, Londinensis episcopi, donec quid de illo ageret esset sententialiter definitum; et sic quasi in momento idem Falcasius de ditissimo pauperrimus effectus, multis et maxime nocentibus poterit fieri in exemplum. De hoc vero casu fortunæ quidam sic ait,

'Perdidit in mense . Falco tam fervidus ense,
Omine sub sævo . quicquid quæsivit ab ævo.'

Uxor quoque sæpedicti [2]Falcasii conspectui se regis et archiepiscopi repræsentans dixit se in eum nunquam consensisse, ut illi matrimonio jungeretur; unde, cum tempore hostilitatis violenter capta esset et absque consensu desponsata, divortium fieri postulavit. Tunc archiepiscopus statuit illi diem, ut interim deliberationem haberet quid agere debuisset; rex vero concessit ei terras omnes et possessiones suas per totam Angliam

[1] *Pronus ad pedes ejus.*] The charter by which he resigns all his money and other property into the king's hands is in Rymer, i. p. 175; it is dated the 25th August.

[2] *Falcasii.*] 'Margareta scilicet de Ripariis;' Paris.

et eam sub custodia Willelmi comitis de Warrenna deputavit. Regi vero, pro magnis laboribus suis et expensis, tam a prælatis quam a laicis concessum est per totam Angliam carucagium, de qualibet caruca duæ marcæ argenti; magnatibus item concessit rex scutagium, videlicet de scuto quolibet duas marcas sterlingorum; et sic omnes ad propria recesserunt. Castellum quoque illud fecit rex complanari et redigi in acervos, atque domos dedit Willelmo de Bello-campo, et locum cum ædificiis universis. A.D. 1224.

Concessa est regi Anglorum quintadecima pars rerum mobilium.

Anno Domini MCCXXV. rex Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Westmonasterium, præsentibus clero et populo cum magnatibus regionis. [1]Solennitate igitur, ut decebat, completa, Hubertus de Burgo, domini regis justiciarius, ex parte ejusdem regis proposuit coram archiepiscopis, episcopis, comitibus, baronibus et aliis universis damna et injurias, quæ regi illata fuerant in partibus transmarinis, ex quibus non solum rex, sed et comites multi ac barones sunt exhæredati cum ipso; et, cum multi sunt in causa, multorum subventio erit necessaria. Petiit ergo ab omnibus consilium pariter et auxilium, quibus corona Angliæ dignitates amissas ac jura posset pristina revocare; ad hoc quoque plene perficiendum, regi sufficere credidit, si ei quintadecima pars omnium rerum A.D. 1225. Tax of a fifteenth levied on moveables.

[1] *Solennitate.*] The directions to the justiciaries as to the mode of collecting this tax may be seen in Rymer, p. 177; immediately following which is a bull from the pope to the king, 'quod dictus rex prudenter se habeat erga suos vassallos.' In it he urges the king, 'ut cum vassallis tuis non ponas hoc tempore rationem, nec eos super restitutione tuorum reddituum scandalizes; sed hæc et alia, quæ possunt scandalum generare, prudenter in tempus differas opportunum.'

A.D. 1225. mobilium totius regni Angliæ tam a personis ecclesiasticis quam a laicis donaretur. His in hunc modum prosecutis, archiepiscopus et concio tota episcoporum, comitum, baronum, abbatum et priorum, habita deliberatione, regi dedere responsum, quod regis petitionibus gratanter adquiescerent,[1] si illis diu petitas libertates concedere voluisset. Annuit itaque rex cupiditate ductus quod petebant magnates, chartisque protinus conscriptis et regis sigillo munitis, ad singulos Angliæ comitatus [2]chartæ singulæ diriguntur, et ad provincias illas, quæ in forestis sunt constitutæ, duæ chartæ sunt directæ, una scilicet de libertatibus communibus et altera de libertatibus forestæ; istarum autem tenor chartarum superius habetur expressius ubi historia agitur de rege Johanne, ita quod chartæ utrorumque regum in nullo inveniuntur dissimiles. Tunc constitutus est dies certus ad mensem post Pascha, ut de singulis comitatibus regni duodecim milites et legales homines eligerentur, qui addito juramento novas a veteribus discernerent forestas, ut omnes illæ, quæ inventæ fuerint afforestatæ post primam coronationem Henrici avi istius regis, statim deafforestentur; et sic, soluto concilio, delatæ sunt chartæ singulæ ad singulos comitatus, ubi ex regis mandato, literatorio interposito juramento, ab omnibus observari jubentur.

Ut rex Anglorum Richardum fratrem suum in Wasconiam miserit.

Expedition into Gascony under prince Richard.

Eodem anno, in die purificationis beatæ Mariæ, Richardus, frater regis Angliæ, ab eodem

[1] *Adquiescerent.*] The Cistercians gave him two thousand, the Jews five thousand marks; Annal. Waverl. p. 189.

[2] *Chartæ.*] In the Annal. Burton. and Walter Hemingford these charters are given at length.

rege donatus est [1]cingulo militari, et decem nobiles cum eo, qui ad ejus sunt obsequium deputati; qui postea tempore vernali, a rege cum Willelmo[2] comite Saresbiriensi et Philippo de Albeneio militibusque quadraginta in Wasconiam die Palmarum missus, velis prosperis in civitate Burdegalensi omnes feliciter appulerunt; quorum adventus cum archiepiscopo et civibus divulgatus fuisset, honorifice ab omnibus sunt recepti. Deinde, congregatis civibus coram archiepiscopo et nuntiis regis, Richardus, frater regis prædicti, literas fratris sui archiepiscopo et civibus cunctis porrexit, in quibus rex humiliter supplicavit, quatenus omnes homines et fideles sui de regionibus illis fratrem ejus amicabiliter susciperent, et consilium ei pariter et auxilium præstarent, quibus terras amissas revocare valuisset; at omnes gaudenter ipsum suscipientes regi per illum Angliæ subjectionem fecerunt. Venerunt igitur ad eum multi de partibus illis milites et servientes, quibus cum stipendia sufficienter ministrasset, in ejus obsequio remanserunt; dederat ei namque rex, antequam illum miserat ad partes transmarinas, Cornubiæ comitatum cum tota Pictavia, unde ab omnibus comes Pictaviensis vocabatur. Itaque comes Richardus, cum avunculo suo Willelmo comite Saresbiriensi et Philippo de Albeneio et militia copiosa, processit per villas et castella Wasconiæ regionis, et quoscumque contradictores, qui homagium [3]regi et fidelitatem facere noluerunt, invenit, castella eorum et villas obsedit et poten- A.D. 1225.

[1] *Cingulo militari.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 153.

[2] *Willelmo comite Saresbiriensi et Philippo de Albeneio.*] For the king's letters recommendatory on their behalf, see Rymer, i. p. 177; compare the account of this expedition by the writer of the 'Gesta Ludovici,' Rec. des Hist. xvii. p. 307.

[3] *Regi,*] wanting in *C.*

A.D. 1225. ter omnia subjugavit; nam Riolense castrum cum villa longa obsidione cepit, [1]villam sancti Marcarii cum municipio obtinuit, Bregerac castrum obsedit et dominum ejus ad regis fidelitatem revocavit. Sed, dum in longa obsidione apud Riolense castrum acerrimos insultus et crebros ageret, Lodowicus, rex Francorum, Hugoni comiti Marchiæ aliisque Pictaviæ baronibus dedit in mandatis, quatenus ad castrum præfatum hostiliter accedentes comitem Richardum captum sibi præsentarent et obsessos a periculo liberarent. Comes vero Marchiæ, junctis sibi quibusdam baronibus et militibus armatis, cum apparatu non modico ad prædictam obsidionem dissolvendam processit, sed Richardus comes cum sociis suis, de adventu hostium per exploratores præmunitus, paravit ei insidias, et, parte exercitus sui ad obsidionem dimissa, ipse cum parte armatorum probatissima ad nemus quoddam, quod prope erat, divertens hostes venientes exspectavit ibidem; qui dum locum insidiarum versus obsidionem pertransissent, comes Richardus et socii ejus cum strepitu buccinarum et vibramine hastarum irruerunt in ipsos, et, dirissimo conflictu inter partes confecto, in fugam adversarios compulerunt, quos comes Richardus ardenter insecutus bigas hostium et summarios cum spoliis et vasis argenteis subegit, multis ex fugientibus interfectis, et sic in brevi totam sibi Wasconiam subjugavit. Eodem anno Johannes, Eliensis episcopus, diem clausit extremum; cui successit Gaufridus de Burgo, archidiaconus Norwicensis.

[1] *Villam sancti Marcarii.*] S. Macaire. A letter from Richard to his brother, giving an account of his successes, dated from this town on the 2nd of May, is in Rymer, i. p. 178.

De exilio Falcasii proditoris.

Circa hos quoque dies, Martio scilicet mense, convenerunt apud Westmonasterium ad colloquium rex Anglorum cum magnatibus suis, ubi idem rex jussit sententialiter diffinire, quid de proditore suo Falcasio foret agendum. Proceres vero in hoc pariter consenserunt cum rege, eo quod patri suo multis fideliter servierat annis, ne de vita periclitaretur vel membris, sed, ut Angliam æternaliter abjuraret, omnes communiter addixerunt; quo facto, præcepit Willelmo comiti Warennæ rex, ut ipsum sub salvo ad mare conduceret et navi impositum committeret ventis et velis. Quod cum factum fuisset, dum Falcasius navem ingrederetur, adjuravit comitem prædictum cum lachrymis ut salutaret dominum suum regem, affirmans cum juramento, quod perturbationes, quas in regno fecerat, instinctu majorum regni Angliæ se fecisse; sicque cum quinque tantum servientibus in Normanniam transvectus, confestim ut applicuit a ministris regis Francorum [1]captus est et regi prædicto præsentatus, sed, quoniam inventus fuit cruce signatus, dimiserunt eum, qui illico Romam profectus est. Tandem cum Roberto Passeleawe, clerico suo, papæ præsentatus est, sicut suo loco dicetur.

A.D. 1225. Sentence of banishment passed on F. de Breaute.

De visione quæ forestæ deafforestari debeant.

Eodem anno, ad mensem de Pascha, missi sunt a rege Angliæ Hugo de Nevilla et Brienus de Insula cum aliis ad hoc assignatis per Angliam, ut in singulis forestarum provinciis duodecim milites, vel liberi homines et legales, eli-

Inspection of forests.

[1] *Captus.*] He was taken in Burgundy, as it appears from a letter of the pope's legate; Rymer, i. p. 176.

A.D. 1225. gerentur ad deambulandum metas forestarum, ut per sacramentum eorum, quæ forestæ remanere ut fuerunt prius et quæ deafforestari debeant, discernatur. Facta itaque in brevi regii exsecutione mandati, licet non sine magna contradictione plurimorum, concessis libertatibus singuli usi sunt, de boscis suis propriis vendentes, essarta facientes, bestias venantes, terram arabilem de inculta sulcantes, ita quod de nemoribus deafforestatis omnes pro libitu disponebant; et non solum homines, verum etiam canes, qui prius expeditari solebant, has libertates se habere gaudebant. Communibus vero libertatibus magnates, milites et libere tenentes adeo usi sunt, quod nec iota unum in regis charta contentum exstitit prætermissum.

De collectione quintædecimæ ad opus regis.

Tax on moveables collected. Circa eosdem denique dies quintædecimæ partis medietas totius regni omnium mobilium et rerum habitarum colligitur ad opus regis, concessis induciis de altera medietate usque ad festum sancti Michaelis. Eodem anno Hugo Bigod, comes Orientalium Anglorum, humanæ naturæ debitum solvit, cujus terras et honores omnes rex sub justiciarii custodia deputavit.

De concubinis sacerdotum.

Act on the concubines of the clergy. Eodem anno exivit decretum ab archiepiscopo Cantuariensi et episcopis ejus suffraganeis in hunc modum. Concubinæ sacerdotum et clericorum, qui infra sacros ordines constituti et beneficiati sunt, ecclesiastica careant sepultura, nisi sane se correxerint et incolumes, vel tanta earum in extremis appareat pœnitentia, propter quam non immerito cum eis debeat dispensari. Item, non recipiantur ad osculum pacis, nec

panem benedictum percipiant in ecclesia, quamdiu concubinarii eas detinent in domibus suis vel publice extra domos. Item, si pepererint, non purificentur, nisi prius sufficientem præstiterint cautionem archidiacono, vel ejus officiali, de satisfactione in proximo capitulo post purificationem earum facienda. Item, sacerdotes, in quorum parochiis concubinæ talium commorantur, si non hoc ostenderint archidiacono, vel ejus officiali, suspendantur; et, priusquam relaxentur, gravi pœnitentiæ subjaceant. Item, quæ convinci poterit, quod sacerdos eam carnaliter cognoverit, publicam agat pœnitentiam et solennem, ac si de adulterio esset convicta, etiam si soluta fuerit; si vero desponsata super rem hujuscemodi fuerit convicta, tanquam pro duplici adulterio puniatur, ne tanti reatus impunitas aliis transeat in materiam delinquendi. A.D. 1225.

Ut comes Saresbiriensis a naufragio fuerit liberatus.

Per idem tempus Willelmus comes Saresbiriensis, qui cum comite Richardo militaverat in partibus transmarinis, ad Angliam transiturus naves intravit; [1]sed cum longo maris periculo et ventorum turbinibus per dies plurimos et noctes in partes diversas jactaretur, cum ipsis nautis et aliis omnibus, qui in navi erant, de vita desperatus, annulos pretiosos et quæcumque in auro vel argento aut pretiosis vestibus possidebat fluctibus pelagi commisit, ut, sicut ad vitam nudus intravit temporalem, ita ab omni honore terreno spoliatus ad patriam transiret

The earl of Salisbury wrecked;

[1] *Sed.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 161; where is also an account of the fleet, which had taken out treasure to Richard, having been stopped in Rochelle roads by Savary de Mauleon on its return. The commanders offered him 200 marks to allow them to proceed, which was refused; the wind, however, shifting suddenly, they got under weigh and escaped.

A.D. 1225. æternam. Et, cum in suprema fuisset desperatione constitutus, visus est cereus ingens et magno splendore coruscans ab omnibus, qui in navi periclitabantur, in summitate mali, et juxta cereum stantem viderunt puellam quandam nimia pulchritudine decoratam, quæ lumen cerei, quod nocturnas tenebras illustrabat, a ventorum pluviarumque irruentium robore conservaret præclarum; ex hac quoque cælestis visione claritatis tam comes ipse quam nautæ omnes securitate concepta, divinum sibi adesse auxilium confidebant. Et cum universi, qui in navi erant, quid hæc visio portenderet, ignorarent, solus Willelmus comes præfatus hujus benignitatis gratiam beatæ Mariæ virgini assignavit; siquidem comes sæpedictus, die quo primo donatus cingulo fuerat militari, cereum unum ante altare beatissimæ matris Dei assignavit, ut ad missam, quæ diebus singulis in honorem ejusdem Dei genitricis cum horis canonicis devote solet decantari, jugiter arderet, et pro lumine temporali lucem commutaret æternam.

Qualiter idem comes hostium insidias evaserit.

cast on the island of Ré; His ita gestis, cum crastinus dies illuxisset, projectus est comes cum sociis suis, ventis impellentibus, ad quandam maris insulam, quæ Re dicebatur, tribus a Rupella distans miliaribus, ubi brevibus ingressi cymbis ad insulam navigabant. Est autem in insula illa abbatia quædam ordinis Cisterciensis sita, ad quam comes nuntios dirigens postulavit, ut tutus posset ibidem latere ab hostibus, donec aura sibi felicior arrideret; quod abbas loci sibi gratanter annuens cum honore ipsum et ejus consortes suscepit. Erat autem insula illa in custodia Savarici de Malo-leone, qui tunc temporis cum Lo-

dowico, Francorum rege, militabat et maris insulas nonnullas cum armatis non paucis observabat; cujus duo servientes, qui comitem plene noverant et cum aliis multis ad insularum custodiam fuerant deputati, amicabiliter accedentes ad eum postquam per triduum delituerat ibidem, dixerunt, quod, nisi ante lucem crastinam ab insula recederet, caperetur a suis sodalibus, qui cum illis insulas et maris semitas observabant. Tunc comes, datis servientibus prædictis viginti libris sterlingorum, ad naves celeriter convolavit, et maris sese fluctibus commendans fere per tres menses antequam in Angliam applicaret inter undas sævientes continue laborabat. A.D. 1225. His escape thence.

Ut magister Otho pro negotiis domini papæ in Angliam venerit.

Eodem anno magister Otho, domini papæ nuntius, in Angliam veniens pro magnis [1]ecclesiæ Romanæ negotiis regi literas præsentavit; sed rex, cognito literarum tenore, respondit, quod solus non potuit diffinire, nec debuit, negotium quod omnes clericos et laicos generaliter totius regni tangebat. Tunc per consilium Stephani, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi, datus est dies a rege in octavis Epiphaniæ, ut, [2]convocatis omnibus clericis et laicis, super præfato negotio tunc tractarent apud Westmonasterium, et ibidem fieret quod justum singulis videretur. Otho, the pope's legate, arrives in England;

Ut idem Otho Falcasium regi pacificare laboraverit.

Eodem tempore magister Otho ex parte domini papæ regem Angliæ humiliter rogavit, ut Falcasio sibi reconciliato uxorem cum terris et Intercedes for F. de Breaute.

[1] *Ecclesiæ.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 161.

[2] *Convocatis omnibus clericis et laicis.*] See below, p. 114.

A.D. 1225. omnibus rebus amissis ad integrum restitueret, et ipsum, qui patri suo et sibi in guerra sua tam fideliter servierat, pura, ut decebat, diligeret caritate. Ad hoc quoque [1]respondit rex, quod propter proditionem manifestam ab omni clero et populo regni per judicium curiæ suæ ab Anglia fuerat in exilium pulsus, et, licet regni cura specialiter ad ipsum spectare videretur, debet leges quidem et bonas regni consuetudines observare. Hæc autem cum audisset magister Otho, cessavit ulterius de Falcasio sollicitare regem. Tunc idem Otho cepit ab omnibus ecclesiis Angliæ conventualibus, nomine procurationis, duas marcas argenti; et sciendum est, quod, tempore quo magister Otho venit in Angliam, dominus papa misit nuntios per orbem universum, exactiones ubique indebitas exigens, sicut inferius dicetur.

De puella quadam, quæ seculum relinquens ad ordinem Minorum confugit.

Legend. Circa eosdem dies erat puella quædam in finibus Burgundiæ, generis nobilitate præclara, quam parentes de possessionibus non modicis hæredem sibi constituere decernentes cuidam viro ex illustri prosapia genito nuptam tradere voluerunt; sed puella, quæ ab annis puerilibus studiis fuerat liberalibus imbuta, in secreta cordis puritate virginitatem suam Deo dedicaverat. Parentum clam deserens palatium in habitu peregrino, ut se liberius a paternis conspectibus amoveret, contulit se ad contubernium quorundam fratrum de ordine Minorum; ubi, ipsa exigente, de illius rigore ordinis ad plenum erudita calceamenta deposuit, saccum

[1] *Respondit rex.*] Compare the legate's letters to the pope, in Rymer, i. p. 176.

et cilicium induit, atque crines, in quibus luxuria regnare solet, despicabiliter præcidit, et, quibuscumque modis potuit, naturalem quem habebat corporis decorem in omnem studuit deformitatem transferre. Sed cum ad hæc nimis inaniter laborasset, dum non potuit, prohibente natura, elegantissimam sui corporis [deformare] dispositionem, quæ in omni dimensitate videbatur quasi incomparabilis, illam solummodo, quæ intus erat, carnis munditiam perenni Sponso, qui in cælis est, consecrare disposuit; et, hoc propositum ut liberius perduceret ad effectum, spontaneam paupertatem elegit, officium sanctæ prædicationis assumpsit, vestium asperitatem induit, in lecto pro stratu mattam, pro cervicali saxum, habuit, atque in vigiliis continuatis et jejuniis carnem affligens, orationibus insistens, in rerum supercælestium contemplatione studuit infatigabiliter conversari. Tandem, cum per multorum curricula annorum in omni perfectione et vitæ sanctitate Deo placere et evangelium pacis per civitates et castella, et præcipue sexui muliebri, prædicare studuerat, invidit ejus perfectioni humani generis inimicus, et per septem menses in tot puellam ac talibus rerum secularium tentationibus submergere curavit, quod, nisi ei divinum adfuisset auxilium, omnia bona vitæ præcedentis studia amisisset; reduxit namque ei ad mentem diabolus diebus simul et noctibus prædia parentum suorum quæ reliquerat fœcundissima, vinearum fertilium emolumenta, spatia pratorum amœnissima et florum diversorum varietate distincta, fontium scaturientium et rivulorum suaviter murmurantium oblectamenta, lignorum in nemoribus proceritatem, prolis fœcunditatem, viriles amplexus ac veneris inter marem et fœminam delectatio-

A.D. 1225. Legend.

A.D. 1225. Legend.

nem, lectorum nobilium mollitiem, adstantium balatronum jocunditatem, annulorum ac lapidum pretiosorum decorem, piscium et volatilium ferarumque silvestrium gustum delectabilem et suavem. In his igitur tentationibus et aliis consimilibus puella fere desperata et in diversas meditationes inducta, utrum derelicta repeteret, an in proposito religionis perseveraret, ineffabili mentis et corporis cruciatu diebus singulis et noctibus torquebatur; sed miserator et misericors Dominus, qui sperantes in se ultra quam possunt pati non permittit tentari, oculum puellæ restituit rationis, ut cerneret quanta in rebus temporalibus et delectationibus supradictis curiosa sit sollicitudo, in carnali commixtione turpitudo, quanto res temporales sudore adquiruntur et cum quanto dolore amittuntur, quanta sit coram Domino virginalis munditia, qui matrem suam fœcundam esse voluit et in virginitate permanere disposuit, quæ merces sequitur fructum boni operis, quæ dulcedo sit in studio sanctæ ac divinæ contemplationis, quæ societas civium supernorum, quam suavis sit et delectabilis sanctarum refectio animarum et regnare cum Christo, ubi frigiditas nullum afficit, fames et sitis neminem affligit, ira, rixa, vana gloria, invidia, superbia, accidia, avaritia, cupiditas et ebrietas nullum premit. Hæc et his similia virgo beata sæpius mente revolvens, et inter tentationum turbines virtutum præteritarum custos existens, armis accincta divinis artes diaboli fraudulentas omnes feliciter superavit et ipsum ad tartara confusum direxit.

Qualiter puella fuerit liberata per dæmonem a quodam viro libidinoso.

Tandem post dies paucos, cum puella præfata ab omnibus esset diabolicis incursionibus penitus absoluta, diabolus ad eam reversus salutavit illam et dixit, 'Salve,' inquit, 'domina mea et Deo cælorum virgo dilectissima; ego vero sum ille Sathanas, qui te jam per septem menses in tot tentationibus, licet inaniter, induxi, ut a bono te proposito revocarem et in eis laqueis irretirem; sed, quoniam in artibus meis fraudulentis a te victus defeci, hoc mihi pro pœna a Domino cæli inflictum est, ut nunquam de cætero mihi liceat aliquod hominum genus tentare vel quempiam a bonis actibus impedire. Habeo præterea mandatum a Domino, cui obtemperare necesse est, ut quodcumque mihi præceperis cum festinatione perficiam, et etiam quodcumque supplicium præceperis cum festinatione sine mora subire.' Hæc audiens puella ait ad dæmonem, 'Conservet me Deus a vestro consortio et famulatu, novit enim Ille quod talem ministrum nunquam dilexi.' Et, his ita gestis, contigit puellam quandam ingredi civitatem, et gratia hospitandi domum cujusdam matronæ ingressa hospitium postulans impetravit. Vespere autem facto, juvenis quidam, prædictæ matronæ filius, de negotiis consuetis domum rediens, cum vidisset virginem, quam mater ejus caritative hospitaverat, cœpit admirari in habitu adeo despicabili, et faciei pallore simul et macie, omnium membrorum ejus naturalem dispositionem; in qua opus naturæ in tantum laudavit, quod a planta pedis usque ad verticem in nullo deliquit, sed et totius corporis sui dispositione etiam generis nobilitatem evidenter expressit. Quid ergo? Exarsit

A.D. 1225. Legend.

A.D. 1225. Legend.

juvenis in concupiscentia virginis, et accedens ad eam de consensu carnali puellam convenit. Illa, e contra, juveni constanter quod petiit denegans affirmavit se virginitatem suam ab ætate tenera Domino consecrasse ; et præterea, cum voto suæ religionis et ordinis castitas sit adnexa, votum infringere esse nefarium asserebat ; et his dictis recessit, ut nocturnam caperet requiem, ubi in quodam domatis angulo mattam sub se pro stratu, et saxum pro cervicali, juxta sui ordinis rigorem, capiti supponebat. Tunc juvenis ille, libidinis igne succensus, statuit immutabiliter in corde suo, quod, si de liberalitate a puella consensum obtinere nequiret, ipse cum ea rem ageret violenter, et veniens ad illam expressit ei quid facere cogitabat. At fœmina religiosa in angaria mentis constituta metuebat plurimum ne ejus puritas virginalis per ardorem adolescentis in aliquo læderetur, et reducens ad mentem quod sibi a diabolo dictum fuerat, quod videlicet ad nutum ejus quicquid præciperet illico adimpleret, extulit vocem et dixit, ‘ Diabole,’ inquit, ‘ ubi es ?’ Et continuo dæmon respondit dicens, ‘ Adsum, domina. Quid tibi placet ?’ Et puella, ‘ Libera me,’ inquit, ‘ cito a nebulone isto, qui me inquietat, somnum capere non permittit.’ Et continuo dæmon juvenem per pedes truculenter arripiens non sine læsione illum longius a puella projecit ; sicque ter nocte illa, dæmone procurante, dilecta Deo puella ab adolescentis ardore liberata in crastino recessit ab urbe, salva sibi pudicitia virginali. De hac quoque puella, quem finem habuerit, quoniam nullo tradente cognovi, ea quæ dicta sunt piis auribus et amatoribus sufficiant castitatis.

De quadam inclusa, quæ per septennium non comedit.

Eodem anno, in urbe Legecestrensi, obiit puella quædam inclusa religiosa, quæ per septennium ante obitum nullum omnino gustavit cibum, nisi quod diebus Dominicis corporis et sanguinis Domini communionem accepit; quod miraculum cum ad audientiam Hugonis, Lincolniensis episcopi, pervenisset, fidem non adhibuit veritati, sed plane incredulus fecit per dies quindecim a presbyteris et clericis inclusam prædictam arcta nimis observari custodia, quousque compertum fuit illam in toto termino memorato nullo usam fuisse corporis nutrimento. Faciem quoque semper habuit ut lilium candidissimam roseoque rubore perfusam, ad indicium pudicitiæ et munditiæ virginalis. A.D. 1225. Legend.

Quod comitissa Saresbiriensis maritum respuerit.

Circa hos quoque dies relatum est regi Anglorum, Willelmum comitem Saresbiriensem, ipsius regis avunculum, dum de partibus transmarinis rediret in Angliam, in mari fuisse submersum; sed, cum rex hujus rei eventum nimis moleste tulisset, accessit ad eum Hubertus, regni justiciarius, exigens ab eo ut uxorem ejusdem Willelmi daret Reimundo nepoti suo, cui honor comitatus illius jure hæreditario contingebat, ut eam sibi matrimonio copularet. Rex autem cum petitionem suam annuisset si posset comitissam inducere ad consensum, misit illico justiciarius Reimundum præfatum ad comitissam in nobili apparatu militari, si possit ad ejus amorem mulieris animum inclinare. Cumque eam Reimundus memoratus blandis sermonibus et promissionibus magnis ad consensum trahere conaretur, illa cum indignatione maxima Anecdote of the countess of Salisbury.

A.D. 1225. respondit, se nuper literas accepisse et nuntios, qui comitem virum suum sanum esse et incolumem fatebantur; respondit præterea, quod dominus suus comes si in veritate defunctus fuisset, nullo modo ipsum reciperet sponsum, quia generis ejus nobilitas id fieri prohibebat; 'Alibi,' inquit, 'tibi quæras matrimonium, quia experto reperies te huc inaniter advenisse.' At Reimundus hæc audiens confusus ab illa recessit.

Quomodo dominus papa præbendas sibi dari exegerit.

A.D. 1226. Council held at Westminster to consider the demands of the pope.

Anno Domini MCCXXVI. rex Henricus ad natale Domini celebravit festum suum apud Wintoniam, præsentibus quibusdam episcopis et magnatibus multis. Solennitate itaque peracta, profectus est rex apud Merlebergiam, ubi gravi infirmitate correptus per dies multos ibi desperatus jacebat. Venit interea terminus concilii ad festum sancti Hilarii [1]apud Westmonasterium præfixus, ubi rex cum clero et magnatibus regni comparere debuerat, ut domini papæ mandatum audiret. Multis igitur in loco præfato congregatis[2] episcopis cum aliis prælatis et laicorum turbis, magister Otho, domini papæ nuntius, de quo habita est mentio superius, literas aperte coram omnibus recitavit; in quibus idem papa allegavit scandalum sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ et opprobrium vetustissimum, notam scilicet concupiscentiæ, quæ radix dicitur omnium malorum, et in hoc præcipue, quod nullus potest aliquod negotium in Romana curia expedire nisi cum magna effusione pecuniæ et exhibitione donorum. 'Sed, quoniam scandali

[1] *Apud Westmonasterium.*] Tyrrell states, from a MS. of the Annals of S. Augustine Canterbury, that at this council the king was declared of full age, ii. p. 859.

[2] *Congregatis episcopis.*] Chron. Wikes, p. 40.

hujus et infamiæ Romana paupertas causa est, A.D. 1226.
debent omnes matris inopiam sublevare et patris ut filii naturales; quia, nisi a vobis et aliis viris bonis et honestis dona reciperemus, deficerent nobis necessaria vitæ, quod esset omnino Romanæ incongruum dignitati. Ad istud itaque scandalum penitus eradicandum, per consilium fratrum nostrorum, sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ cardinalium, quandam providimus formam, cui si volueritis consentire, a scandalo matrem vestram poteritis liberare et in curia Romana sine donorum obsequio exhibitionem justitiæ obtinere. Forma autem provisa hæc est; Petimus in primis ab omnibus ecclesiis cathedralibus duas nobis præbendas exhiberi, unam de portione episcopi et alteram de capitulo; et similiter in cœnobiis, ubi diversæ sunt portiones abbatis et conventus; a conventibus quantum pertinet ad unum monachum, æquali facta distributione bonorum suorum, et ab abbate tantundem.'

Hiis in hunc modum propositis, persuasit ex The resolution passed.
parte domini papæ magister Otho ut consentirent prælati, allegans supradicta commoda, quæ in literis continentur. Hæc autem omnia audientes episcopi et ecclesiarum prælati, qui personaliter interfuerunt, divertentes seorsum ad colloquendum, cum super rebus propositis diutius deliberassent, responsum suum in ore magistri Johannis, Bedefordensis archidiaconi, communiter posuerunt, qui veniens in præsentia magistri Othonis per hæc verba respondit; 'Domine, ista, quæ nobis proponitis, regem Angliæ specialiter tangunt, generaliter vero omnes ecclesiarum patronos regni; tangunt archiepiscopos et eorum suffraganeos, necnon innumeros Angliæ prælatos. Cum ergo rex propter infirmitatem, et archiepiscopi nonnulli et episcopi

A.D. 1226. et alii ecclesiarum prælati, sunt absentes, in eorum absentia vobis respondere non possumus nec debemus; quia, si id facere præsumeremus, in præjudicium omnium absentium fieret prælatorum.' Et, hiis dictis, venit Johannes Mareschallus et alii nuntii regis, ad omnes prælatos, qui de rege baronias tenebant in capite, destinati, districte inhibentes, ne laicum feodum suum Romanæ ecclesiæ obligarent, unde a servitio sibi debito privaretur. Hæc autem cum magister Otho intellexisset, statuit his qui aderant diem ibi in media Quadragesima, dum ipse procuraret regis adventum et absentium prælatorum, ut tunc negotium sortiretur effectum; sed illi absque regis et aliorum, qui absentes erant, assensu præfixum diem admittere noluerunt, unde singuli ad propria sunt reversi.

De morte laudabili Willelmi, comitis Saresbiriensis.

Death of the earl of Salisbury. Rex Anglorum interea, cum apud Merlebergiam ab infirmitate sua plene convaluisset, venit ad eum ibi Willelmus, comes Saresbiriensis, qui post longa maris pericula antea in diebus Natalitiis in Cornubia cum difficultate applicuerat; qui, cum fuisset a rege in magna susceptus lætitia, de justiciario coram domino rege gravem deposuit querelam, quod, dum in remotis partibus esset in servitio suo, ipse miserat degenerem virum quendam, qui eo vivente cum uxore sua fornicari disposuit et adulterinum cum ipsa matrimonium contrahere violenter; addidit insuper, quod, nisi rex plenam sibi de justiciario faceret justitiam exhiberi, ipsemet quæreret de tanto excessu vindictam in gravissimam regni perturbationem. Tunc justiciarius, qui præsens erat, proprium confessus reatum in equis pretiosis et donativis ingentibus gratiam sibi co-

mitis reparavit; et, sic facta concordia, invitavit A.D. 1226.
comitem ad mensam suam justiciarius, in qua, ut dicitur, idem comes occulto infectus veneno, ad castellum suum Saresbiriense profectus, lecto decubuit graviter infirmatus. Invalescente demum ægritudine, cum certissima suæ necis indicia cognovisset, fecit episcopum civitatis ad se venire, ut ea quæ Christiani sunt in confessione et viatico susciperet et legitimum de rebus habitis conficeret testamentum. Intrante autem episcopo thalamum, in quo jacebat comes nudus omnino præter fœmoralia, contra eum corpus Domini ferentem ex lecto prosiliens, asperrimumque laqueum circa collum connectens, cum jugi lachrymarum effusione se prostravit in pavimentum, summi Regis se esse proditorem contestans, nec de loco moveri voluit, nisi facta confessione et vivifici sacramenti percepta communione, ut se sui servum ostenderet Creatoris; et sic per dies aliquot in suprema perseverans pœnitentia spiritum suo tradidit Redemptori. Contigit autem, quod, dum de castello ad novam ecclesiam per unum miliare corpus ejus ad tumulandum portaretur, cerei, qui cum cruce et thuribulo de more portabantur accensi, inter pluviarum effusiones et ventorum turbines lumen continuum in itinere ministrabant, ut aperte ostenderent comitem tam ardue pœnitentem ad lucis filios [1]pertinere.

Quod magister Otho Falcasium regi reconciliare studuerit.

Venit[2] eodem tempore ad regem Anglorum

[1] *Pertinere.*] His epitaph is thus given by Paris:
'Flos comitum Willelmus obit, stirps regia, longus
Ensis vaginam cœpit habere brevem.'

[2] *Venit . . . ad regem Anglorum magister Otho.*] The substance of this chapter is the same with what has been before said above at p. 107.

A.D. 1226. magister Otho, domini papæ nuntius, petens ex parte ejusdem papæ ut, Falcasio sibi reconciliato, uxorem, terras, possessiones ad integrum ei et omnes redderet res sublatas; cui rex respondit, quod ob proditionem manifestam ab omni clero et populo regni ab Anglia sententialiter est expulsus perpetuo exilium subiturus, quam sententiam non potuit, nisi vellet venire contra regni antiquas consuetudines, infirmare. Hæc cum audisset magister Otho regem ulterius sollicitare cessavit, et, his ita gestis, misit idem Otho litteras suas ad omnes ecclesias cathedrales per Angliam sive conventuales, exigens procurationes debitas nuntiis Romanis, ita quod nulla procuratio numerum quadraginta excederet solidorum.

De concilio Bituricensi, cui præsedit Romanus, Francorum legatus.

Council of Bourges. Hoc eodem tempore venit magister Romanus ad partes Gallicanas a domino papa missus, ut ibi legationis officio fungeretur; quo cum pervenisset, fecit convocare regem Francorum cum archiepiscopis, episcopis et clero Gallicano ad concilium, cum comite Tholosano, pro quo specialiter ad partes illas missus fuerat, sicut sequens relatio declarabit. [1] Convenerunt igitur ad Bituricam civitatem ad concilium Lugdoniensis, Remensis, Rothomagensis, Thuronensis, Bithuricensis, Auxianensis archiepiscopi, Burdegalensis vero Romæ fuit et Narbonensis ecclesia vacabat. Convenerunt igitur novem provinciarum suffraganei circiter centum, cum abbatibus et

[1] *Convenerunt.*] Compare Gesta Ludov. VIII. Rec. des Hist. xvii. p. 309. It was held on the feast of S. Andrew (30 Nov.), according to the author of the Chron. Turonens. Martene; Ampl. Collect. tom. v. col. 1067.

prioribus et singulorum procuratoribus capitulorum, mandatum summi pontificis audituri; sed, quoniam Lugdunensis archiepiscopus vendicabat sibi primatiam super archiepiscopum Senonensem, et Rothomagensis super Bithuricensem, Auxianensem, Narbonensem, et eorum suffraganeos, timebatur de discordia, et ideo non fuit sessum quasi in concilio, sed ut in consilio. Quibus sedentibus et lectis in publico legationis literis, apparuerunt comes Tholosanus ex una parte et Simon de Monte-forti ex altera, qui petiit sibi restitui terram Reimundi comitis Tholosani, quam dominus papa et rex Francorum Philippus sibi et patri suo contulerunt, exhibens supra donatione facta utriusque, papæ scilicet et regis, munimenta; addiditque, comitem Reimundum abjudicatum fuisse Romæ in concilio generali propter hæresin, ad minus a parte majori terræ quam nunc tenet. E contra, comes Reimundus obtulit se facturum erga regem Francorum et ecclesiam Romanam quicquid facere deberet pro hæreditate sua. Tunc cum peteret pars adversa ab eo, ut subiret judicium duodecim parium Galliæ, respondit Reimundus, 'Recipiat rex homagium meum et paratus sum subire, quia forte aliter non haberent me pro pari.' Cumque hinc inde fuisset plurimum altercatum, præcepit archiepiscopis singulis legatus tunc præsentibus, ut convocatis seorsum unusquisque suffraganeis cum eis deliberarent super negotio præfato et traderent legato consilium suum redactum in scripto; quo facto, legatus excommunicavit omnes qui super hoc sua consilia revelarent, dicens se ea velle domino papæ significare et Francorum regi ostendere.

A.D. 1226. Council of Bourges.

Quod legatus dedit procuratoribus in dolo licentiam recedendi.

A.D. 1226. Council of Bourges.

Post hæc legatus dedit in dolo procuratoribus capitulorum licentiam ad propria revertendi, retentis tantum archiepiscopis, episcopis et abbatibus et simplicibus prælatis; unde non immerito timuerunt, ne procurata eorum absentia, qui majoris prudentiæ erant et experientiæ, et præ multitudine potentiores ad contradicendum, aliquid statueretur in præjudicium absentium prælatorum. Quocirca dicti procuratores post deliberationem diutinam miserunt ad legatum procuratores metropolitanarum ecclesiarum, qui coram eo hujusmodi allegaverunt, 'Domine, audivimus quod habetis literas speciales a curia Romana de exhibendis præbendis in omnibus ecclesiis conventualibus sive cathedralibus; quocirca multum miramur, quod non in hoc consilio proposuistis eas, nobis audientibus, quos specialiter tangunt. Unde rogamus in Domino, ne istud scandalum oriatur per vos in ecclesia Gallicana, scientes, quod sine maximo scandalo et inæstimabili damno non posset hic ad effectum perduci; quia, esto quod aliquis assentiret, nullus esset ejus assensus in rebus, quæ omnes tangunt, cum fere omnes majores, et generaliter omnes subditi, necnon et ipse rex et omnes principes parati sunt contradicere et resistere usque ad capitis expositionem et omnis honoris privationem, præsertim cum videatur imminere propter hoc scandalum subversio regni et ecclesiæ generalis. Ratio autem nostri timoris est, quod cum cæteris regnis non habuistis sermonem, et quibusdam episcopis præcepistis et abbatibus, ut, cum præbendæ vacaverint, ad opus domini papæ reservent.'

Quod legatus a prælatis exegit duas præbendas dari ecclesiæ Romanæ.

His auditis, cum niteretur legatus persuadere ut omnes consentirent, ostendit tunc primo domini papæ authenticum, in quo exegit a singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus duas præbendas, unam a capitulo et alteram ab episcopo ; et in cœnobiis similiter, ubi sunt diversæ portiones, abbatis scilicet et conventus, duas exegit ecclesias, unam ab abbate et aliam a conventu ; æquali facta distributione bonorum suorum, a conventibus quantum pertinet ad unum monachum, sicut ipse interpretatus fuerat legatus, et ab abbate tantundem. Tunc allegavit commoda quæ possent inde provenire, illud videlicet, quod amoveretur scandalum a Romana ecclesia, quæ mater est omnium ecclesiarum, concupiscentia scilicet, [quæ] radix est omnium malorum, cum nullus pro aliquo negotio in curia Romana faciendo aliquid offerret vel aliquis oblata reciperet.

A.D. 1226. The pope demands two prebends of each cathedral.

Objectiones procuratorum contra exactiones prædictas.

Ad hoc respondit procurator archiepiscopi Lugdunensis, ‘ Domine, nullo modo volumus esse sine amicis in curia et largitate donorum.’ Alii æque procuratores sua incommoda allegabant, damna scilicet rerum, consiliorum, auxiliorum, obsequiorum, in hunc modum ; ‘ Erit enim in qualibet diœcesi, vel ad minus in provincia, nuntius unus continuus, procurator Romanus, qui non vivet de proprio, sed graves exactiones et procurationes exiget ab ecclesiis majoribus et forte minoribus, ut nullus remaneat impunitus, nomenque procuratoris habens legati officio fungetur.’ Item dixerunt, imminere turbationes capitulorum, forte enim demandaret papa, cum vellet, procuratori

Objections tendered by the proctors.

A.D. 1226. suo, vel alii, ut vice sua interesset electionibus, qui eas turbaret; et sic lapso tempore devolveretur electio ad curiam Romanam, quæ in omnibus vel pluribus ecclesiis Romanos poneret, vel tales qui eis plurimum essent devoti; et sic nullæ essent partes indigenarum prælatorum vel principum, cum multi sint viri ecclesiastici, qui potius curiæ Romanæ quam regi vel regno proviserent. Item addiderunt, quod, si proportionaliter fieret bonorum distributio, omnes in curia fierent divites, cum multo plus essent recepturi quam rex proprius; et sic majores non solum divites, sed et ditissimi, fierent. Cum igitur vermis divitum sit superbia, majores vix causas audirent, sed eas in immensum differrent, et minores scriberent inviti; cujus rei experimentum in evidenti est, quia et modo negotia protrahunt, etiam post percepta obsequia et securitatem percipiendi; et sic periclitaretur justitia, et oporteret conquerentes mori in januis Romanorum tunc plenissime dominantium. Item, cum vix possibile sit fontem cupiditatis desiccari, quod nunc faciunt per se, tunc facerent per alios, et suis multo majora quam nunc dari munera procurarent, modica enim nulla sunt in conspectu divitum cupidorum. Item, multæ divitiæ facerent cives Romanos insanire, et sic inter diversas parentelas tantæ orirentur seditiones, quod posset timeri totius excidium civitatis, cujus etiam nec modo est expers omnino. Item dixerunt, quod, licet se obligarent qui modo præsentes sunt, id non susciperent eorum successores nec illam obligationem ratam haberent. Novissime autem sic negotium concluserunt, 'Domine, moveat vos zelus universalis ecclesiæ et sanctæ sedis Romanæ, quia, si omnium esset universalis oppressio, posset timeri ne immineret generalis

discessio, quod Deus avertat.' His auditis, respondit legatus, ut videbatur, plurimum commotus in bono, se cum esset in curia nunquam huic exactioni consensisse, et ipsum literas accepisse postquam Galliam fuerat ingressus, et se multum super hæc doluisse; addidit etiam, super hæc quicquid præcepit, se tali conditione, licet tacita, intellexisse, si imperium et alia regna consentirent; adjunxit insuper, se nihil amplius super hæc attemptaturum donec per regna alia prælati consenserint, quod credidit provenire non posse. A.D. 1226.

Quod magister Otho Romam invitus redierit.

Eodem anno, cum magister Otho, domini papæ nuntius, tempore Quadragesimali ad Northanhumbriam profecturus et procurationes desideratas exacturus, Norhamtonam usque pervenisset, venerunt ad eum, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo procurante, literæ domini papæ, in quibus continebatur expressum, ut statim visis literis Romam veniret, ejus potestate penitus enervata. Obliquo igitur oculo literis inspectis, demisso vultu eas projecit in ignem, atque illico proposito mutato, clitellis vacuis confusus ab Anglia recessit; injuncto Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, sicut erat in literis domini papæ expressum, ut, convocatis rege et omnibus Angliæ prælatis, responsum eorum super negotio, pro quo idem Otho missus fuerat, domino papæ transmittere non omittat. Magistro igitur Othone Angliam a tergo salutante, Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, vocatis ad concilium apud Westmonasterium post Pascha cunctis, quos negotium tangebat, recitari fecit literas suprascriptas de beneficiis Romanæ ecclesiæ conferendis coram rege et prælatis Angliæ, qui ad Otho, the legate, leaves England.

A.D. 1226. ejus vocationem plene convenerant; sed, illis auditis ac diligenter intellectis, singuli singulos ad risum movebant super concupiscentia Romanorum, qui illud morale non intelligunt, videlicet,

'Quod[1] virtus reddit, non copia, sufficientem;
Et non paupertas, sed mentis hiatus, egentem.'

Tunc rex, convocatis seorsum prælatis et quibusdam magnatibus, hoc archiepiscopo dedere responsum; 'Ista,' inquiunt, 'quæ suadet nobis dominus papa, universam Christianitatis latitudinem respiciunt; et quoniam nos quasi in extremis orbis constituti sumus partibus, cum viderimus qualiter cætera regna erga tales se habuerint exactiones, dominus papa, cum ab aliis regnis habuerimus exemplum, in obsequiis nos inveniet aliis promptiores.' Et, his dictis, concessa est omnibus licentia recedendi.

Quod motio magna facta est super comitem Tholosanum.

Crusade against the count of Thoulouse. Per idem tempus facta est prædicatio in partibus Gallicanis a legato Romano generaliter, ut omnes, qui possent arma movere, se cruce signarent super comitem Tholosanum et populum ejus, qui omnes hæretica fœditate dicebantur infecti. Ad ejus quoque prædicationem multitudo maxima prælatorum et laicorum crucis signaculum susceperunt, plus metu regis Francorum vel favore legati, quam zelo justitiæ, inducti; videbatur enim multis abusio, ut hominem fidelem Christianum infestarent, præcipue cum constaret cunctis eum in concilio nuper apud civitatem Bituricam habito multis precibus persuasisse legato, ut veniret ad singulas terræ suæ

[1] *Quod virtus reddit.*] 'Quod facit virtus' in MS.

civitates inquirens a singulis articulos fidei, et, si quempiam contra fidem inveniret sentientem catholicam, ipse secundum judicium sanctæ ecclesiæ justitiæ ex eis plenitudinem exhiberet, et, si civitatem aliquam inveniret rebellem, ipse pro posse suo eam cum habitatoribus suis ad satisfactionem compelleret; pro se ipso autem obtulit, si in aliquo deliquit, quod se fecisse non recolit, plenam Deo et sanctæ ecclesiæ satisfactionem ut fidelis Christianus, et, si legatus vellet, etiam fidei examen subire. Hæc quoque omnia legatus contempsit, nec potuit comes catholicus gratiam invenire, nisi pro se et hæredibus suis hæreditatem suam deserens abjuraret. Rex vero Francorum ad ejusdem legati exhortationem cruce signatus noluit expeditionem bellicam promovere, nisi literis prius a domino papa impetratis ad regem Anglorum inhibitoriis, [1]ne sub pœna excommunicationis regem Francorum inquietaret, vel arma contra eum moveret, de aliqua terra quam in præsenti possidebat sive juste sive injuste, dum idem rex esset in servitio suo et ecclesiæ Romanæ ad exterminandum hæreticos Albigenses et eorum fautorem et complicem comitem Tholosanum; sed eidem regi, ad exaltationem fidei, consilium et auxilium impendere non tardaret. Et, his ita gestis, [2]rex Francorum Lodowicus et legatus omnibus cruce signatis diem statuerunt peremptorium, ut in ascensione Domini apud Lugdunum cum equis et armis sub pœna excommunicationis venirent, ipsos ad expeditionem propositam secuturi. A.D. 1226.

[1] *Ne . . . inquietaret,*] wanting in *C.*

[2] *Rex Francorum Lodowicus.*] Compare Hist. Albigensium, auct. Gul. de Podio Laurentio, Rec. des Hist. tom. xix. p. 216, *seqq.*

Quod rex Anglorum de transfretando propositum mutavit.

A.D. 1226. Conduct of Henry.

Rex Anglorum interea, qui ardenti desiderio sitiebat ad partes transmarinas hostiliter transfretare, convocatis consiliariis suis, fecit recitari literas sibi a domino papa transmissas, quærens ab eis consilium, quid super tali inhibitione sibi foret agendum. Placuit itaque prælatis et magnatibus omnibus, ut differretur negotium desideratum, donec constaret de rege Francorum, qui tam difficile opus et propositum habebat adeo sumptuosum, quem res esset exitum habitura. Erat igitur rex Anglorum de fratre suo Richardo, qui tunc in Wasconia bellicas agebat expeditiones, valde sollicitus, supra modum ad ipsum desiderans transfretare; sed, dum rex circa fratrem et de ejus subventione satis curiosus existeret, venerunt nuntii ejus ad regem cum literis, dicentes ipsum sanum esse et incolumem et quod omnia sibi prospere succedebant. Erat autem tunc inter regis consiliarios magister Willelmus, cognomento Pierepunt, in arte peritus astronomiæ, qui constanter coram rege affirmabat, quod, si rex Francorum inchoatam expeditionem exsequendam assumeret, vel nunquam vivus rediret, aut maximam sui et rerum suarum suorumque omnium confusionem subiret. Rex autem, ex his quæ audierat exhilaratus, suorum consilio adquievit.

De morte Richardi, Dunelmensis episcopi.

Death of the bishop of Durham.

Eodem anno Richardus de Marisco, Dunelmensis episcopus, pro turpissima quam agebat contra monachos suos causa, ad diem Londoniis constitutum cum tumultu valido reboantium legistarum properans, apud burgum sancti Petri

in abbatia hospitatus est; ubi, post splendidam refectionem cum nocte sequenti lecto sese recepisset, clerici ejus, mane facto et sole jam in altum vergente, thalamum ejus intrantes et illum excitare volentes invenerunt eum mortuum et omnino extinctum, qui maxima confusione stupefacti celaverunt mortem ejus die illo usque ad vesperam, eo quod absque confessione et viatico exspirasset; deinde vero casum miserabilem priori et conventui indicantes, fabricata cum festinatione lectica, corpus sepeliendum ad Dunelmensem ecclesiam detulerunt. Obiit autem primo die mensis Maii, postquam vixerat in episcopatu circiter annis [1]novem. De hoc quoque episcopo non credimus fore tacendum, quod circa biennium ante mortem ejus, rex quondam Anglorum Johannes apparuit in visione nocturna cuidam monacho de sancto Albano apud Thinemuam tunc commoranti, qui familiaris fuerat regibus Anglorum, tam regi Richardo quam huic Johanni, ita quod in eorum negotiis exsequendis aliquando Romam, aliquando in Scotiam, et ad alia loca plurima missus propensioribus sibi studiis eorundem regum gratiam comparavit. Monacho itaque in lecto quiescente, adstitit ei rex præfatus in vestibus regalibus, de panno scilicet quem imperialem appellant; quem monachus recognoscens, ac memoriter recolens quod mortuus fuisset, sciscitabatur ab eo qualiter se haberet. Cui rex, ‘Ita me,’ inquit, ‘ha- A.D. 1226.

[1] *Novem.*] Paris inserts his epitaph, as written by a monk of Durham, thus:

Culmina qui cupi / laudes pompasque siti
Est sedata si / si me pensare veli
Qui populos regi / memores super omnia si
Quod mors immi / non parcit honore poti
Vobis præposi / similis fueram bene sci
Quod sum vos eri / ad me currendo veni

tis, tis.

A.D. 1226. beo quod nemo pejus, nam hæc mea quæ vides indumenta adeo ardentia sunt et ponderosa, ut nullus qui in seculo vivat illa tangere sufficeret præ ardore vel propter ponderositatem portare, quin protinus moriretur; sed tamen per Dei clementiam spero et gratiam ineffabilem, me quandoque misericordiam adepturum. Quæso igitur obnixius fraternitatem tuam, ut dicas Richardo de Marisco, nunc Dunelmensi episcopo, quod, nisi ante mortem suam vitam correxerit flagitiosam et eam per pœnitentiam et satisfactionem condignam emendaverit, sedes ejus jam parata est in inferno; et, si his dictis tuis et mandatis meis fidem adhibere contempserit, per hæc intersignia omnem deponat ambiguitatem, quod, dum soli essemus in loco illo sibi notissimo, dedit mihi consilium, tam mihi quam sibi nimis damnosum, ut videlicet a monachis Cisterciensibus auferrem lanam suam unius anni, et quod multa alia dedit mihi consilia iniqua, pro quibus nunc perfero inenarrabilia, quæ etiam et illi debentur, tormenta. Quod, si adhuc dubitaverit credere mandatis meis, recolat quod in illo loco et hora eadem dedit mihi lapidem unum pretiosum, quem pro ingenti pecunia comparavit.' Et, his dictis, rex disparuit et monachus stupens evigilavit.

Election of a successor. Defuncto itaque Richardo, Dunelmensi episcopo, prior et conventus cum a rege peterent licentiam eligendi pastorem, rex obtulit eis Lucam capellanum suum, multa supplicatione rogans, ut illum reciperent in pastorem. Monachi vero ad hoc responderunt, quod nullum reciperent nisi canonica electione præmissa; rex autem e contra cum juramento affirmavit, ipsos futuros per septennium sine episcopo, nisi præfatum Lucam admitterent ad pontificatus honorem. Conventus vero illum ad tantam dignitatem

indignum judicantes de communi consensu fratrum elegerunt magistrum Willelmum clericum suum, virum literatum et honestum, Wigorniensem archidiaconum, et ipsum regi præsentaverunt; quem cum rex, objectis quibusdam frivolis exceptionibus, recusasset, monachi quosdam de conventu Romam miserunt ut electionem factam auctoritate summi pontificis confirmarent. Rex autem, cum talia cognovisset, misit Romam contra monachos episcopum Cestrensem et Lentoniæ priorem, ut eorundem monachorum propositum irritarent; et, sic diu illis altercantibus, negotium dilationem accepit. A.D. 1226.

Quomodo Lodowicus, rex Francorum, Avinionem obsedit.

Venit interea Dominicæ dies ascensionis, qui fuerat a rege Francorum et legato Galligenis cruce signatis peremptorie constitutus. Rex autem, ad expeditionem necessariis apud Lugdunum rite præparatis, cum exercitu quasi invincibili iter arripuit, sequente legato cum archiepiscopis, episcopis et aliis ecclesiarum prælatis; æstimati sunt autem in exercitu militum et equitum bellatorum ad quinquaginta millia, præter pedites, qui quasi sub numero non cadebant. Legatus autem excommunicavit publice comitem Tholosanum et omnes ejus fautores, et terram illius totam supposuit interdicto. Profectus itaque rex micantibus clypeis et vexillis, cujus progressus adeo erat horribilis, ut castrorum acies ordinata [in provinciam pervenit comitis Tholosani.] [1]Tandem in vigilia Pentecostes omnes Siege of Avignon.

[1] *Tandem.*] See the account of this siege by an anonymous chronicler of the reign of Louis VIII. Rec. des Hist. tom. xvii. p. 309: see also a letter from the barons in the French army to the emperor Frederic; *ibid.* p. 344.

A.D. 1226. Siege of Avignon.

Avinionem venientes, quæ civitas proxima illis erat de potestate comitis supradicti, proposuerunt eam prius impetere et sic terram comitis totam ab initio usque ad finem cum habitatoribus ejus delere; ubi rex et legatus, transitum civitatis in dolo a civibus postulantes, dixerunt se illuc pacifice advenisse, et non ob aliud civitatis transitum postulasse, nisi ut itineris compendium sequerentur. Cives quoque super hæc colloquentes fidem eorum assertionibus non dederunt, dicentes, quod plus in dolo, quam pro viæ compendio, exigebant introitum civitatis. At rex in furorem versus juravit se inde non recessurum, donec comprehenderet civitatem, et, machinis in locis congruis collocatis, jussit urbem acriter infestari. Fit igitur ad civitatem assultus gravissimus, dum petraria, balista, scrofa, catus, arcus, funda, ensis, lancea, scutum, galea, umbo, clava, lorica, sagitta, hinc inde quid valeat, experitur. E contra, civitas, ante dies illos ab hostium cuneis prorsus incognita, fossatis, mœniis, turribus, propugnaculis de foris, intus militibus, servientium millibus, equis et armis, lapidibus comportatis, machinis et repagulis, etiam in victualibus referta, hostium supervenientium non expavit incursum; defensores enim urbis lapides pro lapidibus, tela pro telis, sudes pro sudibus, jacula pro jaculis, animosius remittentes vulnera Galligenis lethifera inferebant.

De mortalitate et fame in obsidione.

Mortality amongst the besiegers.

Cumque per tempus plurimum protraheretur obsidio, deficientibus alimentis, periit hominum innumera multitudo; comes enim Tholosanus, ut bellator peritissimus, ante Francorum adventum omnia alimentorum genera, cum senibus,

mulieribus, parvulis, necnon et animalibus cum jumentis, ab eorum præsentia longius removens, omne eis alimentorum genus subtraxit. Nec enim solummodo homines, verum etiam equos exercitus et jumenta fames exstinxit, fecerat namque comes sæpedictus prata arari totius regionis, nec erat jumentis pabuli subsidium, nisi quod ibi delatum fuerat ex partibus Gallicanis; unde, necessitate cogente, multæ legiones armatorum a castris recedentes, ut victualia quærerent hominibus et pabula jumentis, multa repugnantia sibi municipia ceperunt, et multoties a comite Tholosano, qui cum suis erat agminibus in insidiis constitutus, damna non modica pertulerunt. In obsidione vero Galligenis [1]multa imminebant necis pericula, inter quos fervebant potissimum mortalitas hominum et equorum, tela mortifera et damnosi lapides civium se viriliter defendentium, fames generalis, et præcipue inter pauperes, quibus deerat cum pecunia alimentum; atque præter cætera miseriarum incommoda, quæ sine intermissione grassabantur in populo, oriebantur ex cadaveribus jumentorum et hominum, quæ passim moriebantur, muscæ quædam grossæ et nigerrimæ, quæ inter tentoria, papiliones et umbracula ingerentes dapes inficiebant et pocula, quas cum nemo arcere poterat a calicibus et catinis, mortem Galligenis subitam inferebant. Confusio regem et præcipue legatum invasit, quia, si tanta talisque expeditio infecto recedere negotio cogeretur, opprobrium tam Franci incurrerent quam Romani. Tunc principes exercitus, qui-

A.D. 1226. Siege of Avignon.

[1] *Multa imminebant necis pericula.*] 'Ibidem tamen mortalitate maxima pullulante, de nostris circa duo millia telorum imbribus et lapidum volatu, et infirmitate propria, moriuntur;' Rec. des Hist. tom. xvii. p. 309.

A.D. 1226. Siege of Avignon.

bus in tot mortibus longa videbatur mora, minores castrorum cum majoribus ad urbem invadendum sollicitant; unde super pontem quendam, qui ultra Rodanum fluvium se extendit, ad urbem tanta se armatorum copia ingessit, quod vel a civibus, vel etiam præ pondere in eodem pugnantium, pons fractus præcipitavit in flumen rapidissimum ad tria millia armatorum. Quid ergo? Vox et exultatio civium, dolor et confusio fit Francorum. Tunc cives, visa opportunitate, dum Franci ad mensam sedentes epulis intenderent et poculis, die quodam exierunt de civitate in fortitudine gravi, et, facto impetu in hostes non præmeditatos, ad duo millia ex Francigenis peremerunt, et absque suorum læsione civitatem ingressi tales irruptiones fecerunt in hostes. At rex Francorum animo nimis consternatus jussit interfectos in Rodanum, propter corruptionem, præcipitari, qui aliud cœmeterium in tanta cadaverum multitudine non habebant. Fecerunt præterea inter se et urbem fossatum spatiosum satis et altum, et insuper obsidio a civitate longius arcebatur. Legatus autem et omnis chorus prælatorum comitem Tholosanum et cives cum universo populo regionis, vindictæ genus aliud non habentes, sub anathemate concluserunt.

De morte Lodowici, regis Francorum.

Death of Louis VIII.

Tunc Lodowicus, rex Francorum, ut pestilentiam effugeret, quæ nimis fervebat in castris, ad quandam abbatiam, Muntpancier appellatam, quæ non multum ab obsidione distabat, se contulit, donec civitas caperetur; ubi venit ad eum Henricus,[1] comes Campaniensis, cum jam

[1] *Henricus, comes Campaniensis.*] The earl of Champagne at this time was Theobald VI.; Anselm, ii. p. 840.

dies quadraginta in obsidione peregisset, petens A.D. 1226.
de consuetudine Gallicana licentiam ad propria remeandi. Cui cum licentiam rex vetuisset, respondit comes, quod, factis quadraginta dierum excubiis, [1]non tenebatur, nec voluit, diutius interesse. Rex autem ad hæc nimia succensus ira affirmavit cum juramento, quod, si ita recederet, ipse terram ejus totam incendio devastaret. Tunc comes, ut fama refert, procuravit regi venenum propinari ob amorem reginæ ejus, quam carnaliter amabat, unde libidinis impulsu stimulatus moras ulterius nectere non valebat. Comite igitur taliter recedente, infirmabatur rex usque ad desperationem, et pervagante ad vitalia [2]veneno perducitur ad extrema; licet alii asserant, ipsum non veneno, sed morbo dysenterico, exspirasse. Mortuo quoque rege, Romanus qui adfuit apostolicæ sedis legatus, et prælati, qui aderant, ejusdem secreti consiliarii, mortem regis celari fecit donec civitas redderetur; quia, si ita solveretur obsidio, magnum inde scandalum oriretur. Finxit ergo legatus et prælati, qui aderant, regem gravi infirmitate detentum, sed ex medicorum judicio cito convaliturum dicebant, denuntiantes principibus legionum, ut urbem viriliter impugnarent. Corpus autem defuncti regis fecerunt multo sale condiri, et in abbatia illa viscera tumulantes reliquum corpus linteamini-

[1] *Non tenebatur.*] Although in ordinary cases the king had no further claim on his vassal for military service beyond forty or fifty days, yet it would appear that on the occasion of a crusade knights were forbidden, without especial leave, to abandon their sovereign; Fr. Translat. Mat. Par. iii. p. 520, *note*.

[2] *Veneno perducitur ad extrema.*] The French chronicler, above alluded to, is silent as to the report that Louis had died by poison; according to him, the event took place after the surrender of Avignon. Wendover's account is, however, borne out by Ricard. de S. Germano, a contemporary historian, whose words are, 'ubi venenatus, ut dicitur, obiit;' Murator. tom. vii. col. 1000. The Annals of Waverley and Dunstable allude to the same report.

A.D. 1226. bus ceratis coriisque taurinis jusserunt involvi; et sic legatus cum prælatis ad obsidionem reversus est, corpore regis in abbatia sub tuta custodia deputato. Cum igitur vidisset legatus quod nihil in obsidione proficiebant, sed diversis incommodis prorsus deficiebant, de consilio majorum, qui erant in castris, nuntiavit in civitatem, instantius petens, quatenus, accepta securitate pacifice veniendi et revertendi, mitterent duodecim ex majoribus civitatis ad legatum et venirent quantocius de pace et concordia tractaturi.

Quod civitas Avinionis a Francis dolose sit subjugata.

The town of Avignon taken by treachery.

Datis igitur de securitate obsidibus, venerunt ad colloquium legati cives duodecim, et de pacis forma diutius tractantes, persuasit civibus legatus constanter ut se redderent, salvis sibi et suis omnibus possessionibus et rebus cum libertatibus universis, sicut hactenus melius et liberius habuerunt. Ad hæc cives respondentes dixerunt, quod nullo modo se redderent, ut sub potestate viverent Francorum, quorum multoties experti fuerant superbiam et insolentiæ feritatem. Tandem post multas hinc inde disceptationes petivit legatus, ut cum prælatis qui aderant posset ingredi civitatem, ut fidem probaret in ea habitantium, affirmans cum juramento, se non ob aliud obsidionem protraxisse, nisi ut salutem quæreret animarum; addidit etiam, quod clamor infidelitatis, quæ in urbe invaluerat, ad papam ascendit, unde scire desiderabat utrum clamorem opere complevissent. [1]Tunc cives su-

[1] *Tunc cives.*] The French historians are silent as to the treachery asserted in the text to have been practised; in the Waverley Annals it is said, 'Legati apostolici tradiderunt urbem prædicto regi;' p. 190.

per promissione sua fiduciam habentes et de fraude nihil sinistrum suspicantes, sub conditione prædicta, præstito utrinque juramento, concesserunt legato cum prælatis simpliciter et eorum sequelis ingressum urbis ; quos dolose, ut prælocutum fuerat, Francigenæ apertis januis violenter subsequentes, spreto turpiter juramento, cives ceperunt et eos vinculis constrinxerunt, et dolosam sic adepti victoriam nobilissimæ civitatis turres et mœnia confregerunt. Novissime vero legatus, civitate sub Francorum deputata custodia, soluta obsidione, corpus regis defuncti cum prælatorum tumultu Parisius jussit deferri, et in collegio antecessorum suorum more fecit regio sepeliri. Obiit autem rex mense Septembri, ut dicunt, cujus mortem per mensem, et eo amplius, celaverunt. De illis autem, qui ad obsidionem cum rege venerunt, tam de interfectis et in flumine submersis, quam de pestilentia et morte communi defunctis, plus quam viginti duo millia perierunt ibidem, filiis et uxoribus lachrymarum causam et gemitum relinquentes; unde perspicue constare videtur, bellum injuste fuisse susceptum, in quo concupiscentia magis exarsit, quam exterminium hæreticæ pravitatis. A.D. 1226.

De coronatione Lodowici, regis Francorum, filii Lodowici.

Defuncto itaque Francorum rege Lodowico, regina ejus domina Blanca fecit convocare generaliter archiepiscopos, episcopos, et alios ecclesiarum prælatos cum magnatibus coronam spectantibus, ut venirent ad coronationem Lodowici filii sui et regis defuncti Parisius pridie kalendas Decembris. Sed pars maxima optimatum ante diem præfixum petierunt de consuetudine Gallicana Coronation of Louis IX.

A.D. 1226. omnes incarceratos, et præcipue comites Flandrensem Ferrandum et Bononiensem Reginaldum, a carceribus liberari, qui in subversionem libertatum regni jam per annos duodecim sub arctiori custodia in vinculis tenebantur. Petierunt insuper quidam eorum terras suas sibi restitui, quas pater ejus Lodowicus et avus illius Philippus multo jam tempore injuste detinuerant occupatas. Adjiciunt etiam, quod nullus de regno Francorum debuit ab aliquo jure suo spoliari, nisi per judicium duodecim parium, nec aliquis bello premi, nisi prius denuntietur per annum; et, cum hæc omnia sibi fuerint emendata, tunc primo ad coronationem non tardabunt venire. Regina vero, de consilio legati, metuens ne mora periculum pareret, convocato regni clero, et paucis ex proceribus, quos habere poterat, fecit filium suum, puerum scilicet vix decennem, in regem die sancti Andreæ apostoli coronari. [1]Subtraxerunt se quidem ab hac coronatione dux Burgundiæ, comes Campaniæ, comes de Bar, comes de sancto Paulo, comes Britanniæ, et fere omnes, ut breviter dicatur, nobiles ad coronam spectantes, qui sese potius præparaverunt ad pugnam, quam ad pacis et concordiæ unitatem.

Rex autem Anglorum, audiens dissidium procerum prædictorum, misit ad partes transmarinas archiepiscopum Eboracensem Walterum, et Philippum de Albeneio militem, cum aliis solemnibus legatis, ad optimates Normanniæ, Andegaviæ, Britanniæ et Pictaviæ, qui sibi subjici de jure tenebantur, postulans cum magnis promissionibus

[1] *Subtraxerunt.*] Compare the account in the Chron. Turon. Rec. des Hist. xviii. p. 318; where it is added, that they daily held correspondence with the ambassadors from England, promising to betray the kingdom into Henry's hands. For documents upon these proceedings see Rymer, pp. 183, 184.

quatenus ipsum ad eos venire cupientem fideliter admittere dignarentur. A.D. 1226.

De morte Falcasii, et de præsagio mortis ejus.

Eodem anno Falcasius exscriptus ab Anglia, dum omnibus negotiis in curia Romana expeditis ad Angliam properaret reverti, apud sanctum Ciriacum vitam flagitiosam terminavit. Falcasius autem, dum adhuc viveret prædo nequissimus, postquam villam sancti Albani crudeliter spoliaverat, homines quosdam interfecerat, nonnullos captivos abduxerat, et tam ab abbate, quam de villa tota, maximam pecuniæ summam extorserat, ne ipsam abbatiam cum monasterio et villa igne concremaret, contigit ipsum apud sanctum Albanum casu venire, ut cum Pandulpho, Norwicensi episcopo, loqueretur; quem cum vidisset episcopus ad se venientem, audiente ipso abbate et aliis multis, quæsivit ab eo, si sanctum Albanum in aliquo offendisset. Cui cum Falcasius respondisset, se in nullo martyrem offendisse, addidit episcopus dicens, 'Ideo hæc a te quæsivi, quia, cum nuper in stratu meo nocte quadam dormirem, vidi per somnium me esse in ecclesia sancti Albani, ubi cum starem ante majus altare, et facta oratione retro aspicerem, vidi te stare in choro monachorum; et, cum aspicerem sursum, vidi lapidem unum de turri magnum et ponderosum cum tanto impetu descendere super caput tuum, quod cum ipso capite tuo corpus totum contrivit, et ita subito evanuisti ac si in terram demersus fuisses. Unde consilium tibi do, quod, si recolis te vel in minimo martyrem offendisse, antequam lapis super caput tuum descendat, sibi et suis omnibus satisfacias competenter.' Sed miser ille postmodum, cum ab abbate et conventu de suis excessibus veniam postulasset, affirmavit

Death of Faulkes de Breaute.

A.D. 1226. expresse, quod nullam omnino restitutionem faceret ablatorum; unde in evidenti est, quod illa satisfactio nulla fuit, quia 'non dimittitur peccatum nisi restituatur ablatum.' Lapidem quoque super caput suum descendere sensit, cum in brevi tempore deinceps apud Bedefordiam, post suspensionem fratrum et amicorum suorum, ipse demum pauper exilium subiit et nunc vitam morte misera terminavit. Eodem anno defuncti sunt episcopi, Benedictus Roffensis, et [1]Pandulphus Norwicensis; Pandulpho vero successit Thomas de Blundvilla, clericus de scaccario regis, qui a Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, Dominica prima ante nativitatem Domini munus consecrationis suscepit.

Quod rex Anglorum a multis pecuniam extorsit.

A.D. 1227. The king extorts money from the Londoners, clergy, and others.

Anno Domini MCCXXVII. rex Anglorum Henricus ad natale Domini festum celebravit apud Radingum; et in eisdem diebus natalitiis obiit Willelmus[2] comes Essexiæ, in dolorem multorum, adolescens strenuus et in donorum largitate satis profusus. Deinde rex Londonias veniens causatus est cives, quod in suum præjudicium dederunt Lodowico, regi Francorum nunc defuncto, in recessu suo ab Anglia quinque millia marcas argenti; unde compulsi sunt iidem cives regi persolvere, cavillatorum consilio, eandem pecuniæ summam. Cepit præterea ab eis quintam decimam partem omnium mobilium suorum et totius substantiæ suæ, sicut ei prius fuerat ab Anglia tota concessum. De Burgensibus autem et Nor-

[1] *Pandulphus Norwicensis.*] An abstract from two letters by Pandulph to Hubert de Burgh is printed in the Appendix to the first General Report from the Commissioners on Public Records, edit. 1819, vol. i. p. 189.

[2] *Willelmus.*] William Fitz-Piers, sixth earl of Essex; dying without issue, he was succeeded by his nephew, Humphrey de Bohun, earl of Hereford.

hamtunensibus cepit de auxilio mille libras et ducentas, præter quintam decimam, quam generaliter omnes de regno Angliæ persolvebant. Compulsi sunt etiam viri religiosi et clerici beneficiati hanc quintam decimam dare omnium bonorum suorum, tam rerum ecclesiasticarum quam laicarum; nec profuit eis appellatio ad dominum papam interposita, sed, ordine turbato, archiepiscopi et episcopi, auctoritate papali, per censuram ecclesiasticam, quos laica potestas non potuit, ad solutionem omni destitutos solatio compulerunt. A.D. 1227.

Quomodo rex in concilio apud Oxoniam habito fecit cancellare cartas libertatum.

Eodem tempore rex Anglorum, mense Februario apud Oxoniam concilio congregato, denuntiavit coram omnibus se legitimæ esse ætatis, ut de cætero solutus a custodia regia negotia ipse principaliter ordinaret; et sic qui prius tutorem habuit et rectorem Willelmum Mareschallum dum viveret, et postmodum Petrum, Wintoniensem episcopum, excussit se per consilium Huberti de Burgo, justiciarii regni, de consilio et gubernatione dicti episcopi et suorum, qui regi fuerant prius quasi pædagogi, ita quod omnes illos a curia sua et cohabitatione removit. In eodem itaque concilio idem rex fecit cancellare et cassare omnes chartas de provinciis omnibus regni Angliæ de libertatibus forestæ postquam jam per biennium in toto regno fuerant usitatæ; hanc occasionem prætendens, quod chartæ illæ concessæ fuerant, et libertates scriptæ et signatæ, dum ipse erat sub custodia, nec sui corporis aut sigilli aliquam habuerit potestatem, unde viribus carere debuit, quod sine ratione fuerat usurpatum. Facta est autem super his in con- Council held at Oxford.

A.D. 1227. cilio ingens murmuratio, et omnes justiciarium hujus perturbationis judicabant auctorem; nam deinceps tanta regi familiaritate conjunctus est, ut omnes regni consiliarios præter ipsum pro nihilo reputaret. Tunc vero denuntiatum est viris religiosis et aliis, qui suis volebant libertatibus gaudere, ut innovarent chartas suas de novo regis sigillo, scientes quod rex chartas antiquas nullius esse momenti reputabat; pro quarum innovatione, non juxta singulorum facultatem taxatio facta est, sed quicquid justiciarius æstimabat solvere sunt coacti.

Quod nuntii regis in Franciam missi inaniter sunt reversi.

Return of the king's ambassadors from France.

Eodem anno, defuncto papa Honorio, Gregorius, [1]Hostiensis episcopus, successit decimo quinto kalendas Aprilis. Per idem tempus, instante solemnitate Paschali, archiepiscopus Eboracensis et episcopus Karleolensis, cum Philippo de Albeneio milite, nuntii regis, reversi sunt in Angliam ex partibus transmarinis. Missi quidem erant ad magnates illarum regionum, qui de jure antiquo ad regem Angliæ spectare tenebantur; quibus impositum fuerat ex parte regis, ut blandis exhortationibus cum promissionibus magnis eos inducerent, quatenus dictum regem ad illos venire cupientem reciperent et recognoscerent ut dominum naturalem. Sed, ne diu et inaniter verba protrahere videamur, antequam nuntii regis ad partes illas pervenissent, Francorum rex, matre ejus partes suas interponente, cum baronibus illis pacem fecerat et eorum homagia susceperat, distribuens ipsis affluenter terras et castella ad jus regis pertinentia, faciens sibi de mammo-

[1] *Hostiensis.*] Ugolino, bishop of Ostia, was enthroned in March 1227, and died in August 1241.

na iniquitatis amicos. [1]Comes vero Britanniæ, A.D. 1227.
cujus filiam nuntii petebant regi per matrimonium copulandam, nuntiis regis dedit in responsis, quod ipse cum rege Francorum pacis fœdus composuerat, quod nullo modo potuit violare. Nuntii autem jam ad regem reversi quæ facta fuerant per ordinem indicabant. Eodem tempore, mense Maio, Richardus [2]frater regis venit in Angliam, qui ab ipso rege et magnatibus regni cum gaudio susceptus est. Et eodem tempore Henricus de Sanfort, Cantuariensis archidiaconus, ad Roffensem episcopatum canonice electus, a Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus consecrationis suscepit. Quo etiam anno, nonas Februarii, Hubertus, Angliæ justiciarius, gladio accinctus est a rege Cantiæ comitatus.

Quomodo commoti sunt barones contra regem Anglorum.

Quarrel of the king with his brother Richard, earl of Cornwall.

Tempore eodem, septimo idus Julii, orta est discordia inter regem Anglorum et fratrem ejus Richardum, Cornubiæ comitem, hac de causa; Rex Johannes, hujus regis pater, adhuc vivens, quoddam dederat manerium Waleranno Teutonico, tunc de Berechamstude castellano, ad Cornubiæ pertinens comitatum. Audiens autem comes Richardus, qui nuper venerat de partibus transmarinis, quod manerium illud ad suum spectabat comitatum, præcepit villam saisiri in manu sua, donec sibi constaret, quale jus inde Walerannus haberet; cumque præfatus Walerannus hæc a referentibus

[1] *Comes vero Britanniæ.*] The anonymous writer of the Chronicle of Tours relates that the earls of Bretagne and Marche went to Vendôme and did homage before the legate on the 16th of March; Rec. des Hist. tom. xviii. p. 319.

[2] *Frater regis;*] 'prius concessis treugis a rege Franciæ,' Chron. Dunst. p. 167; see the conditions of the treaty in Richard's letters patent, printed in Rymer, i. p. 186.

A.D. 1227. Quarrel of the king with his brother Richard.

cognovisset, venit cum festinatione ad regem, de fratre suo Richardo querelam deponens. Tunc rex fratri suo literatorie nuntiavit, quatenus confestim visis literis manerium redderet Waleranno. Richardus autem, literis inspectis, cum festinatione venit ad regem, ostendens sine aliquo advocato, rationabiliter similiter et eloquenter, ad jus suum manerium pertinere, unde paratus fuit curiæ regiæ subire judicium et magnatum regni. Rex vero et justiciarius, audientes nominare magnates, maxima sunt indignatione succensi; unde rex voce tumultuosa et nimis indiscreta fratri suo præcepit, ut incontinenti manerium Waleranno redderet, aut a regno Angliæ non rediturus exiret. Ad hæc comes constanter respondit, quod nec Waleranno jus suum redderet, nec sine judicio parium suorum a regno exiret; et, his dictis, comes ad hospitium suum cum festinatione perrexit. Tunc justiciarius, ut dicitur, metuens ne comes pacem regni turbaret, dedit regi consilium, ut nocte sequenti fratrem suum sopore depressum a militibus armatis faceret comprehendi, et, ut diuturna pace frueretur, sub arcta custodia deputaret; sed comes Richardus ab amicis præmunitus ab urbe festinanter cum uno tantum equite clam recessit, nec prius frænum cohibuit donec Radingum usque pervenit. Commilitones autem ejus ipsum mane sequentes in loco sibi condicto dominum suum sanum et hilarem receperunt. Tunc comes versus Merlebergiam iter dirigens invenit ibi Willelmum Mareschallum amicum suum et sacramento confœderatum, omnia ei quæ sibi acciderant indicavit; et inde simul ad comitem Cestriæ profecti ei rem gestam per ordinem retulerunt; qui simul ut erant omnes conjurati, exercitum grandem literis discurrentibus congerentes, convene-

runt in brevi apud Stanfordiam cum equis et armis comes Cestrensis Ranulfus, comes Willelmus Mareschallus, comes Richardus frater regis, comes Gloverniæ Gilebertus, comes Warenniæ Willelmus, comes Herefordiæ Henricus, comes [de] Ferrariis Willelmus, comes Warewicensis Willelmus, cum baronibus multis et ingenti multitudine armatorum, significantes regi cum minis ampullosis, ut hanc injuriam fratri suo illatam confestim emendaret, cujus transgressionis culpam non regi, sed justiciario, imputarunt. Addiderunt insuper, regi denuntiantes atrociter, ut chartas, quas nuper apud Oxoniam cancellaverat, de libertatibus forestæ, sibi absque dilatione restitueret sigillatas; sin autem, ipsi illum gladiis discurrentibus compellerent, ut sibi super his satisfaceret competenter. Tunc rex statuit illis apud Norhamtonam tertio nonas Augusti diem, ut ibi faceret eis plenam rectitudinem exhiberi. Partibus igitur apud urbem præfatam die statuto convenientibus, rex, magnatibus ad hoc instantibus, dedit fratri suo dotem totam matris suæ comiti Richardo, addens ei terras omnes quæ ad jus comitis Britanniæ pertinebant in Anglia, cum suis omnibus terris, quæ fuerant comitis Bononiæ nuper defuncti; et sic pacifice ad propria recesserunt. A.D. 1227. Quarrel of the king with his brother Richard.

Eodem anno heremita quidam in Alpibus habitans transmarinis, dum psalterium suum de more quodam die ruminaret, cum venisset ad psalmum 'Exsurgat Deus,' invenit subito psalmum deletum, et in loco psalmi hæc verba inscripta, 'Excitabitur Romanus contra Romanum, et Romanus Romano substituetur; Romæ alleviabuntur virgæ pastorum, et solatium erit in otio; turbabuntur seduli et orabunt, et in lachrymis multorum erit requies; humilis alludet Legend.

A.D. 1227. furibundo, et favor exstinguens palpabitur; novus grex serpet ad tumulum, et qui mundantur in nemore tenui cibo cibabuntur; frustrata est spes sperantium et requies consolantium, in quam sperabant fiduciam; qui in tenebris ambulant ad lumen redibunt, et quæ diversa erant per diversa consolabuntur; non modica incipiet pluere nubes, quia natus est immutator sæculi; consurget favor contra simplicem, et simplicitas attenuata spirabit; decus in dedecus commutabitur, et gaudium multorum in luctum.' Hujus autem prophetiæ interpretationem sequens rerum eventus luce clarius declarabit, si sollicite indagentur.

Quomodo hoc tempore facta est motio magna in opus crucis.

Progress of the crusades. Eodem anno, in fine mensis Junii, facta est motio maxima in opus crucis per orbem universum cruce signatorum, quæ adeo fuit numerosa, ut ex solo Anglorum regno plusquam quadraginta millia proborum hominum, præter senes et mulieres, profecti referantur. Hoc enim confessus est magister Hubertus, unus ex prædicatoribus in Anglia, asserens veraciter tot in suo rotulo conscripsisse. Qui omnes, et præcipue pauperes, in quibus divina voluntas quiescere solet, cum tanta devotione opus crucis assumpserunt, ut sibi inde procul dubio acquirerent favorem tonantis, quod signis constat evidentibus declaratum; siquidem in nocte nativitatis beati Johannis Baptistæ ostendit se Dominus in firmamento crucifixum, quod perspicue apparuit in cruce lucidissima corpus Dominicum clavis et lancea perforatum necnon cruore respersum, ut fidelibus suis patenter ostenderet Salvator mundi ex hac populorum devotione se fuisse placatum. Hanc quoque vi-

sionem, cum multis aliis, vidit mercator quidam, A.D. 1227.
qui piscem in rheda tulit ad vendendum, non longe a vico qui Wxebregge nuncupatur; qua insolita visione, splendore quoque perterritus et quasi in extasi raptus, stetit attonitus, et quid ageret ignorabat. Filius vero hominis illius, quem unicum habuit socium, patrem confortans hortatur, ut rhedam sistat et Dominum glorificet, qui sibi talem dignatus est ostendere visionem. In crastino vero, et singulis postea diebus, ubicumque piscem suum venalem exposuit, visionem cælestem, quam viderat, omnibus aperte prædicavit, adhibito filii sui testimonio; unde sicut multi dictis eorum fidem adhibuerunt, ita nonnulli contempserunt, donec per similes visiones et assiduas, quæ eodem tempore multis in locis diversis apparuerunt, ad credendum inducti sunt, in quibus ipse Crucifixus cælum reserare dignatus est et gloriam suam mirabiliter cum immenso lumine incredulis revelare. Inter alios autem, qui de regno Angliæ exierunt in opus Crucifixi, iter arripuerunt viri venerabiles, Petrus Wintoniensis et Willelmus Exoniensis episcopi, qui peregrinationis suæ votum fere per quinquennium laudabiliter compleverunt.

Quomodo negotium crucis fuerit hoc tempore prosperatum.

Progress of the crusade, in a letter from the patriarch of Jerusalem.

Hoc igitur negotium crucis, qualiter in hac motione sit prosperatum, in his sequentibus literis, quas papa Gregorius omnibus Christi fidelibus direxit, ostenditur evidenter: 'Gregorius episcopus, servus servorum Dei, omnibus Christi fidelibus salutem, et cætera. Noverit universitas vestra, nos de partibus transmarinis suscepisse literas sub hac forma; G[eroldus], miseratione divina patriarcha Hierosolymitanus, humilis et indignus

A.D. 1227. The patriarch's letter on the crusade.

apostolicæ sedis legatus P. Cæsariensis, N. Nazarensis, et N. Narbonensis, archiepiscopi, P. Wintoniensis et W. Exoniensis episcopi, Hospitalis sancti Johannis, domus militiæ Templi et Hospitalis Teutonicorum, magistri, omnibus has literas inspecturis in Domino Jesu Christo salutem. Universitati vestræ necessitatem nostram instantissimam, et Jesu Christi, qui pro universis fidelibus sanguinem suum fudit, negotium, cogimur intimare. Non enim absque intimantis fervore ac multiplici lachrymarum effusione accidit, quod, sicut sperabamus communiter, in passagio Augusti nuper præteriti, serenissimus vir dominus imperator,[1] ut promiserat, in Syriam non transivit. Quo audito, illi qui jam adventum ejus prævenerant peregrini in eisdem partibus, audientes, quod dictus imperator non venerat in passagio memorato, plus quam quadraginta millia virorum fortium in eisdem navibus, in quibus transierant, redierunt, magis in homine quam in Domino confidentes. Ibi tamen post eorum recessum octingenti fere milites remanserunt, clamantes unanimiter et dicentes, 'Vel treugas rumpamus, vel communiter recedamus;' qui non sine magna difficultate detenti hac occasione fuerunt, quia vir nobilis dux de Lemburgo ex parte domini imperatoris erat exercitui præferendus. Habito igitur concilio virorum prudentium, et præcipue domus Hospitalis et Templi ac Hospitalis Alemannorum, de treuga rumpenda, præfatus dux faceret quod Christianitati ac terræ sanctæ videretur potius expedire; sicque accidit,

[1] *Imperator.*] Upon the reasons alleged for the emperor's delay in fulfilling his promise, see Guil. Tyr. Continuat. in Martene et Durand. Vett. Scriptt. v. col. 697; Raynald. ad an. 1227, § 27; and Sanutus, p. 211. Fuller has also two chapters upon the character of Frederic and his quarrel with the pope; Holy Warre, iii. §§ 29, 30.

quod dux, requisitis super hæc consiliis et receptis, die quodam specialiter ad hoc assignato comparuit coram nobis et quibusdam nobilibus terræ illius, ubi proposuit publice quod volebat treugam infringere, et, qualiter utilius ac melius in hac parte valeret procedere, ipsorum auxilium et consilium implorabat. Verum cum ipsi duci et quibusdam consiliariis suis diceretur, quod treugam rumpere periculosum esset, et, cum fuisset juramento firmata, penitus inhonestum, responderunt, quod dominus papa excommunicaverat omnes cruce signatos, qui in isto passagio non transirent, qui sciebat adhuc treugam per biennium duraturam; ac per hoc intelligebant, quod volebat treugam non servari, nec ipsi peregrini ibi remanere volebant aliquatenus otiosi. Erant et multi qui dicebant, quod, si contingeret recedere peregrinos, post recessum eorum in eos insurgerent Saraceni, treuga non obstante. Movit præterea quosdam, quod Coradinus cum dominis de Haman et de Camele et de Halaph gravissimam haberet guerram, unde plus solito timet, ne ipsa treuga a Christianis frangatur; quod si fieret, credebatur quod Coradinus, cum videret guerris se undique coarctatum, deberet inde verisimiliter procedere verbum pacis. Habito igitur super his longo deliberationis tractatu, tandem unus fuit omnibus spiritus et vox una in sanctam tendere civitatem, quam dominus Jesus Christus proprio sanguine consecravit; et, ut facilior ad eam haberetur accessus, fuit communiter ordinatum, ut primo Cæsarea, et deinde Joppa muniantur, quod ante passagium Augusti sequentis procul dubio posse fieri sperabatur, et tunc hyeme sequenti in domum Domini cum ipsius adjutorio lætantes valeant proficisci. Fuit autem hæc publicata provisio extra civitatem

A.D. 1227. The patriarch's letter on the crusade.

A.D. 1227. The patriarch's letter on the crusade.

Acon, instante festo apostolorum Simonis et Judæ, adstantibus peregrinis omnibus, ubi solemniter est imperatum, ut essent omnes parati in crastino Omnium sanctorum versus Cæsaream profecturi; quod audientes peregrini, qui consilium ignorabant, quod exercitus tractatum haberet, firmatis munitionibus prædictis, in Hierusalem procedendi tanta subito erant devotione succensi, quod excitaverunt oculos ad abundantiam lachrymarum, ut videbatur cuilibet se Spiritus Sancti gratia adeo roboratum, quod unus posset mille, et duo decem millia, superare. Non igitur oportet, ut devotioni vestræ multis supplicationibus insistamus, ubi tantæ necessitatis evidens instantia pro se clamat, sibique subvenire postulat indilate; quia mora ad se trahit periculum, et festinatio plurimum erit fructuosa. Clamat autem ad singulos Christi sanguis de terra; supplicat parvus et humilis exercitus, sed devotus, sibi celeriter subveniri, sperans in Domino et confidens, quod negotium humiliter inchoatum debeat ipso concedente feliciter terminari. Universi igitur et singuli, qui Christum induistis per fidem, viriliter accingimini ad terræ sanctæ succursum, cum hic causa communis agatur, vestræ scilicet fidei ac totius populi Christiani. Nos enim promotioni hujus negotii, provisore Domino et auctore, non cessamus intendere, sperantes fiducialiter, quod in manibus fidelium fideliter perseverantium debeat prosperari. Data Laterani, decimo kalendas Januarii, pontificatus nostri anno primo.'

Qualiter negotium terræ sanctæ pro defectu imperatoris fuerit impeditum.

The emperor, having embarked, turns back.

Imperator autem Romanorum Fredericus, qui cum aliis cruce signatis sub pœna excom-

munications in hoc passagio præscripto a papa terminum habuit, ut vota peregrinationis persolveret, ad [1]mare Mediterraneum veniens cum parvo comitatu naves ascendit; sed postquam per triduum ad terram promissionis tendere videretur, dixit se subita infirmitate præreptum, ita quod maris intemperiem simul et aeris corruptionem non potuit mortis discrimine diutius sustinere, unde retortis velis ad portum, quo mare ingressus fuerat, post tres dies applicuit; et, his ita gestis, peregrini, qui ex diversis mundi partibus ad terram sanctam ipsum prævenerant, sperantes illum ducem habere et defensorem ad crucis inimicos debellandos, cum audissent dictum imperatorem in illo Augusti mensis passagio, sicut promiserat, non venisse, animo nimis consternati in eisdem navibus, in quibus venerant, plusquam quadraginta armatorum millia sunt reversi; quod factum imperatoris damnose nimis redundavit in dedecus et in præjudicium totius negotii Crucifixi. Ob hanc autem causam, juxta multorum opinionem, ostendit se, ut prædictum est, mundi Salvator in cruce clavis confixum et cruore conspersum populo Christiano, quasi singulis et universis super injuria sibi ab imperatore illata querelam deponens. A.D. 1227.

De morte fratris, qui ordinem Minorum primum instituit.

Circa dies istos frater quidam de ordine Minorum, nomine [2]Franciscus, qui illius ordi- Death of S. Francis.

[1] *Mare Mediterraneum.*] We learn from the letters of Gregory, in Ric. de S. Germano, that Brundisium was the place fixed on for the embarkation; and that whilst there the plague broke out, which carried off the landgrave of Thuringia, Siffrid bishop of Augsburg, and many others; Raynaldi, col. 594.

[2] *Franciscus.*] For the biographers of S. Francis, enumerated by Wadding and others, see the Act. SS. Octob. tom. ii. p. 545.

A.D. 1227. Sketch of the life of S. Francis.

nis institutor fuisse perhibetur et magister, Romæ mirabiliter ex hac luce migravit. Erat autem Franciscus memoratus generis nobilitate præclarus, sed tamen multo clarior morum probitate refulsit. Hic siquidem, puerilibus annis simpliciter transactis, cœpit de mundi hujus illecebris et rerum temporalium mutabilitate sæpius mente revolvere, et quam nulla sunt, quæ temporaliter defluunt, indesinenter pensare; nam et hoc didicerat in literis et theologicis disciplinis, quibus ab ætate tenera incubuerat usque ad notitiam perfectam, quo ordine rerum labentium mutabilitatem contemneret ac viribus totis ad cælestis regni desiderium suspiraret. Sed quod mente conceperat, ut liberius opere compleret, hæreditatem paternam non modicam cum cunctis seculi oblectamentis despiciens, cucullam et cilicium induit, calceamenta deposuit, in vigiliis et jejuniis carnem maceravit, et, ut spontaneam eligeret paupertatem, nihil omnino proprium habere decrevit; nec etiam ipsam refectionem carnalem, nisi quod de eleemosynis fidelium sub titulo reciperet caritatis, et, si forte post tenuissimam refectionem aliquid superabundaret, nihil in crastinum reservans totum pauperibus erogavit. Vestitus etiam de nocte dormivit, mattam pro stratu cubiculi habuit, saxum capiti pro cervicali supposuit, cuculla solummodo et cilicio, quibus in die vestitus incessit, pro nocturnalibus operimentis contentus. Sicque in præparatione evangelii discalceatus incedens, et vitam apostolicam amplectens, diebus Dominicis ac festivis in ecclesiis parochialibus et aliis fidelium conventiculis officium prædicationis implevit; quod tanto efficacius cordibus audientium imprimere potuit, quanto a carnalibus desideriis et gastrimargiæ

crapulis exstitit alienus. Ut autem vir Dei Fran- A.D. 1227.
ciscus hoc salubre propositum ad effectum perduceret, articulos jam dictos, cum quibusdam aliis, quæ a fratribus illius religionis usque in hodiernum diem strenuissime observantur, in schedula conscriptos sedenti in consistorio Roma papæ Innocentio præsentavit et suam petitionem confirmari a sede apostolica postulavit.

Quomodo dominus papa ordinem prædictum per privilegium confirmavit.

Papa itaque in fratre memorato habitum de- The order of S. Francis confirmed by the pope.
formem, vultum despicabilem, barbam prolixam, capillos incultos, supercilia pendentia et nigra diligenter considerans, cum petitionem ejus tam arduam et exsecutione impossibilem recitari fecisset, despexit eum et dixit, 'Vade, frater, et quære porcos, quibus potius debes quam hominibus comparari, et involve te cum eis in volutabro, et regulam illis a te commentatam tradens officium tuæ prædicationis impende. Quod audiens Franciscus inclinato capite exivit, et, porcis tandem inventis, in luto se cum eis tamdiu involvit, quousque a planta pedis usque ad verticem corpus suum totum cum ipso habitu polluisset; sicque ad consistorium revertens papæ se conspectibus præsentavit dicens, 'Domine,' inquit, 'feci sicut præcepisti; exaudi nunc, obsecro, petitionem meam.' Quod factum cum papa admirans conspexisset, contristatus est valde quod illum despexisset, atque in se reversus præcepit ut lotus rediret ad eum; quo celeriter a sordibus mundato, reversus est festinanter. Commotus itaque papa super eo petitionem ejus admisit, et per privilegium Romanæ ecclesiæ officium prædicationis simul cum ordine petito ei confirmans cum benedictione dimisit. Deinde

A.D. 1227. famulus Dei Franciscus oratorium in urbe Romana, in quo contemplativos meteret fructus, construens spirituale certamen contra spiritus malignos et carnalia vitia egregius bellator assumpsit.

De prædicatione fratris memorati et fine valde admirabili.

Preaching of S. Francis. Franciscus igitur per Italiam totam, et cæteras nationes, et præcipue in urbe Roma, cum officium prædicationis devotus impleret, populus Romanus, totius bonitatis inimicus, prædicationem viri Dei adeo despexit, quod nec ipsum audire, nec sanctis ejus voluerunt exhortationibus interesse. Tandem cum per dies plurimos prædicationem ejus despexit, Franciscus indurationem eorum graviter increpavit, 'Doleo,' inquit, 'multum super miseria vestra, quod non solum me Christi famulum spernitis, verum et illum in me despicitis, quoniam Redemptorem mundi evangelizavi vobis; et nunc recedens ab urbe testimonium illius invoco super desolatione vestra, qui est testis in cælo fidelis, atque in confusionem vestram vado evangelizare Christum brutis animalibus et volatilibus cæli, ut audientes salutifera Dei verba obediant et adquiescant.' Sicque ab urbe exiens invenit sedentes in suburbio in morticiniis corvos, milvos et picas, aliasque aves multas in aere volitantes, et dixit eis, 'Præcipio vobis in nomine Jesu Christi, quem crucifixerunt Judæi, cujus prædicationem miseri Romani despexerunt, quatenus ad me accedentes audiatis verbum Dei, in nomine ejus qui vos creavit et in arca Noe ab aquis diluvii liberavit.' Et continuo ad imperium ejus universa illa avium multitudo illuc accedens circumdedit eum, et facto silentio, omnique garritu de-

posito, per dimidium diei spatium verbis viri Dei intendentes de loco non sunt motæ, sed semper intuebantur faciem prædicantis. Hæc autem res admirabilis cum a civibus Romanis simul et ab intrantibus urbem et exeuntibus comperta fuisset, et per triduum a viro Dei idipsum avibus convocatis replicatum exstitisset, exierunt de civitate clerus cum populo multo introducentes hominem Dei cum veneratione magna in urbem, quorum deinceps corda infructuosa et pertinaciter obdurata oleo prædicationis obsecrantis emolliens in melius commutavit. Cœpit itaque celebre nomen ejus per universos Italiæ fines ita dilatari, quod multi nobiles ipsius exemplum secuti, relicto seculo cum vitiis et concupiscentiis ejus, sese magisterio suo subdiderunt. Crevit igitur in brevi hic ordo fratrum prædictorum per orbem universum, qui, in urbibus habitantes et castellis, deni et septeni exierunt in diebus illis, per villas et ecclesias parochiales verbum vitæ prædicantes, et turbis agrestibus virtutum plantaria inserentes fructum plurimum cum usuris etiam Domino obtulerunt ; nec solum inter fideles semen verbi Dei et rorem doctrinæ cælestis consperserunt, verum etiam ad gentilium regiones et Saracenorum nationes se conferentes perhibuerunt testimonium veritati, inter quos etiam multi ex eis ad martyrii gloriam pervenerunt.

A.D. 1227. He preaches to the birds.

De concursu populorum ad obitum fratris sæpe dicti.

Tandem vero, cum amicus Dei Franciscus in urbe Roma simul et terris adjacentibus cum fratribus suis per annos multos evangelium pacis prædicasset, et talentum sibi creditum, ut fœnerator optimus, cum usuris multiplicibus suo largitori restituisset, venit hora ejus, ut transiret ex hoc mundo ad Christum, et pro mercede

Death of S. Francis.

A.D. 1227. laborum acciperet coronam vitæ, quam Deus se diligentibus repromisit. Itaque quinto decimo die ante exitum suum de corpore apparuerunt vulnera in manibus ejus et pedibus sanguinem jugiter emittentia, sicut in mundi Salvatore in ligno pendente apparuerant cum crucifigeretur a Judæis. Latus quoque ejus dextrum adeo apertum et cruore respersum apparuit, ut etiam secreta cordis intima perspicua viderentur. Quid ergo? factus est ad eum concursus hominum utriusque sexus rem tam insolitam admirantium; inter quos etiam ipsi cardinales accedentes sciscitabantur ab eo, quid hæc visio sibi vellet. 'Hæc,' inquit, 'visio in me idcirco ostensa est, quibus mysterium crucis prædicavi, ut credatis in Eum, qui pro mundi salute hæc quæ videtis vulnera in cruce pertulit, et etiam ut me sciatis ejus esse servum, quem evangelizavi vobis crucifixum, mortuum et resuscitatum, et ut, omni ambiguitate remota, in hac fidei constantia usque in finem perseveretis; hæc vulnera, quæ in me ita videtis aperta et sanguine cruentata, statim cum defunctus fuero adeo sana erunt et cohærentia, ut carni cæteræ similia videantur;' qui continuo absque omni corporis angustia et cruciatu carne solutus reddidit spiritum suo Creatori. Quo defuncto, nulla vulnerum prædictorum in latere, vel pedibus ejus sive manibus, [stigmata] remanserunt. Sepulto autem viro Dei in oratorio suo, Romanus pontifex ipsum in catalogum sanctorum admisit, et diem ejus depositionis solenniter instituit celebrari.

De quibusdam novis institutionibus regis Anglorum.

Anno[1] Domini MCCXXVIII. rex Anglorum Henricus festum Dominicæ nativitatis apud Eboracum solenniter celebravit, et protinus inde recedens versus Londoniam recto tramite properavit. In hoc autem itinere mensuras bladi, vini et celiæ falsitatis arguens quædam confregit et comburere nonnulla præcepit, et vasa substituens capaciora panem majoris ponderis fieri fecit, et hujus statuti contemptores pœna gravi pecuniaria mulctari præcepit. A.D. 1228. Revision of the measures of grain, etc.

Eodem tempore, mense Januario, [2]Rogerus de Theoneio, vir nobilis et miles strenuus, non longe a Radingo diem clausit supremum; cujus frater major natu Radulphus, qui tunc absens erat, cupiens cum ipso habere colloquium antequam obiret, cum festinatione venit ad eum, sed defuncto fratre, quem multum dilexit, priusquam veniret, nec vocem in illo nec sensum invenit. Radulphus vero de fratris obitu valde contristatus cœpit cum fletu et vociferatione maxima fratrem jam defunctum adjurare, ut fraterno ductus affectu secum loqueretur; cumque coram militibus suis et aliis multis adstantibus clamores et obsecrationes ingeminaret, addidit etiam, quod nunquam deinceps comederet, nisi ipsius colloquio frueretur. Tunc mortuus ille in lecto residens increpavit acriter fratrem, quod spiritum ejus inquietans ad corpus denuo revocasset. 'Jam,' inquit, 'et pœnas vidi malorum et gaudia beatorum, necnon supplicia magna, quibus Legend concerning Roger de Theoney and his brother.

[1] *Anno Domini* MCCXXVIII.] wanting in *C.*

[2] *Rogerus de Theoneio.*] In the Inquisit. post mortem it is noticed that a Roger de Thony, in the 48th of Henry III., died seised of lands in Wales, Devonshire, Norfolk (principally), Essex, and Hertfordshire; and in the 5th of Edward I. is recorded the death of Radulphus de Thonny, felo, seised of lands in Hertfordshire.

A.D. 1228. miser ego deputatus sum, oculis meis conspexi. Væ, væ mihi! quare torneamenta exercui et ea tanto studio dilexi?' Cui frater, 'Nonne,' ait, 'et tu salvaberis?' Et ille, 'Salvabor,' inquit; 'unum enim opus in honorem perpetuæ virginitatis Mariæ, per quam salvabor, feci.' Cui Radulphus, 'Nunquid supplicia, quibus addictus es, ut dicis, operibus bonis, missis et eleemosynis poterunt mitigari?' Ad hæc Rogerus, 'Poterunt quidem.' 'Et ego,' ait Radulphus, 'tibi in veritate promitto, me pro salute nostra et antecessorum nostrorum domum religionis facturum, quam cum monachis religiosis implevero, pro liberatione animæ vestræ et prædecessorum nostrorum Deum æternaliter invocabunt.' Respondit Rogerus, 'Promissionibus tuis multum indigeo, sed nihil quæso mihi promittas, nisi quod desideras effectu complere.' Et sic fratri cunctisque adstantibus valedicens spiritum denuo exhalavit. Deinde Radulphus frater ejus in eodem anno, sicut promiserat, abbatiam in partibus occidentis regni Angliæ construens monachos Cistercienses imposuit, et locum prædiis et beneficiis non modicis ampliavit.

De translatione Richardi, Saresbiriensis episcopi, ad Dunelmum.

The bishop of Salisbury translated to Durham.

Eodem anno, cassata Romæ electione magistri Willelmi Scoti, Dunelmensis electi, Richardus, Saresbiriensis episcopus, ad eundem episcopatum electus est et translatus; post cujus promotionem canonici Saresbirienses elegerunt magistrum [1] Robertum Bingeham, cocanonicum suum, in animarum suarum episcopum et pastorem. Quo utique anno decisa est contentio inter monachos Coven-

[1] *Robertum Bingeham.*] He was consecrated by the bishop of Bath at Wilton, on the 27th of May; Annal. Waverl. p. 192.

trenses et canonicos Lichefeldenses super epi- A.D. 1228.
scopo eligendo Romæ per sententiam diffinitivam, ita ut deinceps episcopos alternatim eligant, monachi primum, et canonici eo defuncto alterum; hoc tamen observato, [1]ut prior Coventrensis in electione primam semper habeat vocem. In hac autem sententia videtur plurimum juri monachorum fuisse derogatum, qui eatenus semper pontifices elegerant absque canonicorum consensu. Eodem anno imperator Constantinopolitanus humanæ naturæ debitum solvit, filium hæredem[2] relinquens parvulum et nondum idoneum ad imperii dignitatem.

De sententia in imperatorem lata.

Circa[3] dies istos papa Gregorius, cum impera- The pope's censure of the emperor.
toris contumaciam, simul et Crucifixi contemptum, ut sibi videbatur, impunitum diutius distulisset, tandem, ne canis videretur latrare non valens, de consilio cardinalium suorum ipsum imperatorem excommunicavit, et latam sententiam per literas apostolicas in diversis mundi partibus publicari præcepit. Inter cæteros autem hujus sententiæ publicatores Stephano scripsit archiepiscopo in hæc verba; 'Gregorius episcopus Stephano, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, salutem, et cætera. In maris amplitudine spatiosa navicula Petri posita, vel potius exposita turbinibus tempestatum, sic jugiter procellis et fluctibus agitatur, ut ejus gubernatores ac remiges vix contingat aliquando inter inundantium imbrium angustias respirare; nam, si quandoque prospero

[1] *Ut prior ... vocem.*] 'Ita quod prior in electione primam vocem habeat, et decanus secundam;' Chron. Dunst. p. 168.

[2] *Hæredem.*] Baldwin the second was only eleven years old when his brother Robert de Courtenay, the emperor, died. During his minority John of Brienne was appointed to the government.

[3] *Circa dies istos.*] Compare Raynaldi, tom. i. pp. 592, *seqq.*

A.D. 1228. The pope's censure of the emperor.

flante vento plenis velis ad portum tenditur, subito ventus irruens ex adverso, impulsus ab illo cujus halitus ardere facit, ad altitudinem maris et turbulentum profunditatis oceanum navis rapitur, quæ cincta fluctibus mergitur, nec submergitur, quia in ea Dominus residens discipulorum tandem clamoribus excitatur, dum fugat spiritus insufflantes, et mari ventisque imperat, fit tranquillum. Quatuor quidem procellæ quatiunt navem istam; nam perfida paganorum turba terram inclytam Christi sanguine consecratam impie detinere contendunt; rabies tyrannorum temporalia rapiens exterminat justitiam et conculcat ecclesiasticam libertatem; hæreticorum insania Christi tunicam scindere nititur et subvertere fidei sacramentum; falsorum fratrum et filiorum dolosa perversitas concutit viscera et latus dilacerat matris suæ. Sicque foris pugnæ, intus timores; extra interficit gladius, et domibus mors similiter intentatur; sicque frequenter fit, quod Christi ecclesia tot angustiis perturbatur; dum alere credit filios, nutrit in sinu ignem, serpentes et regulos, qui flatu et morsu et incendio cuncta vastare nituntur. Hinc est, quod ad monstra hujusmodi perimenda, et expugnandas acies inimicas, ad tempestatum inquietudines mitigandas, apostolica sedes his temporibus cum multa diligentia quendam alumnum, imperatorem videlicet Fredericum, quem quasi a matris utero excepit, uberibus lactavit, humeris bajulavit, de manibus quærentium animam ejus frequenter eripuit, educare studuit, multis laboribus et expensis usque ad virum perfectum perduxit, ad regiæ dignitatis decorem et tandem ad fastigium culminis imperialis provexit, credens illum habere defensionis virgam et baculum senectutis. Ipse autem, dum in Teutonicam se

transtulit ad habenas imperii obtinendas, jocunda, ut credebatur, auspicia, sed verius pericula, matris obtutibus inferebat; nam sponte, non monitu, sede apostolica ignorante, crucem suis affixit humeris, vovens solenniter se in terræ sanctæ subsidium profecturum. Deinde se et alios cruce signatos excommunicari obtinuit, nisi certo proficiscerentur tempore; sed incidenter absolutionem petiit et accepit de parendo super hæc mandatis ecclesiæ, prius præstito juramento. Exuberantem autem gratiam super ipsum apostolica sedes infundens, ut festinantius ad terræ sanctæ transiret subsidium, ipsum contra morem ad coronam vocavit, qui ad hoc non invitatus, sed multiplicatis intercessoribus invitari per magnificos nuntios consuevit; sicque idem sub crucis vexillo usque ad hæc tempora propria negotia plenius et perfectius consummavit. Tandem cum manibus felicis recordationis Honorii papæ, prædecessoris nostri, in beati Petri basilica recepisset diadema, de manibus nostris, tunc in minori officio constitutis, crucem resumpsit, voto publice innovato. Plures sub spe sui subsidii ad crucem sumendam induxit, et certum recepit terminum transfretandi. Habito quoque postmodum apud Verulas cum ecclesia Romana colloquio, juravit publice, se in certo termino, a Romana sibi ecclesia præfigendo, et tanquam imperatorem honorifice profecturum. Exinde apud Ferentinum in colloquio simili duorum annorum transfretandi elegit sibi terminum et præfixit; sicque transiturum, et nobilem mulierem, natam carissimi filii nostri in Christo Johannis regis Hierosolymorum, illustris ipsius regni hæredem, in conjugem recepturum, solenniter præstito juramento spopondit; adjungens, quod per hoc ad obsequium terræ sanctæ, non ut cæteri pere-

A.D. 1228. The pope's censure of the emperor.

A.D. 1228. The pope's censure of the emperor.

grini, sed ut Templarii et Hospitalarii, se in perpetuum obligaret. Appropinquante itaque termino prælibato, cœpit excusationes multiplices prætendere, se ad transitum asserens non paratum; et, ut denuo trinorum sibi daretur terminus annorum, grandia obtulit obsequia terræ sanctæ cum obligationibus satis magnis. Apostolica vero sedes, ne, tantis laboribus exsufflatis et inutiliter sic exhaustis, totum dissolveretur negotium, quod huic principi post Romanam ecclesiam principalius incumbebat, habito plurium episcoporum et aliorum virorum consilio, de contingentibus nil omittens, venerabilem fratrem nostrum P. Albanensem episcopum, et bonæ memoriæ G. titulo sancti Martini presbyterum cardinalem, ad confirmanda illa, quæ imperator pro crucis obsequio spontaneus promittebat, transmisit. Cumque apud sanctum Germanum cum pluribus Alemanniæ principibus pariter convenissent, imperator propria manu juravit, quod inde ad biennium, id est in passagio Augusti nunc proximo transacto, omni excusatione et dilatione cessantibus, transfretaret, mille milites ibidem per biennium teneret ad suum stipendium pro subsidio terræ sanctæ, centum millia unciarum auri, in quinque passagiis tunc proximo futuris, illuc destinaret certis assignanda personis. Et tunc cardinales presbyteri, de imperatoris consensu, in conspectu principum ac populi circumstantis, excommunicationis sententiam publice auctoritate sedis apostolicæ protulerunt, in quam incideret imperator, si forte in aliquo defecerit prædictorum. Obligavit insuper se imperator ad centum chelandras et quinquaginta galeias ducendas et tenendas ultra mare, et quod insuper duobus millibus militum passagium certis terminis largiretur, in animam suam jurari faciens se ista quæ dixi-

mus impleturum, et sponte consentiens in se et regnum suum ferri sententiam si hæc non fuerint observata. Qualiter autem hæc impleverit, advertas; nam cum ad ejus frequentem instantiam multa cruce signatorum millia, per excommunicationis sententiam coarctati, in termino destinato ad portum Brundusii properassent, quia gratiam suam imperator subtraxerat civitatibus fere cunctis in portubus constitutis, et idem a prædecessore nostro ac a nobis frequentius monitus, ut diligenter pararet omnia, et fideliter, quæ spoponderat, adimpleret, ipse præmissorum, quæ sedi apostolicæ et cruce signatis per prædicatores et literas suas fecerat de sponsione passagii necessariorum et victus, suæ salutis immemor, tamdiu in æstivi fervoris incendio in regione mortis et aeris corruptela detinuit Christianum exercitum, ut non solum magna pars plebis, verum etiam non modica multitudo nobilium et magnatum, pestilentia, sitis ariditate, ardoris incendio, ac multis incommoditatibus exspiravit, inter quos defecerunt bonæ memoriæ episcopi Andegavensis et Augustensis. Pars vero non modica infirmitate gravata regrediens in viis, in silvis et planitiis, in montibus et speluncis, occubuit jam ex parte. Sane reliqui, vix obtenta licentia, licet galeiæ, chelandræ, ac naves sufficientes ad transitum victualium, hominum et equorum, ut promiserat, non adessent, in festo tamen beatæ Virginis, cum jam temporis instantia immineret ut naves transmarinis partibus inciperent remeare, sulcare maria inchoarunt, sed pro nomine Jesu Christi se discrimini concurrentes, ac credentes imperatorem cominus eorum vestigia secuturum. Idem vero, evacuatis promissionibus, ruptis vinculis quibus tenebatur astrictus, calcato timore divino, contempta reve-

A.D. 1228. The pope's censure of the emperor.

A.D. 1228. The pope's censure of the emperor.

rentia Jesu Christi, censura ecclesiastica vilipensa, ac relicto exercitu Christiano, exposita infidelibus terra sancta, devotione populi Christiani abjecta, in suum et totius Christianitatis opprobrium retrorsum abiit abstractus et illectus ad consuetas regni delicias, abjectionem corporis suis frivolis excusationibus, ut dicitur, gestiens palliare. Attendite ergo, et videte, si est dolor sicut dolor sedis apostolicæ, matris vestræ, sic crudeliter et toties deceptæ in filio, quem lactaverat, in quem posuit in hoc facto spei suæ fiduciam, in quem tot beneficiorum abundantiam cumulavit. Dissimulans interim, ne, occasione inventa, se averteret a terræ sanctæ subsidio, exilia præsulum, spoliationes, captivitates et injurias multiplices, quas ecclesiis, viris religiosis, clericis irrogavit, et obaudiens querelas multiplices pauperum, populorum et nobilium, patrimonii ecclesiæ clamantium contra ipsum, quas in aures Domini Sabaoth credimus introisse. Et quamvis ecclesia Romana tueri debeat filium tanta diligentia educatum et magnificentia exaltatum, nunc ipsum gemit sine Marte victum, absque hoste prostratum, et in suæ confusionis opprobrium tam ignominiose dejectum. Non minus gemit exterminium exercitus Christiani, qui non inimicorum gladiis vel virtute defecit, sed calamitate tam miserabili est consumptus. Gemit etiam, quod pars residua bellatorum, exposita maris periculis et fluctibus tempestatum, absque duce, præceptore, et principe ducitur, quo ignorat, modicum profectura terræ sanctæ utilitatibus; quibus debitæ consolationis solatium et opportunæ subventionis auxilium, impedientibus jam maris frementis procellis temporisque angustia, juxta votum non possumus ministrare. Gemit insuper excidium sanctæ terræ, quam

nunc eripi de manibus paganorum sperabamus ; quam olim, ut asseritur, recuperasset Christianus exercitus per concambium Damietæ, nisi semel eis et iterum imperialibus fuisset literis interdictum ; qui etiam non fuisset in manibus paganorum inclusus, si galeiarum subsidium, ut ex parte sua promissum fuerat et fieri poterat, subsecutum esset, nam Damieta, quæ, ut astruitur, suo tradita nuntio et aquilis imperialibus insignita, eodem die crudeliter spoliata, et per suos deteriorata viliter et ignominiose, per ipsos fuit infidelibus restituta. Recurrit etiam ad rediviva suspiria, et amissionem præscriptam, recolens Damietæ tot laborum angustias, tot expensarum dispendia, tot mortes fidelium, et tot excursus temporum, quæ inutiliter affluxerunt, subortis lachrymis flere non cessat ; nec est qui consoletur eam ex omnibus caris ejus, nec abstergat lachrymas a maxillis. Cum ergo vox ejus in Rama jam sonuerit, et Rachel non solum filios, sed hæc omnia irremediabili lamentatione deploret, quis fidelium a gemitibus et suspiriis continebit ? Quis filiorum, cernens aquarum profluvia de matris oculis prodeuntia, lachrymas non effundet ? Quis matris non compatietur angustiis, nec immensis ejus doloribus condolebit ? Quis fidelium propter hæc non ardentius inflammabitur ad subsidium terræ sanctæ, ne Christiana juventus ex insperato casu penitus prostrata videatur et ignominiose animo consternata ? Nonne viri cordati et filii Jesu Christi debent ad subsidium terræ sanctæ tanto fortius animari, quanto ignominiam amplius resultare conspiciunt ex insperata ruina in Patrem et filium, in Redemptorem atque redemptos, in Christum et populum Christianum ? Nos igitur hoc negotium tanto ardentius resumere affectamus et profun-

A.D. 1228. The pope's censure of the emperor.

A.D. 1228. The pope's censure of the emperor;

diori consilio alta intendimus remedia invenire, quanto magis necessitas et ex multis inflata doloribus [1]nostra grandis angustia pavit; et sic cum Dominus populo suo modicum ostendit se iratum, de illius manu hoc tempore sacrificium non acceptans, qui prudentiam non est imitatus illorum, per quem salus in Israel fieri consuevit. Non tamen misericordiæ Dei sunt consumptæ, nec ejus miserationes penitus defecerunt. Sperantes namque in misericordia Dei nostri, qui viam nobis ostendit, per quam in hoc opere prospere gradiamur, et viros secundum cor suum destinabit, qui præcedant in cordis puritate ac manuum munditia exercitum Christianum. Ideoque fraternitatem vestram obsecramus in Domino, per apostolica scripta præcipiendo mandantes, quatenus hæc clero et populis vobis commissis fideliter exponentes, ac inducentes eosdem ad hæc exsequenda, suos studeant animos præparare; et ipsos ad vindicandam injuriam Jesu Christi sedulis exhortationibus invitetis, ut cum ipsos sedes apostolica, habito majori tractatu, sollicitandos providerit, promptos inveniat et paratos. Porro, ne tanquam canes muti, non valentes latrare, videamur deferre homini contra Deum, non sumentes ultionem de illo, qui tantam injuriam in Dei populo procuravit, imperatorem videlicet Fredericum, qui nec transfretavit in termino constituto, nec illuc in taxatis passagiis præscriptam pecuniam destinavit, nec mille duxit milites per biennium tenendos ad suum stipendium pro subsidio terræ sanctæ ibidem, sed in tribus articulis manifeste deficiens in descriptæ excommunicationis laqueum ultroneus se ingessit, excommunicatum, quanquam inviti,

[1] *Nostra.*] 'Nostram' in MS.

publice nuntiamus et mandamus ab omnibus arctius evitari, per vos et alios ecclesiarum prælatos excommunicatum facientes publice nuntiari; contra ipsum, si contumacia ejus exegerit, gravius processuri. Confidimus tamen adhuc in pii Patris clementia, qui neminem vult perire, quod oculi mentis caligantes hoc ecclesiastico delibuti collyrio, si non fuerit animo rebellis, lumine poterunt illustrari, ut suam aspiciat nuditatem, et ignominiam suam, quam incurrit, avertat, sicque recurrat ad Medicum, et ad matrem ecclesiam revertatur, per humilitatem debitam et satisfactionem congruam salutis remedia recepturus. Nos enim ejus salutem in Domino affectamus interire, quem olim sincere dileximus in minori etiam officio constituti. Data Laterani, pontificatus nostri anno secundo.' A.D. 1228. declares him excommunicated.

Quomodo promulgaverit se fuisse excommunicatum injuste.

Imperator itaque Fredericus, cum a referentibus se excommunicatum cognovisset, perturbatus est valde; et sicut papa per literas suas in omnibus Christianorum finibus latam fecerat sententiam publicari, ita dictus imperator scripsit universis regibus et principibus Christianis conquerens sententiam in eum fuisse injuriose latam. Denuntiavit etiam singulis et universis, se non frivolis excusationibus, sicut ei papa mendose imposuit, a peregrinatione reversum inchoata, sed maximæ infirmitatis causa, Illius super hoc testimonium invocans, qui est testis in cælo fidelis. Affirmavit insuper, quia, quam citius sibi Deus prosperitatem præstiterit corporalem, votum suæ peregrinationis, sicut decet imperatorem, cum honore congruo persolvere Domino procurabit. Inter cæteros siquidem catholicos reges The emperor complains of the injustice of the pope's sentence.

A.D. 1228. literas[1] auro bullatas Anglorum regi transmisit, proponens in eisdem Romanam ecclesiam tanto jam avaritiæ succensam incendio et concupiscentia manifesta, quod, bonis ecclesiasticis non sibi pro voto sufficientibus, imperatores, reges et principes exhæredare et tributarios constituere non veretur. Habeat autem de præmissis rex Anglorum ex se ipso exemplum, cujus patrem, regem scilicet Johannem, tamdiu excommunicatum tenuit, quousque ipsum et regna ejus constituit sub tributo. Habeant etiam generaliter omnes idem exemplum de comite Tholosano, et alios principes multos, quorum terras et personas tamdiu sub interdicto concludere molitur, donec illos in consimilem redigat servitutem. In conclusione demum epistolæ hæc adjecit, exhortans orbis principes universos, ut contra tantam sibi prospiciant avaritiam et iniquitatem, quia

'Tunc sua res agitur, paries cum proximus ardet.'

Quod imperator movit persecutionem contra papam.

Letter of the pope complaining of the emperor's violence.

Ex hac itaque imperator perturbatione commotus excitavit contra dominum papam et Romanæ ecclesiæ patrimonium persecutionem gravissimam, invadens ejus civitates et occupans castella, sicut idem papa per literas suas Romano, Francorum legato, directas evidenter expressit in hæc verba;

Querimonia papæ de imperatore.

'Gregorius episcopus Romano, Francorum legato, salutem, et cætera. Attende, quæsumus,

[1] *Literas auro bullatas.*] The letter of Henry, acknowledging the receipt of the pope's letters of complaint, as well as to the emperor, with a similar acknowledgment, at the same time urging him to reconciliation with Gregory, are printed in Rymer, p. 189; both are dated the 20th of February.

et vide, si est dolor sicut dolor noster, quia filium quem nutrivit ecclesia Romana et exaltavit, sperans eum propugnatorem habere contra perfidas nationes, ecce nunc persecutorem sentit immanem et hostem validum experitur. Et ne taceamus atroces injurias et jacturas enormes, quibus Fredericus dictus imperator ecclesiam et personas ecclesiasticas damnabiliter hactenus flagellavit, patrimonium apostolicæ sedis per Saracenos et alios impugnat, et, quod detestabilius est, cum Soldano et aliis Saracenis nefandis contrahens pactiones illis favorem, Christianis odium, exhibet manifestum, ad exterminandas domos Hospitalis et fratrum militiæ Templi, per quas reliquiæ terræ sanctæ hactenus sunt observatæ, impie annullando. De mandato enim illius inter Saracenos et Christianos fide fracta treugarum, cum Saracenis per terras domorum prædictarum hostiliter equitans, occisis et captis quamplurimis, cum prædas pluries abduxissent, Templarii ex hoc moti insurrexerunt contra ipsos, et cum prædas abstulissent ad valentiam sex millium marcarum, Thomas, comes Atterarum, imperatoris bajulus, illis redeuntibus, furibundus et currens, eandem prædam, ipsis non audentibus, juxta ordinis sui instituta, manum armatam contra Christianos erigere, abstulit violenter et reddidit Saracenis, præter quædam, quæ idem Thomas sibi dicitur retentasse. Quod si Saraceni prædam auferant Christianis, dictus Thomas non solum ad recuperationem ejus intendit, sed nec patitur ut Christiani prædam aliquando auferant Saracenis; quare factum est, ut illi ex hoc insolentiores effecti nostros audacter impugnent, et nostri proditionis periculum formidantes minus audeant refragari, et sic effusio sanguinis Christiani nonnunquam in imperatoris damnabile lucrum A.D. 1228.

A.D. 1228. cedit. Adhuc quoque Thomas prædictus, vel potius imperator per ipsum, prædictas domos immanius persequens ipsas domibus et possessionibus, quas habebant, vi arctiori per violentiam spoliavit, easque privilegiis apostolicæ sedis privare contendens et imperiali subjicere jurisdictioni nititur, in manifestam subversionem ecclesiasticæ libertatis; centum sclavos etiam, quos domus Hospitalis et Templi habebant in Sicilia et Apulia, colligi faciens eos reddidit Saracenis, nulla exinde recompensatione facta domibus supradictis; et sic servis Christi servos præfert Machometi, ut ex præmissis ostenditur evidenter. Adhuc pro certo scias, quod, licet dictus imperator cum paucis militibus mare dicitur intrasse, contra patrimonium ecclesiæ magnum exercitum Christianorum et Saracenorum multitudinem destinavit, ut de observatione fidei suæ et malignitate constet, omnibusque manifestum exhibeat argumentum. Unde, inquam, firmam spem fiduciamque habemus in Illo, qui ecclesiam suam supra fidei petram stabiliens, quantumcunque irruant venti et inundent flumina, ipsam tamen non permittet everti. Dum itaque videmus eum in subversione fidei Christianæ ita nequiter machinantem, ita impie sævientem, possemus extremum periculum formidare; sed, quantumcunque impii prolongetur iniquitas, nunquam tamen in sua poterit pravitate prævalere, sed in ea potius evanescet. Cum igitur ex officio, licet indignis, nobis injuncto providere cogimur, ne minister Machometi in Christi ministros diutius valeat desævire, sed sæviens potius confundatur et gloria Christiani nominis exaltetur, dilectioni tuæ per apostolica scripta præcipiendo mandamus, quatenus per terram legationis tuæ hæc solenniter prædicans Christi fidelibus, ut pro

statu fidei et religionis observantia stent ex animo, tanquam prosequentes singuli proprium interesse, ac salutaribus monitis effectibus eos et exhortationibus inducere non postponas. Datum Laterani, nonas Augusti, pontificatus nostri anno secundo.' A.D. 1228.

Quomodo populus Romanus excitavit seditionem contra Romanum pontificem.

Per idem tempus populus Romanus in papam Gregorium [1]seditionem excitantes in solemnitate Paschali illum ejecerunt ab urbe, insequentes eum usque Viterbium castellum suum, ubi fortiter invalescentes fugaverunt eum usque Perusium. Papa, aliud vindictæ genus non habens, persecutores suos excommunicationis sententia innodavit. Eodem tempore rex Francorum misit in Provinciam super comitem Tholosanum expeditionem non modicam militarem, ut dictum comitem debellarent et ab illis finibus propulsarent. Audientes autem quod dictus comes erat tunc apud castrum Saracenum, quod ad jus suum spectare videbatur, decreverunt eum ibidem inclusum obsidione vallare; comes vero de eorum adventu præmunitus cum ingenti copia armatorum illis venientibus insidias paravit, et in silva quadam, per quam Franci erant transituri, cum suis delitescens hostium exspectavit adventum. Venientibus autem Francigenis ad locum insidiarum, irruit in eos cum suis legionibus comes

The pope driven from Rome by the people.

[1] *Seditionem excitantes.*] The mode employed by Frederic to obtain this influence is stated by a contemporary writer to have been as follows: He sent to the chief men, 'the Frangipani,' of the city, and demanded of them an account of the value of all their property; having purchased this, he restored it again to the former possessors, to be held by them in fee: when therefore the emperor was again excommunicated, these men excited the people against the pope, and he was driven from the city: Conrad. Ursperg. in Raynaldi, i. p. 606.

A.D. 1228. non præmeditatos, et, facto hinc inde conflictu gravissimo, capti sunt ex Francis milites quingenti et multi interfecti. Capti sunt autem servientes armati ad duo millia bellatorum, quos omnes ad nudam carnem spoliatos, quorundam eorum fecit comes oculos erui, aures et nares præcidi, manus ac pedes aliorum truncari, et sic turpiter mutilatos ad propria remittens deforme spectaculum Francigenis exstiterunt. Milites quoque captivos omnes, collectis prius manubiis eorundem, comes victor sub arctiori custodia deputavit. Actum autem est bellum hoc decimo quinto calendas Junii apud castrum Saracenum. Et, ut breviter dicatur, ter in illa æstate expeditionibus repetitis, [1] Franci fugati vel capti sunt et incarcerati a comite sæpe dicto.

De obitu Stephani, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.

Death of the archbishop of Canterbury. Eodem anno Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, apud Slindonam manerium suum septimo idus Julii diem clausit extremum, et Cantuariæ sepultus est pridie nonas ejusdem. Quo sepulto, monachi Cantuarienses, impetrata a rege licentia, elegerunt monachum de gremio ecclesiæ suæ, magistrum Walterum de Heinesham, tertio nonas Augusti; quem cum monachi præsentassent regi, ipse post diutinam deliberationem eundem electum certis objectionibus recusavit. Primo quidem ipsis objecit monachis, quod talem elegerunt qui sibi inutilis erat et regno; secundo, quod pater ejusdem de furto convictus patibulo

[1] *Franci fugati vel capti sunt.*] The successes of Raymond, however, appear to have been but of short duration. On the 12th of April in the following year a peace was concluded with Louis, by which, between the pope and the king, the count lost nearly all his territories, and remained a prisoner in the Louvre during six weeks, until the three preliminary articles of the treaty had been executed.

suspensus fuit; tertio, quod steterat in causis A.D. 1228.
contra patrem suum regem Johannem tempore interdicti. Episcopi præterea Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganei eidem electo objecerunt, quod sanctimonialem quandam oppresserat et ex illa pueros susceperat; adjicientes insuper, quod electio archiepiscopi sine illorum præsentia non debuerat celebrari. Electus vero præfatus electioni factæ firmiter adhærens, post appellationem interpositam, assumptis sibi monachis quibusdam Cantuariensibus, domini papæ se conspectibus præsentavit, petens instanter, ut electionem factam confirmaret; sed dominus papa, cum cognovisset quod a rege et episcopis electio contradicta fuisset, distulit negotium donec rei certitudinem didicisset. Rex autem et episcopi, cum audissent, quod electus memoratus ad curiam Romanam iter arripuisset, objectiones præmissas in scriptum redactas et tam regio quam episcoporum [sigillo] roboratas per Roffensem et Cestrensem episcopos domino papæ transmiserunt, magistrum Johannem, Bedefordensem archidiaconum, hujus negotii constituentes patronum. Nuntii tandem Romam pervenientes domino papæ regis et episcoporum literas porrexerunt; quibus papa diligenter inspectis de consilio cardinalium statuit partibus diem in crastino Cinerum, ut tunc mediante justitia causam sententialiter diffiniret. Eodem anno per totam æstatem facta sunt tonitrua et coruscationes horribiles, quæ ædificia multa succenderunt in locis diversis, homines et animalia peremerunt; et subsecutæ sunt in autumno sequente pluviarum inundationes assiduæ, quæ in frugibus colligendis damna non modica cultoribus intulerunt.

De irruptione facta a Wallensibus.

A.D. 1228. Disturbances in Wales.

Eodem[1] tempore, mense Augusto, milites et servientes de castello Montis-Gomerii, quod in confinio Walliæ situm est, exierunt cum populo regionis, ut transitum cujusdam viæ non longe a castello positum, propter latrones Wallenses, qui in illo loco viatores peremerunt assidue et transeuntes spoliaverunt, latius facerent et securum. Venientes siquidem ad locum cum gladiis, securibus, fustibus et armis, cœperunt arbores et ligna, veprium densitates et fruteta, succindere, ut viam redderent viatoribus spatiosam. Quod cum a Wallensibus compertum fuerat, supervenerunt in fortitudine gravi et hostes acriter invadentes compulerunt eos castellum ingredi, hinc inde quibusdam peremptis; et, cum castellum obsidione vallassent Wallenses, inclusi continuo Huberto, Angliæ justiciario, cui rex nuper honorem illum cum castello dederat, significaverunt, et rex cum festinatione illuc veniens Wallenses ab obsidione removit. Rex autem Anglorum, qui cum paucis venerat armatis, majorem exspectavit exercitum, et tandem multitudine armatorum stipatus ad silvam pervenit supradictam, quæ, ut dicebatur, spatiosa erat nimis, habens quinque leucarum longitudinis; sed, licet magna esset et præ nimia densitate ad destruendum difficillima, cum ingenti tamen labore succisa est et ignibus concremata. Et rex inde ad interiora exercitum ducens venit ad quoddam habitaculum albi ordinis, Cridia vocatum, quod Wallensibus erat receptaculum, sicut regi fuerat intimatum. Injecto igitur ad jussionem regis igne in ædificiis illis, omnia in favillas

[1] *Eodem tempore.*] Chron. Walt. Hemingford, p. 572.

redegerunt. Hubertus vero justiciarius, cum si- A.D. 1228.
tum loci quasi inexpugnabilem advertisset, rege consentiente, jussit ibi castellum firmari; sed, antequam opus inceptum ad perfectionem veniret, multi utrinque interfecti sunt, et vir nobilis Willelmus de Brausia, dum victualia quæreret, a Wallensibus captus et in vinculis est abductus. Quidam etiam miles, quem rex nuper donaverat cingulo militari, cum aliis ad victualia quærenda exierat; cum socios ab hostibus videret præclusos, in medios hostes audacter prorupit, et, multis ex obstantibus interemptis, ipse tandem cum quibusdam aliis de exercitu regis occubuit interfectus. Erant autem multi ex majoribus exercitus regis, qui cum Loelino erant confœderati ac regi ficte adhæserunt; unde, deficiente in exercitu omni alimentorum genere, coactus est rex turpem inire concordiam, in hoc consentiens, ut castellum magnis sumptibus fere jam consummatum ipsius regis complanaretur expensis, et Loelinus pro laboribus regis et impensis daret tria millia marcas eidem regi, et sic fœdere confirmato unusquisque ad propria remearet; sicque rex Angliæ, postquam per tres fere menses in constructione castelli prædicti occupatus fuerat et pecuniam infinitam inutiliter consumpserat, remanente [1]Willelmo de Brausia in vinculis Loelini, viro nobili, ignominiose ad propria remeavit. Et tunc multos commovit ad risum, quod cum primo construeretur castellum, justiciarius

[1] *Willelmo de Brausia.*] In the Chron. Dunst. it is said, that he redeemed himself for three thousand marks and the castle of Poet, which he gave to Llewellyn with his daughter in marriage. Hemingford thus describes his death: 'Anno vero sequenti Leulinus eundem Willielmum de Breans, baronem nobilem, quem ad festa Paschalia invitaverat post epistolarum copiam, super adulterio et violatione uxoris suæ accusans, et malitiose eum et hostiliter aggressus est, et eum in carcerem trudens morte turpissima et absque omni judicio finaliter interemit.'

A.D. 1228. dans illi nomen vocavit illud 'Stultitiam Huberti,' quia, cum novissime viderent post tot labores et expensas solo tenus complanatum, justiciarium omnes non solum prophetam, sed etiam plus quam prophetam, esse dixerunt.

Quomodo Fredericus in terram sanctam applicatus negotium Christi promovit.

The emperor sails for the Holy Land. Eodem anno Fredericus, Romanorum imperator, mare Mediterraneum [1]ingressus, ut Domino votum peregrinationis persolveret, in vigilia nativitatis beatæ virginis Mariæ apud Achon applicuit. Venientes ei obviam clerus terræ et populus cum[2] magno honore, ut tantum decebat virum, illum receperunt; veruntamen, quoniam noverant eum a papa excommunicatum, non ei communicaverunt in osculo neque in mensa, sed consuluerunt, ut domino papæ satisfaciens rediret ad sanctæ ecclesiæ unitatem. Templarii vero et Hospitalarii in adventu ejus flexis genibus adoraverunt eum, genua ejus deosculantes, et omnis fidelium qui aderat exercitus glorificabant Deum in adventu ipsius, sperantes quod per eum fieret salus in Israel. Tunc imperator ad universum exercitum gravem deposuit querimoniam de pontifice Romano, quod injustam tulerat in eum sententiam, affirmans se gravissimæ infirmitatis causa iter suum ad terræ sanctæ subsidium distulisse. Soldanus vero Babyloniæ, cum ejus ad-

[1] *Ingressus.*] Upon the causes which determined Frederic to undertake this expedition, and the progress of it, see Michaud, Hist. des Crois. iv. p. 25, *seqq.*

[2] *Cum magno honore.*] It is amusing to read the accounts of Frederic's conduct and his success, as given by different writers: an anonymous chronicler (Rec. des Hist. xviii. p. 581) speaks of it as, 'Ejus malo Deus utens in bonum ei ubique victoriam dedit;' whilst Fuller opens his chapter on this part of his history with, 'See how God's blessing goeth along with the pope's curses,' p. 163. See Raynaldi, tom. ii. p. 1, *seqq.*

ventum in Syriam cognovisset, misit ei xenia multa et pretiosa in auro et argento, in pannis sericis et lapidibus pretiosis, in camelis et elephantis, in ursis et simiis, et aliis rebus mirificis, quibus omnibus regiones abstinent occidentis. Invenit autem imperator, tempore quo Achon applicuit, principes et rectores exercitus populi Christiani, ducem de Leinburgo, patriarcham Hierosolymitanum, archiepiscopos Nazarensem, Cæsariensem et Narbonensem, episcopos Angliæ Wintoniensem et Exoniensem, magistros Hospitalis et militiæ Templi et Hospitalis Teutonicorum, qui præerant octingentis militibus peregrinis et peditibus quasi decem millibus de diversis mundi partibus congregatis; qui omnes pari devotione ducti Cæsaream et quædam munierant castella, ita quod nihil defuit eis, nisi ut Joppen restaurarent, et sic in sanctam tenderent civitatem. [1]Imperator itaque, cum statum terræ sanctæ cognovisset, approbavit plurimum peregrinorum propositum; et, præparatis omnibus ad progrediendum necessariis, processerunt feliciter, prævio imperatore, et decimo septimo kalendas Decembris apud Joppen prospere pervenerunt. Sed quoniam unusquisque de exercitu necessaria victus ad dies plurimos sibi et equitaturis suis cum summariis per terram portare nequivit, et specialiter propter hoc in portu Achonensi naves essent paratæ, quæ victualium copiam exercitui adferre debebant, repente suborta tempestate et supra modum tumescentibus procellis, per septem dies continuos peregrinis Christi victualia fuerant interdicta. Erat autem tunc timor magnus inter multos, ne iratus Dominus populum suum delere vellet de super-

A.D. 1228.

[1] *Imperator itaque.*] Compare the account by Ric. de S. Germano; Murat. vii. p. 1011.

A.D. 1228. ficie terræ; sed ineffabilis clementia Dei, quæ neminem temptari permittet ultra quam sustinere potest, tandem clamoribus lachrymosis fidelium excitatus imperavit ventis et mari et facta est tranquillitas magna, et continuo, ducente Domino, venit apud Joppen innumera navium multitudo cum ingenti copia frumenti et hordei, vini et omni genere victualium, ita quod indeficiens abundantia fuit semper in exercitu usque ad perfectam reædificationem castri memorati, prout rerum necessitas exigebat.

De Joseph, qui ultimum Christi adventum adhuc vivus exspectat.

The wandering Jew. Hoc denique anno venit in Angliam archiepiscopus quidam Armeniæ majoris, gratia peregrinationis, ut sanctorum hujus regionis reliquias et loca venerabilia, sicut et per alia regna fecerat, visitaret; literas quoque domini papæ ad commendationem personæ suæ viris religiosis et prælatis ecclesiasticis exhibuit, ut ab ipsis cum debita reverentia reciperetur et honorifice tractaretur. Hic demum apud sanctum Albanum veniens ab abbate et conventu reverenter susceptus est, ubi cum ab itinere fatigatus ob sui suorumque recreationem aliquandiu perendinaret, cœpit per interpretes suos de ritu et religione hujus patriæ multa et moribus vivendi inquirere, et de partibus orientis plura admiranda referre. Interrogatus autem inter cætera de Joseph, viro illo, de quo frequens sermo habetur inter homines, qui, quando passus est Dominus, præsens fuit et locutus est cum eo, qui adhuc vivit in argumentum fidei Christianæ, si illum aliquando viderit vel de illo quicquam audierit, respondit pro archiepiscopo miles quidam de familia ejus, qui interpres illius erat,

et dixit lingua Gallicana, 'Bene,' inquit, 'dominus meus novit hominem illum, et paulo antequam iter arriperet ad partes occidentis idem Joseph in Armenia comedit ad mensam domini mei archiepiscopi, quem multoties viderat et audierat loquentem.' Et postmodum interrogatus de rebus gestis inter Dominum Jesum Christum et eundem Joseph respondit, 'Tempore passionis Jesu Christi, cum captus a Judæis in prætorium adductus fuisset ante præsidem Pilatum, ut judicaretur ab ipso, accusantibus illum constanter Judæis, cum Pilatus nullam in eo causam mortis invenisset, dixit ad eos, 'Accipite eum vos et secundum legem vestram judicate eum;' sed tandem, invalescentibus clamoribus Judæorum, Pilatus dimisit illis Barabbam ad petitionem illorum, et tradidit eis Jesum, ut crucifigeretur. Trahentibus autem Judæis Jesum extra prætorium, cum venisset ad ostium, Cartaphilus, prætorii ostiarius et Pontii Pilati, cum per ostium exiret Jesus, pepulit eum pugno post tergum impie et irridens [dixit,] 'Vade Jesu citius, vade, quid moraris?' Et Jesus severo vultu et oculo respiciens in eum dixit, 'Ego,' inquit, 'vado, et tu exspectabis donec redeam.' Itaque juxta verbum Domini exspectat adhuc Cartaphilus ille, qui tempore Dominicæ passionis erat quasi triginta annorum, et semper, cum usque ad centum attigerit annorum, redit ad illum ætatis statum, quo fuit anno quando passus est Christus. Verum post passionem Domini, crescente fide catholica, idem Cartaphilus baptizatus fuit ab Anania, qui Paulum baptizavit apostolum, et vocatus est Joseph. Habitat autem frequenter in utraque Armenia et in aliis regionibus orientis, vivens inter episcopos et alios ecclesiæ prælatos, homo sanctæ conversationis et

A.D. 1228. The wandering Jew.

A.D. 1228. The wandering Jew.

religionis, pauca habens verba et circumspecta, ut qui nihil loquitur, nisi ab episcopis et viris religiosis fuerit requisitus; et tunc refert de rebus antiquitatis, et de iis quæ gesta fuerant in passione Domini et resurrectione, et de testibus resurrectionis, illis videlicet qui surrexerunt cum Christo et venerunt in sanctam civitatem et apparuerunt multis; refert etiam de symbolo apostolorum, et eorum divisione et prædicatione; et hoc sine risu et omni levitate verborum, ut qui magis versatur in lachrymis et timore Domini, metuens semper et suspectum habens adventum Jesu Christi, ne ipsum in ultimo examine inveniat iratum, quem ad passionem properantem irridens ad dignam provocaverat ultionem. Veniunt ad eum multi de remotis mundi partibus, delectantes in ejus visione et confabulatione, quibus, si sint viri authentici, de rebus interrogatis breviter quæstiones absolvit. Munera omnia sibi respuit oblata, victu moderato tantum et vestitu contentus. In hoc semper ponit suæ spem salutis, quia ignorans deliquit, dicente Domino et orante in passione sua pro inimicis suis, 'Pater,' inquit, 'ignosce illis, quia nesciunt quid faciunt.'

Quomodo magister Rogerus successit Eustachio, Londoniarum episcopo.

Death of Eustace, bishop of London.

Eodem anno [1]Eustachius, Londinensis episcopus, diem clausit extremum; in cujus loco canonici elegerunt magistrum Rogerum, cognomento Nigrum, et de gremio ecclesiæ suæ canonicum, quem rex sibi præsentatum sine difficultate

[1] *Eustachius.*] He had filled the offices of justiciary, chancellor of the exchequer, and treasurer; upon his appointment to London, the following distich was written:

'Eustachi nuper bene stabas,
nunc bene stabis:
Ille status valuit, prævalet
iste tamen.'
Godw. i. 180.

recepit.[1] Eodem tempore obiit Galfridus, Eliensis episcopus, mense Decembris, et sepultus est in ecclesia cathedrali pridie idus mensis ejusdem; quo defuncto, monachi elegerunt communi assensu [2]Hugonem sancti Edmundi abbatem, qui regi præsentatus gratanter susceptus est et episcopatus bonis omnibus investitus. A.D. 1228.

Quomodo magnates transmarini regem Anglorum sollicitant ut transfretaret.

Anno Domini MCCXXIX. rex Anglorum Henricus ad natale Domini tenuit curiam suam apud Oxoniam, præsentibus magnatibus regni. Venit autem ad eum ibi archiepiscopus Burdegalensis, missus a magnatibus Wasconiæ, Aquitaniæ et Pictaviæ, qui a rege cum honore susceptus dies cum illo natalitios celebravit. Venerunt etiam et alii solennes nuntii ad dictum regem de Normannia, quorum omnium unum atque idem erat negotium, ut videlicet ex parte magnatum regionum prædictarum regem studiose sollicitarent, quatenus ad partes illas venire in persona propria dignaretur, denuntiantes ei, quod universi ad eum cum equis venirent et armis et populo regionis, atque cum illo immutabiliter starent, ut revocare posset hæreditates amissas. Rex autem, qui adhuc erat nimia simplicitate perplexus, a justiciario suo, quem consiliarium unicum habuit, consilium quærens nil aliud accepit, nisi ut negotium differret, donec hora felicior arrideret. Nuntii vero, aliud non habentes in responsis, ad propria sunt reversi. A.D. 1229. Henry refuses the invitation of the Norman and other French barons.

[1] *Recepit.*] He was consecrated on Trinity Sunday, the 10th of June, by Joceline, bishop of Bath, or, according to others, by Henry, bishop of Rochester.

[2] *Hugonem.*] Hugh Norwold was consecrated at the same time with the preceding.

Quomodo astronomici Tholetani scripserunt de concursu planetarum.

A.D. 1229. Predictions by the astronomers of Toledo.

Eodem[1] anno astronomici Tholetani omnibus Christi fidelibus in hæc verba literas direxerunt; 'Omnibus Christi fidelibus ad quos literæ istæ pervenerint, magister Johannes David, Tholetanus, et omnes ejusdem loci magistri, salutem et Spiritus Sancti solamen. Anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo nono, usque ad septem annos mense Septembri, sole existente in Libra; convenient omnes planetæ simul, et sol erit in cauda Draconis; et fiet significatio rerum mirabilium et horrendarum; et fiet diluvium ventorum per Saturnum et Martem; crescetque mare ultra solitum; et erit ventorum tanta conflictio, quod stabunt fere simul, et obscurabunt et denigrabunt totum orbem; et dabunt sonos horribiles, corda hominum dissipantes, et subvertentes ædificia et arbores, et plures valles montibus æquabuntur; et civitates multas præcipitabunt, maxime Babyloniam, [2]Haldas, Methan, Tripolin, et præcipue civitates sitas in locis arenosis et sabulosis; sed ante hæc omnia erit eclypsis solis, et erit sol a tertia usque ad meridiem ignei coloris et rubicundi, quod significat maximam sanguinis effusionem; et post sequetur eclypsis lunæ in coloribus permixtis, et significat maximam confusionem gentium; et post hæc erunt prælia multa et occisiones in oriente et occidente, et erunt terræmotus universales, id est per totum orbem, et mortalitas et contradictio gentium et regnorum ad invicem, ita

[1] *Eodem anno.*] The chapter following is not found in Paris. Ric. de S. Germano gives it in nearly the same words, saying that it was received at S. Germains in the month of August; col. 1022.

[2] *Haldas.*] 'Baldach;' Ric. de S. Germ.

quod maximus imperator morietur; et post illo- A.D. 1229.
rum diluvium ventorum pauci remanebunt viventes, sed quotquot remanebunt deliciis divitiisque affluent; orietur dubietas inter Saracenos, et relinquent mahumerias suas et fient unum cum Christianis. Ideoque nos, cum omnibus magistratibus atque consodalibus nostris peritisque astrologis Tholetanis, hoc comperientes vobis duximus revelandum, injungentes in remissionem peccatorum et redemptionem animarum vestrarum, quatenus hoc reveletis ignorantibus provideatisque vobis ubi habitetis dum venti durabunt; flabunt enim in mense Septembri, et tunc super terra vix invenietur mansio secura. Præparetis ergo cavernas in planitie circumdata montibus, non arenosis, non sabulosis, sintque opertæ trabibus, et terram desuper ponite, nec sint arbores sitæ, quibus orificium cavernæ possit operiri, et præparetis ibi vobis cibaria quadraginta dierum ; et sciatis quod nobiscum concordant et conveniunt omnes philosophi astronomi Hispaniæ, Græciæ, Arabiæ, Armeniæ et Hebræi. Audivimus enim quod Manichinus rex constituit turrim excellentis ædificii, coadjuvantque eum omnes vicini sui, et erit turris ad instar maximi montis. Hoc autem dicimus de rege Siculo, quæ nobis pericula videntur. Nihil ergo in præsenti restare videtur populo Christiano, nisi ut singuli et universi ita præparare studeant conscientias suas per pœnitentiam fructuosam, per humilem et puram confessionem, per satisfactionem condignam, ne venienti Sponso vacuis occurrentes lampadibus, cum fatuis virginibus oleum non habentibus, januam, quod absit, inveniant clausam; sed cum prudentibus potius virginibus, lampadibus ornatis, cum Sponso introire ad nuptias mereantur. Credimus enim fiducialiter, quod

A.D. 1229. infra hoc sequens septennium aliqua visuri sumus; quibus sive in veritate, sive per similitudinem, his literis astronomicorum non immerito poterimus adaptare.' Sed hoc infra.

Quomodo papa Gregorius bellum movit contra Romanorum imperatorem Fredericum.

The pope makes war against the emperor.

Circa dies istos papa Gregorius, nimis moleste ferens, quod Romanorum imperator excommunicatus et rebellis ad terram sanctam transierat, de illius pœnitentia et satisfactione, ut rediret ad ecclesiæ unitatem, non mediocriter desperabat; decrevit ergo eum, quem contumacem vidit et rebellem, [1]ab imperiali fastigio depellere, et alium quemlibet filium pacis et obedientiæ loco ejus subrogare. Sed, quoniam hujus rei certitudo nobis non nisi per alios constare potuit, ponemus hic literas Thomæ cujusdam comitis, quem imperator cum quibusdam aliis in recessu suo imperii tutorem constituit et rectorem, quas imperatori super hoc negotio in Syriam destinavit et quas a quodam suscepimus peregrino; 'Excellentissimo domino Frederico, Dei gratia imperatori Romanorum et semper augusto, ac Siculorum regi potentissimo, Thomas, comes Ateranensis, suus in omnibus fidelis ac devotus, salutem et de hostibus triumphare. Post recessum vestrum, domine excellentissime, Gregorius, pontifex Romanus et magnificentiæ vestræ hostis publicus, congregato exercitu copioso [2]per Johannem de Breisnes, regem quondam Hierosolymorum, et alios quosdam viros strenuos quos militiæ suæ principes constituit, terram vestram

[1] *Ab imperiali fastigio depellere.*] Compare Raynaldi, tom. ii. p. 9.

[2] *Per Johannem de Breisnes.*] 'Ghesse whether his plots ran not low when he used such dregs;' Holy Warre, p. 165.

et hominum vestrorum hostiliter ingressus, contra legem Christianam decrevit vos in gladio vincere materiali, quem non potuit dejicere in gladio, ut asserit, spirituali; nam Johannes præfatus, de regno Francorum et aliis conterminis regionibus militiam contrahens non modicam, sub spe imperii, si vos possit subigere, de [1]thesauris apostolicis suis militibus stipendia ministrat. Itaque idem Johannes et alii sedis apostolicæ principes militiæ terram vestram et hominum vestrorum hostiliter ingressi ignem in ædificiis et villis accumulant, spolia et armenta rapiunt, homines captos diversis cruciatibus torquent et ad gravissimam redemptionem compellunt, nulli sexui parcunt nec cuiquam extra ecclesiam vel cœmeterium deferunt, vicos et castella capiunt, non habentes ad hoc respectum, quod sitis in servitio Jesu Christi; et, si quis de imperatore mentionem facit, Johannes de Breisnes affirmat non esse alium imperatorem præter ipsum. Mirantur super his amici vestri, excellentissime imperator, et præcipue clerus imperii vestri, qua consideratione et conscientia talia facere potest pontifex Romanus et contra Christianos arma movere, maxime cum Dominus dixerit Petro in gladio materiali percutere volenti, 'Mitte gladium tuum in vaginam; omnis enim, qui percusserit in gladio, gladio peribit;' vel quo jure possit ille, qui quasi diebus singulis prædones, incendiarios et Christianorum tortores excommunicat et ab ecclesiæ unitate separat, talibus assensum præbere et auctoritatem præstare, similiter admirantur. Provideatis nunc, obsecro, imperator potentissime, secu- A.D. 1229.

[1] *Thesauris apostolicis.*] The pope's soldiers bore as their device the keys upon the standards, to show that they fought for the rights of S. Peter; Ric. de S. Germ.

A.D. 1229. ritati vestræ et honori super præmissis, quia inimicus vester sæpedictus Johannes de Breisnes omnes portus cismarinos cum exploratoribus armatis non paucis munivit, ut, si forte incautus a peregrinatione redires, ipse vos sub captione conclusum incarceraret, quod Deus avertat.'

Quomodo nuntii regis Anglorum instabant Romæ ad dejectionem electi Cantuariensis.

The king's messengers at Rome, concerning the see of Canterbury.

Eodem tempore, instante die Cinerum, qui electo Cantuariensi et nuntiis regis Anglorum fuerat præfixus, ut quid de jure foret a papa diffiniendum inter partes, procuratores dicti regis, et præcipue magister Johannes de Houtona, dominum papam et cardinales omnes assiduis petitionibus convenerunt, sed illos invenientes ex more difficiles timuerunt valde a suo desiderio defraudari; unde, habito tractatu detestabili super præmissis, promiserunt domino papæ ex parte regis Anglorum ab universo regno Angliæ et Hiberniæ decimationem omnium rerum mobilium ad guerram suam contra imperatorem sustinendam, ut eos in regis proposito exaudiret. At dominus papa, qui rebellem imperatorem super omnia æstuabat dejicere, tantis promissionibus exhilaratus trahitur ad consensum, et sedens in consistorio hæc quæ sequuntur proposuit;

De cassatione Walteri monachi, Cantuariensis electi.

The election of Walter declared void.

'Nuper ad audientiam nostram pervenit electio Cantuariensis ecclesiæ de quodam monacho Waltero nomine, et postquam audivimus, quæ pro se idem monachus et pro sua electione proposuit; auditis etiam objectionibus et exceptionibus episcoporum Angliæ, tam contra electionem præfatam, quam in personam electi, per

venerabiles fratres nostros [1] Coventrensem et Rof- A.D. 1229.
fensem episcopos, et dilectum filium archidiaconum Bedefordiæ, in audientia nostra propositis, examinationem circa electi prænominati personam venerabilibus fratribus nostris domino Albanensi, magistro Thomæ de sancta Sabina, et magistro P. cardinalibus, commisimus faciendam. Cumque electus coram illis constitutus requisitus esset de descensu Domini ad inferos, utrum in carne, vel sine carne, descenderit, male respondit. Item de confectione corporis Christi in altari male respondit. Item requisitus de Rachele, qualiter plorabat filios suos, respondit male 'Cum primo esset mortua.' Item requisitus de sententia excommunicationis contra juris ordinem lata, male respondit. Item requisitus de matrimonio, si alter contrahentium infidelis decesserit, male respondit. Super his omnibus articulis diligenter examinatus est a cardinalibus, quem non solum dicimus minus bene respondisse, sed pessime. Cum igitur nobilis sit ecclesia Cantuariensis et nobilem habuisset prælatum, virum discretum, modestum et de gremio Romanæ ecclesiæ assumptum; et iste modo electus, quem non solum pronuntiamus indignum, imo, si de rigore juris procederemus, aliud dicere cogeremur, ita insufficiens est, quod ad tantum honorem non debet assumi; electionem de ipso factam omnino cassamus, provisionem nobis dictæ ecclesiæ reservantes.'

De promotione Richardi, Cantuariensis archiepiscopi.

Cassata sane in hunc modum electione præ- Richard, chancellor of
fata, procuratores regis Angliæ et episcoporum Lincoln, elected.
Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganeorum, literas

[1] *Coventrensem et Roffensem episcopos, et dilectum filium,*] wanting in *C.*

A.D. 1229. Election of Richard to the see of Canterbury.

de rato eorundem, tam regis quam episcoporum, in domini papæ præsentia exhibentes proposuerunt de magistro [1]Richardo, Lincolniensis ecclesiæ cancellario, quod esset vir eminentis scientiæ et literaturæ ac conversationis honestæ, quodque tam ecclesiæ Romanæ quam regi et regno Angliæ esset non mediocriter fructuosus, atque modis omnibus coram domino papa ejus personam commendantes dictum papam trahunt cum suis cardinalibus ad consensum; sicque memorato Richardo non electo ad archiepiscopatum, [2]sed dato, dominus papa suffraganeis Cantuariensis ecclesiæ literas in hæc verba direxit; 'Gregorius episcopus, et cætera. Ex commissa nobis a Domino cura pastoralis officii, et concessa, licet immeritis, plenitudine ecclesiasticæ potestatis, cogimur ecclesiarum omnium, per quotidianam instantiam, sollicitudinem et curam gerere, eisque cum necessitas ingruerit, et ex justitiæ debito et ex gratiæ beneficio, paterna diligentia providere. Inter cæteras autem particulares ecclesias et metropoles universas ad Cantuariensem ecclesiam, tanquam ad nobilissimum sedis apostolicæ membrum, in ejus opportunitatibus oculos considerationis expandimus, quam mater ecclesiarum, apostolica sedes, tanto benigniori debet favore prosequi, quanto eam inter alias divina dispositio in spiritualium plenitudine et temporalium ubertate gratia prætulit ampliori. Hanc etenim velut paradisum

[1] *Richardo.*] In the Waverley Annals is a note to the effect that, until this individual, no two archbishops of Canterbury had borne the same names. The successor of Becket was the first Richard.

[2] *Sed dato.*] Tyrrell remarks, that this was a new encroachment, and the first archbishop that ever the pope took upon him to nominate, without a previous election by the convent or bishops; vol. ii. p. 866. In the Chronicle of Dunstable it is said, that, the election of Walter being declared void, the monks for that turn had lost their privilege; p. 186.

voluptatis et hortum deliciarum ordinatione sua plantavit Altissimus, de qua producere valuit lignum scientiæ boni et mali in institutione dignitatis metropolicæ, lignum vitæ in ordine religionis monasticæ et regularis observantiæ disciplina, ligna pomifera in suffraganeis, quæ per operationem sanctam delectant in visu, per fidelem doctrinam confortant in gustu, per opinionem bonam recreant in olfactu. De eodem loco fluvius egreditur, per quem gloriosissimi Thomæ martyris sanguis exprimitur, qui dum vitam mortuis, sanitatem ægrotis, libertatem servis et audaciam timidis contulit, inde progrediens in quatuor procul dubio capita derivatur; cujus miraculorum excellentium signa dum sollicita meditatione discutimus, raras et insolitas divinæ plantationis delicias invenimus. Hujus itaque paradisi [1]custode, bonæ memoriæ Stephano, quondam Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, sanctæ Romanæ ecclesiæ cardinali, viro utique pereminentissime donis scientiæ et munere gratiæ supernis carismatibus delibuto, erepto de carnis ergastulo, et ad paradisi cælestis jocunditatem et requiem, sicut speramus et credimus, evocato, dilecti filii Cantuariensis conventus electionem celebratam ab eis de Waltero, monacho Cantuariensi, nobis præsentare curarunt; qua post cognita electionis merita, et examinata personæ literatura, justitia mediante, cassata, hominem culminis, quem per vitam et scientiam, intellectum pariter et affectum, ad imaginem et similitudinem Dei conditum, habentem per salutarem doctrinam vitæ spiraculum, in paradiso, ut operetur et custodiat illum, duximus collocandum, magistrum Richardum, Lincolniæ cancellarium, quem

A.D. 1229. Election of Richard to the see of Canterbury.

[1] *Custode.*] 'Custodie' in MS.

A.D. 1229. tam ex fratrum nostrorum, qui eum in scholis noverunt, quam ex venerabilium fratrum nostrorum Roffensis et Coventrensis episcoporum et aliorum plurium testimonio, virum didicimus eminentis literaturæ, conversationis honestæ, famæ integerrimæ, excellentissimæ industriæ, zelatorem animarum et ecclesiasticæ libertatis, Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, de fratrum nostrorum consilio, præsentibus præfatis episcopis, præficimus in archiepiscopum et pastorem. Quapropter fraternitatem vestram monemus et hortamur, per apostolica scripta mandantes, quatenus, tanquam caritatis filii et devotionis, ipsum, ad honorem omnipotentis Dei et apostolicæ sedis et Cantuariensis ecclesiæ, recipientes cum humilitate debita et devotione sincera intendatis eidem, et tanquam patri et pastori animarum vestrarum et metropolitano vestro obediatis humiliter et devote. Gaudere quidem debetis in Domino, quod illius gratia principaliter cooperante, qui inspirando prævenit et [1]adjuvando prosequitur, provisum est laudabiliter ecclesiæ viduatæ. Data,' et cætera.

Quomodo terra sancta restituta est Frederico imperatori.

The emperor recovers the Holy Land. Eodem anno Dominus noster Jesus Christus, Salvator et omnium sæculorum Consolator, visitans misericorditer plebem suam, civitatem sanctam Hierusalem, et terram totam, quam Dominus idem et Redemptor noster, Dei Filius, suo sanguine consecravit, precibus universalis ecclesiæ, generaliter populo Christiano, specialiter vero Romanorum imperatori restituit Frederico. Fuit autem aliquid beneplacitum Domino in po-

[1] *Adjuvando.*] 'Adjuvantem' in MS.

pulo suo, qui exaltat mansuetos in salutem, ut faceret vindictam in nationibus et dissensiones in gentibus Saracenis. Erat enim in diebus istis Soldanus Babyloniæ domesticis undique præliis tam graviter oppressus, quod, ne minus sufficeret ad plura, coactus est cum imperatore mediantibus [1] treugis decennalibus componere, ac terram sanctam populo sine sanguinis effusione reddere Christiano. Sicque missum est a Domino bellum bonum, ut rumperetur pax mala; sed hujus gratiæ divinæ beneficium, ut legenti clarius illucescat, literas legat Romani imperatoris auro bullatas, quas Henrico Angliæ regi in hæc verba direxit; A.D. 1229.

Epistola imperatoris ad regem Anglorum de præmissis.

'Fredericus, Dei gratia Romanorum imperator, semper augustus, Hierusalem et Siciliæ rex, carissimo amico suo Henrico, Anglorum regi, salutem et sinceræ dilectionis affectum. [2] Lætentur et exultent omnes in Domino, et glorientur pariter recti corde, qui, ut notam faceret potentiam suam, non in equis aut curribus gloriatur, nunc dedit sibi gloriam in paucitate virorum, ut cognoscant et intelligant omnes, quod ipse sit gloriosus in majestate, terribilis in magnificentia, mirabilis in consiliis super filios hominum, pro voluntate sua tempora mutans et diversarum corda gentium in unum convertens, cum in paucis diebus istis miraculose potius quam fortitudine illud negotium sit peractum, quod a longis temporibus retroactis multi principes et diversi orbis potentes in multitudine gentium nec per vires quantum- His letter to Henry III.

[1] *Treugis.*] The heads of the treaty, with the notes of Geroldus, patriarch of Jerusalem, are printed by Raynaldi, ii. p. 6.

[2] *Lætentur et exultent.*] Compare Raynaldi, ii. p. 7; and Ricard. de S. German. col. 1011, *seq.* Continuat. Will. Tyr. p. 698.

A.D. 1229. The emperor's letter to Henry.

cunque grandes, nec per metum aliquem, facere hucusque modo quolibet potuerunt. Ne igitur desiderium vestrum longus sermo diu teneat in suspenso, [1]sanctitati vestræ cupimus esse notum, quod nos habentes spem nostram in Deo firmiter, et credentes quod Jesus Christus Filius ejus, pro cujus servitio corpus et animas exposuimus sic devote, nos in tam ignotis et remotis regionibus non relinqueret, quin saltem pro honore et gloria et laude sua consilium et auxilium nobis tribueret salutare ; in ipsius autem nomine ab Achon procedentes fiducialiter quinto decimo die mensis Novembris proximo præteriti prospere venimus apud Joppen, ut, castro loci ejusdem reædificato fortiter [2]ut decebat, in Hierusalem sanctam civitatem eundi postmodum, tam nobis quam omni populo Christiano, non solum facilior, immo brevior et securior, pateret accessus. Igitur sub fiducia divinæ spei nobis apud Joppen existentibus, et super reædificatione castri, prout exigebat rei necessitas et causa Christi, intendentibus magnifice, ut decebat, dum a nobis et peregrinis omnibus sollicite agerentur hæc omnia, de Soldano Babyloniæ ad nos, et a nobis ad Soldanum eundem, nuntii plures et pluries venerunt et redierunt hinc inde ; ipse etenim et alius Soldanus, qui Xaphat dicitur, frater ejus, apud civitatem Gazam diffusum habentes exercitum dieta una distabant a nobis ; ex alia vero parte in civitate Sichen, quæ Neapolis vulgo nominatur et in campestribus locis sita est, Soldanus Damasci, nepos eorum, cum innumera multitudine militum et peditum gentis

[1] *Sanctitati.*] The reviser of our manuscript has marked this word for correction. In the Cotton MS. of Paris, collated by Wats, 'sinceritati' had been substituted.

[2] *Ut decebat.*] 'Ut dicebatur' in *C*.

suæ prope nos et Christianos ad unam dietam similiter morabatur. Et cum de restitutione terræ sanctæ ab alterutra partium tractaretur, tandem Jesus Christus, Dei Filius, devotam patientiam nostram et patientem devotionem ex alto respiciens, compatiendo misericorditer nobis in semetipso, sic fecit, quod Soldanus Babyloniæ Hierusalem civitatem sanctam nobis restituit, locum videlicet ubi steterunt pedes Christi, locum etiam ubi veri adoratores in spiritu et veritate Patrem adorant. Ut enim de restitutione hujusmodi certos vos faciamus per singula, noveritis quod non solum restitutum est nobis corpus civitatis prædictæ, sed contrada tota, sicut descendit inde usque ad maritimam castri Joppen, ut peregrini de cætero processum liberum ad sepulchrum habeant securumque regressum; hoc tamen adjecto, quod, cum Saraceni illarum partium in veneratione maxima templum habeant, ad adorandum, secundum ritum eorum, ibi in figuram peregrinorum illuc frequenter accedant, ipsos de cætero libere permittamus venire, veruntamen quot voluerimus et sine armis, nec hospitabuntur in civitate, sed de foris, et continuo facta oratione recedant. Præterea restituta est nobis civitas Bethleem, et tota terra media inter Hierusalem et civitatem ipsam; civitas Nazareth, cum tota terra media inter Achon et ipsam civitatem; tota terra Turonis, quæ largissima est et ampla, et valde commoda Christianis; civitas Sydonis, cum tota planitie et pertinentiis suis, quæ tanto erit de cætero gratior Christianis, quanto magis exstitit Saracenis et hactenus fructuosa, maxime cum portus ibi sit nimis congruus, et inde arma et necessaria multa ad civitatem Damasci, et de Damasco frequenter ad Babyloniam portarentur. Et quamvis

A.D. 1229. The emperor's letter to Henry.

A.D. 1229. The emperor's letter to Henry.

civitatem Hierusalem, sicut melius unquam fuit, reædificare nobis liceat, secundum pactum, necnon et castrum Joppen, castrum Cæsareæ, castrum Sydonis, et castrum sanctæ Mariæ Teutonicorum, quod fratres ipsius domus in montana Achon ædificare cœperunt, et ab olim nullo treugarum tempore permissum exstitit Christianis, ipse tamen Soldanus usque ad finem treugarum, quæ inter nos et ipsum per decennium sunt statutæ, ædificia vel castra aliqua de novo facere vel ædificare non debet. Sicque die Dominica, decimo octavo die mensis Februarii nuper præteriti, die scilicet in quo Christus Dei Filius a mortuis resurrexit, et in memoriam resurrectionis Dominicæ a Christianis omnibus tam generaliter quam solemniter colitur et veneratur in orbe, concordia hujusmodi hinc inde exstitit juramento firmata. Vere igitur nunc nobis et omnibus illuxisse denuo visus est dies ille, in quo angeli cecinerunt Deo, 'Gloria in excelsis Deo et in terra pax, hominibus bona voluntas.' Ad recognitionem vero tam grandis beneficii tantique honoris, quæ, præter merita nostra et contra opinionem multorum, ad perennem misericordiæ suæ laudem misericorditer contulit nobis Deus, et ut in loco suo sancto vitulum labiorum nostrorum personaliter offeremus eidem, noveritis, quod die sabbati, decimo septimo die mensis Martii hujus secundæ indictionis, cum peregrinis omnibus, qui nobiscum fideliter Christum Dei Filium sunt secuti, intravimus sanctam civitatem Hierusalem, et statim, tanquam catholicus imperator, adorato sepulchro Dominico reverenter, sequenti die [1]coronam portavimus, quam

[1] *Coronam.*] Frederic placed the crown upon his own head, amidst much pomp and circumstance supplied by the German and Teutonic knights. It was unattended, however, by any of the religious offices usual on such occasions; see Michaud, iii. p. 39.

Dominus omnipotens de throno majestatis suæ nos habendam prævidens de speciali gratia pietatis suæ inter orbis principes nos mirabiliter exaltavit, ut sic prosequentibus nobis tantæ dignitatis tripudium, quæ nobis competit jure regni, magis ac magis notorium universis appareat, quod manus Domini fecit hæc omnia; et, cum miserationes ejus super omnia opera sint ejusdem, cognoscant orthodoxæ fidei cultores de cætero, et enarrent longe lateque per orbem, quod Ille, qui est benedictus in secula, visitavit et fecit redemptionem plebi suæ, et erexit nobis cornu salutis in domo David pueri sui. Sane, priusquam de civitate recedamus sancta Hierusalem, de magnifica reædificatione ipsius turrium ac murorum suorum taliter ordinare proposuimus, et ita super hæc intendere volumus diligenter, quod non minor sollicitudo nec diligentia in absentia nostra habeatur inde, quam si personaliter super hoc ipsi essemus præsentes. Ut autem hæc præsens nostra epistola exultatione sit plena per totum, et sic limes ejus principio se adaptet in gaudiis, ut regalem animum pro voto lætificet, ad incrementum lætitiæ et totius gaudii præcedentis, amicitiæ vestræ cupimus esse notum, quod Soldanus prædictus omnes captivos illos, quos secundum pactum inter Christianos et ipsum habitum tempore quondam Damietæ perditæ non reddidit, et alios, qui postea capti fuerunt, restituere nobis debet modo. Data apud civitatem sanctam Hierusalem decimo septimo die mensis Martii, anno Domini millesimo ducentesimo vicesimo nono.' A.D. 1229.

De signis præcedentibus hanc restitutionem terræ sanctæ.

A.D. 1229. Signs preceding the recovery of the Holy Land.

Notandum vero est in hac terræ promissionis et Hierusalem sanctæ civitatis restitutione populo Christiano, quod sicut ante hoc generale gaudium et totius Christianitatis tripudium astronomi Tholetani scripserunt de planetarum concursu et ventorum tam horrendum diluvium, ita quod starent simul cum terræ motu et eclipsi, tam solis quam lunæ, velut paulo superius in gestis hujus anni scriptum est, eodem modo ante ejusdem terræ sanctæ et crucis Dominicæ captionem a Salaadino, viro perfido et cruento, et alii, qui tunc fuerunt astronomi ejusdem civitatis, scripserunt domino papæ Clementi sub hac forma; 'Ab anno præsentis incarnationis Domini nostri Jesu Christi, qui est millesimus centesimus septuagesimus nonus, usque in septem annos, mense Septembri, sole existente in Libra et cauda Draconis, erit, si Deus pati voluerit, conventio planetarum in Libra et cauda Draconis, sed est admirabilis non mutabilium rerum mutationis significantia. Sequetur terræ motus terribilis, et destruentur loca consueta perditionis per Saturnum et Martem, manentes in signis atris et mortalitas et infirmitas. Ostendet etiam ea conjunctio ventum validum, denigrantem aerem et obscurum reddentem, venenis infectum, et in vento sonus erit terribilis destruens corda hominum; et a regionibus arenosis [sabulonem accipiet et arenis] civitates proximas in planitie sitas cooperiet, et primo civitates orientis le Mech, Babylonem et omnes civitates proximas locis arenosis; nulla quidem evadet, quæ arenis et terra non operiatur. Signa autem hujus rei hæc præcedent; erit in eodem anno, antequam

planetæ conveniant in Libra, eclipsis solis, qua totum corpus ejus obscurabitur, et in oppressione præcedenti luna tota eclipsim patietur; et erit eclipsis solis ignei coloris et deformis, ostendens majorum bellum futurum cum effusione sanguinis prope fluvium in terra orientis et similiter in terra occidentis; et cadet dubietas et ignorantia inter Judæos et Saracenos, donec relinquant penitus synagogas et mahumerias suas, et eorum secta jussu Dei penitus destruetur et annihilabitur; unde vobis notum sit, ut, quando eclipsim videritis, de terra exeatis cum omnibus vestris.' A.D. 1229.

Quod propter peccata hominum crux olim et terra sancta captæ erant a Salaadino.

Erat autem in diebus illis multa malitia hominum super terram, ita 'quod corruperat fere omnis caro coram Domino viam suam;' jam enim eo usque flagitiorum consuetudo proruperat in populo, ut omnes, abjecto erubescentiæ velo, palam et passim ad turpia declinarent. Cædes, rapinas, adulteria, immunditias, mendacia, proditiones, dissolutiones ad turpia, longum est enumerare, præcipue nobis, qui res gestas describere destinamus. Veruntamen cum hostis ille antiquus corruptionis spiritum longe lateque disseminasset in orbe, specialius tamen Syriam occupavit, et unde cæteræ regiones susceperant religionis exordium, inde tunc totius immunditiæ sumebant exemplum. Hinc igitur Dominus et Salvator mundi, terram nativitatis, passionis et resurrectionis suæ in turpitudinis abyssum corruisse conspiciens, hæreditatem suam sprevit, et virgam furoris sui, videlicet Salaadinum, in obstinatæ gentis permisit exterminium debacchari; maluit enim terram sanctam

Saladin's previous victories permitted for the sins of the people.

A.D. 1229. per aliquantulum temporis spatium profanis gentium ritibus ancillari, quam illos diutius florere, quos ab illicitis nullius honestatis compescebat respectus. Hanc autem futuræ demolitionis instantiam casus prænosticabant diversi, fames scilicet valida, terræ motus frequens, tam lunæ etiam quam solaris defectus; sed et ventus ille validus, quem de planetarum concursu cum mortalitate et aeris intemperie astronomi Tholetani ex stellarum inspectione pronuntiaverant futurum, in hujus rei significationem procul dubio commutatus migravit; vere enim ventus erat validus, qui quatuor mundi cardines concussit, ac orbem universum ex gentibus excitandum in seditiones et prælia ac terræ sanctæ exitium præmonstravit. Mansit autem sub potestate inimicorum Christi civitas sancta Hierusalem et terra promissionis tota, cum vivifica cruce Dominica, per annos quadraginta duos, usque in annum præsentem, qui est ab incarnatione Domini millesimus ducentesimus vicesimus nonus, quando venit tempus miserendi Domini, ut respiceret in orationes humilium et reædificaret Syon, ut videretur in gloria sua, in loco videlicet sanctæ nativitatis, passionis et resurrectionis suæ, et audiret gemitus compeditorum et absolveret filios peremptorum. Vere et absque omni ambiguitate audivit Dominus gemitus compeditorum in hac restitutione terræ sanctæ, quæ istis diebus facta est per diligentiam imperatoris Frederici, cooperante clementia divina; dum per pactum inter ipsum habitum et Babyloniæ Soldanum omnes captivi, qui erant in paganismo compediti et ad vilissima quælibet servitutis genera addicti, modo a jugo servitutis liberati venerunt in sanctam civitatem Hierusalem et apparuerunt multis, et, factis orationibus in locis venerabilibus

sanctæ civitatis, reversi sunt per diversas orbis partes in regiones suas, laudantes et benedicentes Deum in omnibus, qui audierant et viderant, quæ fecit Dominus mirabiliter et ostendit eis. A.D. 1229.

De reconciliatione sanctæ civitatis Hierusalem et aliorum locorum.

Ingressus est igitur, ut diximus, sanctam civitatem Hierusalem exercitus Christianus, et patriarcha cum episcopis suffraganeis mundificavit templum Domini et ecclesiam sancti sepulchri, sanctæque resurrectionis ejusdem, cum aliis ecclesiis venerabilibus civitatis; abluentes pavimentum et parietes aqua benedicta, et agentes processiones in hymnis et canticis, reconciliaverunt Deo loca universa diuturnis infidelium sordibus prophanata; verum quamdiu imperator, qui excommunicatus fuerat, intra urbis mœnia moram fecit, nullus prælatorum in ea missam celebrare præsumpsit. Magister tamen Walterus, frater quidam de ordine Prædicatorum, vir religiosus, providus ac discretus, qui a domino papa officium prædicationis in exercitu Christi susceperat, quod multo jam tempore feliciter impleverat, celebravit divina in ecclesiis suburbanis, unde devotionem fidelium plurimum excitavit. Deinde prælatis singulis, tam minoribus quam majoribus, ac viris religiosis, ecclesiis suis sibi restitutis et possessionibus antiquis, gaudentibus cunctis super donis cælestibus, quæ præter spem omnium acciderant, intenderunt unanimiter cum peregrinis omnibus ad reædificationem civitatis, et muros cum fossatis, turresque cum propugnaculis, magnis sumptibus ac studiosis laboribus reparantes; nec solum acta sunt hæc in civitate sancta Hierusalem, sed et in omnibus civitatibus

Entry of the Christians into Jerusalem.

A.D. 1229. et castellis illius terræ, quam Dominus Jesus Christus suis sanctis pedibus calcavit et suo sacro sanguine consecravit.

Hic ponuntur quidam excessus, in quibus papa ostendit imperatorem esse reum.

The pope's causes of complaint against the emperor.

Venit eodem tempore in Angliam magister Stephanus, domini papæ capellanus et nuntius ad regem Anglorum, missus ut colligeret decimas domino papæ a nuntiis ipsius regis Romæ promissas ad guerram suam sustinendam contra imperatorem Romanorum susceptam; audierat enim idem papa de imperatore præfato multa detestanda, quæ faciebat contra legem Christianam, quorum tenorem in scriptum redigens per diversas orbis partes literis apostolicis publicare curavit. [1]Proposuit autem contra eum in primis, quod in die annunciationis beatæ Mariæ, cum esset excommunicatus, intravit ecclesiam sepulchri sancti in Hierusalem et ibi ante majus altare propria manu sese coronavit, et ita coronatus resedit in cathedra patriarchatus et ibi prædicavit populo, excusando malitiam suam et accusando ecclesiam Romanam, imponens ei, quod injuste processerat contra eum; et sic egressus ab ecclesia in comitatu satellitum suorum, sine omni persona ecclesiastica, portavit coronam usque ad palatium Hospitalis. Item in palatio suo Achonensi fecit convivari Saracenos, et fecit eis habere mulieres Christianas saltatrices ad ludendum coram eis, et, ut dicebatur, commiscebantur eis. Item, fœdus quod iniit cum Soldano, nemo scivit qua conditione tractatum fuit inter eos, nisi ipse solus; veruntamen

[1] *Proposuit autem.*] The form of the sentence of excommunication against Frederic, in which are recounted the principal reasons for proceeding to such an extremity, is printed in Raynaldi, ii. p. 12.

manifeste videbatur, quod magis approbaret, secundum quod perpendi poterat per gestus exteriores, legem Saracenorum, quam legem fidei nostræ, quia in multis ritus ipsorum imitatus est. Item, in scripto quod est inter ipsum et Soldanum, quod lingua appellatur Arabica 'mosepha,' continetur, quod, durantibus treugis, ipse juvabit eum contra omnes homines Christianos et Saracenos, et e converso Soldanus ipsum. Item, spoliavit canonicos sanctæ crucis in Achon a quibusdam redditibus, quos recipere debebant in portu Achonensi. Item, spoliavit archiepiscopum Nichossiensem in Cypro. Item, protexit quendam episcopum Surianorum potentia seculari, contra patriarcham, ab excommunicato et schismatico ordinatum. Item, spoliavit canonicos sancti sepulchri oblationibus ipsius sepulchri, et patriarcham oblationibus Calvariæ loci et loci Golgatha, et canonicos sancti templi oblationibus suis, et per manus satellitum suorum fecit omnes oblationes istas colligere, propter quod factum frater Walterus excommunicavit eum in civitate Hierosolymorum et omnes satellites suos. Item, in die Palmarum prædicatores de pulpito, ubi prædicabant, viliter et violenter fecit dejici et crudeliter tractari et incarcerari. Item, infra passionem Domini obsedit patriarcham et episcopos Wintoniensem et Exoniensem et Templarios in domibus suis, et, cum vidit se non posse prævalere, confusus dimisit. His igitur de causis, licet aliæ non desint, quicquid egit in terra sancta pro nihilo reputans dominus papa movit guerram contra ipsum, asserens justum esse et fidei Christianæ necessarium, ut tam validus ecclesiæ persecutor a fastu imperii depellatur; et, quod his omnibus detestabilius est, contra matrem suam Romanam ecclesiam tam gravem excita-

A.D. 1229. The pope's charges against the emperor.

A.D. 1229. verat persecutionem, ita quod castella ejus cum terris et possessionibus occupavit, et velut hostis publicus detinet occupatas.

De decimis Gregorio papæ ab Anglia collatis.

Stephen, the nuncio, arrives, to collect the tithes promised the pope.

Per idem tempus, cum magister Stephanus, domini papæ capellanus et nuntius, regi Anglorum negotia ipsius papæ et sui causam adventus ostendisset, fecit rex convenire apud Westmonasterium Dominica, qua cantatur [1] 'Misericordia Domini,' archiepiscopos, episcopos, abbates, priores, Templarios, Hospitalarios, comites, barones, ecclesiarum rectores, et qui de se tenebant in capite, ad locum præfixum et diem, ut audirent negotia memorata et de rerum exigentiis communiter tractarent ibidem. Omnibus igitur congregatis, tam laicis quam prælatis, et eorum subjectis, magister Stephanus coram omnibus recitavit literas domini papæ, in quibus exigebat decimas omnium rerum mobilium de tota Anglia, Hibernia et Wallia, ab universis laicis et clericis, ad guerram suam sustinendam, quam contra Romanum imperatorem susceperat Fredericum. Ostendit autem in literis memoratis, quod ipse solus hanc expeditionem susceperat pro universali ecclesia, quam dictus imperator jam diu excommunicatus et rebellis subvertere nititur, sicut evidentibus apparet indiciis; unde, divitiæ sedis apostolicæ cum non sufficiant ad ipsum exterminandum, necessitate compulsus ab universis ecclesiæ filiis implorat auxilium, per quod expeditionem inchoatam et in parte jam feliciter prosperatam perducere valeat ad desideratum effectum. Persuadet denique dominus papa, in conclusione negotii, singulis ecclesiæ membris,

[1] *Misericordia Domini.*] The second Sunday after Easter, in this year the 29th of April.

quatenus sicut filii naturales ecclesiæ Romanæ, quæ mater est omnium ecclesiarum, potenter subveniant, ne, quod absit, ipsa deficiente, membra cum capite succumbere videantur. His et aliis in hunc modum in authentico domini papæ patenter expressis, persuasit magister Stephanus omnibus qui aderant, ut consentirent, allegans honorem et commodum, [1]quæ possent exinde obtemperantibus provenire. Rex autem Anglorum, a quo cæteri omnes sperabant habere defensionis auxilium, qui Romæ per procuratores suos, ut supradictum est, ad decimas solvendas fuerat obligatus, non potuit contradicere; et, cum nihil responderet, visus est tacendo consensum præbere. Comites vero et barones ac laici omnes plane decimas se daturos contradixerunt, nolentes baronias suas vel laicas possessiones Romanæ ecclesiæ obligare. Episcopi quoque, abbates, priores et alii ecclesiarum prælati, post trium vel quatuor dierum deliberationem et murmurationem non modicam, tandem consenserunt, metuentes excommunicationis sententiam vel interdicti sibi inferri, si mandatis apostolicis obviarent. Tunc magister Stephanus prælatis omnibus literas domini papæ procuratorias ostendit, quibus idem papa ipsum ad dictas decimas colligendas procuratorem constituerat, ut non secundum taxationem factam in vicesima, quæ paulo ante regi data fuerat pro libertatibus obtinendis, sed secundum quod melius possunt, ad commodum domini papæ, et uberius omnia bona et mobilia singulorum taxari; videlicet de omnibus redditibus, proventibus, fructibus carrucarum, oblationibus, decimis, nutrimentis animalium et fructibus, et de omnibus obventionibus

A.D. 1229. Tithes claimed by the pope's nuncio.

[1] *Quæ possent.*] In MS. 'qui posset.

A.D. 1229. Tithes claimed by the pope's nuncio.

ecclesiarum vel aliarum possessionum, quocumque nomine censeantur, non aliquibus debitis vel expensis aliqua occasione deductis. Habuit etiam ex eisdem literis auctoritatem contradictores excommunicandi et ecclesias interdicendi; unde, constitutis procuratoribus suis in singulis comitatibus regni, omnes illos excommunicavit, qui circa decimas ipsas reddendas vel taxationem faciendam per se, vel per alium, colludium, pactum iniquum, subtractionem vel fraudem aliquam duxerint faciendam. Et, quoniam negotium festinum exigebat auxilium, prælatis omnibus et aliis sub pœna excommunicationis indixit, ut vel mutuo, vel alio quocumque modo, pecuniam perquisitam sibi traderent indilate, ut eam domino papæ incontinenti transmitterent, eandem postmodum, decimis singulorum rite taxatis, plenarie recepturi. Erat enim idem papa tot et tantis involutus debitis, ut, unde bellicam quam susceperat expeditionem sustineret, penitus ignoraret. Et sic soluto concilio, murmurantibus cunctis, recesserunt.

De exactione gravissima dictarum decimarum.

The grievous exaction of them.

Et, his ita gestis, misit incontinenti literas suas magister Stephanus ad singulos episcopos, abbates, priores et cujuscumque professionis viros religiosos regni, sub pœna interdicti et excommunicationis præcipiens, ut tali die tantam pecuniæ summam sibi transmitterent de moneta ad pondus denarii probata et nuper fabricata, ut inde creditoribus domini papæ satisfacere posset et ipsi pœnas evaderent interdicti; erat enim in hujus rei exsecutione adeo improbus exactor, ut etiam de frugibus autumni futuri, quæ adhuc in herba crescebant, singulos compelleret decimarum sibi pretium exhibere. Prælati vero,

aliud remedium non habentes, calices, phialas, philacteria et alia sacra altaris vasa, quædam vendiderunt, nonnulla [1]in pignus sub fœnore posuerunt. Continuis maledictionibus, sed occultis, repleta est terra, imprecantibus cunctis, quod nunquam talis exactio suis fiat exactoribus fructuosa. Solus comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, nolens terram suam redigere in servitutem, non permisit de feodo suo viros religiosos vel clericos decimas memoratas conferre, quamvis Anglia et Wallia, Scotia et Hibernia ad solutionem compellantur. Hoc autem multis in hac decimatione solatium præbebat et levamen, quod regna transmarina et longe posita non sunt ab ista exactione quieta. Cumque tandem istarum plenitudo divitiarum ad summum pontificem pervenisset, ipse Johanni de Breisnes et aliis militiæ suæ principibus ita affluenter eas distribuit, quod graviter cessit in damnum imperatoris, dum municipia ejus et castella in ejus absentia subvertebant. Eodem anno magister Robertus de Bingeham, Saresbiriensis electus, apud Septoniam munus consecrationis suscepit, sexto kalendas Junii, per manum Willelmi, Wigorniensis episcopi, adstantibus episcopis, Jocelino Bathoniensi, et Alexandro Coventrensi. Eodem tempore rex Anglorum A.D. 1229.

[1] *In pignus sub fœnore posuerunt.*] Anticipating the difficulty that might arise to the clergy and others of meeting the demands made upon them in this iniquitous tax, the legate, it appears, had brought with him certain money-lenders, who, at an enormous interest, supplied the required sums. These usurers are afterwards spoken of by Matthew Paris under the title of Caursini, from, as he says, 'causantes vel capientes et ursini,' as a 'pestis abominanda,' who involved king and subject alike within their net. The instance here recorded appears to have been the commencement of the system of money-lending, afterwards practised by the Italian merchants until the reign of Edward the third. The reader may find a very interesting paper upon this subject, by Mr. Bond of the British Museum, in the Archæologia, vol. xxviii. p. 207.

A D. 1229. Henricus, in die Pentecostes, Johannem filium Huberti, Angliæ justiciarii, cingulo militari donavit tertio nonas Junii.

De consecratione Richardi Cantuariensis, Rogeri Londinensis et Hugonis Eliensis, episcoporum.

Consecration of the archbishop of Canterbury. Eodem tempore, in die sanctæ Trinitatis, convenientibus Cantuariensis ecclesiæ suffraganeis apud eandem civitatem, consecratus est magister Richardus, Cantuariensis electus, per manum Henrici, Roffensis episcopi, sine pallio, ita quod licuit ei vel ordines celebrare vel ecclesias dedicare. Consecrati sunt etiam cum eo eodem die, per ministerium ejusdem episcopi, ante majus altare in ecclesia sanctæ Trinitatis, Rogerus electus Londinensis et Hugo Eliensis, quarto idus Junii.

De magno apparatu regis Anglorum ad transfretandum congregato.

Preparations at Portsmouth for the king's passage into France. Sub eisdem diebus, instante festo sancti Michaelis, rex Anglorum Henricus congregavit apud Portesmue totam nobilitatem regni Angliæ, comites, videlicet, barones et milites, cum tanta equitum ac peditum turba, quantam nullus antecessorum suorum aliquo creditur tempore congregasse; ubi etiam venerunt ad eum de regionibus Hiberniæ, Scotiæ, Walliæ et Galwalliæ tanta militum et armatorum multitudo, quod admirationi omnibus habebantur; proposuit namque rex cum tanta armatorum copia transfretare, ut terras, quas pater amiserat, in suum dominium revocaret. Demum, cum principes et mareschalli militiæ regis ad naves venissent, ut victualia ingererent et arma, adeo paucas invenerunt naves, ut non sufficerent ad medietatem exercitus transferendum; quod verbum cum ad regis notitiam

pervenisset, iratus est vehementer et crimen to- A.D. 1229.
tum in Hubertum de Burgo, justiciarium, refundere curavit, et, audientibus cunctis, vocavit eum senem proditorem, improperans ei, quod hunc procuravit defectum pro quinque millibus marcis, quas a regina Francorum acceperat, ut suum propositum impediret, et gladium quasi furia invectus rex educens voluit justiciarium interficere; sed comes Cestrensis Ranulphus, et alii qui aderant, sese interponentes ipsum a mortis discrimine servarunt; at ille a regis præsentia se subtraxit, donec ira rex deposita animum mitigaret. Applicuit interea in portu illo comes Britanniæ Henricus[1] septimo idus Octobris, qui regem conducere debuit in terram suam sub salvo conductu, sicut condictum fuerat inter eos et sacramento firmatum; sed idem comes, cum aliis sapientibus de exercitu, dederunt regi consilium, ut negotium differret inceptum usque ad sequens Pascha, quia periculosum erat tempore hyemali iter tam arduum expedire; quo audito, rex licentiam dedit omnibus ad propria revertendi, et justiciarius cum rege pacificatus est. Comes autem Britanniæ regi fecit homagium contra omnes homines de Britannia; et rex reddidit ei totum jus suum in Anglia, et, datis ei quinque millibus marcis ad custodiam terræ suæ, remisit eum in regionem suam. Eodem anno Richardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, pallium sibi a domino papa transmissum suscepit nono kalendas Decembris, et apud Cantuariam in ecclesia cathedrali, præsente rege et suffraganeis episcopis, divina cum ipso pallio celebravit.

[1] *Henricus.*] The name of the earl of Britanny at this time was Peter, surnamed Mauclerc, son of Robert II., comte de Dreux; Henry was the name of the duke of Burgundy. See Raynaldi, ii. p. 18.

De quodam fœneratore male mortuo.

A D. 1229. Death of an usurer.

Erat hoc tempore in minori Britannia fœnerator quidam, qui pecuniam suam tribuens ad usuram immensum nummorum congregavit acervum. Hic, cum multoties ab episcopo loci increparetur, quod non licebat sibi de usuris rem augere, noluit audire episcopum, sed, licet non recte, strenuus rem augebat; cumque tandem ab episcopo incorrigibilis videretur, excommunicavit eum et ab unitate fidelium segregavit, quod ille parvipendens excommunicatus non multo post vitam miserabiliter terminavit. Quo sine viatico et confessione defuncto, uxor ejus et filii venerunt ad presbyterum villæ, rogantes ut corpus defuncti more ecclesiastico sepeliret; presbyter autem hoc facere recusavit, eo quod excommunicatus decessit, præcipiens ut in bivio extra villam sepelirent eum. Uxor autem defuncti hoc audiens venit ad comitem cum filiis, querimoniam coram eo deponens, quod presbyter ille parochianum defunctum noluit sepelire, causam reticens, quod excommunicatus obiisset. At comes contra presbyterum in iram versus jussit ministris suis, ut euntes ad presbyterum ex parte sua præciperent, quatenus mortuum sepeliret; quod si facere contradiceret, ipsum vivum cum mortuo sepelirent ligatum. Hoc cum factum esset, omnes episcopi Britanniæ ipsum comitem sub anathemate concluserunt; unde suborta inter eos discordia, episcopi illi a comite omnes in exilium sunt expulsi, et comes excommunicatus remansit, donec sententia confirmaretur a papa.

Quod Fredericus, Romanorum imperator, reversus est in terram suam.

A.D. 1229. Return of the emperor to Germany.

Eodem anno, cum Fredericus, Romanorum imperator, terram sanctam Christianitati restituisset et treugas decennales a Soldano Damasci impetratas juramento hinc inde confirmasset, in die inventionis sanctæ Crucis naves ascendit, ut, transito mari Mediterraneo, reverteretur in terram suam; sed quoniam audierat, quod a Johanne de Breisnes insidiæ sibi parabantur in portubus cismarinis, inconsulte timuit applicare, et, ne de ejus captione gauderent inimici illius, in tuto loco applicuit, præmissis exploratoribus suis, qui conduxerunt illum ad portum securitatis et salutis. [1]Cum autem prospere in Sicilia applicuisset cum modico comitatu, audivit quod æmuli ejus jam castella multa subjugaverant et municipia, et quod etiam per terras imperii liberum haberent discursum, cum non esset qui eis obviaret; sed, cum tandem ejus divulgaretur adventus, confluebant ad eum homines imperii naturales, qui per fidelitatem ei fuerunt astricti, quibus vallatus et ex aliis adventantibus confortatus audacter prorupit in hostes et terras amissas ac castra cœpit paulatim revocare.

Quod rex Anglorum ad Natale fuit apud Eboracum.

A.D. 1230. The king keeps the feast of Christmas at York.

Anno Domini MCCXXX. rex Anglorum Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam cum rege Scotorum apud Eboracum, quem ad illud festum invitaverat, præsente archiepiscopo civitatis, cum comitibus, baronibus, militibus et familia magna nimis, ubi dicti reges multa distribuebant festiva

[1] *Cum autem.*] See a more particular account of the successes of the emperor, from Conrad, R. de S. Germano, etc. in Raynaldi, ii. p. 9.

A.D. 1230. suis militibus indumenta. Rex autem Anglorum prodiga liberalitate regi Scotorum contulit equos pretiosos, cum annulis multis ac gemmis; atque, festo per triduum continuato, epulabantur quotidie splendide, tantam solemnitatem in exultatione et lætitia celebrantes. Die autem quarto, concione soluta, rex Scotorum in suam revertitur regionem, rex Anglorum Londonias properabat.

Thunder storm in London.

Contigit eodem tempore, in die scilicet conversionis sancti Pauli, in urbe Londoniarum, dum episcopus civitatis in ecclesia cathedrali ante majus altare staret infulatus ad celebrandum divina, præsente populo civitatis ob honorem beati Pauli congregato, quod tanta subito in aere facta est nubium densitas et solaris obnubilatio claritatis, ut vix socius socium in ecclesia videre posset. Admirantibus cunctis et diem judicii suspectum habentibus, facta est repente tonitrui adeo horribilis super ecclesiam concussio, ut ipsa ecclesiæ fabrica tota cum turri eminentissima super capita omnium ruere videretur. Ex illa autem collisione nubium tanta fulminis exivit coruscatio, ut tota ecclesia intus ignea videretur; nec defuit fœtor inter hæc omnia, sed ita intolerabilis habebatur, ut omnes qui aderant exstingui timerent, sicque ad millia utriusque sexus hominum, qui in ecclesia erant, nihil verius quam mortem suspicantes, rapido cursu monasterio exierunt attoniti et corruentes in terram sine sensu aliquandiu permanserunt. Solus ex omni multitudine episcopus, cum uno tantum diacono, ante majus altare sacris vestibus indutus remansit intrepidus exspectans Domini voluntatem. Aere tandem purgato, cum omnis multitudo evadendi fiduciam concepisset et ecclesiam iterum fuisset ingressa, episcopus residuum missæ devote complevit.

Facta est autem super hoc casu totius civitatis non modica admiratio, metuentibus cunctis, ne magnum aliquid et insolitum prognosticaret futurum. Eodem anno, tempore Quadragesimali, imperator Romanus contra hostes suos ita invaluit, quod castra sua et jura omnia ad imperium spectantia potenter revocavit; quoscumque in castellis suis ex adversariis cepit, aut vivos excoriavit, aut patibulo suspendit. Johannes vero de Breisnes, qui hostis ejus erat publicus, metuens incidere in manibus illius, fugit in Gallias ad natale solum. Et sic, [1]mediantibus amicis et viris religiosis, statutæ sunt treugæ inter dominum papam et ipsum imperatorem, quousque in aliquam pacis formam convenirent. Per idem tempus [2]Willelmus de Brausia, vir nobilis et potens, a Loelino, principe Walliarum, patibulo suspensus est mense Aprili, cum uxore ejus, ut dicebatur, in adulterio deprehensus. A.D. 1230.

Eodem tempore, ad exactionem regis, archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates et priores per Angliam totam regi eidem pecuniam dederunt non modicam, quasi per eam subtracta patri suo jura posset revocare in partibus transmarinis. Cives Londinenses pro eodem negotio ad redemptionem gravissimam sunt compulsi; Judæi etiam tertiam partem rerum suarum omnium, vellent nollent, persolverunt.

Quod rex Anglorum cum exercitu transiit in Britanniam.

Rex Anglorum Henricus in solemnitate Paschali apud Radingum congregavit exercitum Expedition into Britanny.

[1] *Mediantibus amicis et viris religiosis.*] For an account of the overtures first made for peace, see Raynaldi, ii. p. 13, *seq.*; and for the terms of the treaty, *ib.* p. 21.

[2] *Willelmus de Brausia.*] See above, p. 173, *note.*

A.D. 1230. Expedition into Britanny.

copiosum valde, omnium videlicet nobilium regni, qui sibi debebant servitium militare, et aliorum innumerabilium ex regionibus diversis, qui inde castra movens ad portum de Portesmue pridie kalendas Maii cum universa multitudine sua naves ascendit. Rex autem, procurantibus nautis suis, [1] in Britannia applicuit apud sanctum Mauloum quinto nonas Maii; multi quoque de exercitu regem sequi non valentes diversis applicuerunt in locis, sed, Deo id procurante, absque læsione ac rerum diminutione omnes ad regem in Britannia pervenerunt. Comes autem Britanniæ regem reverenter et cum honore suscipiens tradidit ei municipia regionis illius et castella, nobilesque Britanniæ multi ad eum venientes homagia fecerunt et fidelitatem ei juraverunt; [2] Andreas tamen de Viteri, et alii viri nobiles pauci, ad fidelitatem regis venire contemnentes munierunt castra sua alimentis et ad pugnam viriliter sese præparabant. Rex autem Francorum, cum de adventu regis Anglorum certitudinem didicisset, congregavit exercitum valde copiosum, atque micantibus undique scutis et vexillis ad Andegavensem per-

[1] *In Britannia applicuit.*] In the chronicle of William of Nangis two rebellions of the earl of Britanny are recorded, the one in 1228, the other in the following year. In the first of these Henry is reported to have crossed to his assistance, but, finding the French king too strong for him, 'cum pudore et ignominia versus Angliam, regem Franciæ pertimescens, velociter transfretavit;' Rec. des Hist. xx. p. 316. The accounts of this writer are not, however, borne out by public documents or contemporaneous historians.

[2] *Andreas tamen de Viteri.*] In the Annales d'Aquitaine, Robert de Vitré, brother of the earl of Britanny, is mentioned as one of the generals of the army raised by Blanche against the rebels, fol. 74. The letters of submission to the king by Andrew, declaring that he will never, without the king's consent, enter into any composition with the king of England or earl of Britanny, are printed by Martene, Vett. Scriptt. Ampl. Collect. tom. i. col. 1240. They are dated June, 1230.

venit civitatem, ubi castrametatus ibi moram protraxit non modicam, ut progressum regis Anglorum in Pictaviam præpediret. Rex vero Anglorum dum apud urbem Nannetensem majorem exspectabat adhuc numerum ex diversis partibus adventantium armatorum, rex Francorum cum exercitu suo quoddam debile municipium [1]Hodum appellatum obsedit, quod ab urbe Nannetis quatuor leucis vix distabat, atque levi conatu illud cepit et subvertit, et ad Andegavensem rediit civitatem. Eodem anno facta est [2]eclipsis solis, contra morem solitum, summo mane confestim post ortum suum, pridie idus Maii, in Rogationibus, scilicet feria tertia, ita quod agricolæ et alii multi, labores mane inchoatos propter nimiam obscuritatem relinquentes, stratum repetere et sese iterum sopori dare decreverunt, sed tandem, quasi post unius horæ spatium, multis admirantibus, sol consuetam obtinuit claritatem. Eodem tempore [3]dux Saxoniæ, et regis Anglorum consanguineus, veniens in Angliam a civibus Londinensibus honorifice susceptus est; erat autem idem dux homo tantæ proceritatis et longitudinis, ut, cunctis admirantibus et quasi ad spectaculum accurrentibus, visum ex ipsius intuitu refecerunt.

A.D. 1230. Expedition into Britanny.

De discordia inter barones Galliæ orta.

Habebant quoque hoc tempore guerram ad invicem omnes fere magnates Galliæ, sicut dux

Dissensions amongst the French barons.

[1] *Hodum appellatum.*] The castles of Oudon and Chantoceaux were taken, according to Nangis, in the preceding year; it was upon the taking of the latter, according to the same authority, that the earl of Britanny, astonished at the king's success, surrendered himself into his hands; Rec. des Hist. tom. xx. p. 319.

[2] *Eclipsis solis.*] Calvisius, Chronolog. p. 802.

[3] *Dux Saxoniæ.*] Albert I.; he succeeded his father, Bernard III., in 1212, and died in 1260. He married Helen, daughter of Otho, duke of Brunswick.

A.D. 1230. Dissensions in France.

Burgundiæ, comes Bononiæ, [1]comes de Drius, comes de Mascu, comes sancti Pauli, comes de Bar, Engeramus de Curci, Robertus de Curtenai, et multi alii, qui jurati et confœderati erant, ut dicebatur, regi Angliæ et comiti Britanniæ Henrico; bellum indixerant comitibus Campaniensi et Flandrensi; qui omnes, impetrata licentia a rege Francorum, completis in obsidione Andegaviæ quadraginta dierum excubiis, reversi sunt in patriam suam. Quos rex, cum illos retinere non potuit, secutus est, ut, si possibile esset, eos discordes ad concordiam reformaret; sed, cum idem rex nobiles ad pacem reducere nullatenus potuisset, ingressi sunt cum equis et armis hostiliter comites terram comitis Campaniæ [2]atque illam igne et ferro depopulari cœperunt. [3]Comes vero Campaniæ cum ingenti armatorum copia hostibus occurrens prælium campestre commisit; at comites, tam sibi quam suis agminibus viriliter resistentes, ex militibus illius ducentos sub captione concluserunt et tredecim peremerunt. Quod cum comes Campaniensis cognovisset, campum per fugam deseruit, omni commilitonum suffragio destitutus, quem fugientem hostes acriter insequentes, et quoscumque attingebant in ore gladii prosternentes, non cessabant donec ipsum comitem infra portas Parisiacæ civitatis cursu rapido intruserunt. Tunc, nolentes ulterius insequi illum, reversi in Campaniam spoliaverunt eam totam, castra et municipia complanantes, villas et urbes igne conflagrantes, vites

[1] *Comes de Drius . . . Engeramus de Curci.*] 'Le comte de Dreux, le comte de Mâcon, le comte de S. Paul, le comte de Bar, Enguerrand de Coucy;' Fr. Translat. Mat. Paris, iii. p. 444.

[2] *Atque . . . cœperunt,*] wanting in *C.*

[3] *Comes vero Campaniæ.*] Theobald IV., surnamed le Grand; compare the account of this war as given by Joinville; Rec. des Hist. xx. pp. 203, *seq.*

et pomeria succidentes, extra ecclesias nihil intactum reliquerunt. Agebant autem contra comitem magnates quasi de crimine proditionis et reum læsæ majestatis, ut qui dominum suum regem Lodowicum in obsidione Avinionis ob amorem reginæ, quam amabat, veneno necaverat, ut dicebant; unde, cum iidem magnates in curia regis Francorum, eodem rege præsente, querimoniam sæpe deposuissent et ipsum comitem per duellum convincere voluissent, regina, per quam omnia regni negotia disponebantur propter regis simplicitatem et puerilem ætatem, noluit eos audire. Quocirca ipsi, se a regis fidelitate subtrahentes et reginæ, Francorum regnum per guerram turbare cœperunt; indignabantur enim talem habere dominam, quæ, ut dicebatur, tam dicti comitis quam legati Romani semine polluta metas transgressa fuerat pudicitiæ vidualis. A.D. 1230.

De strage Hiberniensium, et captione cujusdam regis.

Eodem anno, mense Julio, [1]regulus quidam de Connoth, Hiberniensis, cum regem Anglorum et Willelmum Marescallum cognovisset in finibus transmarinis bellicas agere expeditiones, atque regnum Hiberniæ quasi vacuum a subsidio militari, congregavit undique exercitum copiosum, sperans se posse omne genus Anglorum ab Hiberniæ finibus exturbare; ingressus igitur hostiliter terram regis Anglorum, spoliis et rapinis atque incendiis intendebat. Sed cum hæc omnia ad aures Gaufridi de Marisco, qui vices justiciarii sub rege in partibus illis gerebat, [venissent,] adjunctis sibi Waltero de Lasci cum Ri- Disturbances in Ireland.

[1] *Regulus quidam.*] Compare the account as given in the Annal. Buellian. Rer. Hibern. Script. ed. O'Conor, tom. ii. part. iv. p. 39.

A.D. 1230. Disturbances in Ireland.

chardo de Burgo et exercitu non modico, contra hostes audacter prorupit, et, exercitum suum in tres turmas dividens, duabus præfecit Walterum de Lasci et Richardum de Burgo, tertiam sibi retinens ad regendum; atque duas acies instructas, quibus præerant prædicti Walterus et Richardus, occultavit in silvis quibusdam, per quas venturi erant hostes, et dolosas eis insidias præparavit; tertiam vero, quam ipse regebat, statuit, ut directa fronte adversariis occurrens ad campestre prælium eos provocaret. Tandem hostes supervenientes, cum unam tantum aciem gentis Anglorum conspexissent, irruerunt in eos, quasi sub spe certa victoriæ consequendæ; sed acies Anglorum tamdiu fugam simulavit, quousque Hibernienses illos insequentes loca insidiarum pertransissent. At illi, qui in insidiis erant, de latibulis erumpentes et aerem clamore horribili verberantes a tergo et a latere irruerunt in hostes; et acies, quæ prius fugerat, in Hibernienses a fronte revertens stragem eis miserabilem intulerunt, [1]interfecti namque referuntur ex Hiberniensibus ad viginti millia virorum bellatorum, et rex eorum captus est et carcerali custodiæ deputatus. Eodem tempore Fulco Paganellus[2] de Normannia, vir nobilis, et Willelmus frater ejus, relictis castellis suis ac terris, venerunt ad regem Anglorum in Britanniam, fidelitates ei et homagia facientes. Venerunt etiam cum eis ad sexaginta milites viri strenui et potentes, qui omnes persuaserunt regi, ut hosti-

[1] *Interfecti namque.*] 'Parta est victoria contra Aedum filium Roderici, contra regem Connaciæ, et contra Connachtenses, et expulsus est Aed filius Roderici, et occisus est Donnoch O'Orochtuig supremus dux clientelæ Muredagi, et multi alii cum ipso occisi sunt;' Annal. Buellian. Rer. Hibern. Script. ed. O'Conor, tom. ii. part. iv. p. 39.

[2] *Paganellus,*] or 'Paisnel;' see Fr. Translat. Mat. Paris, iii. p. 447, *note.*

liter Normanniam intraret, sub spe certa terram subjugandi; quorum rex consiliis libenter adquiesceret, sed Hubertus de Burgo id fieri non permisit, dicens, periculosum fore hoc modis omnibus attemptare. Quod audientes milites prædicti postulaverunt regem propensius, ut assignaret eis ducentos milites de exercitu suo, cum quibus Normanniam intrarent, certissimis ei assertionibus promittentes, quod omne genus Francorum de Normannia exturbarent; nec etiam id fieri permisit Hubertus justiciarius, asserens, regi non expedire ut traderet milites suos ad mortem ultronea voluntate. Sicque nobiles illi miserabiliter illusi fuerunt, quia rex Francorum incontinenti exhæredavit eos, castella et omnia, quæ illorum erant, potenter in sua jura convertens. A.D. 1230.

Quod rex Anglorum in Gasconia profectus homagia ceperit.

Et, his ita gestis, rex Anglorum per consilium Huberti de Burgo, cum exercitu suo ex Britannia per Andegaviam in Pictaviam transiens, profectus est in Gasconiam, ubi acceptis homagiis, et regione sub securitate disposita, rediit in Pictaviam, ubi multorum homagia suscepit. In hac quoque equitatione obsedit rex Mirebelli castrum et cepit laudabili virtute Anglorum, qui assultus audacissimos assidue iterantes violenter inclusos subegerunt, et recedentes omnes in vinculis abduxerunt. Hoc igitur tempore, mense Augusti, dominus papa Gregorius et Romanorum imperator Fredericus, mediantibus utrorumque [1]fidelibus et amicis, in concordiam convene- Henry in Gascony and Poitou.

[1] *Fidelibus et amicis.*] Among the principal promoters of the peace were the archbishops of Rheggio and Salzburg, the master of the Teutonic knights at Rome, the dukes of Austria, Carinthia, and Moravia, etc.; Raynaldi, ii. p. 21.

A.D. 1230. runt; veniens enim Romam dictus imperator absolutus est, omnibus ad jura imperii spectantibus ex integro revocatis. Comederunt ergo simul magnus sacerdos et maximus imperator in palatio summi pontificis per triduum, gaudentibus cardinalibus et potentatibus imperii de concordia tam desperata et tam subito confirmata. Eadem tempestate comes Cestrensis Ranulphus munivit castellum apud sanctum Johannem de Beverona, quod ad jus uxoris suæ comitissæ jure hæreditario pertinebat, militibus, alimentis et armis; reddiderat enim illi castrum illud comes Britanniæ Henricus, quando confœderatus regi Anglorum omnia jura sua in regno Angliæ, rege concedente, recepit.

De concordia facta inter regem Francorum et barones.

Peace concluded between the king of France and his barons.

Circa eosdem dies, mense Septembri, convenerunt ad colloquium rex Francorum et [1]regina mater ejus cum magnatibus illius regni, qui post mortem Lodowici regis guerram habuerant ad invicem, ut est superius dictum, ubi de pace tractantes talem concordiam firmaverunt; Provisum est autem communiter a proceribus præfatis, ut comes Campaniensis, qui hujus discordiæ causa principalis exstiterat, cruce signatus peregrinationem terræ sanctæ subiret ad militandum ibidem cum centum militibus contra inimicos Crucifixi; et præterea rex Francorum et mater ejus, tactis sacrosanctis evangeliis, juraverunt, quod singulis redderent jura sua, et

[1] *Regina mater ejus.*] The French historians defend the queen-mother against the charges of Wendover, as being a woman of such habits as were altogether incompatible with the disorders of which she has been accused by our historian; see above, pp. 135, *seqq.*

quod omnes homines terræ illius secundum rectas consuetudines et singulis debitas judicarent. A.D. 1230.

De reditu regis de Britannia in Angliam.

Jacebat interea rex Anglorum apud urbem Nannetensem cum exercitu suo, nihil agens, nisi quod thesauros consumpsit. Comites vero ac barones, cum Hubertus, regis justiciarius, non permisit ut contra hostes arma moverent, fecerunt inter se convivia juxta consuetudinem Anglicanam, et crapulis intendebant et poculis ad invicem, ac si dies Natalitios celebrarent, inter quos qui pauperes erant, rebus omnibus consumptis, equos distrahebant et arma, ut exinde ad tempus vitam ducerent infelicem. Tandem rex Anglorum, [1]mense Octobri, dispositis rebus necessariis ad custodiam terræ illius, dimisit ibi milites quingentos et mille servientes stipendiarios, super quos principes constituit comitem Cestriæ Ranulphum, Willelmum Marescallum, et Willelmum Albemarliæ comitem, cum quibusdam aliis viris bellatoribus et in opere martio præelectis; sicque rex naves conscendens post plurima maris pericula apud Portesmue applicuit septimo kalendas Novembris. Venerunt autem multi diversæ professionis ad eum homines diversis illum exeniis honorantes; sed comes de Glovernia et de Clare [2]Gilebertus de partibus illis rediens diem clausit extremum, cujus terrarum et honorum omnium rex Huberto justiciario custodiam concessit. Henry returns to England.

[1] *Mense Octobri.*] 'Modicum ibi (sc. in Britannia) proficiens reversus est mense Octobri;' Chron. Dunst. 201. 'Reversus est in Angliam cum fratre suo Richardo;' Hemingf. p. 573. 'Rediit in Angliam circa festum Omnium sanctorum;' An. Waverl. p. 192.

[2] *Gilebertus.*] He was buried at Tewkesbury; Annal. Waverl. p. 192.

De equitationibus factis in partibus transmarinis post discessum regis.

A.D. 1230. Doings in Anjou after his departure.

Post recessum regis Anglorum ex partibus transmarinis comes Cestrensis et alii principes militiæ regis cum toto ejus exercitu fecerunt equitationem per Andegaviam et per dies quindecim moram fecerunt in ea, et ceperunt castellum Guncier[1] et complanaverunt illud, et villam combusserunt; deinde ceperunt castellum novum super Sartam, et illud subvertentes villam incendio tradiderunt; sicque cum impretiabilibus spoliis et prædis in Britanniam sunt reversi. Nec multo post Normanniam hostiliter ingressi ceperunt ibi castellum Punthursun, et eo complanato villam combusserunt, et absque rerum dispendio in Britanniam redierunt. Eodem anno facta est eclipsis[2] lunæ, remanente sibi brevissima claritate, quasi per spatium trium horarum, decimo kalendas Decembris, ipsa luna decima tertia existente.

De exactione scutagii pro expeditione transmarina.

A.D. 1231. The archbishop of Canterbury refuses to pay the scutage.

Anno Domini MCCXXXI. rex Anglorum Henricus ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Lamheiam, Huberto, Angliæ justiciario, necessaria omnia festivitati regiæ procurante. Ac deinde, septimo kalendas Februarii, convenerunt ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium rex cum prælatis et aliis magnatibus regni, ubi exegit idem rex [3]scutagium, de quolibet scuto tres marcas, ab omnibus, qui baronias tenebant, tam laicis

[1] *Guncier.*] The reviser of our MS. has marked this word for correction; the French translator reads 'Gonnord;' iii. p. 447.

[2] *Eclipsis lunæ.*] Calvisius, Chronolog. p. 803.

[3] *Scutagium.*] Termed, for distinction's sake, 'the scutage of Poitou,' after the king's first passage to Bretagne; Rot. Pip. 15 Hen. III.; Carte, ii. p. 40.

quam prælatis ; cui Richardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et quidam episcopi cum eo audacter resistentes dixerunt, quod non tenentur viri ecclesiastici judicio subjici laicorum, cum absque illis concessum fuisset scutagium in finibus transmarinis. Tandem post multas hinc inde disceptationes negotium, quantum ad prælatos reclamantes, usque in quindecim dies post Pascha dilationem accepit ; omnes alii, tam laici quam clerici ac prælati, favebant regiæ voluntati. A.D. 1231.

De discordia inter regem et archiepiscopum.

Per idem tempus Richardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, ad regem veniens [1]conquestus est de Huberto, Angliæ justiciario, quod castellum de Tunebregge cum villa et pertinentiis ejus et alias quasdam terras Gileberti comitis de Clare nuper defuncti, quæ ad jus suum et ecclesiæ Cantuariensis spectabant, [injuste detinebat,] unde idem comes sibi et antecessoribus suis ipse et prædecessores sui ad recognitionem et homagium tenebantur ; qua de causa regem rogavit, ut custodiam dicti castelli cum pertinentiis sibi restitueret et jura ecclesiæ Cantuariensis conservaret illæsa. Ad hæc respondens rex dixit, comitem[2] præfatum de se tenere in capite, et

The archbishop complains of Hubert the justiciary.

[1] *Conquestus est de Huberto, Angliæ justiciario.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 202. The quarrel is described in the Annal. Waverl. as being between the archbishop 'et regales, qui violenter ejecerunt homines archiepiscopi de quadam custodia, quæ, sicut nonnullis visum est, proprie spectat ad jus Cantuariensis ecclesiæ ;' p. 193.

[2] *Comitem . . . de se tenere.*] See the title of the earls of Clare to Tunbridge, as stated by Carte, ii. p. 40. In the 42nd Hen. III. the seignory of this manor was claimed by archbishop Boniface, and an agreement entered into by him with Richard de Clare, earl of Gloucester, concerning the services, which the archbishop required of the earl, by reason of the tenements which the latter held of him in Tunbridge, etc. ; Hasted's Kent, ii. p. 311, and iv. p. 768, *note.*

A.D. 1231. vacantes custodias comitum et baronum et eorundem hæredum ad suam coronam usque ad ætatem legitimam pertinere, unde sibi licere proposuit tales custodias cui voluerit vendere vel conferre. Archiepiscopus vero, cum aliud responsum habere non potuit, excommunicavit omnes invasores possessionum prædictarum, et omnes, præter regem, qui cum eis communionem haberent, et tam pro his quam [1]aliis de causis Romam profectus jus suum et ecclesiæ suæ prosequi maturavit. Rex vero e contra, [2]ut causam suam prosequeretur, magistrum Rogerum de Cantelo Romam cum aliis quibusdam nuntiis destinavit. Eodem tempore, mense Aprili, expleta solennitate Paschali, Richardus frater regis desponsavit comitissam Gloverniæ, sororem scilicet Willelmi Marescalli, comitis de Penbroc; et, nuptiis vix completis, idem comes Willelmus, in militia vir strenuus, in dolorem multorum diem clausit supremum, et Londoniis apud Novum Templum [3]sepultus est juxta patrem suum decimo septimo kalendas Maii.

Quod Loelinus in Wallia crudeliter sævire cœpit.

Disturbances in Wales. Eodem mense Maio Wallenses de latibulis, ut sorices e cavernis, erumpentes terram, quæ fuit Willelmi de Brausia, flammis discurrentibus vastaverunt; sed, rege Anglorum illo tendente cum

---

[1] *Aliis de causis.*] He had a suit also against the abbot of S. Augustine's, who refused to receive consecration at his hands; Chron. Dunst. p. 203.

[2] *Ut causam suam prosequeretur.*] It would appear that the king, to a certain extent, was successful in his suit, for in Rymer the reader may find a bull of Gregory, addressed to the archbishops and bishops of England, 'de non excommunicando, sine causa manifesta, justiciarios, vicecomites et ballivos regis,' i. p. 200.

[3] *Sepultus.*] His epitaph is thus recorded in the Annal. Waverl.:

'Militis istius mortem dolet Anglia; ridet
Wallia viventis bella minasque timens.'

modica manu militari, ipsi ad suas more solito sunt reversi cavernas. Rex autem partes australes repetens dimisit in partibus illis Hubertum, justiciarium regni, ad reprimendum impetus eorundem; sed illi, continuo ut audierant recessum regis, ad prædandum reversi, non longe a castro Montis-Gomerii provincias infestantes sævire cœperunt. Sed cum milites, qui erant in præsidio castri memorati, hoc cognovissent, ne tam libere sine offensione discurrerent, exierunt ad prælium contra ipsos, et viam revertendi præcludentes multos ex eis ceperunt et plurimos peremerunt; cumque illos, quos vivos ceperant, justiciario præsentassent, jussit omnes decapitari et regi Anglorum capita præsentari. Quod factum Loelinus nimis moleste ferens collegit exercitum copiosum, et terras baronum, qui in limbo Walliæ degebant, et possessiones gravi depopulatione contrivit, et, nec ecclesiis neque personis ecclesiasticis parcens, matronas quasdam nobiles et puellas, quæ causa pacis et salutis ad ecclesias confugerant, cum ipsis ecclesiis concremavit. A.D. 1231.

Quod rex, Loelino excommunicato, in Walliam exercitum conduxit.

Cumque hoc enorme factum ad aures regis pervenisset, [1]collegit apud Oxoniam exercitum copiosum tertio idus Julii, ubi cum tota nobilitas Angliæ, tam cleri quam populi, congregata fuisset, episcopi omnes et ecclesiarum prælati, præsente rege, Loelinum cum suis fautoribus, qui ecclesias concremarant, anathemate percus- Henry marches against Llewellyn.

[1] *Collegit . . . exercitum copiosum.*] The king also issued a proclamation inviting the Irish to invade Wales, promising to assure to them such lands as they might be able to acquire; Rymer, i. p. 200.

A.D. 1231. War in Wales.

serunt; quo facto, rex exercitum promovens ad Herefordensem urbem cito volatu pervenit. Erat autem eo tempore [1]Loelinus cum exercitu suo non longe a castello Montis-Gomerii in quodam prato, quod ripariam habebat vicinam paludibus obsitam, ubi militibus castri memorati dolosas insidias præparabat. Nam fratrem quendam de abbatia Cisterciensis ordinis, quæ prope erat, Cumira nuncupata, direxit Loelinus, ut dicitur, ad castellum; quem cum viderunt milites castelli transeuntem per eos, exierunt ut cum fratre loquerentur, et sciscitantes ab eo, si quid de Loelino rege audisset, respondit, quod viderat eum cum parvo comitatu in prato vicino, ubi exspectabat majorem numerum armatorum. Milites vero, cum a fratre requirerent, si possent ripariam et pratum equites cum securitate transire, respondit frater, 'Pons, qui ultra ripariam itinerantes ducere solebat, confractus est a Loelino, quia metuebat impetum vestrum; sed tamen poteritis secure, ubicumque volueritis, ripariam et pratum in equis transire, et Wallenses cum paucis equitibus vel vincere vel fugare.' Quo audito, adhibuit fidem falsis assertionibus fratris Walterus de Godarvilla, custos castelli, et præcipiens commilitonibus et servientibus, ut convolarent ad arma, ascensis equis, ad locum celeriter pervenerunt; quos Wallenses cum impetu venire conspicientes ad silvam quandam, quæ prope erat, dolosam illico inierunt fugam. At castellani rapido equorum volatu eos insequentes in riparia præfata ac palude illius prati submersi sunt usque ad ventres equorum, illi præ-

[1] *Loelinus.*] In the Patent Rolls is a pass from the king, granting safe conduct to the messengers of Llewellyn, summoned apparently to meet the king's messengers at Shrewsbury, dated Worcester, 27th May; Rymer, i. p. 200. It would appear that Llewellyn took no notice of this summons.

cipue qui primi veniebant; sed alii, qui sequebantur, ex sociorum submersione præmuniti de casu commilitonum suorum non mediocriter condolebant. Tunc Wallenses, hostium submersionem cognoscentes, reversi sunt cum impetu super eos, et cum lanceis suis milites et equos in cœno volutantes crudeliter peremerunt. Factus est autem ibi hinc inde conflictus gravissimus, multis utrobique peremptis, sed tamen Wallenses victoria potiuntur. [1]Captus est autem ibi Ægidius, filius Richardi de Argentonio, miles strenuus, cum quibusdam aliis, quorum nomina non audivi. A.D. 1231.

De ultione prædicti sceleris, et constructione castri Matildis.

Cumque tandem casus, qui militibus jam dictis acciderat, regi fuerat denuntiatus, cum festinatione ad abbatiam, cujus frater præfatos milites prodiderat, hostiliter transiens, in ultionem tanti sceleris quandam grangiam illius abbatiæ bonis omnibus spoliatam combussit, et ipsam abbatiam similiter spoliatam omnino jussit igne cremari; sed abbas loci, ut ædificia sumptuosis valde laboribus constructa salvaret, trecentas marcas regi numeravit, et sic ejus indignatio paulisper cessavit. Et, his ita gestis, fecit rex reædificare castellum Matildis in Wallia de lapide et cæmento eleganter, quod a Wallensibus olim prostratum fuerat, atque, magnis sumptibus cum esset opus feliciter consummatum, posuit in eo rex milites et clientes, qui incursiones Wallensium refrænarent. War in Wales.

[1] *Captus est.*] 'Capti sunt autem a parte Iæwelini *duo* filii Ricardi de Argenthom;' Chron. Dunst. p. 205.

De treugis statutis inter reges Francorum et Anglorum.

A.D. 1231. Truce with France.

Circa eosdem dies, mense Junio, rex Francorum promovit exercitum copiosum, ut Armoricanam Britanniam expugnaret; sed, cum ejus adventum Henricus Britanniæ et Ranulphus Cestriæ comites, qui in finibus illis militiæ regis Anglorum præerant, cognovissent, regi paraverunt insidias venienti, et a tergo rhedas ejus et vehicula, quæ arma ferebant cum alimentis et machinis, invadentes ceperunt omnia, et machinas igne concremantes lucrati sunt ibidem equos sexaginta. Deinde Franci, cum Britanniam cognoscerent quasi inexpugnabilem, simul et debile principium suum habentes suspectum, procurantibus ex parte regis Francorum archiepiscopo Remensi et Philippo comite Bononiensi, atque ex parte regis Anglorum comitibus Britanniæ et Cestriæ in hoc consentientibus, [1]statutæ sunt treugæ et juramento firmatæ triennales inter dictos reges tertio nonas Julii. Eodem mense Julio Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, completo in terra promissionis jam fere per quinquennium magnificæ peregrinationis voto, reversus est in Angliam, et in kalendis Augusti Wintoniæ susceptus est cum processione solenni in ecclesia cathedrali. [2]Venerunt eodem tempore, post treugas statutas, comes Britanniæ et comes Cestriæ, cum Richardo Marescallo, ex finibus transmarinis in Angliam, et ad regem profecti in Walliam, qui adhuc occupabatur in constructione

[1] *Statutæ sunt treugæ.*] Letters plenipotentiary for concluding a truce with France had been granted to the earl of Cornwallis and others, dated 6th of September 1230; Rymer, i. p. 198.

[2] *Venerunt.*] Before their return, an aid, a fortieth part of all the moveables of the nobility, laity, and regular and secular clergy, had been granted by universal consent; Close Rolls, 15 Hen. III.; Carte, p. 40.

castri Matildis, honorifice sunt ab eo recepti. Richardus vero Marescallus, se regi repræsentans ut hæredem fratris sui Willelmi Marescalli, obtulit regi pro hæreditate sua homagium suum et quicquid ei de jure suo facere tenebatur. Cui [1]respondens rex, per consilium Huberti consiliarii sui ac justiciarii, quod audierat uxorem fratris sui defuncti esse prægnantem, unde noluit eum audire, donec rei veritas probaretur; objecit etiam eidem Richardo, quod conversatus fuerat inter hostes suos publicos in partibus Gallicanis, unde rex præcepit, ut cito de regno non reversurus exiret, affirmans, quod, post dies quindecim [si] inveniretur in regno, carceri perpetuo traderetur. At Richardus, cum aliud non haberet responsum, transfretavit in Hiberniam, ubi omnes milites et homines fratris sui illum cum gaudio recipientes reddiderunt omnia ei castella, quæ erant fratris sui, homagiumque illi cum fidelitate fecerunt; castellum etiam de Penbroc in sua potestate recipiens, cum toto honore ad castellum pertinente, collegit multitudinem armatorum, hæreditatem suam, etiam invito rege, si necessitas cogeret, subjugare disponens. Tandem rex, mutato consilio, metuens ne pacem regni turbaret, suscepit homagium ejus et fidelitatem, et ei omnia jura sua, salvo sibi relevio consueto, concessit. A.D. 1231.

Quod Richardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, Romam profectus in reditu obiit.

Venit hoc tempore ad curiam Romanam Richardus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, et in præsentia domini [papæ] hæc proposuit quæ sequun- Death of the archbishop of Canterbury.

[1] *Respondens rex.*] 'Ricardus Marescallus, qui per injustam dilationem valde damnificatus, tandem hæreditatem suam recuperare promeruit;' Chron. Dunst. p. 205.

A.D. 1231. tur. Conquestus est in primis de rege Anglorum, quod solummodo omnia regni negotia per consilium Huberti justiciarii, aliis spretis magnatibus, disponebat. Item, de justiciario proposuit, quod[1] habuit uxorem, cujus consanguineam prius habuerat sibi matrimonio copulatam, et quod jura ecclesiæ Cantuariensis invaserat et injuste detinebat. Proposuit etiam, quod episcopi quidam ejus suffraganei, neglecta pastorali cura, sedebant ad scaccarium regis, laicas causas ventilantes et judicia sanguinis exercentes. Item conquestus est, quod clerici beneficiati et infra sacros ordines constituti plures habebant ecclesias, quibus adnexa fuerat cura animarum, et quod insuper, sicut episcopi, ab ipsis trahentes exemplum, curis secularibus et laicorum se judiciis immiscebant. His autem et consimilibus coram papa propositis, petiit, ut talibus limam correctionis excessibus adhiberet. Cumque hæc omnia dominus papa diligenti studio intellexisset, et vidisset quod universa, quæ proposuerat archiepiscopus, justitia fuerant et ratione subnixa, jussit incontinenti, quatenus archiepiscopi negotia sive petitiones expedirentur, justitia mediante. Proposuerunt autem in contrarium clerici regis, pro ipso rege et justiciario multa inaniter allegantes; sed parum vel nihil profecerunt, quia, ut breviter dicatur, favor archiepiscopi, quicquid petiit, impetravit. Archiepiscopus autem, cum, expletis negotiis omnibus pro voluntate sua, repatriare maturaret, [2]apud [sanctam

[1] *Quod habuit uxorem.*] His third wife, Margaret, the daughter of the king of Scotland, related to his second wife Isabel, the countess of Gloucester. The Chron. Dunst. tells us that he evaded this inquiry, 'machinationibus dolosis iniquitatem suam prolongavit, audientiam bonorum judicum declinando, et malitiose literas impetrando ad tres judices, in tribus Angliæ angulis constitutos,' p. 207.

[2] *Apud sanctam Gemmam.*] 'Ad

Gemmam] diem clausit supremum tertio nonas Augusti; et sic, ipso exspirante, exspirabant cum eo negotia impetrata. A.D. 1231.

Quod rex Anglorum revocatus est a nuptiis sororis regis Scotorum.

Eodem tempore rex Anglorum, constructo in Wallia castello supradicto, mense Octobris in Angliam remeavit. Proposuit sane idem rex eo tempore ducere in uxorem [1]sororem regis Scotorum, indignantibus comitibus et baronibus universis; non enim, ut aiunt, decebat, quod rex duceret natu filiam minorem, cum Hubertus justiciarius natu majorem haberet sibi matrimonio copulatam; sed, ab hoc proposito cum per comitem Britanniæ fuisset rex revocatus, dedit eidem comiti Britanniæ quinque millia marcas argenti, et sic rediit in regionem suam. Henry dissuaded from marrying the sister of the king of Scotland.

De electione et cassatione Radulphi, Cantuariensis electi.

Defuncto, ut dictum est, Richardo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, decreverunt monachi Cantuariæ Radulphum de Nevilla, Cicestrensem episcopum, sibi in præsulem postulare; erat autem cancellarius regis, unde monachi, electione facta, præsentaverunt eum regi octavo kalendas Octobris; quem rex gratanter, quantum ad se pertinebat, acceptans de maneriis et rebus aliis ad archiepiscopatum adjacentibus illum protinus investivit. Et monachi Romam profecturi, ad electum Ralph de Neville elected archbishop of Canterbury.

sanctam Geminam morbo correptus obiit, atque ibidem apud ecclesiam fratrum Minorum honorifice tumulatus est.' Annal. Waverl. p. 193.

[1] *Sororem regis Scotorum.*] Isabella; she was already the wife of Roger Bigod earl of Norfolk, married, as appears from a writ printed in Rymer, in 1225; Rym. i. p. 178. There was also a natural daughter of William of Scotland named Isabel, married first to Robert de Bruce and afterwards to Robert de Rosse; Chron. Mailr. p. 175.

A.D. 1231. suum venientes, petierunt ab illo auxilium ad expensas itineris ; sed ille plane affirmavit, quod propter hoc eis nec obolum unum donaret. Sed monachi illi, non ideo minus Romam profecti, electionem sive postulationem factam petierunt a papa, ut auctoritate apostolica confirmaret. Dominus itaque papa, facta, ut dicitur, a magistro Simone de Langetuna inquisitione de persona postulati, respondit, ipsum curialem esse et illiteratum; unde papa, postulatione cassata, concessit, ut conventus Cantuariensis alium archiepiscopum ac talem eligerent, qui sibi esset pastor animarum salubris et ecclesiæ utilis Anglicanæ, qui domum reversi conventui retulerunt quomodo fuerant a suo desiderio defraudati.

Election declared void by the pope.

De insolentia clericorum Romanorum.

Disturbances on account of the Italian clergy.

Suborta est hac tempestate in Anglia maxima rerum perturbatio, immo, ut verum fateamur, indiscreta præsumptio, [1]propter Romanorum insolentiam clericorum, quæ tam nobiles regni quam ignobiles ad temerariam compulit ultionem, sicut in subscriptis continetur expressum; 'Tali episcopo, et tali capitulo, universitas eorum, qui magis volunt mori quam a Romanis confundi, salutem. Qualiter circa nos et alias personas ecclesiasticas Angliæ hactenus se habuerint Romani et eorum legati, vestram non dubitamus latere discretionem, beneficia regni suis, secundum quod eis placet, conferendo, in vestrum et omnium aliorum regni intolerabile præjudicium et gravamen; in vos etiam et coepiscopos vestros aliasque personas ecclesiasticas, ad quos

[1] *Propter Romanorum insolentiam clericorum.*] Wilkins has printed a bull of the pope, issued with a view to redress this grievance, by which he allows patrons to present to churches, on the death of the Italian incumbents; Concil. i. p. 629.

collatio beneficiorum pertinere dinoscitur, quod magis dignum est pro confusione notari, suspensionis sententias fulminando, ne alicui de regno beneficia conferatis, donec quinque Romanis, nec dum proprio nomine nominatis, immo nato Rumfredi, et nato talis et talis, in singulis ecclesiis vestris per totam Angliam sit provisum, unicuique eorum in redditu centum librarum ; alia etiam gravamina quamplurima tam laicis et magnatibus regni super advocationibus suis et eorum eleemosynis ab eis et antecessoribus suis datis in pauperum regni sustentationem, quam clericis et aliis viris religiosis regni super rebus et beneficiis, inferendo. Nec præmissis contenti ad ultimum a clericis regni beneficia, quæ obtinent, ut ea Romanis conferant, non secundum quod decet, sed sicut eis placet, auferre volentes, in eis illam intendunt prophetiam adimplere, 'Spoliaverunt Ægyptios, ut ditarent Hebræos, multiplicando gentem suam, non magnificando lætitiam;' sic dolorem dolori nobis et vobis omnibus accumulando, ut melius nobis videatur mori, quam vivere sic oppressi. Unde licet grave sit nobis contra stimulum calcitrare, tamen, quia qui nimis emungit, elicit sanguinem, nos severitatem eorum animadvertentes, qui ab initio tanquam advenæ [1]Romam sunt ingressi, nunc autem nos non tantum judicare, sed etiam condemnare, intendunt, alligantes onera importabilia, quæ nec in se nec in suos digito movere volunt, de communi consilio magis elegimus, licet tarde, resistere, quam eorum oppressionibus intolerabilibus amplius subjacere seu majori subjici servituti. Hinc est quod vobis mandamus, districte inhibentes, quatenus, cum nos ecclesiam, regem A.D. 1231.

[1] *Romam.*] Corrected by a somewhat later hand 'Romani.'

A.D. 1231. similiter et regnum, nitamur a tam gravi jugo servitutis eripere, circa eos, qui de Romanis vel eorum redditibus se intromittunt, nullas partes vestras interponere præsumatis; pro certo scituri, quod, si hujus mandati, quod absit, exstiteritis forte transgressores, quæ vestra sunt incendio subjacebunt, et pœnam, quam Romani incurrent in personis, vos incurretis. Valete.'

Prohibitio ne reddantur firmæ vel redditus clericis Romanis.

Disturbances on account of the Italian clergy.

'Item religiosis et aliis, qui habent ecclesias Romanorum ad firmam, universitas prædicta, salutem. Cum post innumerabiles confusiones et infinita gravamina, quæ Romani, ut scitis, regno Angliæ inflixerunt ad præsens, in præjudicium regis et magnatum regni, circa advocationes ecclesiarum suarum et eorum eleemosynas, qui clericos regni spoliare nituntur beneficiis suis, ut ea Romanis conferant, in majorem regni et nostri confusionem, de communi consilio magnatum elegimus, licet tarde, resistere, quam eorum oppressionibus intolerabilibus de cætero subjacere, et eos per subtractionem beneficiorum suorum per totum regnum, quod aliis intendebant inferre, sic arctare, ut a regni molestatione desistant. Hinc est quod vobis mandamus, districte injungentes, quatenus de firmis ecclesiarum, sive de redditibus camerarum, quas de Romanis habetis, vel debetis eis, de cætero non respondeatis, sed dictas firmas et redditus habeatis paratos in crastino Dominicæ, qua cantatur 'Lætare Hierusalem,' procuratori nostro literatorie a nobis ad hoc dato, abbates scilicet et priores in eorum monasteriis, alii vero presbyteri et clerici vel laici ad proprias ecclesias Romanorum, tradituri; pro certo scientes, quod, si hoc non feceritis, quæ ves-

tra sunt incendio subjacebunt, et nihilominus periculum, quod Romanis imminet in personis, vobis imminebit. Valete.' His ita gestis, prædicta universitas misit per milites et ministros literas has novo quodam sigillo signatas, in quo sculpti erant duo gladii, et inter gladios scriptum erat 'Ecce duo gladii hic,' in modum citationum ad ecclesias regni cathedrales, ut, si quos invenirent contradictores, juxta quod provisum fuerat punirent eos. A.D. 1231.

De quodam consistorio apud sanctum Albanum habito, et de captione Cincii.

Per idem tempus, decimo sexto kalendas Januarii, habitum est apud sanctum Albanum ingens consistorium abbatum, priorum, archidiaconorum, cum tota fere nobilitate regni magistrorum et clericorum, qui omnes ad hoc convenerunt per mandatum domini papæ, ut celebrarent divortium inter comitissam Essexiæ et virum suum, si ratio id dictaret. In crastino autem, consistorio soluto, cum singuli redirent ad propria, clericus quidam Romanus, nomine [1]Cincius, qui ecclesiæ sancti Pauli Londoniarum erat canonicus, per prædictam universitatem, ut creditur, non longe a villa sancti Albani captus est et abductus a viris armatis et capitibus velatis; sed magister Johannes Florentinus, Norwicensis archidiaconus, qui huic consistorio adfuit, ab hac captione evasit, et ad urbem Londoniarum fugiens delituit ibidem multis diebus. Cincius vero post quinque septimanas, crumenis evacuatis, ut dicitur, ad urbem Londoniarum sanus et incolumis est reductus. A court held at S. Alban's by the pope's mandate.

[1] *Cincius.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 206.

De distractione bladi de Wihingeham violenta.

A.D. 1232. Disturbances on account of the Italian clergy.

Anno Domini MCCXXXII. rex Anglorum Henricus fuit ad Natale apud Wintoniam, cui Petrus, ejusdem urbis antistes, necessaria omnia procuravit, et festiva tam regi quam suis exhibuit indumenta. In illis autem diebus natalitiis distracta sunt horrea de Wihingeham cujusdam Romani ditissima per prædictam universitatem, ut creditur, a paucis armatis servientibus et capitibus velatis. Procurator vero illius ecclesiæ et custos, cum talem violentiam inspexisset, venit ad vicecomitem regionis, et de violata pace regis et injuria domino suo illata ei patenter ostendit. At vicecomes mittens ad locum ministros suos cum militibus quibusdam vicinis jussit inquiri quidnam hoc esset; venientes quoque ad horrea milites memorati invenerunt homines illos armatos et sibi penitus ignotos, qui jam ex maxima parte [1]horrea evacuerant et bladum bonis conditionibus et ad commodum totius provinciæ vendiderant, sed et pauperibus partem caritative petentibus ex animo conferebant. Milites vero, qui advenerant, cum interrogassent eos unde essent, qui pacem regis offendere et talia facere præsumebant, illi continuo milites seorsum vocantes ostendebant literas regis [2]patentes, prohibentes ne quis eos præsumeret impedire; at milites hoc

[1] *Horrea evacuerant.*] The pope charged the bishops with conniving at these disorders, in a letter which he wrote to Henry, respecting his own and predecessors' merits and services to him and his father, complaining not only of the outrages above mentioned, but also of the ill-treatment of his nuncios and ministers; one of these being cut in pieces, another left half dead, their bulls trodden under foot, etc., and insisting on a speedy reparation of damages and punishment of the malefactors; Carte, ii. p. 42. The bull is dated 7th June 1232; Rymer, i. p. 203.

[2] *Patentes.*] Paris adds, 'adulterinas et sophisticas.' 'Literas patentes ipsius justiciarii;' Chron. Dunst. p. 207.

audientes, tam ipsi quam alii, qui advenerant, pacifice recesserunt; sicque infra dies quindecim distractis omnibus, armati illi de loco recesserunt, loculis plene refectis. Tandem cum hæc violentia ad notitiam Rogeri, Londoniensis episcopi, pervenisset, convocatis decem episcopis in[1] crastino beatæ Scholasticæ virginis Londoniis in ecclesia beati Pauli, omnes hujus violentiæ auctores anathematis sententia percusserunt, involventes etiam illos, qui in Cincium, Londoniensis ecclesiæ canonicum, manus injecerant violentas, cum universitate prædicta et illis omnibus qui fecerunt sigillum et literas suprascriptas. A.D. 1232.

Quod rex auxilium per totam Angliam sibi dari postulavit.

Convenerunt eo tempore, nonas Martii, ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium ad vocationem regis magnates Angliæ, tam laici quam prælati, quibus rex proposuit, quod magnis esset debitis implicatus causa bellicæ expeditionis, quam nuper egerat in finibus transmarinis, unde necessitate compulsus ab omnibus generaliter auxilium postulavit. Quo audito, comes Cestrensis Ranulphus pro magnatibus loquens regi respondit, quod comites, barones ac milites, qui de eo tenebant in capite, cum ipso erant ibi corporaliter præsentes, et pecuniam suam ita inaniter effuderunt, quod inde pauperes omnes recesserunt, unde regi de jure auxilium non debebant; et sic, petita licentia, laici omnes recesserunt. Prælati vero regi respondentes dixerunt, quod episcopi multi et abbates, qui vocati erant, non fuerunt præsentes; et sic petierunt inducias, The king demands an aid of the laity and clergy.

[1] *In crastino beatæ Scholasticæ virginis.*] The 10th of February.

A.D. 1232. quousque ad diem certum possent omnes pariter convenire. Præfixus est itaque dies a quindecim diebus post Pascha, ut, omnibus congregatis, tunc fieret, quod erat de jure faciendum. Eodem tempore conventus Cantuariensis elegerunt Johannem, priorem suum, in archiepiscopum et pastorem animarum suarum, qui, cum esset regi præsentatus et ab eo receptus, profectus est Romam, ut electionem rite factam impetraret a sede apostolica confirmari.

Visio de rege Richardo valde laudabilis.

Bishop of Rochester's vision concerning Richard I.

Sub eisdem diebus Henricus, Roffensis episcopus, cum in sabbato, quo cantatur 'Sitientes venite ad aquas,' apud Sidingeburniam, præsente electo Cantuariensi, ordines celebrasset solennes, adstante clero et populo, fiducialiter protestatus est dicens, 'Gaudete omnes in Domino fratres, qui hic præsentes estis, scientes indubitanter, quod nuper uno et eodem die exierunt de purgatorio rex quondam Anglorum Richardus et Stephanus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, cum uno capellano ejusdem archiepiscopi, ad conspectum divinæ majestatis, et eo die non nisi tres illi de locis pœnalibus exierunt; et ut his dictis meis fidem adhibeatis plenissimam et certam, quia vel mihi vel alii tertia jam vice hoc per visionem revelatum est ita manifeste, quod ab animo meo omnis dubitationis ambiguitas removetur.' Et, quoniam hic mentio facta est de magnifico rege Richardo, unum de actibus ejus ad ædificationem audientium referre curabo.

Quomodo rex Richardus vidit Crucifixi imaginem contra militem eam adorantem caput inclinare.

Legend concerning the same king.

Regnante dicto rege Richardo, miles quidam de regno Angliæ in Nova degens Foresta, qui

longo usu bestias regis furtive venari consueverat, quadam vice interceptus est cum venatione furata et per judicium curiæ ipsius regis in exilium relegatus. Hanc enim legem de venatione furto sublata rex ille clementissimus in hoc temperavit, quod cum [apud] reges antecessores ejus, si quilibet in fraude venationis deprehensi fuissent, eruebantur oculi eorum, abscindebantur virilia, manusque cum pedibus truncabantur; sed tale judicium [1]pio regi Richardo visum est nimis inhumanum, ut homines ad imaginem Dei creati, pro feris, quæ juxta legem naturalem generaliter omnibus sunt concessæ, de vita vel membris periclitarentur, ut id faciendo feris ac bestiis deterior videretur. Hoc enim solummodo sufficiebat ei, ut quilibet in tali culpa deprehensus[2] vel Angliam abjuraret vel pœnam carceralem subiret, salvis omnibus vita et membris. Miles igitur, ut dictum est, exulatus coactus est cum uxore et liberis panem inter extraneos mendicare, qui prius exquisitis deliciis fruebatur. Tandem in se reversus miles cogitavit a rege misericordiam implorare, ut in hæreditate sublata restitui mereretur, et veniens ad regem in Normannia invenit eum summo mane in quadam ecclesia, ut missam audiret. Et miles ecclesiam tremens intravit, non ausus in regem oculos erigere, quia, cum esset visu quasi speciosissimus hominum, quandoque tamen terribilis videbatur; et ante imaginem Crucifixi, quæ in ecclesia erat, se conferens et genuflexiones cum lachrymis multoties iterans, Crucifixum humiliter precabatur, ut per ineffabilem clementiam suam gratiam sibi regis misericorditer reconciliaret, qua hæreditatem recuperaret amissam. Rex autem,

A.D. 1232. Legend concerning Richard I.

[1] *Pio.*] In MS. 'pro.'

[2] *Deprehensus.*] 'Deprehensi' in MS.

A.D. 1232. Legend concerning Richard I.

militem intuens sollicite orantem cum lachrymis et devotione non ficta, vidit de illo rem mirabilem et relatione condignam; nam quotiescunque miles, quem de familia sua non esse deprehendit, genua flexit, ut imaginem adoraret, imago e contra Crucifixi ad genuflexiones ejus caput et collum satis humiliter inclinavit, et regem hoc cum stupore sæpius conspicantem in admirationem commovit. Rex autem statim, officio missæ completo, fecit militem ad suum accersiri colloquium, et diligenter sciscitabatur ab eo quis et unde fuisset. At ille cum timore regi respondens dixit, 'Domine,' inquit, 'homo vester ligius sum, sicut omnes antecessores mei fuerunt;' et narrationem incipiens retulit coram rege quo ordine cum venatione deprehensus exhæredatus fuerat et cum sua familia exulatus. Dixit ergo rex ad militem, 'Fecistine aliquando in vita tua boni aliquid ad sanctæ crucis reverentiam et honorem?' At miles de actibus suis præteritis sollicite cogitans regi rem, quam egerat ob Crucifixi reverentiam, enarravit.

Quomodo miles inimico pepercit pro reverentia Crucifixi.

Legend concerning Richard I.

'Pater meus,' inquit, 'et alius quidam miles villam quandam inter se dimidiabant, quam jure hæreditario possidebant; et, cum pater meus in omnibus divitiis abundaret, alius e contra miles semper pauper erat et egenus, contra patrem meum invidia ductus paratis insidiis interfecit eum. Ego autem, qui tunc puer eram, cum annos viriles attigissem et in hæreditate paterna confirmatus fuissem, cogitavi immutabiliter in ultionem patris mei militem illum interficere; sed ille super his præmunitus per annos plurimos ab insidiis, quas ei studiose paraveram, se cal-

lide custodivit. Tandem cum in die Parasceues, qua crucem subiit Christus Jesus pro salute mundi, ad ecclesiam properarem servitium auditurus, vidi inimicum præcedere me, ut similiter ad ecclesiam iret. Festinavi post tergum ejus, ut eum interficerem gladio educto; sed ille casu retro respiciens, cum me rapido cursu advenire conspiceret, ad crucem quandam, quæ secus viam stabat, confugit, quia nimia senectute gravatus se defendere non valebat. Et cum illum, qui lignum crucis inter brachia tenebat amplexum, erecto gladio vellem perimere et cerebrum effundere, adjuravit me per nomen Crucifixi illius, qui in ligno crucis eo die pro totius mundi salute pependit, ne eum interficerem, votum faciens et firmiter promittens, quod pro anima patris mei, quem occidit, capellanum unum assignaret in perpetuum, qui missam diebus singulis celebraret. Ego autem senem illum videns lachrymantem, commotus sum ad pietatem, et sic, ob amorem et reverentiam Illius, qui pro salute mea et omnium crucem ascendit et eam suo sanguine sanctissimo consecravit, mortem patris mei militi condonavi.' Tunc rex militi respondens ait, 'Sapienter,' inquit, 'egisti, quia Crucifixus ille tibi nunc vicem pro vice sufficienter persolvit;' et advocans episcopos et barones, qui aderant, revelavit audientibus cunctis visionem, quam rex ipse solus viderat, quomodo, scilicet, imago Crucifixi ad singulas militis genuflexiones caput cum collo humiliter inclinavit. Et rex continuo ad se vocans cancellarium suum præcepit, ut per literas suas patentes vicecomiti, quem miles sibi nominaret, daret in mandatis, quatenus, visis literis, militi terram suam redderet totam in eo statu quo illam recepit quando illum a patria exulavit.

A.D. 1232. Legend concerning Richard I.

De patientia regis in persecutionibus.

A.D. 1232. Piety of Richard I.

Nec illud de virtutibus magnifici regis loquentes credimus negligendum, quod statim coronatus in regem rectam semper justitiam cunctis exhibuit, pro munere nunquam judicium subverti permisit. Episcopatus et abbatias vacantes continuo et absque venalitate viris canonice electis concessit, nec eas aliquando sub laicorum custodia deputavit; prælatos omnes ordinatos, et præcipue viros religiosos, honoravit, et pro reverentia Jesu Christi eos offendere adeo metuit, ut tempore quodam, cum ad mandatum domini papæ omnes prælati totius regni coram rege congregati fuissent, ut partem vicesimam mobilium suorum ad subventionem terræ sanctæ concederent, et seorsum sederent super præfato negotio colloquentes, rex ait Galfrido filio-Petri et Willelmo Briwerre, qui apud pedes ejus sedebant, voce demissa, 'Videtis prælatos illos, qui ibi sedent?' 'Videmus, domine,' inquiunt; et rex ad eos, 'Si scirent,' inquit, 'quomodo eos ob reverentiam Dei timeo, et quam invite offenderem illos, ipsi me conculcarent quemadmodum conculcatur calceamentum vetus et dejectum.' Notandum est etiam, quomodo regni nuper adepti delicias pro amore Regis æterni relinquens thesauros patris sui ac proprios in obsequio Crucifixi et terræ sanctæ liberatione effundere curavit, et quam potenter terram promissionis totam, præter civitatem sanctam Hierusalem, de manibus inimicorum crucis extorsit. Ubi deficientibus sibi thesauris, terram sub treugis triennalibus constituens, a Salaadino impetravit, ut sacerdos quidam, usque ad treugas elapsas, apud Dominicum sepulchrum de cruce missam diebus singulis ad regis stipendia celebraret;

et in hunc modum recedens rex ad terminum treugarum resumptis viribus thesaurisque multiplicatis redire disposuit, relictis regno et rebus omnibus, quibus dominabatur in partibus occidentis, ut in sancta civitate Hierusalem in regem coronatus prælia domini Sabaoth præliaretur et agmina præiret, et crucis inimicos, dum viveret, debellaret. Sed humani generis inimicus, qui bonis semper operibus invidet et prosperitatibus populi Christiani, excitavit contra regem devotum ducem Austriæ et imperatorem Romanum, qui illi revertenti paraverunt insidias; captus est ab hostibus, et, velut bos esset vel asinus, venditus est imperatori Romano. Incarceratus autem, et secus quam deceret tantum virum malitiose tractatus, ad redemptionem gravissimam est compulsus. Rex præterea Francorum, magnifici regis pium præpediens propositum, terras ejus, dum esset in servitio crucis, invasit; et sic undique ab inimicis præventus martyrium, quod nondum susceperat in corpore, sicut proposuerat, in terra promissionis, servavit in mente, qui desiderium habuit revertendi et mori in obsequio crucis. Accessit ad cumulum adhuc tentationum ejusdem regis, quod, dum esset in obsequio crucis, comes Johannes, frater ejus, moliebatur Angliam subjugare, castella quædam obsidendo et fratri suo guerram movendo, sed laudabili fidelitate gentis Anglorum propositum illius frivolum exstitit et inaniter attentatum. O admiranda magnifici regis constantia! quæ nunquam in adversis potuit frangi, sicut nec in prosperis extolli, sed omnibus semper hilarem exhibens vultum nunquam in rege apparuit diffidentiæ signum. Hæc et his similia virtutum opera regem nostrum Richardum coram summo Deo reddiderant gloriosum,

A.D. 1232. Piety of Richard I.

A.D. 1232. Piety of Richard I.

unde nunc merito, cum venisset tempus miserendi Dei, de locis, ut credimus, pœnalibus translatus est ad regna sine fine mansura, ubi militi reposita est a rege Christo, cui fideliter servivit, corona justitiæ, quam repromisit Deus diligentibus se. Gaudent de ejus societate sancti illi, quorum sanctas redemit reliquias a Salaadino in terra promissionis pro quinquaginta duobus bizantiorum millibus, pacto interposito cum eisdem sanctis, ut apud Deum in suprema necessitate sua suis eum intercessionibus adjuvarent. Erant enim reliquiæ memoratæ in quatuor eburneis collectæ capsellis, tempore captionis terræ sanctæ ac crucis reverendæ ab infidelibus Saracenis, per totam Judæam et Galilæam, et erant singulæ capsellæ tantæ magnitudinis ac ponderositatis, ut vix a quatuor hominibus portarentur. Sed hæc superius in gestis hujus regis Richardi latius referuntur.

De distractione frugum clericorum Romanorum.

Riots against the Italian clergy.

Eodem anno distracta sunt horrea Romanorum per totam fere Angliam, a viris quibusdam armatis et adhuc [1]ignotis, bonis conditionibus et ad commodum multorum; et opus, licet temerarium, in solennitate Paschali inchoantes, sine contradictione et libere, quod inceperant, compleverunt. Largas eleemosynas advenientibus distribuebant egenis, et quandoque nummos inter pauperes seminantes eos colligere hortabantur. Delituerunt clerici Romani in abbatiis, de injuriis sibi illatis murmurare non audentes, quia elegerunt potius res suas amittere, quam puniri sententia capitali. Erant autem hujus temeritatis auctores viri quasi quater viginti et

[1] *Ignotis.*] 'Per quosdam satellites blada Romanorum violenter excussa venderentur;' Chron. Dunst. p. 207.

quandoque minus, qui, magistrum habentes Wil- A.D. 1232.
lelmum quendam, [1]cognomento Wither, ejus per omnia obtemperabant præceptis. Sed cum post modicum tempus hæc, quæ facta fuerant, ad summi pontificis notitiam pervenerunt, indignatus est valde, et misit [2]literas ad regem Anglorum, mordaces nimis et increpatorias, quod tales in regno suo fieri permisit rapinas viris ecclesiasticis, non habens respectum ad sacramenta, quæ juraverat tempore coronationis suæ, non solum de pace ecclesiæ manutenenda, verum etiam de recta justitia tam clericis quam laicis conservanda. Mandavit igitur in eisdem literis regi, sub pœna excommunicationis et interdicti firmiter præcipiens, quatenus, diligenti facta inquisitione, si quos hujus violentiæ inveniret auctores, tam graviter puniret obnoxios, ut ex pœna illorum cæteris metum incuteret et terrorem. Dedit etiam Petro, Wintoniensi episcopo, et abbati sancti Eadmundi per literas in mandatis, ut in australi parte Angliæ, facta inquisitione diligenti, quoscumque hujus rei invenirent culpabiles, tamdiu denuntiarent eos excommunicatos quousque Romam venirent a sede apostolica absolvendi; similiter in parte regni aquilonari archiepiscopo Eboracensi, episcopo Dunelmensi et Johanni, natione Romano et Eboraci canonico, idem papa, eadem inquisitione commissa, præcepit, ut illius violentiæ transgressores Romam mitteret absolvendos, appellatione non obstante.

[1] *Cognomento Wither.*] His real name, as it appears below, was Robert de Twenge. In the Fine Rolls, 29 Hen. III., is a writ to the sheriff of Yorkshire, ordering him to make a return of the value of all the land and cattle belonging to Robert de Twenge in his bailiwick.

[2] *Literas.*] Rymer, tom. i. p. 204; see above, p. 232, *note*.

De inquisitione facta super distractione præfata.

A.D. 1232. Inquiry instituted by command of the pope.

Facta igitur inquisitione de violentia memorata, tam a rege quam ab episcopis et exsecutoribus prædictis, et sacramento mediante cum examinationibus et testibus productis, inventi sunt multi transgressores, quidam de facto, quidam de consensu, quorum nonnulli episcopi erant et clerici regis, cum quibusdam archidiaconis ac decanis, militibus etiam et laicis multis. Quidam vero vicecomites et eorum præpositi et ministri pro eodem excessu, rege jubente, capti sunt et incarcerati, et alii præ timore sibi per fugam consulentes a quærentibus non fuerunt inventi. Principalis autem domini regis justiciarius Hubertus de Burgo ex hoc arguitur fuisse transgressor, quod prædonibus illis tam literas regis patentes quam proprias exhibuerat, ne quis eos de præfata violentia præpediret. Venit præterea ad regem inter cæteros Robertus de Tuinge, miles strenuus, qui aliis consentientibus fruges Romanorum vendiderat et Willelmum Wither se fecerat appellari, quinque servientes armatos et hujus violentiæ auctores circumduxerat, protestans manifeste, quod in odium Romanorum et causa justæ ultionis transgressus fuerat, qui per sententiam Romani pontificis et fraude manifesta nitebantur eum ab unica, quam habuit, ecclesia spoliare; addidit etiam, quod maluit ad tempus injuste excommunicari, quam a suo beneficio sine judicio spoliari. Tunc rex et exsecutores præfati militi dederunt consilium, ut, qui in canonem latæ sententiæ inciderat, Romam absolvendus properaret, et jus suum coram domino papa protestaretur et quod ecclesiam juste pariter et canonice possidebat; dedit etiam ei rex literas ad papam testimoniales de jure suo, de-

precans obnixe, ut militem illius intuitu ex- A.D. 1232.
audiret.

Quomodo electio prioris Cantuariensis Romæ fuerit reprobata.

Venit eodem tempore Romam prior Johannes, electus Cantuariensis, in hebdomada Pentecostes, et, cum literas suæ electionis domino papæ exhibuisset, præcepit magistro Johanni de [1]Columna et aliis quibusdam cardinalibus, ut examinaret illum, si dignus esset ad culmen hujusmodi promoveri; qui, cum examinassent per triduum electum illum in decem et novem, ut dicitur, articulis diligenter, protestati sunt coram domino papa, se causam in ipso legitimæ recusationis non invenisse. Veruntamen visum est domino papæ in electo memorato, quod nimis esset senex et simplex et ad tantam insufficiens dignitatem; et cum persuasisset ei, ut cederet, electus humiliter factæ electioni renuntiavit et licentiam petiit ad propria revertendi. Tunc papa, concessa licentia monachis, ipsis præcepit ut alium talem eligerent, cui onus suum communicare et curam posset committere pastoralem. Election of the prior of Canterbury refused by the pope.

Quod rex Anglorum quosdam ministros suos a suis removit officiis.

Circa dies istos Loelinus, princeps Wallensium, fines baronum Angliæ ingressus cœpit, more solito, vacare incendiis ac rapinis. Accesserunt itaque ad regem Anglorum Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, et alii consiliarii ejusdem regis, dicentes, magnum coronæ suæ fore scandalum, quod Wallenses, nullius momenti latrones, Complaints against the justiciary.

[1] *Columna.*] The MS. reads erroneously 'Columba.'

A.D. 1232. annis singulis terras suas et baronum suorum impune pervagantes et incendio cuncta depopulantes nihil relinquunt intactum; quibus rex respondit, 'Audivi,' inquit, 'a thesaurariis meis, quod redditus omnes de scaccario meo vix mihi sufficiunt ad simplicem victum et vestitum et eleemosynas[1] consuetas, unde paupertas non permittit, ut bellicas expediam actiones. Tunc consiliarii regi responderunt, 'Si pauper es,' inquiunt, 'tibi imputes, qui honores et custodias ac dignitates vacantes ita in alios transfers et a fisco alienas, quod nec in divitiis auri vel argenti, sed solo nomine, rex debeas appellari; nam antecessores vestri, reges magnifici et in omni divitiarum gloria ditissimi, non aliunde, sed ex regni exitibus et emolumentis, thesauros impretiabiles congesserunt.' At rex ab eis instructus, quos nominatim exprimere nefas esset, et contumeliis provocatus, cœpit a vicecomitibus et ballivis aliisque ministris suis de redditibus et rebus omnibus ad fisci commodum spectantibus ratiocinium exigere, et quoslibet de fraude convictos a suis officiis deponens exegit ab eis pecuniam suam etiam cum usuris, et tenens coarctabat eos, donec redderent debitum universum. Ranulphum etiam, cognomento Britannum, cameræ suæ thesaurarium, ab officio deponens cepit ab illo mille libras argenti, et loco illius substituit Petrum de [2]Rivallis, genere Pictavensem. Et sic undique loculos rex jejunos in brevi, licet non plena gravidos crapula, reparavit.

[1] *Eleemosynas consuetas.*] It appears from the Pipe Rolls, that there were yearly pensions to several monasteries; Tyr., ii. p. 874.

[2] *Rivallis.*] 'Orivallis' in MS., but marked for correction.

Quod rex ab Huberto justiciario ratiocinium exegit.

Per[1] idem tempus rex, per consilium Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, Hubertum de Burgo, pro-to-justiciarium regni, ab officio suo removit, et Stephanum de Segrave, militem, solo nomine subrogavit, quarto kalendas Augusti; et post dies paucos rex, contra Hubertum nuper depositum perturbatus, exegit instanter ab eo ratiocinium de thesauris suis ad scaccarium suum redditis, et de debitis, quæ ei debebantur de tempore patris sui et de tempore suo. Item exegit de dominicis suis rationem, de quibus fuit de possessione die obitus Willelmi comitis Pembroc, tunc justiciarii et marescalli sui, qui ea teneant et habeant in Anglia, Wallia, Hibernia et Pictavia; item de libertatibus, quas habuit tunc temporis in forestis, warennis, comitatibus et aliis locis, qualiter custoditæ sint vel alienatæ; item de quintadecima et sextadecima et aliis redditis, tam ad scaccarium suum, quam ad Novum Templum Londoniarum et alibi. Item de prisis factis pro jure suo relaxando, tam in terris quam in mobilibus; item de ipsis, quæ ipse rex amisit per negligentiam Huberti; item de vastis factis sine commodo ipsius regis, tam per guerram quam alio modo; item de libertatibus, quibus idem Hubertus usus est in terris sibi datis, et episcopatibus et custodiis, sine warranto, quæ pertinent ad dominum regem; item de injuriis et damnis illatis, et clericis Romanis et Italicis, et nuntiis domini papæ, contra voluntatem domini regis, per auctoritatem ipsius Huberti tunc justiciarii, qui nullum consilium voluit apponere ut illa corrigerentur, quod fa-

A.D. 1232. The justiciary removed from his office.

[1] *Per idem tempus.*] Waverl. Annal. p. 194; Chron. Dunst. p. 208.

A.D. 1232. cere tenebatur ratione officii sui ad justiciarium pertinentis; item de pace regis, qualiter sit custodita, tam versus homines terræ suæ Angliæ, Hiberniæ, Wasconiæ et Pictaviæ, quam alios extraneos; item de scutagiis, carrucagiis, donis et xeniis, sive custodiarum exitibus, spectantibus ad coronam, quid inde actum sit; item de maritagiis, quæ rex Johannes dimisit in custodia ipsius in die quo obiit, et de aliis maritagiis sibi traditis tempore suo. Ad hæc respondit Hubertus, quod chartam habuit patris sui, per quam ipsum absolvit ab omni ratiocinio de rebus perceptis et percipiendis de thesauris suis, qui ejus fidelitatem in tantum expertus fuerat, quod noluit ab eo ratiocinium audire. Tunc dixit Petrus, Wintoniensis antistes, quod talis charta post obitum regis Johannis non habebat vigorem; unde ad hunc regem non pertinere proposuit de charta patris sui, quin rationem exigat de prædictis. Hæc sunt quasi levia quædam, de quibus rex rationem ab Huberto exegit; sed sequuntur gravia plura, in quibus idem Hubertus arguitur quasi de crimine læsæ majestatis, quæ sunt hæc;

De quibusdam criminibus a rege Huberto justiciario objectis.

Charges against Hubert de Burgh.

Proposuit[1] contra Hubertum idem rex, quod, cum nuntios solennes misisset ad ducem Austriæ, filiam ejus petens in uxorem, scripsit eidem duci Hubertus per literas in præjudicium ipsius regis et regni, dissuadens ne illi filiam suam matrimonio copularet. Item proposuit, quod, cum militarem expeditionem duxisset ad partes trans-

[1] *Proposuit contra Hubertum.*] Compare the charges which were afterwards brought against him, as recorded by Paris in the Additamenta, p. 149.

marinas, ut terras revocaret amissas, idem Hubertus dissuasit ne rex Normanniam intraret hostiliter vel in alias terras ad jus suum spectantes; unde thesaurum suum inaniter consumpsit ibidem, et magnates illi, qui cum ipso erant. Item arguit eum rex, quod filiam regis Scotorum, quam rex Johannes tradidit illi in custodiam, ut eam sibi matrimonio sociaret, ipse proditiose concubuit cum ea et sub fornicatione liberos generavit ex illa nobilemque puellam prostituit, et cum spe regni Scotorum, si fratrem superviveret, eam sibi subtraxit. Dixit etiam rex, quod lapidem quendam pretiosum, qui talem habuit virtutem, quod nulli, qui eum portaret in bello, vinci potuisset, ipse de thesauro suo furtive gemmam sustulit, et eam Loelino inimico suo, regi Walliæ, proditiose transmisit. Item ei imposuit, quod per literas, quas Loelino principi Walliarum transmiserat, suspensus erat ut latro vir nobilis, Willelmus de Brausia, et proditiose peremptus. Hæc omnia, sive in veritate, sive malitiosa mendacitate, sunt domino regi ab æmulis præfati Huberti suggesta, quæ rex instantia vehementi ab eodem Huberto exegit sibi, juxta curiæ suæ judicium, emendari. Tunc Hubertus in arcto positus, cum aliud remedium non haberet, postulavit inducias deliberandi super præmissis, asserens, res magnas esse et arduas, quas rex proposuit contra ipsum; et sic, induciis vix a rege commoto concessis usque ad exaltationem sanctæ Crucis, Hubertus nimis perterritus ad Meretoniæ prioratum ab urbe Londoniarum divertit. Sic Hubertus, qui prius, ob regis amorem et regni defensionem, omnium Angliæ magnatum in se provocaverat odium, nunc a rege desertus, absque amicis, fit solus et omni solatio destitutus; solus Lucas, Dublinensis ar-

A.D. 1232. Charges against Hubert de Burgh.

A.D. 1232. chiepiscopus, instantissimis precibus et lachrymis rogavit regem pro eo, sed non potuit in tantis excessibus exaudiri.

De quibusdam enormibus, quæ justiciario objiciebantur.

Charges against Hubert de Burgh.

Cumque vidissent multi, quod favor principis contra Hubertum, quem prius quasi singulariter dilexerat, fuerat permutatus in odium, insurrexerunt ei qui oderunt eum, multa enormia ei imponentes. Dixerunt enim quidam in eum, quod duos nobiles viros, Willelmum comitem Saresbiriensem, et Willelmum Marescallum, comitem Penbroc, veneno procuravit necari, et simili scelere Falcasium atque Richardum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, interfecit. Cives vero Londonienses coram rege querimoniam proposuerunt, quod Hubertus sæpe dictus Constantinum concivem suum fecerat sine judicio et injuste suspendi, de quo excessu postulant sibi justitiam exhiberi; unde factum est, quod rex fecit per civitatem Londoniarum communi edicto proclamare, ut omnes, qui habebant querelam contra Hubertum de quacumque injuria, venirent ad regem justitiam illico recepturi. At Hubertus, cum talia cognovisset, ad ecclesiam Meritoniæ fugit inter canonicos pavidus delitescens. Eodem anno, tempore autumnali, electus est magister [1] Johannes, cognomento Blundus, clericus, apud Oxoniam in theologia studens, in archiepiscopum Can-

[1] *Johannes, cognomento Blundus.*] He was refused consecration to the see of Canterbury, on the plea that he held against the canons two benefices, and had received money from the bishop of Winchester both before and after his election; see below, p. 267. 'Verior tamen causa fuit, quod maxime fovebat partes regis Johannis, cum utriusque gladii dominium sibi vindicaret;' Wood, Hist. Oxon. 1674, i. p. 87. According to Godwin, his Christian name was Richard; who states that he was afterwards, in 1245, promoted to the see of Exeter.

tuariensem ; qui a rege susceptus cum monachis quibusdam Cantuariensibus Romam profectus est, ut electionem suam confirmari a sede apostolica impetraret. A.D. 1232.

De quadragesima regi concessa, et quomodo Hubertus de [Burgo] ad Mertonam fugit.

A tax of a fortieth on all moveables granted.

Convenerunt tempestate eadem apud Lamheiam ad colloquium, in exaltatione sanctæ Crucis, coram rege, episcopi et alii ecclesiarum prælati cum proceribus regni, ubi concessa est regi pro debitis, quibus comiti Britanniæ tenebatur astrictus, quadragesima pars rerum mobilium ab episcopis, abbatibus, prioribus, clericis et laicis, sicut ea habuerunt, frugibus congregatis, in autumno, anno regni ejusdem regis decimo sexto.

Hubert flies to Merton priory;

Hubertus quoque de Burgo, cui datus fuerat a rege terminus ille ad respondendum super articulis et exactionibus supradictis, iram regis nimis habens suspectam non ausus est comparere, suggestum enim ei fuerat, quod rex habuit consilium illum morte turpissima condemnare ; unde ad pacem ecclesiæ confugiens apud Meritonam inter canonicos delituit, donec sibi aura felicior arrideret. Sed tandem cum rex ei significasset, ut veniret ad curiam suam juri pariturus, nuntiavit regi, quod iram ejus habens suspectam ad ecclesiam confugerat, quæ ultimum remedium est omnibus injuriam patientibus, et quod inde non exiret, donec illius animum in melius cognosceret immutatum. Tunc rex in iram versus significavit per literas majori Londoniarum, jam hora instante vespertina, quatenus statim visis literis, conjunctis sibi universis civibus urbis, qui arma movere possent, iret ad Meritonam hostiliter, et Hubertum de Burgo vivum sibi seu mortuum præsentaret.

A.D. 1232. At major, signo communi pulsato, fecit convenire populum civitatis, et, coram eis regis literis perlectis, præcepit omnibus, ut convolarent ad arma et regium summo mane exsequerentur edictum. Cives autem, cum hujusmodi literas intellexissent, gavisi sunt valde, quia Hubertum mortali [1]odio perstringebant, et in crastino ante lucem exeuntes ab urbe ad viginti millia armatorum versus Meritonam vexilla moverunt et arma, ut mandatum regium prosequerentur effectu. Sed, dum hæc agerentur, suggestum fuit regi a comite Cestrensi, quod, si talem excitaret seditionem in vulgo irrationabili et fatuo, posset rex timere, ne seditionem semel inchoatam sedare non valeret cum vellet; et sic, mutato consilio, rex majori nuntiavit, ut promotum exercitum illico revocaret. At cives animo nimis consternati, reversi sunt in civitatem negotio imperfecto.

Quomodo Hubertus de Burgo de quadam capella extractus in turri Londoniensi retruditur.

takes refuge in Boisars church; Post hæc archiepiscopus Dublinensis multis precibus impetravit a rege inducias Huberto sæpe dicto usque ad octavas Epiphaniæ, ut tempus haberet deliberandi super exactionibus præmissis, quæ urgentissimæ fuerunt, ut, habita deliberatione, regi posset rationabiliter respondere et satisfacere competenter. Tunc Hubertus, accepta, ut credebat, securitate per literas regis patentes, iter arripuit ad sanctum Ead-

[1] *Odio perstringebant.*] Paris here adds, that some more prudent citizens, headed by Andrew Bukerel and John Travers, determined, before proceeding to extremities, to obtain the bishop of Winchester's advice as to what they should do. Accordingly they went to his palace, and, waking him 'a somno stupido,' sought his counsel; his answer was, that on either hand it was a bad business, ('durum hinc, dirum inde,') but that they must obey the king's orders.

mundum, ubi uxor ejus morabatur, et transiens per Essexiam hospitatus est in villa quadam, quæ ad jus pertinet episcopi Norwicensis, in domibus episcopi supradicti; quod factum cum regi relatum fuisset, ira vehementi incanduit, metuens, si Hubertus ita recederet, perturbationem machinaretur in regno; unde facti pœnitens misit post eum Godefridum de Crauecumbe, militem, cum trecentis armatis, præcipiens sub pœna suspensionis, quatenus illum captum reducerent et in turri Londoniensi vinctum incarcerarent. At illi cum festinatione profecti invenerunt Hubertum [1]in quadam capella hospitio suo vicina, crucem in una manu Dominicam et in altera corpus Domini bajulantem; erat enim præmunitus de adventu quærentium animam ejus, et surgens de stratu soporatus ad capellam nudus confugit. At Godefridus supradictus cum sociis armatis capellam ingressus præcepit ex ore regis, ut exiret de capella et veniret Londonias cum rege locuturus; sed cum Hubertus respondit, quod nullo modo exiret, Godefridus et ejus complices rapuerunt de manibus illius crucem et Dominicum corpus, et vinculis illum constringentes arctissimis equo imposuerunt, et ad turrim Londoniarum ipsum ducentes posuerunt in carcere compeditum. Quo facto, nuntiaverunt regi quod factum fuerat; et ille, qui pervigil eorum exspectabat adventum, lætus stratum petivit. A.D. 1232. is dragged from the altar;

Quomodo idem Hubertus reductus est ad capellam.

Mane autem facto, cum Rogerus, Londoniensis antistes, cognovisset quo ordine Hubertus extractus fuerat de capella, venit celer ad regem, by the interference of the bishop of London returned thither.

[1] *In quadam capella.*] According to the Dunst. Chron., the church of Boisars, p. 208.

A.D. 1232. Case of the justiciary.

increpans illum audacter, quod pacem sanctæ ecclesiæ violaverat, dixitque, quod, nisi ipsum cum festinatione a vinculis liberatum remitteret ad capellam, a qua erat violenter ejectus, ipse omnes hujus violentiæ auctores excommunicationis sententia innodaret. Rex autem, licet invitus, reatum suum intelligens remisit Hubertum ad capellam, et, ubi captus fuerat a militibus armatis, restituitur ab eisdem quinto kalendas Octobris ; quo facto, rex dedit vicecomitibus Hertfordiæ et Essexiæ in mandatis sub pœna suspensionis, quatenus in propriis personis et cum omnibus hominibus duorum comitatuum capellam obsidione vallarent, et ne Hubertus evaderet, vel a quoquam cibum acciperet, explorarent. At vicecomites præfati, sicut eis præceptum fuerat, ad locum venientes capellam cum domo episcopi, quæ prope erat, obsidentes, cinxerunt capellam et locum per gyrum fossato lato satis et alto, [1]decernentes ibi quadraginta dierum excubias observare. Et Hubertus hæc omnia æquanimiter ferens, puram habens conscientiam, ut dicebat, causam suam Domino commendabat; rogans jugiter divinam clementiam, quatenus illum ab instanti periculo liberaret, sicut ipse super omnia honorem regis semper dilexerat eatenus et salutem. Sed rex ipsius meritis male respondens, cui tanto servierat studio, quod regi soli sibi placere sufficiebat, nunc in tali statu constitutus est, quod rex omnibus generaliter prohibuit, ne quis pro eo rogaret vel de Huberto

[1] *Decernentes.*] 'Ubi, eo per quadraginta dies moram faciente, comitatus Essexiæ capellam obsedit, et ad modum castelli fossata circumfodit;' Chron. Dunst. p. 208. The reader will find an account of the pursuit and capture of the fallen justiciary in the record concerning him taken from the Patent Rolls; Rymer, i. p. 208.

in ejus præsentia faceret mentionem. Sed tamen A.D. 1232
Lucas, archiepiscopus Dublinensis, qui unicus ei erat amicus, regi pro eo cum lachrymis incessanter supplicabat, ut saltem quid sibi placeret de Huberto facere intimaret; cui rex respondisse fertur, ut ex multis eligeret unum, vel in æternum Angliam abjurare, vel perpetuum carcerem subire, vel palam se esse proditorem confiteri, vel se in regis ponere voluntate. Ad hæc respondit Hubertus, quod nullum horum eligeret articulorum, ut qui consilium regis nimis habebat suspectum, quia nihil se fecisse recolit tanta confusione dignum; veruntamen, ut domino suo regi satisfaciat, libenter ad tempus exiret a regno, sed illud non abjurabit. Morabatur autem postea Hubertus in capella præfata multis diebus et noctibus obsessus cum duobus servientibus, qui ei victualia ministrabant, donec ex præcepto regis subtracta ei fuerunt omnia cibariorum genera et servientes ejus de capella ejecti. Tunc Hubertus in arcto positus, cum fame perire sibi turpe videretur, sponte de capella exivit, offerens se vicecomitibus, qui illum observabant; dixit enim, se potius velle regis misericordiam experiri, quam fame detestanda perire. Tunc vinculis arctioribus constrinxerunt illum vicecomites sæpe dicti et equo illum imponentes duxerunt ad urbem Londoniarum, ubi, rege jubente, sub arcta custodia deputatur in turri compedibus mancipatus.

Surrenders himself to the sheriffs.

De collectione quadragesimæ rerum mobilium regi concessarum.

'Henricus,[1] Dei gratia rex Anglorum, Petro

Writ for collecting the tax on moveables.

[1] *Henricus.*] This writ is also upon record in the Tower, R. Col. 16 H. III. m. 2. *dors.* Tyrrell, ii. p. 877.

A.D. 1232. Writ for collecting the tax on moveables.

de Thaneo, Willelmo de Culeworthe et Adæ filio Willelmi, collectoribus quadragesimæ, salutem. Sciatis, quod archiepiscopi, episcopi, abbates, priores et clerici, terras habentes, quæ ad ecclesias suas non pertinent, comites, barones, milites, liberi homines et villani de regno nostro, concesserunt nobis in auxilium quadragesimam partem omnium mobilium suorum apparentium, sicut ea habuerunt in crastino sancti Matthæi anno regni nostri decimo sexto, videlicet, quod de bladis, carrucis, ovibus, vaccis, porcis, haraciis, equis carretariis et deputatis ad wainnagium in maneriis, exceptis bonis, quæ prædicti archiepiscopi, episcopi et aliæ personæ ecclesiasticæ habent de ecclesiis parochialibus et de ecclesiis præbendatis, et præbendis, et terris ad præbendas pertinentibus et ecclesias parochiales spectantibus. Provisum est generaliter a prædictis fidelibus nostris, quod prædicta quadragesima hoc modo assideatur et colligatur; quod, videlicet, de qualibet villa integra eligantur quatuor de melioribus et legalioribus hominibus, una cum præpositis singularum villarum, per quorum sacramentum quadragesima pars omnium mobilium prædictorum taxetur et assideatur super singulos in præsentia militum assessorum ad hoc assignatorum; et postea per sacramentum duorum legalium hominum earundem villarum inquiratur et assideatur quadragesima omnium mobilium, quæ prædicti quatuor homines et præpositi habent; et districte inbrevietur et aperte, de cujus vel de quorum baronia quælibet villa fuerit in parte vel in toto. Et, postquam quadragesima fuerit assisa et in scriptum redacta, rotulus omnium particularum de singulis villis et singulis comitatibus liberetur senescallo singulorum baronum, vel attornato ipsius senescalli, vel

ballivo libertatis, ubi aliquis libertatem habue- A.D. 1232.
rit, scilicet, quod baro vel dominus libertatis velit et possit prædictam quadragesimam colligere et pro ea habenda distringere; si vero non velit, vel non possit, vicecomites districtionem faciant prædictam, ita quod nil inde recipiant, sed tota quadragesima prædicta prædictis militibus assessoribus liberetur in majori et securiori villa singulorum comitatuum. Et de qualibet villa fiat summa tallia inter senescallum baronis, vel ejus attornatum, vel senescallos domini libertatis, et prædictos assessores. Et deponatur pecunia per eosdem assessores in aliquo loco tutiori ejusdem villæ, ita quod assessores habeant sigilla sua et seras et claves suas super pecuniam prædictam, et vicecomites similiter sigilla sua et seras et claves suas. Et assessores, statim ex quo quadragesima assisa fuerit per ipsos, mittant rotulos suos ad scaccarium de toto itinere suo; et similiter, ex quo dicta pecunia ab eis collecta fuerit, mittant rotulos suos ad scaccarium de recepta sua, et prædicta pecunia reservetur in locis ubi deposita fuit, donec ad mandatum nostrum deferatur usque ad Novum Templum Londoniarum. Nihil autem capietur ab aliquo homine nomine quadragesimæ, qui non habuerit de hujusmodi bonis mobilibus ad valentiam quadraginta denariorum ad minus. Ad prædictam siquidem quadragesimam assidendam in comitatu Hertfordiæ assignavimus vos, et mandavimus vicecomiti nostro de Hertforde, quod singulas villatas comitatus sui certis diebus et locis, quos ei scire facietis, ad mandatum nostrum coram vobis venire faciat, et in omnibus, quæ ad dictum negotium pertinent, vobis intendant et obediant. Valete.'

De morte Ranulphi, comitis Cestriæ.

A.D. 1232. Death of Ralph, earl of Chester.

Eodem tempore Ranulphus, comes Cestrensis et Lincolniensis, apud Walingeford [1]diem clausit extremum quinto kalendas Novembris, cujus corpus delatum est apud Cestriam tumulandum. Successit ei in comitatum Cestrensem [2]Johannes nepos ejus ex sorore sua, quem genuit comes David, frater Willelmi, regis Scotorum; [3]alius autem nepos ejus ex sorore secunda Lincolniæ obtinuit comitatum et de barone comes effectus est; comes quoque Arundel, alius nepos ejus, quingentas libratas terræ suscepit.

Circa hos quoque dies, instante festo beati Martini, suggestum fuit Anglorum regi, quod Hubertus, quondam justiciarius, apud Novum Templum habuit thesaurum non modicum sub eorundem Templariorum custodia deputatum. At rex magistrum Templi ad suum vocans colloquium sciscitabatur districtius ab eo si ita fuisset; at ille, non ausus regi veritatem negare, confessus est [quod] habebat pecuniam sibi ac fratribus suis fideliter commendatam, sed quantitatem et numerum penitus ignorabant. Tunc rex cum minis prædictam a fratribus exegit, ut pecuniam illam incontinenti sibi redderent, asserens eam de thesauro suo dolo fuisse subtractam; cui responderunt fratres, quod nulli pecuniam traderent sibi in fide commissam absque

[1] *Diem clausit extremum.*] Paris adds, that, when Hubert heard that one of his greatest enemies was dead, he exclaimed, 'Propitietur ei Dominus! Ille homo meus fuit de manibus suis, nec tamen unquam mihi profuit, ubi obesse potuit.'

[2] *Johannes.*] John le Scot, son of David earl of Huntingdon, brother of William the Lion, king of Scotland, by Maud, sister and heir of the last earl. Nicolas, Synops. of the Peerage.

[3] *Alius . . . nepos.*] John de Lacy; he married Margaret, daughter and heir of Robert de Quincy, earl of Winchester, by Hawise, fourth sister and co-heir of the earl of Chester; *ibid.*

illius licentia, qui illam in Templo commenda- A.D. 1232.
verat reservandam. At rex, quia pecunia memorata sub protectione ecclesiæ fuerat deputata, non habuit consilium ut violentiam ingereret; unde thesaurarium curiæ suæ, cum justiciariis suis de scaccario, misit ad Hubertum, qui jam tunc erat in turri Londinensi compeditus, ut pecuniam exigerent ab eo regi ex integro assignandam. Nuntii autem prædicti cum Huberto ex parte regis talia præsentassent, respondit continuo, quod seipsum et sua omnia regis submitteret voluntati. Præcepit ergo, ut fratres militiæ Templi claves omnes ex parte sua domino suo regi præsentarent, ut de rebus ibi deputatis suam faceret voluntatem; quod cum factum fuisset, jussit rex pecuniam illam fideliter numeratam in suo reponi thesauro, et rerum omnium inventarum summam in scriptum redigi et suæ præsentiæ exhiberi. Invenerunt autem clerici regis et thesaurarius cum eis in illo deposito octo millia libras argenti optimæ monetæ, septies viginti cupas aureas et argenteas bene deauratas, cum tanta pretiosorum lapidum ac nobilitate gemmarum, quod pretium rerum omnium inventarum, ut dicitur, excedebant. His itaque divulgatis, venerunt ad regem quidam, qui Hubertum persequi non cessabant, accusantes eum et dicentes, quod nunc de furto convictus et fraude dignus erat morte turpissima condemnari; quibus rex respondit, 'Hubertus a pueritia prius avunculo meo regi Richardo, et postea regi Johanni patri meo, satis servivit fideliter, ut audivi, qui, si contra me male egerit, nunquam per me iniqua morte morietur; malo enim rex fatuus reputari ac remissus, quam crudelis et tyrannus;' et, his dictis, concessit Huberto omnes terras, quas ex dono patris sui vel ex emptione

A.D. 1232. possidebat, ut inde sibi ac suis necessaria provideret. Et paulo post susceperunt Hubertum sub fidejussione Richardus comes, frater regis, Willelmus comes Warenniæ, Richardus comes Marescallus et [1]Willelmus comes de Ferrariis, et missus a rege ad castellum de Divisis traditus est sub custodia quatuor militum prædictorum comitum, ut sub libera custodia servaretur ibidem. Eodem anno, in crastino sancti Martini, audita sunt tonitrua horribilia, quæ vicissim per dies quindecim continuata multos terruerunt, et præcipue cives Londonienses, qui hanc pestem adeo habent familiarem, quod, si usquam sit in Anglia, ibi non desit; secutum est autem in regno Anglorum inter regem et barones miserabile dissidium, sicut sequens historia declarabit.

De visitatione facta super viros cujuscumque religionis per orbem universum.

The pope's bull for a general visitation of monasteries.

Hoc quoque anno papa Gregorius constituit visitatores super viros religiosos per orbem generaliter universum Christi nomine insignitum sub hac forma; 'Gregorius episcopus, venerabilibus fratribus suffraganeis ecclesiæ Cantuariensis, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Egressus a facie Dei Sathan, ad fortia manum mittens, de sua calliditate confisus vitiorum laqueis irretire molitur electos in sortem Dominicam evocatos, majores ibi parans ille tortuosus insidiator insidias, ubi graviores conspexerit corruptelas. Sane cum frequenter ad nostram audientiam pervenisset, quod monasteria Cantuariensis provinciæ in spiritualibus enormiter et tempora-

[1] *Willelmus comes de Ferrariis.*] The writ above alluded to, for Lord Ferrers, has John, earl of Lincoln and constable of Chester; Rym. i. p. 208.

libus per malitiam et incuriam in eis habitantium sunt collapsa, nos culpas eorum nolentes ulterius sub dissimulatione transire, ne, si eas dimiserimus incorrectas, ipsas nostras efficere videamur, monasteriis illis, quæ ad Romanam ecclesiam nullo noscuntur medio pertinere, in eadem provinciâ constitutis, visitatores, reformatores et correctores, tam in capite quam in membris, deputavimus speciales; plenaria sibi potestate concessa, ut visitantes eadem monasteria vice nostra corrigant et reforment, quæ in ipsis correctionis et reformationis officio noverint indigere, constitutionibus vel correctionibus aliis in provinciali capitulo rite factis in suo robore nihilominus duraturis. Licet autem nobis in plenitudinem potestatis assumptis cura cunctorum immineat generalis; quia tamen vos, qui vocati estis in partem sollicitudinis, super grege vobis commisso specialiter decet esse sollicitos et attentos, ne ovis morbida pereat; universitatem vestram monemus et hortamur, in virtute obedientiæ districte vobis præcipiendo mandantes, quatenus singuli vestrum, tam in civitatibus quam in diocesibus vestris, per vos ipsos, aut per viros religiosos, qui experimento rerum in hujusmodi visitationibus sunt instructi, loca monachorum, monialium et canonicorum regularium, necnon secularium clericorum, vobis subjecta visitare curetis, tam auctoritate nostra quam vestra generaliter universa reformantes et corrigentes in capite et membris, omni gratia et timore postpositis, in eisdem quæ reformanda noveritis et etiam corrigenda, salvis his, quæ circa religiosos in provinciali capitulo provide sunt statuta juxta constitutionem concilii generalis, contradictores per censuram ecclesiasticam, appellatione postposita, compescendo; præcep-

A.D. 1232. The pope's bull for the visitation of monasteries.

A.D. 1232. tum nostrum taliter impleturi, quod ultionum Deus in illo tremendo judicio, qui unicuique juxta opera sua reddet, de manibus vestris non requirat sanguinem eorundem, et nos ad id limam correctionis apostolicæ apponere non cogamur. Data Spoleti, quinto idus Junii, pontificatus nostri anno sexto.'

De visitatione facienda super ecclesias exemptas.

Strictness of the visitation. Aliis autem ecclesiis et viris religiosis, qui immediate ad Romanam spectabant ecclesiam, non episcopos, sed abbates, ordinis Cisterciensis maxime et Præmonstratensis, visitatores dedit, viros scilicet indiscretos et [1]nimis asperos, qui in hac visitatione ita insolenter et immisericorditer processerunt, quod in pluribus monasteriis rationis metas excedentes compulerunt multos ad remedium appellationis confugere; qui Romam profecti, post multas pecuniæ effusiones et labores non modicos, visitatores alios impetrarunt. Et, ut tandem breviter dicatur, ista visitatio per orbem universum ad ordinis potius deformationem, quam reformationem, processit; dum omnes, qui in diversis orbis partibus unicam beati Benedicti secuti fuerant regulam, per novas constitutiones ita inveniantur ubique discordes, quod ex omnibus cœnobiis vel aliis virorum religiosorum ecclesiis vix duo habeantur in norma vivendi concordes. Verum abbas quidam Montis-belli, dum in hac visitatione procedere formidaret, consuluit dominum papam super dubiis quibusdam

[1] *Nimis asperos.*] In the Annal. Dunstap. is recorded the severity exercised by John, abbot of Boxley, and his colleagues, in carrying out the visitation of the monasteries of the Black Monks. The monks appealed to Rome, but in vain. The abbot of Evesham escaped by declaring that monastery only exempt from the bishop of Worcester's visitation, and liable, therefore, to be visited by the archbishop of Canterbury; p. 214.

articulis, a quo, in forma procedendi, talem meruit habere responsionem ; A.D. 1232.

De consultatione facta ad papam super visitatione prædicta.

'Ea, quæ pro religionis honestate et religiosorum salute provide ordinantur, apostolico sunt munimine roboranda, ut suscipiantur devotius et diligentius observentur. Cum ergo per dilectum filium abbatem Montis-belli quædam capitula nobis fuerint præsentata, quæ ad castigandum transgressiones multiplices et excessus, quos in quibusdam cœnobiis invenerat, videbantur pro salute ac honestate nostra laudabiliter statuenda, nos examinari et corrigi fecimus, et præcipimus ut inviolabiliter observetis, quæ sigillis venerabilium fratrum nostrorum Hostiensis et Tusculanensis muniri fecimus ad cautelam. Et adhuc volumus et præcipimus auctoritate apostolica, ut visitatores ad generale capitulum convocent abbates, et priores non habentes abbates proprios, tam exemptos quam non exemptos, qui non consueverunt capitulum celebrare ; præsidentes in ipso capitulo generali, canonico impedimento ablato. Eos igitur, qui contempserint vel neglexerint convenire, cessante cujuslibet appellationis obstaculo, per censuram ecclesiasticam venire compellant, et usque ad satisfactionem condignam, quam in eos rite tulerint, non relaxent; eadem censura facturi, quæ in eodem capitulo deliberatione provida fuerint ordinata, firmiter observari ; reddituri tam ipsi quam visitatores, et alii quilibet, ministerii Domino, in cujus conspectu nuda sunt omnia et aperta, in extremo examine rationem ; sed et omnem sollicitudinem et diligentiam circa correctionem et reformationem ordinis ad visitationem cœnobiorum stude- The pope's directions to the visitors.

A.D. 1232. The pope's directions to the visitors of monasteries.

ant adhibere. Porro cum visitatores, secundum statuta generalis concilii, in generali abbatum capitulo processerint ad visitationis officium exsequendum, de statu monasteriorum et observandis regularibus observantiis diligenter inquirant, et tam in spiritualibus quam in temporalibus corrigant et reforment quæ viderint corrigenda; ita quod monachos delinquentes per abbates loci corrigi faciant, eisque injungi pœnitentiam salutarem, juxta beati Benedicti regulam et apostolica instituta, et non secundum normam pravæ consuetudinis, quæ jam pro lege quibusdam ecclesiis inolevit. Ipsi etiam visitatores monachos, quos contumaces invenerint et rebelles, juxta modum culpæ, vice nostra, regulari censura compellant absque personarum delectu, non parcendo rebellibus ob suam pertinaciam vel potentiam amicorum, quin ovem morbidam ejiciant ab ovili, ne inficiat oves sanas. Si vero abbates in corrigendis, juxta visitatorum mandatum et regularia instituta, seipsis suisve monachis inventi fuerint negligentes, proclamentur, corripiantur, et ita puniantur publice in capitulo generali, quod pœna eorum sit aliis in exemplum. Prout si abbas aliquis, non exemptus, fuerit a visitatoribus nimis negligens et remissus inventus, id loci diocesano denuntient sine mora, et per illum detur ei fidus et prudens coadjutor usque ad capitulum generale. Quod si dilapidator inventus fuerit, aut alias merito amovendus, per diocesanum, postquam sibi a visitatoribus fuerit denuntiatum, amoveatur absque judiciorum strepitu a regimine abbatiæ et a monasterio; provideatur interim administrator idoneus, qui temporalium curam gerat, donec ipsi monasterio fuerit de abbate provisum. Quod si forsan episcopus hoc implere noluerit vel neglex-

erit, visitatores, vel præsidentes in capitulo ge- A.D. 1232.
nerali, defectum episcopi ad sedem apostolicam non differant intimare. Hæc eadem circa exemptos abbates fieri præcipimus, depositione tantum ipsorum sedi apostolicæ reservata ; ita tamen, ut abbate, qui videbitur amovendus, interim per visitatores vel in capitulo præsidentes ab administratione suspenso, administrator idoneus monasterio deputetur. Illorum autem excessus, et alia quæ visa fuerint intimanda capitulis, præsidentes nobis denuntient per fideles nuntios et prudentes, quibus de communi abbatum contributione, juxta cujuslibet facultatem, sufficienter ministrentur expensæ. Sequentes autem visitatores priorum perquirant vestigia diligenter visitatorum, et eorum negligentias et excessus referant sequenti capitulo generali, ut juxta culpam debitam pœnam portent.' Et hæc de visitatione dicta sufficiant. Eodem anno Rogerus, Londoniensis episcopus, accusatus inter alios de consensu distractionis frugum clericorum Romanorum, [1]profectus est ad sedem apostolicam, ut suam ibi innocentiam excusaret.

Quod rex Anglorum ministros a curia sua removit.

Anno Domini MCCXXXIII. rex Anglorum Hen- A.D. 1233.
ricus, anno regni sui decimo septimo, tenuit cu- The king removes his ministers.
riam suam ad Natale apud Vigorniam, ubi, ut dicitur, de consilio Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, omnes naturales curiæ suæ ministros a suis removit officiis, et Pictavenses extraneos in eorum ministeriis subrogavit. Willelmum quoque de Rodune, militem, expulit, qui in curia regis vices

[1] *Profectus est ad sedem apostolicam.*] 'Apud civitatem Palmensem jocalia et expensas itineris perdidit ; quas pro parte vix recuperavit. Quid autem Romæ profecerit, ignoratur ;' Ann. Dunst. p. 215.

A.D. 1233. Change of ministry.

gerebat Richardi magni Marescalli; quod idem Richardus nimis moleste tulit. Walterum quoque Karleolensem episcopum idem rex, per consilium prædictum ab officio thesaurarii prius expellens, centum libras argenti ab eo cepit, et custodias quasdam, quas ei per chartam suam confirmaverat dum viveret, contumeliose subtraxit. Consiliarios vero suos omnes, tam episcopos quam comites, ac barones et quosque de regno suo nobiles, ita præcipitanter abjecit, quod nulli credebat, nisi episcopo memorato et filio[1] ejus Petro de Rivallis; unde factum est, quod, expulsis castrorum custodibus per totam Angliam, rex omnia sub ipsius Petri custodia commendaret. Tunc Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, ut regis favorem liberius obtineret, attraxit in suum consortium Stephanum de Segrave, virum flexibilem, et Robertum Passelewe, qui sub Petro de Rivallis thesauros regis servabat; et sic contigit, ut illorum consilio et arbitrio universa regni negotia ordinaret. At rex, invitatis Pictavensibus et Britonibus transmarinis, qui egentes et lucro avidissime inhiantes, venerunt ad duo millia cum equis et armis milites et servientes, quos in suo retinens obsequio posuit in præsidiis castrorum regni in locis diversis, qui homines Angliæ naturales et nobiles totis viribus opprimebant, proditores eos vocabant, quos etiam de proditione apud regem accusabant; quorum mendaciis rex simplex fidem adhibens tradidit custodias comitatuum et baroniarum cum juvenibus nobilibus et puellis generosis; horum autem utrumque sexum turpiter degenerabant, cum ignobiliter maritabant. The-

[1] *Filio ejus.*] By others he is called 'caro suo,' and 'nepoti;' 'nephew, or rather son, to the bishop of Winchester;' Holinshed, p. 215.

saurorum etiam suorum rex eis custodias cum legibus patriis et judiciis commisit. Quid plura? Judicia committuntur injustis, leges exlegibus, pax discordantibus, justitia injuriosis; et cum nobiles de regno de oppressionibus sibi irrogatis coram rege querimoniam deponerent, episcopo impediente prædicto, non fuit qui eis justitiam exhiberet. Episcopos etiam quosdam Angliæ idem episcopus ita apud regem accusabat, quod eosdem quasi hostes publicos devitaret. A.D. 1233.

Quod Marescallus regem increpavit.

Cumque his et consimilibus injuriis Richardus comes, regni Marescallus, videret tam nobiles quam ignobiles opprimere et jura regni penitus deperire, zelo justitiæ provocatus, [1]associatis sibi quibusdam magnatibus, ad regem audacter accessit, increpans eum, audientibus multis, quod per pravum consilium advocaverat extraneos Pictavenses, in oppressionem regni et hominum suorum de regno naturalium, legum pariter ac libertatum; unde regem humiliter rogabat, ut tales excessus corrigere festinaret, per quos coronæ suæ et regni sui subversio imminebat; affirmabat insuper, quod, si hoc emendare diffugeret, ipse et cæteri de regno magnates tamdiu se ab ipsius consilio subtraherent, quamdiu alienigenarum consortio frueretur. Ad hæc autem respondens Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, dixit, quod bene licuit domino regi extraneos quoscumque vellet vocare ad defensionem regni sui et coronæ, et etiam tot et tales, qui possent homines ejus superbos et rebelles ad debitum compellere famulatum. Comes vero Marescal- The earl marshal remonstrates.

[1] *Associatis sibi quibusdam magnatibus.*] 'Ut pacem et concordiam reformaret, se ipsum exponens discrimini, se murum inter dominum regem et magnates opposuit;' Annal. Waverl. p. 195.

A.D. 1233. lus et cæteri magnates perturbati a curia recedentes, cum aliud non poterant habere responsum, firmiter promiserunt ad invicem, quod pro hac causa, quæ omnes tangebat, usque ad divisionem corporis et animæ decertarent.

De tonitruo hyemali.

Thunder storms throughout England.

Eodem anno, decimo kalendas Aprilis, audita sunt tonitrua terribilia, et secuta est per totam æstatem [1] tanta pluviarum inundatio, quod ubique vivaria confregit, et stagna atque molendina per universam fere Angliam a suis sedibus violenter evulsit; nempe in campis arabilibus et fructiferis, in partibus diversis, et aliis insolitis locis, proruperunt fontes per rivulos discurrentes, ex quibus aqua inter fruges stans, ad modum stagni collecta, admirantibus multis, pisces fluviales produxit; molendina etiam in stationibus et sedibus fiebant diversis, ubi nunquam antea visa fuerunt. Eodem quoque tempore, sexto scilicet idus Aprilis, circa horam diei primam, in finibus Herefordiæ et Vigorniæ apparuerunt in cælo quatuor soles adulterini circa solem naturalem diversi coloris, quidam in semicirculis, quidam in rotundis. Hi soles plusquam mille [2] viris fide dignis apparentes terribile illis spectaculum præbuerunt; unde quidam eorum propter visionem insolitam pinxerunt soles et circulos diversis coloribus insignitos in pellibus literalibus, ne res tam insolita a memoriis hominum laberetur. Secuta est autem eodem anno in partibus illis guerra crudelis, strages et humani sanguinis

[1] *Tanta pluviarum inundatio.*] In Waverley new monastery, it is said, the water rose to the height of eight feet. Many men and much cattle were drowned, and the loss in other respects was very great; Annal. Waverl. p. 194.

[2] *Viris fide dignis.*] The bishop of Hereford and Sir John Monmouth are among those spoken of as witnesses of these phænomena.

effusio terribilis, et per totam Angliam, Walliam et Hiberniam perturbatio generalis. Circa idem denique tempus, mense Junio, in parte australi Angliæ visi sunt a multis secus maris littus immanissimi duo dracones in aere graviter præliantes, atque post diutinam pugnam unus alterum superavit, et fugatum usque in profundum abyssi insecutus est, nec amplius visi fuerunt. A.D. 1233.

De cassatione Cantuariensis electi.

Per idem tempus cassatus est magister Johannes, cognomento Blundus, Cantuariensis [1]electus. Divulgatum quidem erat Romæ, quod post electionem suam acceperat ex dono Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, mille marcas argenti, præter alias mille marcas, quas eidem Johanni crediderat, ut promoveretur, unde constat manifeste, quod magis ei nocuit quam profuit familiaritas episcopi memorati; confessus præterea Romæ fuerat idem Johannes, ut dicitur, quod duo habebat beneficia, quibus cura annexa fuit animarum, contra statuta concilii generalis, qua præsumptione creditur reprobatus. Sed quoniam, jam cassatis tribus ecclesiæ Cantuariensis electis, præfata fuit diu ecclesia a pastore viduata, dedit monachis, qui cum electo cassato venerant, potestatem eligendi magistrum [2]Eadmundum, ecclesiæ Saresbiriensis canonicum, in pastorem animarum suarum; cui etiam pallium transmisit, ne tanta sedes metropolitana a pastore diutius frustraretur. Monachi vero nec ipsum nec alium quemlibet, nisi de consensu conventus sui, recipere decreverunt. The archbishop of Canterbury elect rejected by the pope.

[1] *Electus.*] See above, p. 248, *note*.

[2] *Eadmundum.*] Edmund Riche, of Pounteney or Pontigny, so called from the place of his burial, afterwards canonized. He was the author of the 'Speculum Ecclesiæ.'

De discordia orta inter regem et magnates regni.

A.D. 1233. The barons refuse to meet the king at Oxford.

Circa dies istos, cum Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, et complices ipsius in odium gentis Anglorum pariter et contemptum cor regis ita immutabiliter perverterant, ut eorum exterminium modis omnibus moliretur, invitavit paulatim tot Pictavensium legiones, quod totam fere Angliam repleverunt, quorum rex agminibus quocumque pergebat vallatus incessit; nec quicquam fiebat in regno, nisi quod Wintoniensis episcopus et Pictavensium turba disponebant. Tunc rex, missis literis suis, vocavit omnes de regno comites et barones ad colloquium, ut venirent apud Oxoniam ad festum sancti Johannis; sed ipsi noluerunt ad ejus mandatum venire, tum propter insidias alienigenarum, tum propter indignationem, quam conceperant adversus regem, qui extraneos ob eorundem baronum vocavit contemptum; et, cum hoc regi per nuntios solennes denuntiassent, iratus est vehementer, et judicialiter jussit diffiniri, quo ordine debeat eos compellere ad suam curiam convenire. Tunc decretum est per judicium, ut tertio vocentur a rege, ut probet si venire velint, an non. In hoc autem colloquio [1]frater quidam de ordine Prædicatorum, qui coram rege et quibusdam episcopis præsentibus verbum Dei prædicabat, libera voce regi patenter dixit, quod nunquam diuturna pace frueretur, nisi Petrum, Wintoniensem episcopum, et Petrum de Rivallis, ejus [2]filium, a suo consilio removeret. Cumque alii multi, qui aderant, idipsum regi protestarentur, significavit magnatibus memoratis, ut venirent apud

[1] *Frater quidam.*] By name Robert Bacon, according to Paris.

[2] *Filium.*] Paris adds, 'sive consanguineum.' In the Chron. Dunst. he is called 'Petrum de Orivalle,' p. 218.

Westmonasterium quinto idus Julii ad colloquium, et ibi per eorum consilium emendaret quicquid de jure noverat corrigendum. Sed cum audissent magnates præfati, quod paulatim applicuerunt in regno prædones multi cum equis et armis a rege invitati, cum nullum pacis signum vidissent, supersederunt ad diem sibi statutum venire, denuntiantes regi per nuntios solennes, quatenus, omni dilatione remota, ejiceret Petrum, Wintoniensem episcopum, et cæteros Pictavenses de curia sua, sin autem, ipsi omnes de communi consilio totius regni ipsum cum iniquis consiliariis suis a regno depellerent et de novo rege creando tractarent. A.D. 1233.

Quod rex Anglorum quosdam viros nobiles exulavit.

His ita gestis, rex animo consternatus est vehementer et ejus curia tota, vultum demittentes et non mediocriter metuentes, ne fieret error filii patris errore deterior, quem homines sui de fastigio regni deponere satagebant. Tunc Petrus sæpe dictus episcopus consilium regi dedit, ut arma moveret contra rebelles homines suos, et castella eorundem ac terras Pictavensibus conferret, qui regnum Angliæ a suis proditoribus tuerentur. Rex autem inprimis iram conceptam in Gilebertum Basset, virum nobilem, retorquens spoliavit[1] eum a quodam manerio, quod ex dono Johannis regis acceperat; qui cum a rege quod jus suum erat repeteret, vocavit eum proditorem, comminans, quod, nisi a curia sua recederet, suspendio traderetur. Richardum quoque [2]Siuard, The bishop of Winchester advises the king.

[1] *Spoliavit eum.*] 'Sathana fabricante, ... ordine juris prætermisso, de consilio Pictavensium;' Chron. Dunst. p. 218.

[2] *Siuard.*] Wikes also calls him Siward, and he is so spoken of in the Chron. Dunst. in certain passages. The king gave his lands and those of Basset to Peter de Rivaulx: Wikes, p. 42; Annal. Waverl. p. 196.

A.D. 1233. militem strenuum, qui ejusdem Gileberti [1] sororem habuit sibi matrimonio copulatam sine ipsius licentia, ut dicebat, jussit rex capi et captum sibi præsentari. Alios quidem omnes de regno nobiles et potentes suspectos habens obsides exegit ab eis, significans universis per literas suas, quatenus infra kalendas Augusti tot et tales sibi obsides præsentarent, quibus ab ejus animo omnem rebellionis suspicionem auferrent.

Quod Marescallus præmunitus sit de proditione.

The earl marshal warned of the intrigue against him.

Cumque comites ac barones Angliæ in magno militiæ apparatu Londonias tenderent ad colloquium kalendis Augusti sibi præfixum, Richardus comes Marescallus cum cæteris venire proponens hospitatus est cum [2] sorore sua, uxore scilicet Richardi fratris regis; quæ cum fratrem interrogasset, quo iter haberet, respondit ille, quod ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium constitutum venire festinaret. Cui illa, 'Noveris, frater carissime, quod paratæ sunt tibi insidiæ, si venias, ut capiaris ab inimicis tuis, qui te regi et episcopo Wintoniensi præsentabunt, ut de te faciant, sicut de Huberto comite Cantiæ fecerunt.' Marescallus vero vix credere consensit verbis sororis suæ, quousque modum captionis et a quo caperetur probabilibus argumentis ostendit. At comes Marescallus tunc primo dictis sororis suæ fidem adhibens nocte superveniente iter arripuit, nec prius frænum cohibuit, donec in Walliam festinus viator pervenit. Venerunt autem ad colloquium prædictum comes Cestrensis, comes Lincolniensis, comes de Ferrariis et comes Richardus frater regis, cum aliis comitibus et baronibus multis, sed nihil ibi actum fuit

[1] *Sororem.*] Paris adds 'aut neptem.'

[2] *Sorore sua.*] 'Isabella;' Paris.

propter absentiam comitis Marescalli et Gile- A.D. 1233.
berti Basset et quorundam aliorum absentiam magnatum; unde rex, per consilium episcopi Wintoniensis et Stephani de Segrave, fecit invitare per literas omnes de regno magnates, qui sibi ad militare servitium tenebantur, ut venirent apud Gloverniam cum equis et armis die Dominica ante assumptionem beatæ Mariæ. Sed Richardus Marescallus et alii multi, qui fuerant confœderati, cum venire noluissent ad diem statutum, fecit rex, ac si proditores essent, villas eorum concremari, parcos et vivaria eorum destruere, castella obsidione vallare. Erant autem viri nobiles, qui confœderati dicebantur, comes scilicet Marescallus, Gilebertus Basset et fratres ejus, viri bellatores et nobiles, Richardus Siuard, vir martius ab adolescentia, Walterus de Cliffordis, miles electus, cum aliis multis, qui eis adhærebant; quos omnes rex absque judicio curiæ suæ et parium suorum exules et proscriptos denuntiari fecit, terras eorum Pictavensibus dedit, præcepitque ut eorum corpora caperentur, ubicumque invenirentur in regno.

Quod Wintoniensis episcopus quosdam confœderatos comitis Marescalli corrupit.

Tunc Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, qui vires comitis Marescalli et confœderatorum suorum infirmare modis omnibus conabatur, comites Cestriæ et Lincolniæ, datis mille marcis, corrupit, ut, relicto Marescallo et causa justitiæ, ad regem eos retro respicientes retorqueret et partes ejus foverent; nam Richardus, frater regis, diu ante ad regem reversus erat, qui Marescallo prius adhærebat. Hæc cum Marescallus cognovisset, confœderatus est Loelino, principi Norwalliæ, et aliis potentibus regionis illius, inter- The earls of Chester and Lincoln desert the marshal.

A.D. 1233. posito juramento, quod nullus eorum contra regem sine altero concordaret. Tunc in crastino assumptionis beatæ Mariæ applicuerunt apud Doveram viri armati multi ex regionibus transmarinis venientes et ad regem apud Gloverniam pervenerunt; at rex illorum et aliorum multorum vallatus catervis ad Herefordensem urbem exercitum promovit.

De injuria Waltero, Karleolensi episcopo, illata.

The bishop of Carlisle detained at Dover.

Per idem tempus Walterus, Karleolensis episcopus, [1]pro quibusdam injuriis a rege sibi, ut dicebat, illatis, apud Doveram navem erat ingressus, ut transfretaret; supervenerunt autem quidam ministri regis ejicientes eum cum suis omnibus de navi, et firmiter ex parte ipsius regis prohibebant, ne absque illius licentia de regno exiret. Applicuit autem tempore, quo hæc facta erant ibidem, Rogerus, Londoniensis episcopus, a curia Romana reversus, qui videns injuriam, quæ præfato inferebatur episcopo, excommunicavit omnes, qui in eum manus injecerant violentas, et inde profectus ad regem invenit eum apud urbem Herefordensem in Wallia cum exercitu copioso; ubi in præsentia regis et quorundam episcoporum de violentia Karleolensi episcopo illata supradictam excommunicationis sententiam innovavit, non mediocriter rege murmurante, et, ne talem ferret sententiam, prohibente; cum quo etiam omnes qui adfuerunt episcopi illos excommunicaverunt universos, qui hujus perturbationis occasionem præstabant.

---

[1] *Pro quibusdam injuriis.*] 'Officio thesaurarii et omnibus custodiis et quæstibus spoliatus.' Chron. Dunst. p. 221.

De diffidatione Marescalli et obsidione cujusdam castelli ipsius.

Et, his ita gestis, rex, de consilio episcopi Wintoniensis, Marescallum diffidavit per episcopum Menevensem, et sic jussit contra eum arma movere et ejus castella obsidere. Ingressus igitur rex terram comitis Marescalli obsedit quoddam castellum ipsius, cujus nomen non teneo, sed cum per dies plurimos illud graviter impugnasset et parum vel nihil profecisset, deficientibus exercitui alimentis, cum obsidionem solvere oportebat, puduit regem illuc venisse; unde, missis quibusdam episcopis ad comitem Marescallum, exegit ab eo, quatenus propter honorem ipsius regis, ne videretur castellum inaniter obsedisse, illud sibi tali conventione redderet, ut infra dies quindecim illud integrum ipsi restitueret Marescallo, atque omnia, quæ in regno erant corrigenda, interim per consilium episcoporum, qui super his fidejussores fuerant, emendaret. Et ad hoc perficiendum constituit rex diem ipsi Marescallo ac cæteris exulatis Dominica proxima post festum sancti Michaelis apud Westmonasterium; et sic redditum est regi castellum, obsidione soluta.

A.D. 1233. The king follows the earl marshal into Wales.

De liberatione Huberti de Burgo.

Circa dies istos Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, qui modis omnibus in mortem Huberti de Burgo aspirabat, qui in castro de Divisis in vinculis tenebatur, nulla de Huberto mentione facta, regem rogavit attentius, ut concederet sibi castri custodiam memorati, [1]hac occasione ductus, ut copiam haberet illum, sicut dicitur, perimendi.

Escape of Hubert the justiciary;

[1] *Hac occasione ductus.*] Annal. Waverl. p. 195.

A.D. 1233. Sed Hubertus, de his omnibus ab amicis suis, qui in curia regis erant, præmunitus, [1]duobus ministris, qui ei in illius castri præsidio serviebant, hoc consilium revelavit, qui ipsius miseriæ compatientes sollicite cogitabant, qualiter illum a mortis discrimine liberarent. Considerata igitur temporis opportunitate, dormientibus castelli custodibus, unus eorum, altero explorante, in prima noctis sancti Michaelis vigilia, præfatum Hubertum in humeris arripuit compeditum, et de[2] turri clam custodibus descendens et pium furtum ferens latitudinem castelli pertransiit, veniensque ad majorem portam per ostium exivit, et sic quoddam ingens fossatum, licet cum difficultate, transcendens ad ecclesiam villæ parochialem impiger viator conscendit, nec sarcinam prius deposuit quam ad majus altare lætus pervenit. Juvenes vero, qui Hubertum liberaverant, ab eo recedere nolentes pro laude sibi futurorum reputabant et mercede cælesti si pro tanti viri liberatione mortem incurrerent temporalem.

Quod Hubertus ab ecclesia violenter extractus incarceratur in castello.

dragged from the altar of a neighbouring church. Evigilantibus interea castellanis, cum Hubertum in loco non reperiunt consueto, perturbati sunt valde, et catervatim exeuntes de castro cum laternis et fustibus et armis omnia quærendo perlustrabant, donec a referentibus audierunt Hubertum esse in ecclesia ex compedibus liberatum, quo cum tumultu concurrentes invenerunt eum ante altare crucem Dominicam

[1] *Duobus ministris.*] In MS. 'duos ministros,' but with a mark for correction.

[2] *De turri .... descendens.*] 'Dimissus per cancellos cum mappis et manutergiis, agente quodam armigero suo, qui solus de familia sua ei ministravit.' Chron. Wikes, p. 42.

manibus bajulantem; quem atrociter arripien- A.D. 1233.
tes et fustibus pariter ac pugnis impie cædentes et pellentes, cum duobus liberatoribus suis illum ad castellum reducunt et graviori quam prius custodiæ committunt. Sed res gesta cum ad aures Roberti, Saresbiriensis episcopi, pervenisset, venit celeriter ad castellum, præcipiens ipsis ecclesiæ violátoribus, ut Hubertum ad pacem ecclesiæ quantocius reductum in illo statu, quo illum invenerant, dimitterent absolutum; sed castellani tumultuose satis episcopo respondentes dixerunt, se malle quod Hubertus suspenderetur, quam ipsi; et, cum illum reducere noluissent, episcopus de commissa sibi potestate omnes nominatim excommunicavit, qui illum detinebant et qui in eum manus injecerant violentas. Tunc episcopus ille, conjuncto sibi Rogero, Londinensi episcopo, et quibusdam aliis episcopis, venit ad regem super injuria Huberto illata coram eo querelam deponens, nec prius ab eo recessit quam Huberti liberationem impetravit; et sic in ecclesia, invito rege, remissus est decimo quinto kalendas Novembris. Sed rex iratus vicecomiti provinciæ illius dedit per literas in mandatis, ut ecclesiam obsideret, donec Hubertus in ea ex ciborum inedia moriretur.

Quod Marescallus castellum cepit, quod regi tradiderat.

Per idem tempus, elapsis quindecim diebus The marshal recovers one of his castles.
postquam comes Marescallus regi castellum suum tradiderat, ut prædictum est, ut sibi redderet repetenti, misit ad regem, termino evoluto, rogans, ut juxta pactum restitueret sibi castrum suum, de quo fidejussores constituerat episcopum Wintoniensem et Stephanum de Segrave, qui tunc vices justiciarii gerebat sub rege, quod

A.D. 1233. etiam firmaverant interposito juramento. Rex autem cum indignatione respondit, quod illud non redderet, sed alia potius ejus castella sibi subjugaret. Sed idem Marescallus, cum neque fidem neque juramentum vel pacem aliquam viderat a regis consiliariis observari, collegit exercitum copiosum, et castellum, quod suum fuerat, obsidione vallavit, machinas per gyrum adhibuit et municipium illud levi negotio sibi subjugavit.

Court at Westminster. Erat interea rex apud Westmonasterium ad colloquium septimo idus Octobris, sicut magnatibus promiserat, ut per eorum consilium emendaret ea, quæ in regno fuerant corrigenda; sed iniquum, quod tunc sequebatur, consilium id fieri non permisit. Plures autem episcopi, qui præsentes erant, regem humiliter rogabant in Domino, quatenus pacem faceret cum baronibus suis et nobilibus, quos absque judicio parium suorum exulaverat, villas eorum et ædificia igne cremaverat, silvas et pomeria succiderat, parcos et stagna destruxerat. Proditores eos vocabat, per quos pacem regni sui et consilia ordinare et negotia disponere debebat. Ad hæc respondens Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, dixit, quod non sunt pares in Anglia, sicut in regno Francorum; unde licet regi Anglorum per justiciarios, quos constituerit, quoslibet de regno reos exulare et mediante judicio condemnare. Episcopi quoque hæc audientes quasi una voce comminabantur, quod nominatim excommunicarent principales regis consiliarios iniquos; ex quibus in capite expresserunt Petrum, Wintoniensem episcopum, et filium ejus Petrum de Rivallis, Stephanum de Segrave, justiciarium, et Robertum Passelewe, thesaurarium. Quibus respondens Petrus Wintoniensis allegavit quod Romæ fuerat a summo pontifice episcopus consecratus et

inde ex eorum potestate exemptus, unde, ne in eum ferrent sententiam, sedem apostolicam appellavit. Tunc episcopi omnes illos excommunicaverunt, qui animum regis immutaverant in odium naturalium hominum suorum de regno, et omnes qui perturbarent pacem regni. A.D. 1233.

Quod rex omnes citari fecit, qui sibi tenebantur ad servitium militare.

In hoc quidem colloquio venerunt nuntii ad regem, dicentes, quod comes Marescallus ceperat castellum suum in Wallia, et quosdam ex militibus suis ibidem interfecerat et de ministris. Hæc audiens rex perturbatus est valde, et præcepit episcopis cunctis, ut Marescallum nominatim excommunicarent, qui castrum occupaverat memoratum; sed illi e contra communiter dixerunt, indignum esse illum excommunicare, quia castellum quod suum fuerat occupavit. Tunc rex perturbatus misit literas in omnes Angliæ fines, præcipiens cunctis, qui sibi ad militare servitium tenebantur, quatenus in crastino festivitatis Omnium sanctorum apud Gloverniam cum equis et armis convenirent, quo ipse vellet conducere illos, ituri. Per idem tempus Hubertus de Burgo, quondam Angliæ justiciarius, [1]raptus est ab ecclesia de Divisis a viris armatis, ubi militaribus armis decenter indutus circa horam diei primam [2]in Walliam adductus est ac regis hostibus sociatus tertio kalendas Novembris. The king summons all who owed military service to meet him at Gloucester.

[1] *Raptus est ab ecclesia.*] 'Subito superveniens Ricardus Syward cum multitudine armata volentem extraxit de ecclesia;' Chron. Dunst. p. 221. 'Eo nolente;' Wikes, p. 42.

[2] *In Walliam adductus est.*] 'Usque Austiclive, et præparatis ibi navibus, brachium maris, quod ibi adjacet, transnavigantes ipsum Hubertum in castrum de Strugoyl ... in tuto deposuerunt;' *ibid.* p. 42.

Quod exulati invaserunt exercitum regis Angliæ apud Grosmunt.

A.D. 12..3. The king defeated before Grosmunt.

Circa eosdem etiam dies, cum rex Anglorum apud Gloverniam copiosum collegisset exercitum, versus Herefordiam in Walliis legiones promovit, et inde terram ingressus Marescalli, ad ipsius exhæredationem et corporis captionem modis omnibus anhelabat. Sed ille, ut bellator providus, ante regis adventum armenta subtraxerat et victualia, unde rex, pro alimentorum defectu moram ibi facere non valens, [1]ad castellum de Grosmunt cum exercitu suo divertit; ubi cum per dies aliquot moram protraxisset, Marescallus et ejus confœderati cum proscriptis ab Anglia et exulatis, missis exploratoribus, cognoverunt regem infra castelli ambitum pernoctare, et majorem partem exercitus extra in tentoriis excubias celebrare. Tunc omnis multitudo, præter Marescallum, qui regem invadere noluit, cum Wallensibus et exercitu copioso, [2]in die sancti Martini episcopi post crepusculum illuc properantes, et illos, qui in tentoriis soporati jacebant, invadentes, equos plusquam quingentos cum clitellis et spoliis ac supellectili universa occuparunt, fugientibus cæteris fere nudis quo impetus quemque ducebat; nec ex eis quenquam lædere vel captum abducere voluerunt victores illi, præter duos milites, qui ex omnibus interfecti fuerunt. Ceperunt ergo bigas et vehicula cuncta, quibus pecunia et victualia ferebantur et arma, atque sarcinis bene dispositis ad tuta latibula sunt reversi. Hujus autem rei testes sunt Petrus Wintoniensis, Radulphus Cicestrensis, episcopi, Stephanus de Segrave, regis justiciarius, Petrus de Rivallis,

[1] *Ad castellum de Grosmunt ... divertit.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 219.

[2] *In die sancti Martini episcopi.*] 11th of November.

thesaurarius, Hugo Bigod comes de Nortfolc, A.D. 1233.
Willelmus comes Saresbiriensis, Willelmus de Bello-campo, Willelmus de Albeneio junior, et alii multi, qui nudi fugientes omnia quæ sua erant amiserunt; unde factum est, quod multi de exercitu regis, et illi præcipue qui equos et arma et pecuniam amiserant universam, recedentes cum maxima confusione ad propria sunt reversi. Tunc rex, qui quasi solus inter hostes remanserat, posuit in castris Walliæ ruptarios Pictavenses, qui impetum reprimerent inimicorum suorum, et constituit principes illius militiæ viros nobiles, Johannem Monemutensem et Radulphum de Thoenio, cui etiam dedit castellum Matildis, quod antiquitus sui juris erat; et, his ita gestis, rex apud Gloverniam reversus est. Eodem tempore, in principio mensis Novembris, audita sunt tonitrua horribiles coruscationes emittentia per dies plurimos; unde dici solet in antiquo rusticorum proverbio, quia mulier non debet lugere mortem mariti vel filiorum suorum, sed tonitrum potius hyemale, quia semper aut famem aut mortalitatem vel tale aliquid denuntiat adfuturum.

De gravi conflictu inter Marescallum et [1] *gentes transmarinas.*

Eodem tempore, cum comes Marescallus terras hostium suorum ingressus prædas ageret et armenta contraheret, venit casu ad oppidum Monemutense, quod erat sibi contrarium, ubi jubens exercitum suum procedere ad expeditionem inchoatam, cum centum sociis equitibus ad castellum divertit, ut situm ejus exploraret, quod post dies paucos proposuit obsidere; qui

The earl marshal taken prisoner by Baldwin de Guisnes.

[1] *Gentes transmarinas.*] 'Gentibus transmarinis' in MS., but marked for correction.

A.D. 1233. The marshal taken prisoner; cum oppidum circuiret, conspexit eum Baldewinus de Gysnes, miles strenuus, cui rex illud custodiendum commiserat cum Pictavensibus multis, et intelligens quo Marescallus erat, quem vidit castellum cum paucis explorare, exivit cum mille viris fortissimis et eleganter armatis, et rapido equorum cursu ad illum tendens captum cum suis omnibus ad oppidum perducere cogitabat. Videntes autem commilitones comitis Marescalli hostes cum impetu advenire, dederunt ei consilium, ut sibi per fugam consuleret, inconsultum dicentes cum paucis armatis cum tot hostibus dimicare; quibus respondens Marescallus dixit, se nunquam eatenus in prælio hostibus terga dedisse; nec se modo id facturum affirmat, exhortans omnes, ut viriliter defensioni vacarent, ne morirentur inulti. At castellani interim in eos fortiter irruentes cum lanceis et gladiis rem agebant. Fit gravissimus utrobique conflictus, sed nimis inæqualis, dum centum solummodo viri contra mille adversarios in multo diei spatio dimicabant. Baldewinus vero de Gysnes tandem, associatis sibi duodecim bellatoribus fortissimis et eleganter armatis, impetum faciens in comitem Marescallum voluit ipsum sub captione conclusum vivum perducere ad castellum; sed ille hostes non permisit propius accedere, gladium vibrans a dextris et a sinistris, sed, quoscumque cum illo contingebat, aut in terram mortuos prosternebat aut attonitos ictuum collisione reddebat, et sic solus contra duodecim, et illi contra solum, diutius decertabant. Sed demum, cum ad eum accedere non auderent, cum lanceis suis equum, in quo sedebat, peremerunt; sed ille, qui doctus erat in prælliis Gallicanis, militem quendam sibi importunum per pedem arripuit, quem cum in terram

prostravisset, equum ipsius agili saltu conscendit et iterum defensioni vacavit. Tunc Baldewinus, miles in armis strenuus, indigne ferens quod Marescallus contra tot adversarios sese tamdiu defendebat, potenter irruit in eum, et, arrepta ipsius galea de capite ejus, eam ita truculenter avulsit, quod sanguis ex ore ejus et naribus emanavit; et arripiens per frænum equum illius cœpit sessorem trahere versus castellum, aliis a tergo illum impellentibus, ut ferrent auxilium Baldewino, qui Marescallum per frænum trahebat. Tunc ille, tanquam in arcto positus, ensem in gyrum vibrando, ictus importabiles hostibus imprimens, duos ex illis in terram attonitos prostravit; sed nec sic sese ab eorum manibus liberavit. Videns autem balistarius quidam ipsius Marescalli dominum suum in periculo constitutum, de balista spiculum emisit, et percutiens in pectore Baldewinum, qui Marescallum ducebat, armis non obstantibus illum perforavit, qui corruens in terram credidit se lethaliter vulneratum; at sodales Baldewini, hoc viso, Marescallum relinquentes dominum in terra jacentem erexerunt, quem quasi mortuum reputabant.

A.D. 1233.

He is rescued.

De strage facta a Marescallo apud castrum Monemutense.

Et, dum hæc agerentur ibidem, nuntiatum est exercitui ipsius Marescalli, quæ facta fuerant de illo, et venientes cum festinatione in auxilium ejus hostes quantocius compulerunt in fugam. At illi fugientes ad fluvium quendam, qui prope erat, ut evaderent, invenerunt pontem confractum, per quem transire sperabant, unde plurimi in flumen sese mittentes cum equis et armis submersi perierunt; alii autem, quo fugerent non invenientes, interfecti sunt, atque alii sub cap-

Battle of Monmouth.

A.D. 1233. Battle of Monmouth.

tione conclusi; unde pauci ex omnibus, qui de castello exierant, incolumes sunt reversi. Capti sunt autem in parte Marescalli Thomas Siuard, juvenis in militia præclarus, cum duobus sociis militibus, qui perducti sunt ad castellum captivi. Ex castellanis autem capti sunt milites quindecim et plurimi servientes, quos Marescallus in vinculis cum equis et armis ac manubiis multis abduxit. In loco quidem certaminis remansit occisorum multitudo, tam Wallensium quam Pictavensium et transmarinarum nationum; atque Baldewinus de Gysnes ad castellum a sociis perducitur graviter vulneratus. Acta est autem hæc belli congressio [1]in die beatæ Catharinæ virginis apud castellum memoratum. Post hunc quoque conflictum comes Marescallus, cum Gileberto Basset et Richardo Siuard ac cæteris exulatis et eorum confœderatis, Pictavensibus, qui erant in castris regis Anglorum, lethiferas posuerunt insidias, ita ut, quotiescunque aliquis eorum ad prædandum exivit, nihil aliud quam capita singulorum pro redemptione ceperunt; unde contigit in brevi, quod tam numerosa extraneorum multitudo in viis et locis diversis interfecta jaceret, quod aerem totum corrumperet regionis.

De admirabili prudentia et zelo justitiæ comitis Marescalli.

Proposals made by the king to the marshal.

Per idem tempus, cum comes Marescallus in abbatia de Margan pernoctaret, venit ad eum die Jovis proximo ante Natale frater quidam de ordine Minorum, Agnellus nomine, qui familiaris erat domino regi et consiliarius ipsius, ut ostenderet ei quæ audierat in curia regis de eo ab ipso

[1] *In die beatæ Catharinæ virginis.*] 25th November.

rege et consiliariis ejus. Ab ore autem regis audivit, ut dicebat, quod, licet dictus comes Marescallus proditiose nimis et inique egerit contra ipsum, si, nulla facta narratione de aliquo opere præambulo, se vellet omnino supponere misericordiæ domini regis, rex concederet ei vitam cum membris, et tantum de Herefordschire quod inde honeste vivere posset. Audivit etiam a Stephano de Segrave, quod forma misericordiæ revelaretur duobus de amicis Marescalli, de quibus confideret, qui Marescallo significarent, quod secure se posset ponere in misericordia regis; ita tamen, quod nec ipsi Marescallo, nec alii, formam misericordiæ revelarent, et sic ignorans formam hoc faceret. Ab aliis autem de curia audivit, quia expediebat Marescallo facere prædicta; quia debitum, quia utile, quia tutum. Debet, quia fecit injuriam domino suo; qui, antequam rex invaderet terram aut personam Marescalli, ipse invasit terram domini regis, combussit, destruxit, et homines interfecit. Et si ille dicit, se hoc fecisse ad tuitionem corporis sui et hæreditatis suæ; dicunt, quod non, quia in ipsius corpus aut exhæredationem non fuit unquam aliquid machinatum. Nec ob hoc tamen deberet prorumpere contra dominum suum, donec oculata fide cognosceret regem contra ipsum talia cogitare; et ex tunc liceret talia attemptare. Ad hoc respondens Marescallus fratri Agnello dixit, 'Ad primum, quod dicunt, debeo, quia terram regis invasi, non est verum; quia rex ipse, cum semper paratus essem stare juri et judicio parium meorum in curia sua, et per plures internuntios pluries petii illud, quod ab ipso mihi semper exstitit denegatum, terram meam violenter ingressus contra omnem justitiam invasit. Cui sperans in humilitate placere, formam pacis cum eo mihi

A.D. 1233. Proposals made by the king to the marshal.

A.D. 1233. Proposals made by the king to the marshal.

plurimum damnosam gratis inii, in qua etiam convenit, quod, nisi illa ex parte regis mihi [1]observaretur, omnia omnino ex parte mea essent in statu, in quo fuerunt ante dictam pacem initam, videlicet, quod ego essem extra homagium suum et diffidatus ab eo, sicut prius fui per dominum episcopum Menevensem; unde, cum fere in omnibus articulis in forma pacis contentis deficeret, licuit mihi, juxta conventionem meam, quod meum erat recuperare et posse suum modis omnibus debilitare, maxime cum ad meam destructionem et exhæredationem et corporis captionem anhelaret; et hoc pro certo didici, et, si necesse est, probare possum. Et, quod magis est, post pacem per dies quindecim antequam Walliam intrarem aut ab aliquo me defenderem, sine judicio spoliavit me ab officio marescalciæ, quod jure hæreditario ad me pertinet et possedi, nec aliquo modo ad illud me restituere voluit requisitus; unde aperte didici, quod nullam pacem voluit mihi observare, cum post pacem deterius quam ante me pertractaret; unde homo suus non fui, sed ab ipsius homagio per ipsum absolutus, cum ad primam diffidationem redirem, juxta dictam conventionem, ut prædictum est. Quapropter licuit et licet me defendere, et malitiæ consiliatorum suorum modis omnibus obviare.' Item dicunt consiliarii regis, utile fore Marescallo, ut se supponat misericordiæ ejus, quia rex ditior et potentior est; et, si Marescallus confidit in auxilio alienigenarum, rex ad unum, quem ille adducet, poterit adducere septem; quia offerunt se quidam consanguinei regis alienigenæ, qui non sunt Scoti vel Gallici aut Wallenses, qui venient in Angliam et suppeditabunt omnes inimicos ejus,

[1] *Observaretur.*] 'Observatur' in MS., but marked as an error.

qui venient in tanta multitudine, quod cooperient totam terram. Ad hæc dicit Marescallus, 'Rex ditior me sit et potentior, verum est, sed non potentior est Deo, qui est ipsa justitia, in quem confido in conservatione et persecutione juris mei et regni; nec confido in alienigenis, nec ipsorum confœderationem appeto, nec auxilium invocabo, nisi, quod absit, inopinata et immutabili fuero necessitate compulsus. Et bene scio, quod rex potest septem contra unum adducere, quem ego adducere possum, et credo quod nimis cito tot adducet per consilium suum, quod non habet per quos ipse et regnum ipsius ab ipsis possit liberare; nam a viris fide dignis didici, quod Wintoniensis episcopus obligatus sit imperatori Romano, quod faciet totum Angliæ regnum ipsi subjugatum, et hoc a tempore quo cum ipso fuit in partibus transmarinis; et ideo guerram istam specialiter incepit, ut ex hoc sumpta occasione prius posse imperatoris, et postea ipsum imperatorem vocaret; et hoc probabile videtur, quia in discordia regis abscessit ab Anglia, et modo jurat, quod tot faciet venire in Angliam, quod cooperient totam terram.' Item dicunt consiliarii regis, tutum esse Marescallo, ut se supponat misericordiæ ejus, quia potest in regem confidere et consiliariis ejus; in regem, quia misericors et credibilis est; in consiliariis, quia nunquam Marescallo malum procuraverunt, imo diligunt eum in veritate. Ad hæc respondens Marescallus dicit, quod 'bene potest esse quod rex misericors sit, sed seductus est consilio eorum per quos nos graviter læsos sentimus. Et quod rex sit credibilis [1]patet quantum in se ipso; sed, quantum ad consilium ejus pertinet, dico,

A.D. 1233. Proposals made by the king to the marshal.

[1] *Patet quantum in se ipso.*] 'Potest esse, quantum in se ipso in *C.*

A.D. 1233. Proposals made by the king to the marshal.

quod nulla mihi promissio fuit hactenus observata. Quod dicitur de consiliariis, quod nunquam mihi malum procuraverunt, falsum est; quia mala mea universa procuraverunt, et omnia eis principaliter imputo. Nec in hoc, quod dicunt se me diligere, credere non debeo, nisi cum opera videro, quæ nondum vidi; nam plura sacramenta corporaliter præstita violaverunt, videlicet contra comitem Cantiæ, cui omnes tres plura sacramenta fecerunt, quæ omnino spreverunt et fregerunt, tam de forma provisa de prædicto comite, de qua similiter pejeraverunt, quam de sacramento libertatum in magna charta contentarum, quas infregerunt, propter quæ excommunicati sunt et perjuri. Perjuri sunt de fideli consilio, quod juraverunt domino regi præstituros, cum in omnibus ei consilium contra justitiam impendant. Stephanus quoque de Segrave, qui juravit justas leges observare, et illas corrumpit et inusitatas introducit; et propter alia multa, pro quibus Deus aut homo non debet ei fidem aut suis complicibus adhibere, nonne tam ille quam illi excommunicati sunt?' Item dicunt consiliarii regis contra Marescallum, quod invasit corpus domini regis apud castellum de Grosmunt, antequam rex intrasset terram suam, et, si hoc fecit, injuriam regi fecit; unde debet se subjicere misericordiæ ejus, ut prædictum est, ut faciat honorem domino regi, ne alii habeant exemplum insurgendi contra ipsum. Ad hæc respondit Marescallus pro persona sua, quod falsum est quod interfuit illi invasioni; et, forte aliqui de familia sua adfuerunt, familiam tantum regis invaserunt, et non corpus regis. 'Quod tamen si fecissent, non esset mirum, cum rex veniret cum exercitu suo in terram meam, ut me inva-

deret et, modis omnibus quibus posset, gravaret; quod omnibus liquere potest per tenorem literarum suarum, quibus per Angliam generalem fecit convocationem in meum exitium. Et cum prædicta ab ipsis mihi imposita falsa sint, et verum est quod rex se pejus habuit contra me tempore, quo ipsius misericordiam exspectavi quam in alio aliquo tempore, et adhuc utitur eodem consilio quo etiam tunc, et cum præcise nitatur semper consiliis eorum in omnibus [1]utendum, de quorum consilio sentio omnia prædicta gravamina mihi et meis illata, ejus nos subjicere misericordiæ non debemus. Nec hoc esset honor regis, quod voluntati suæ consentirem, quæ non esset ratione subnixa; imo facerem sibi injuriam et justitiæ, quam ipse in subditos exercere debet et conservare. Et malum exemplum darem omnibus, videlicet deserendi justitiam et juris persecutionem, propter voluntatem erroneam, contra omnem justitiam et injuriam subditorum; nam ex hoc appareret nos diligere plus possessiones nostras mundanas quam ipsam justitiam.' Item proponunt contra Marescallum consiliarii regis, quod confœderatus est capitalibus inimicis ejus, videlicet Francigenis, Scotis et Wallensibus, et videtur eis hoc fecisse in odium et damnum domini regis et regni. Ad hoc dicit Marescallus, 'quod de Francigenis falsum est simpliciter. Quod dictum est de Scotis et Wallensibus similiter falsum est, præterquam de rege Scotiæ et Loelino principe Norwalliæ, qui non inimici, sed fideles ejus fuerunt, quousque per injurias ipsis a rege et ejus consiliariis illatas a fidelitate sua inviti et coacti, sicut et ego, alienati sunt; et propter hoc cum illis confœderatus sum, ut me-

A.D. 1233. Proposals made by the king to the marshal.

[1] *Utendum.*] Inserted in *C.*, but the line is marked for correction.

A.D. 1233. Proposals made by the king to the marshal.

lius simul, quam separati, jura nostra perquiramus et defendamus, a quibus injuste privati sumus et in parte magna spoliati.' Item proponunt consiliarii regis, quod non debet Marescallus confidere de confœderatis suis, quia rex sine aliquo dispendio terræ suæ poterit confœderatos Marescalli ab amicitia sua cum voluerit separare. Ad hoc dicit Marescallus, 'quod super hoc non dubitat; sed ex hoc maxime apparet iniquitas consiliariorum suorum, quod aliquo modo facerent regem dispendium subire erga eos, quos specialiter vocant capitales inimicos, in meam injuriam, qui semper fui ejus fidelis, quousque per ipsum remaneret, et adhuc essem, si vellet mihi et meis amicis reddere jus nostrum.' Item dicunt consiliarii sæpe dicti, quod papa et ecclesia Romana specialiter diligunt regem et regnum, et excommunicabunt omnes ejus adversarios; et hoc videtur jam esse in januis, quia jam pro legato miserunt. 'Ad hoc, quod de papa et ecclesia Romana dicitur, placet mihi,' dicit Marescallus, 'quia, quanto plus regem et regnum diligunt, tanto plus desiderabunt, quod regnum suum et subditos suos secundum justitiam pertractet. Et placet mihi, quod adversarios regni excommunicet, quia illi sunt qui contra justitiam consilium regi impendunt, quos opera manifestant; quia justitia et pax osculatæ sunt, et propter hoc, ubi justitia corrumpitur, pax similiter violatur. Item de legato, placet quod veniat; quia, quanto plures justitiam nostram audierint, tanto vilius adversarii justitiæ confundentur. Et nunc, licet gravamina mea specialiter enumeraverim, idem dico de omnibus amicis meis et confœderatis; de quibus sicut de meipso conqueror, et sine quibus

nihil omnino facere possum, quod ad aliquam stabilem conventionem pertineat.' A.D. 1233.

Quod rex Anglorum fuit apud Gloverniam ad Natale.

Anno Domini MCCXXXIV., qui est annus regni Henrici, regis Anglorum, decimus octavus, idem rex ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Gloverniam cum parvo admodum comitatu, quia recesserant ab eo magnates multi, qui spoliati erant paulo ante a rebus omnibus apud Grosmunt castellum, sicut superius habetur expressum. Quo utique tempore cœpit terra gelu graviter constringi, ita quod fruges suffocabantur in agris, radices herbarum in hortis, et quasi pedibus quatuor in humo infixas radices in pomeriis desiccavit, quod usque ad purificationem beatæ Mariæ absque nive se continuans agriculturam suspendit; secuta est autem eodem in anno tanta aeris et elementorum intemperies, quod sterilitatem rerum omnium de terra nascentium mortalibus ministravit. A.D. 1234. Henry keeps Christmas at Gloucester.

Quod Marescallus multos ex hostibus peremit.

In crastino quidem diei Dominicæ nativitatis Johannes Monemutensis, vir nobilis, qui cum rege militabat in Wallia, copiosum collegit exercitum, ut furtivum faceret impetum in comitem Marescallum; sed, cum hoc Marescallo esset intimatum, misit se in quadam silva, per quam hostes venturi erant, ut eos deluderet, qui illum decipere cogitabant. Cum igitur adversarii memorati ad locum insidiarum pervenissent, Marescallus et exercitus ejus totus strepitum horribilem cum tubis emittentes et buccinis in hostes irruunt venientes et non præmunitos omnes illi- Successes of the marshal.

A.D. 1234. co compulerunt in fugam, et fugientes insecuti interficiunt terga vertentes, ita quod, innumera ex eis multitudine perempta tam Pictavensium [quam aliorum], ipse Johannes vix per fugam evasit; et progrediens cum suis legionibus Marescallus villas ejus et ædificia, cum omnibus quæ ipsius erant, ferro devastavit et flamma, atque ex divite fecit pauperem et mendicum, et sic cum spoliis impretiabilibus et armentis in sua sese Marescallus recepit.

Quod exulati seditionem moverunt contra consiliarios regis.

Opposition of Siward and others to the government.

In ipsis præterea diebus Natalitiis bellum contra regem et suos consiliarios graviter accenditur, nam Richardus Siuard, conjunctis sibi cæteris exulatis, [1]terras Richardi comitis et fratris regis, non longe a Brehulle sitas, cum ædificiis et frugibus ac bobus in stabulis stantibus, incendio concremarunt; Segrave, natale solum Stephani, Angliæ justiciarii, per idem tempus cum domibus valde sumptuosis, et bobus atque frugibus, combusserunt, equos pretiosos plures cum spoliis et rebus aliis inde recedentes abduxerunt; villam quoque quandam episcopi Wintoniensis, non longe ab eadem villa sitam, igne consumpserunt et spolia diripuerunt, cum cæteris rebus inventis. Hanc autem laudabilem constituebant regulam generalem inter se bellatores isti, quod nemini quicquam mali fecerunt vel aliquem læserunt, præter iniquos regis consi-

[1] *Terras Richardi.*] 'Maneria et averia Ricardi comitis Cornubiæ et episcopi Wintoniensis et P. de Orivalle, et S. de Segrave, et R. Passelewe, et aliorum æmulorum suorum; qui pro excusatione sua asserebant, hæc merito se fecisse, quia per prædictorum consilia eorum tenementa prius fuerint dissipata;' Chron. Dunst. p. 220.

liarios, per quos erant in exilium pulsi; et quæ sua fuerant igne cremata nemora, et pomeria radicitus exstirpata. A.D. 1234.

De equitatione facta apud Salopesberi.

Deinde, infra octavas Epiphaniæ, comes Marescallus et princeps Norwalliæ Loelinus, collectis omnibus viribus quas habere poterant, terras regis longe ingressi ferro et incendio destruxerunt, ita quod a finibus Walliæ usque ad Salopesberi nihil omnino reliquerunt intactum; villam quoque Salopesberi igne combusserunt et pretiosa inde reversi spolia reportarunt. Rex autem Anglorum inter hæc omnia, quæ fiebant ab hostibus suis, apud Gloverniam cùm episcopo Wintoniensi morabatur imbellis, quia vires non habuit militares, quibus auderet hostibus obviare, unde nimio rubore confusus versus Wintoniam profectus est, regionem illam adversariis depopulandam relinquens, sicut intuentibus apparuit evidenter; nam miserabile viatoribus erat videre in provincia illa tot occisorum corpora, quorum non erat numerus, nuda per plateas et insepulta jacere, quæ bestiis esca fuere voracibus et volatilibus cæli rapacibus, ex quibus tantæ corruptionis fœtor aerem circumquaque infecerat, quod etiam homines sanos mortui peremerunt. Induratum quidem adeo erat cor regis contra Marescallum per iniquum, quo utebatur, consilium, quod episcopis illum admonentibus, ut pacem cum eo faceret, qui pro justitia decertabat, responderet, se nunquam in pacem convenire cum illo, nisi laqueum in collo gerens et se proditorem esse recognoscens ejus misericordiam imploraret. Shrewsbury burned by the marshal and Llewellyn.

De proditione quam contra Marescallum consiliarii regis egerunt.

A.D. 1234. Plan of the government for the destruction of the marshal,

Circa dies istos Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, et filius ejus Petrus de Rivallis, et alii iniqui consiliarii regis, cum se victos ubique cernerent a comite Marescallo, et villas suas igne crematas irremediabiliter dolerent, cogitabant proditione saltem, quem armis non poterant, superare; siquidem, qui præter alia incommoda a suo desiderio defraudati turbam Pictavensium innumeram [in] finibus Walliæ viderent interfectam, literas composuerunt proditionis inauditæ, et, cum earundem tenorem literarum rex penitus ignoraret, compulerunt eum sigillum suum apponere, cum quo etiam et ipsi sua apponentes sigilla numero undecim, cruentum illud scriptum in Hiberniam transmiserunt. [1]Missa est autem hujus proditionis charta ad magnates Hiberniæ, Mauricium scilicet filium-Geroldi, qui vices justiciarii ibidem sub rege gerebat, ad Walterum et Hugonem de Lasceio, ad Richardum de Burgo, et Galfridum de Marisco, et ad alios homines ejusdem Marescalli juratos, sed infideles; quæ hanc iniquitatem, pro parte quæ sequitur, continebat. In primis significaverunt magnatibus prædictis consiliarii memorati, quod Richardus, quondam regis Angliæ Marescallus, propter proditionem manifestam per judicium curiæ ejusdem regis proscriptus erat de regno Angliæ, et terris illius, villis ejus et ædificiis igne crematis, parcis et pomeriis succisis, stagnis cum piscariis destructis, et, quod his omnibus majus est, ab hæreditate paterna in perpetuum abjudicatus; et, cum a bonis omni-

[1] *Missa est . . . charta.*] Chron. Dunst. p. 219.

bus hoc ordine sit privatus, regem adhuc persequi non omittit, sed in incepta contra eum malitia perseverat. ‘ Significamus ergo vobis, ut fidelibus domini regis et juratis, quatenus, si casu in Hiberniam venerit, illum vel vivum vel mortuum comprehensum regi præsentare corporaliter studeatis; quod si facere curaveritis, totam hæreditatem ejus et possessiones de terra Hiberniæ, quæ nunc in voluntate domini regis sunt, concedet vobis inter vos dividendas et jure hæreditario possidendas. Super hac domini regis promissione fideliter vobis tenenda nos omnes, quorum consilio rex et regnum regitur, fidejussores constituimus, si rem prætaxatam perducere curaveritis ad effectum. Valete.’ A.D. 1234.

Quod proceres Hiberniæ consensum regis consiliariis præbuere.

Cum igitur audissent Hiberniæ proceres memorati tenorem literarum, concupiscentia subvertit singulorum corda, et conspirantes ad invicem nuntios clam cum literis ad præfatos regis consiliarios transmiserunt, significantes illis communiter sigillo secreti, quod, si promissio in literis contenta per chartam regis confirmaretur eisdem, ipsi rem prælocutam ad effectum perducere conarentur. Tunc consiliarii sæpe dicti per chartam regis magnatibus illis omnia Marescalli jura Hiberniæ inter se dividenda concesserunt, singulorum loca, possessiones et jura singulis exprimentes. Cumque tandem hoc damnabile scriptum[1] ad proditores nequissimos in Hiberniam pervenisset, confœderati sunt protinus, interposito juramento, quod visa opportunitate rem detestabilem perpetrarent; et conflantes in in- agreed to by the Irish nobles.

[1] *Scriptum.*] Paris adds, ‘ sigillo regio communitum.’

A.D. 1234. vicem, ut perimerent innocentem, congregaverunt exercitum copiosum, et terras comitis Marescalli hostiliter ingressi quædam castella ejus ceperunt, prædas et spolia inter se diviserunt.

Quod hæretici Albigenses in campestri prælio sunt perempti.

The Albigenses in Spain. Hoc[1] quoque anno hæretici Albigenses in partibus Hispaniæ et illis regionibus ita invaluerunt, ut, ordinatis episcopis hæreticis, qui suam prædicarent abusionem, asserebant constanter fidem Christianam, et præcipue incarnationis mysterium, frivolum esse ac penitus abrogandum; et congregantes exercitum copiosum ingressi sunt hostiliter fines Christianorum, comburentes ecclesias et homines Christianos cujuscumque sexus vel ætatis immisericorditer trucidantes. Sed, hoc tandem divulgato, compressa est eorum superstitiosa præsumptio a fidelibus Christianis, qui ad mandatum Gregorii papæ ex diversis regionibus occidentis cruce signati advenerant ad defensionem fidei Christianæ. Perempti sunt autem ab eis in campestri prælio tempore vernali cum suis episcopis hæretici memorati, ita quod nec pes unus ex omnibus evasit; Christiani quoque civitates eorum occupantes repleverunt eas fidelibus Christianis, et, ordinatis in eis episcopis catholicis, reversi sunt victores in patriam suam, et, qui pauperes advenerant a partibus remotis, singuli divites recesserunt.

Consilium episcoporum regi datum pro perturbatione regni.

The bishops remonstrate with the king. Dum hæc in Hispania agerentur, rex Anglorum venit ad colloquium apud Westmonasterium

[1] *Hoc quoque anno.*] Compare Raynaldi ad an. 1233, § 60; and 1234, § 14.

in purificatione sanctæ Mariæ, in quo quosdam episcopos, et maxime Alexandrum, Cestrensem episcopum, graviter increpavit de nimia familiaritate comitis Marescalli et quod ipsum a regni solio depellere nitebantur; episcopus autem ille pontificalibus indutus, cum talia sibi objecta cognovisset, excommunicavit omnes, qui contra regem iniquitatem hujusmodi cogitabant, et sic, intervenientibus episcopis qui aderant, cum rege pacificatus est. Adfuit quidem huic colloquio magister Eadmundus, Cantuariensis electus, cum multis episcopis suffraganeis, qui omnes regis et regni desolationi condolentes venerunt ad regem et quasi uno corde, animo et ore dixerunt, ' Domine rex, dicimus vobis in Domino, ut fideles vestri, quia consilium, quod nunc habetis et quo utimini, non est sanum nec securum, sed crudele et periculosum vobis et regno Angliæ, Petri videlicet Wintoniensis episcopi et Petri de Rivallis. In primis, quia gentem Anglicanam odio habent, vocantes eos proditores et facientes omnes sic vocari, et avertentes animum vestrum a gente vestra et gentis vestræ a vobis, ut apparet in facto Marescalli, qui melior homo est terræ vestræ, et hæc per mala mendacia, quæ vobis dicunt de eis, omnia eorum dicta et facta pervertunt. Et per hoc idem consilium, scilicet per dictum episcopum, amisit pater vester rex Johannes primo corda gentis suæ, et post Normanniam et alias terras suas, et in fine totum thesaurum suum et fere dominium Angliæ, et nunquam postea pacem habuit. Per idem consilium turbatum fuit regnum et venit interdictum, et pater vester per tales angustias tandem mortem incurrit. Per idem consilium temporibus nostris contra vos detentum fuit castellum de Bedeford, propter quod Rupellam per-

A.D 1234. Remonstrance of the bishops.

A.D. 1234. Remonstrance of the bishops.

didistis. Item, illa perturbatio, quæ nunc periculosa est in regno vestro, per eorum iniquum consilium accidit; quia, si per justitiam et rectum judicium terræ tractati fuissent homines vestri, non evenisset ista turbatio, et haberetis terras vestras non destructas et integrum thesaurum vestrum. Item, in fide dicimus, qua vobis tenemur, quia consilium vestrum non est pacis, sed perturbationis terræ; quia sic crescere volunt, qui per pacem non possunt, videlicet per regni perturbationem et aliorum exhæredationem. Item, quia castella vestra et fortitudinem terræ vestræ habent in manu sua, quasi de gente vestra diffidere debeatis. Item, quia scaccarium vestrum et omnes custodias et exchaetas maximas habent in potestate sua, et, quomodo vobis respondebunt, scietis postea. Item, quia per sigillum vestrum vel præceptum, sine sigillo Petri de Rivallis vel præcepto, vix aliquod magnum negotium fit in regno, unde constat quod vos non habent pro rege. Item, per idem consilium naturales homines de regno vestro de curia vestra expulsi sunt, unde timendum est tam de vobis quam de regno, cum videamini magis esse in eorum potestate, quam ipsi in vestra, sicut per plurima constat exempla. Item, quia puellam Britanniæ et sororem vestram habent sub potestate sua, et alias plures puellas nobiles et mulieres, cum wardis ac maritagiis, quas dant suis et disparagant. Item, quia legem terræ, juratam et confirmatam atque per excommunicationem roboratam, pariter et justitiam confundunt et pervertunt; unde timendum est, ne sint excommunicati, et vos communicando eis. Item, quia non observant alicui promissionem, fidem, vel juramentum, vel scripturam, nec timent excommunicationem; unde qui a veritate reces-

serunt sunt desperati, et qui remanent, in timore. Hæc autem fideliter vobis dicimus, et coram Deo et hominibus consulimus, rogamus et monemus, ut tale consilium amoveatis a vobis, et, sicut est in aliis regnis consuetudo, regnum vestrum tractetis per fideles homines vestros et juratos de regno vestro; denuntiamus enim vobis in veritate, quod, nisi infra breve temporis spatium ista correxeris, in vos et in omnes alios contradictores per censuram ecclesiasticam procedemus, nihil exspectantes nisi consecrationem venerabilis patris nostri electi Cantuariensis.' Et, his ita dictis, rex humiliter breves postulavit inducias, dicens se non posse ita subito consilium suum amovere, donec de thesauro suo illis commisso ratiocinium audisset; et sic solutum est colloquium, recedentibus cunctis cum fiducia concordiæ celeriter obtinendæ. A.D. 1234. Remonstrance of the bishops.

Quod exulati ad vindictam proruperunt.

Finito siquidem colloquio prædicto, cum rex gratia orationis apud Bromholm festinaret, transitum fecit per sanctum Eadmundum, ubi pietate motus concessit uxori Huberti de Burgo octo maneria de terris acquisitis a viro suo, quæ tunc fuerunt sub custodia Roberti Passelewe ex mandato ipsius regis; ac deinde, expleto orationis voto, partes petiit occidentis. Et, cum venisset ad villam de Huntendona, [1]venit Richardus Siuard cum Gileberto Basset et cæteris exulatis ad Alcmundeberi, villam Stephani de Segrave, quæ vix duobus a rege distabat milliaribus, et, injecto igne in ædificiis dicti Stephani, omnia concremavit et spolia colligavit. Stephanus vero, qui cum rege erat, videns flammas ædificiorum suorum regio- The king's progress to Bromholm.

[1] *Venit Richardus Siuard.*] Annal. Waverl. p. 192.

A.D. 1234. nemque totam illustrantes, cum manu armata non modica festinavit in auxilium rerum suarum; sed, cum a referentibus cognovisset Richardum Siuard hujus violentiæ fuisse auctorem, quasi telis obviantibus frena retorsit et calcaribus non parcens ad regem cum summa celeritate refugit, unde ipsum regem et alios qui aderant ad risum commovit. Per idem etiam tempus ipse Richardus et socii ejus, quosdam milites in finibus Walliæ sibi adversantes juxta legem guerræ ceperunt et ad gravem redemptionem compulerunt.

Eodem anno in ecclesia Christi Cantuariæ consecratus est Eadmundus, ejusdem ecclesiæ electus, a Rogero, Londinensi episcopo, in archiepiscopum Cantuariensem Dominica, qua cantatur 'Lætare Hierusalem,' quæ tunc fuit quarto nonas Aprilis, præsente rege cum tredecim episcopis; et eodem die missam [1]cum pallio solemniter celebravit.

Quod rex Anglorum episcopum Wintoniensem et Pictavenses a suo consilio removerit.

Fall of the bishop of Winchester. Circa eosdem dies denique convenerunt ad colloquium Dominica prima in passione Domini, quæ tunc fuit quinto idus Aprilis, apud Westmonasterium, rex cum comitibus et baronibus, et archiepiscopus nuper consecratus cum suis suffraganeis, ut regno perturbato salubriter providerent. Archiepiscopus quidem, conjunctis sibi episcopis ac cæteris qui aderant prælatis, ad regem veniens ostendit ei consilium suum et episcoporum super desolatione regni et periculo imminenti, replicando suprascripta incommoda in colloquio superius habito sibi expressa. De-

[1] *Cum pallio.*] Paris adds, 'quod caute ei de curia Romana Simon de Legro, ejus ecclesiæ monachus, detulerat.'

nuntiavit etiam [1]ipsi regi audacter, quod, nisi A.D. 1234.
celerius errorem dimitteret et cum fidelibus regni sui pacifice componeret, ipse incontinenti, cum omnibus qui aderant prælatis, in ipsum regem sententiam ferret excommunicationis et in omnes alios hujus pacis contradictores et concordiæ perversores. Rex autem pius consilium audiens prælatorum humiliter respondit, quod consiliis eorum in omnibus adclinaret; unde post dies paucos, intelligens proprium errorem, pœnitentia ductus præcepit Petro, Wintoniensi episcopo, ut pergens ad episcopatum suum curis intenderet animarum et de cætero regiis negotiis nequaquam interesset. Petro etiam de Rivallis immutabiliter jussit, cujus Anglia tota dispositionibus subjacebat, ut, redditis sibi castellis suis et ratiocinio de thesauris, incontinenti a curia recederet, affirmans cum juramento, quod, nisi beneficiatus et in sortem clericorum fuisset admissus, ipse ei ambos oculos eruere faceret. Pictavenses insuper omnes, tam de curia sua, quam de castrorum præsidiis, expellens remisit in patriam suam, præcipiens ut ultra faciem ejus non viderent. Ac deinde rex, qui modis omnibus pacem sitiebat, misit Eadmundum, Cantuariensem archiepiscopum, cum episcopis Cestrensi et Roffensi in Walliam ad Loelinum et Richardum comitem Marescallum, ut cum eis de pace tractarent. Et sic rex, dimissis iniquis consiliariis suis, revocavit ad obsequium suum naturales homines de regno suo, subjiciens se consilio archiepiscopi et episcoporum, per quos sperabat regnum perturbatum ad statum debitum revocare.

[1] *Ipsi,*] wanting in *C.*

Quod comes Marescallus in Hiberniam veniens guerram contra regem moverit.

A.D. 1234. The marshal carries on the war in Ireland.

Hoc quoque tempore venerunt nuntii ad Richardum comitem Marescallum referentes quomodo sæpedicti magnates Hiberniæ terram ejus hostiliter ingressi quædam ipsius castella ceperant et eam pervagantes rapinis et spoliis indulgebant. Marescallus autem, cum rex Anglorum post dies Natalitios expeditiones bellicas in Walliis [1]dimisisset et australes Angliæ partes petisset, circa purificationem beatæ Mariæ cum quindecim tantum militibus in Hiberniam transfretavit, ut hostium suorum malitiam refrænaret; qui cum ibidem applicuisset, venit ad eum Gaufridus de Marisco, homo ejus ligius, sed infidelis, qui Mauricio justiciario, Hugoni de Lasceio et Richardo de Burgo, ac cæteris inimicis ipsius Marescalli confœderatus erat, et adhærebat ei in dolo, consulens, ut contra hostes prædictos arma moveret et Hiberniam subjugaret. Marescallus vero per terram suam profectus congregavit exercitum copiosum, et hostes suos insecutus castella, quæ ceperant, pro parte revocavit; Lemeric quoque, famosam Hiberniæ civitatem, quatriduana obsidione cepit et ex civibus exegit fidelitatem; deinde hostiliter progrediens cepit tam regis castella quam aliorum inimicorum suorum, accipiens a custodibus juramentum, ne ejus propositum impedirent. Magnates autem prædicti illi occurrere non audentes fugerunt a facie ejus ad loca remotiora, ubi milites et equites bellatores cum turba peditum armatorum innumera congregantes ad campestre sese præli-

[1] *Dimisisset.*] 'Dimissis' in MS., and the 'et' wanting, as though it had been intended to write 'expeditionibus bellicis.'

um præparabant; hos omnes, datis regiis the- A.D. 1234.
sauris cum magnis promissionibus, ita in necem Marescalli animaverant, ut, eo perempto, se divites fieri æstimarent. Quo facto, miserunt ad Marescallum viros Templarios, mandantes quod proditiose nimis agebat contra dominum suum regem Angliæ, quem sicut in Anglia ita jam in Hibernia impugnabat; addiderunt etiam, quod ipsi, sub quorum custodia rex terram Hiberniæ commiserat et cujus homines erant fideles et jurati, non poterant sine proditionis nota hanc injuriam sustinere; postulaverunt ergo inducias competentes, ut interim scirent a rege Anglorum si velit Hiberniam defendere, quam si tueri contemneret et eam relinquendo deserere decerneret, ipsi terram totam ei sine lite et effusione sanguinis resignarent.

Quod justum bellum idem comes contra regem susceperit.

His igitur ita dictis, ad singula sibi proposita The marshal defends his conduct. comes Marescallus respondit; 'In primis respondeo, quod proditiose non egi contra regem; quia sine judicio parium meorum et injuste ab officio marescalciæ me spoliavit, exulem per totam Angliam denuntiari fecit, ædificia mea igne cremavit et terras meas destruxit. Semel et iterum me diffidavit, cum semper paratus essem in curia sua juri parere et stare judicio parium meorum; unde homo suus non fui, sed ab ipsius homagio, non per me sed per ipsum, absolutus.' De cæteris autem sibi objectis et de induciis concedendis significavit magnatibus prædictis per eosdem Templarios, ut in crastino venirent ad colloquium in quodam prato sibi designato de pace tractaturi, immutabiliter affirmans, quod licuit sibi de jure quod suum erat

A.D. 1234. repetere, et posse regis et consiliatorum ejus modis omnibus quibus poterat infirmare.

De iniquo consilio Gaufridi de Marisco.

Treacherous counsel of Geoffrey de Marsh.

Cumque verba comitis Marescalli magnatibus sæpe dictis a Templariis fuissent declarata, placuit eis vehementer ad colloquium venire, scientes se majores habere vires et armatorum copias quam Marescallus haberet; habuerunt enim in proposito, quod siue campestri prælio ad propria non redirent. Marescallus vero a militibus super dicto negotio consilium quærens dixit, 'Sufficere mihi debet, ut concedam proceribus istis inducias postulatas, quia justum mihi videtur et rationi subnixum quod petunt; unde timeo, si eis æquitatem facere negavero, ne deterius mihi contingat.' Hoc cum audisset Gaufridus de Marisco, qui ei dolose adhærebat et conscius erat provisæ proditionis ac socius, prorupit in vocem blasphemiæ adversus eum; quasi ex caritate loquens dixit ipsum non fuisse filium Willelmi magni Marescalli, qui consilio et prudentia, strenuitate pariter et audacia, omnes occidentalis imperii milites superabat. 'Et tu modo timidus effectus regnum Hiberniæ, quod nunc subjugare vales, per ignaviam obtinere contemnis; induciæ siquidem, quas petunt inimici tui, frustratoriæ sunt, ut sic impediant progressum tuum. Noveris autem certissime, quod hostes tui omnes, cum te viderint armatum et ad pugnam licet cum paucis præparatum, terga vertentes per fugam evadere conabuntur.' Erant præterea ibidem et alii milites quater viginti vel plures, qui de Marescallo in Hibernia terras tenebant, ab hostibus ejus corrupti, qui ei consuluerunt idipsum, proditiose illum decipere cupientes.

De colloquio habito inter proceres Hiberniæ et comitem Marescallum.

Mane autem facto, venerunt ad colloquium in prato sibi designato Mauricius justiciarius, Hugo de Laceio et Richardus de Burgo, cum militibus septies viginti fortissimis et audacissimis, quos a tempore proditionis inchoatæ elegerant ex toto Hiberniæ regno, ut perimerent Marescallum, et ad hoc conduxerant magnis muneribus et promissionibus, qui campestre prælium magis quam concordiam sitiebant. Marescallus vero cum suis armatis, qui omnes sibi ficte adhærebant, præter quindecim milites, quos de propria familia habebat, ad colloquium veniens per unum fere milliare ab hostibus divisus suam composuit stationem. Deinde, Templariis mediantibus, qui inter utrumque exercitum verba conferebant, de pace tractare cœperunt. Sed tandem magnates Hiberniæ, ut breviter dicatur, cum cognovissent quod Marescallus cum paucis advenerat, significaverunt ei immutabiliter et præcise, quod, nisi prædictas concederet inducias, diffidabant eum, ut continuo gladiis discurrentibus experirentur, quis ex illis in prælio fortior haberetur. Comes vero Marescallus, per consilium Galfridi de Marisco et aliorum hominum suorum, sed infidelium, invitus et coactus plane negavit eis treugas postulatas, petens constanter per internuntios memoratos, ut redderent sibi quædam castella sua, quæ injuste occupaverant et detinebant, quia injustum ei videbatur inducias concedere spoliatus; cumque illi id facere denegassent, dispositis aciebus ad pugnam contra Marescallum procedunt, quasi securi de victoria obtinenda. Quod videns Gaufridus de Marisco dixit ad Marescallum, 'Consilium do tibi in

A.D. 1234. The marshal's conference with the Irish nobles.

A.D. 1234. fide, ut concedatis magnatibus istis inducias petitas; uxor enim mea soror est nobilis viri Hugonis de Lasceio, unde non possum in prælium contra ipsum tecum ire, cum quo consisto confœderatus.' Ad quem Marescallus, 'O,' inquit, 'proditor nequissime, nonne modo denegavi eis inducias, contra voluntatem meam, per consilium tuum? Inconstantis hominis esset tam cito concedere, quod modo eis negavi, quia id magis timore[1] facere viderer, quam amore. Scio enim, quod hodierno die morti traditus sum; sed melius est mihi mori cum honore pro causa justitiæ, quam campum per fugam deserere et probra militiæ in perpetuum obtinere.' Et respiciens Walterum fratrem suum, juvenem elegantissimum, dixit quibusdam ministris suis, 'Adducite fratrem meum,' inquit, 'ad castellum meum, quod prope est, nec in hoc certamine pereat omne genus meum; quia in ejus probitate confido, si annos exspectaverit legitimos strenue militiam exercendi.' Proceres autem Hiberniæ, audaciam Marescalli ac probitatem metuentes, arma sua militibus fortissimis tradiderant et ignotis, quos ad hoc conduxerant, ut perimerent innocentem; sic eum occidere cupientes, ut non occidisse viderentur.

De prælio campestri in quo captus fuit comes Marescallus.

The marshal taken in battle. Comes vero Marescallus hostes multos aciebus dispositis contra paucos venire considerans hortatur suos ad pugnam, quam pro causa justitiæ et legibus Anglicanæ gentis et oppressione Pictavensium assumpserat, sperans habere fideles, quos habuit proditores. In medium hostium audacter prorupit, et, aciebus eorum potenter penetratis, militibus suis viam ferro aperuit,

[1] *Timore.*] 'Timore hoc' in MS.

quem solummodo quindecim milites de propria familia sequentes obstantium cohortes acierum dissipare cœperunt. Sed homines ejus jurati et milites, in quibus confidebat, sicut prius inter proditores erat provisum, hostibus sese Marescalli non coacti, non hastis percussi vel gladiis, ad vincula reddiderunt, quasi amici ad invicem congaudentes; quidam autem illorum absque sanguinis effusione ad ecclesias et abbatias fugientes Marescallum [1]cum quindecim tantum militibus reliquerunt. Quibus inæqualiter nimis contra septies viginti pugnantibus et sese viriliter defendentibus, pondus prælii versum est in comitem Marescallum, qui tunc primo de proditione in necem suam machinata advertit; et, sic undique adversariis impetum facientibus in eum, sex milites ex eis sese defendendo peremit. Indignatus autem, hoc viso, miles quidam ut gigas fortissimus, cui Richardus de Burgo arma sua tradiderat, ut Marescallum occideret, impetum fecit in eum, volens galeam de capite ejus evellere truculenter; quem videns Marescallus existimabat quod esset Richardus de Burgo, et ait, 'Fuge, proditor nequissime, ne te interficiam.' Cui ille, 'Non a te fugiam,' inquit, 'sed propius accedam;' et cum manus levasset, ut ipsum per cassidem arriperet, Marescallus interjecto gladio ambas manus ejus armatas uno ictu præcidit. Alius autem miles socium læsum vindicare cupiens rapido equi cursu ad eum venit, et omnibus utens viribus in capite galeato percussit, sed, obstantibus armis Marescalli, nihil profecit; at comes se ferientem cum gladio percutiens corpus

A.D. 1234. The marshal taken prisoner.

[1] *Cum quindecim tantum militibus.*] 'Licet se solum et omni fideli consortio destitutum non ignoraret, campestri prælio se contra inimicos et etiam innumerabiles exponere non formidavit;' Annal. Waverl. p. 195.

A.D. 1234. The marshal taken prisoner.

ejus totum usque ad umbilicum in duas partes divisit, unde post in multo diei spatio nullus ad eum accedere ausus fuit. Sed hostes ejus principales animo consternati compulerunt vulgi multitudinem, qui cum lanceis, furcis ferreis, securibus advenerant et bipennibus, ut illum circumdantes opprimerent et equum ejus eviscerantes ad terram prosternerent; qui protinus Marescallum circumvallantes equum ejus multis vulneribus confossum exsanguem fecerunt, et, cum sic eum ex equo dejicere non potuissent, pedes ipsius equi cum securibus præciderunt; cumque equus cum Marescallo, jam in certamine ab hora diei prima usque ad horam undecimam fatigato, corruisset in terram, [1]ipsi accurrentes percusserunt eum in posteriora loricam levantes et lethaliter vulneraverunt. Magnates autem cognoscentes quod vulneratus fuisset ad mortem, qui quasi exanimis jacebat in terra, duxerunt illum, vix palpitante in eo spiritu vitali, ad castellum suum, quod Mauricius justiciarius paulo ante ceperat et captum detinebat, ubi sub arcta servatus custodia cum uno tantum juvene de suis inter hostes remansit. Actum est autem hoc prælium primo die mensis Aprilis, in sabbato.

De morte et sepultura comitis Marescalli.

Death of the marshal.

Et, his ita gestis, post triduum ita convaluit comes Marescallus, quod manducare potuit et bibere, ad aleas ludere, et huc atque illuc ire in thalamo ubi infirmatus jacebat; quod videntes inimici ejus petierunt ex parte regis Angliæ, ut redderet

[1] *Ipsi accurrentes.*] 'Quidam maligno spiritu agitatus eum a posteriori parte latenter aggrediens, eidem ex improviso in inferiore corporis regione, quo nudum et inerme recognovit, lethale vulnus inflixit;' Annal. Waverl. p. 195.

omnia castella sua et terras Hiberniæ, cujus corpus in voluntate ejus erat ac potestate, quacumque voluerit morte etiam turpissima puniendum, ut qui per judicium curiæ suæ primo exulatus ac postea diffidatus, et nunc in campestri prælio contra eum commisso captus; 'Utile tibi erit ut hæc facias sine contradictione et ab eo misericordiam consequaris.' Ostenderunt præterea illi literas regis patentes, in quibus eis præceptum erat, quod, si casu veniret in Hiberniam, ipsi illum caperent et vivum sibi aut mortuum præsentarent. Marescallus autem videns quia in potestate erat inimicorum suorum præcepit continuo per literas suas, ut omnia castella sua regi redderentur, nesciens quod concessa erant magnatibus illis per cartam regis inter se dividenda et jure hæreditario possidenda. Cœperunt deinde vulnera ejus dolere graviter et tumere, unde præ nimio cruciatu auxilium medici postulavit. Tunc Mauricius justiciarius, sub cujus custodia erat, medicum vocavit, magis, ut dicitur, in exitium quam auxilium; sed Marescallus, ut fidelissimus Christianus, ante omnem medicinam carnalem, in confessione et viatico ac legitimo testamento exitum suum munivit et suæ mortis causam Domino commendavit. Medicus autem ad eum accedens cum ferro longo et ignito vulnera ejus aperuit, et tam sæpe et profunde ferrum demersit, quod ex vulneribus sanguinem elicuit. Marescallus vero pro nimia doloris angustia in febrem acutam decidens [1]sexto decimo die postquam in prælio vulneratus fuerat in Domino obdormivit decimo sexto kalendas Maii; in cras-

A.D. 1234. Death of the marshal.

[1] *Sexto decimo die.*] 'Per quindecim dies sequentes languens et pœnitentiam agens diem clausit extremum. Super cujus morte rex certioratus diu gemuit, sicut rex David super morte Saulis et Jonathæ;' Chron. Dunst. p. 219. 'In castellum deputaverunt, ubi

A.D. 1234. tino autem sepultus est apud Kilkenni in oratorio fratrum de ordine Minorum, ubi ipse adhuc vivus elegerat sepulturam. Occubuit siquidem ob causam supra scriptam comes Marescallus, miles egregius, in literali scientia sufficienter eruditus, moribus decenter et virtutibus ornatus, in die Palmarum, ut palmam a Domino acciperet in cælestibus pro mercede, qui inter filios hominum adeo enituit forma speciosus, ut in compositione corporis ipsius visa sit natura cum virtutibus contendisse.

De ultione exulatorum contra consiliatores regis.

Destruction of the ministers' property.

Hæc autem, quæ facta erant de comite Marescallo in Hibernia, nondum nota fuerunt in Anglia, unde Richardus Siuard cum cæteris exulatis de consiliatoribus regis, per quos exterminati fuerant, ultionem quærentes feria quarta in hebdomada Paschæ combusserunt ædificia Roberti Passelewe in Suaneburne cum frugibus et animalibus et aliis rebus inventis, quæ ei damnosa fuerunt; et post dies paucos combusserunt horrea ejusdem Roberti cum frugibus et rebus aliis prope villam de Stanes sexto kalendas Maii. Item, sexto nonas Maii inter Radingum et Wallingeford in quadam silva ceperunt sex summarios Stephani de Segrave oneratos, cum equo quodam pretioso, et omnia quæ domini regis erant dimiserunt in pace; Ivingeho quoque villam Petri, Wintoniensis episcopi, cum domibus et rebus cunctis episcopo damnosis concremarunt quarto idus Maii. Et eodem tempore proceres Hibernenses castella Marescalli et jura Hiberniæ oc-

curis medicinalibus plagis adhibitis, quindecim diebus, quos ei Deus ad pœnitentiam providerit, expletis, in cordis contritione, veraque confessione, sacrosancta Dominici corporis et sanguinis . . . communione, debitum humanæ naturæ persolvit;' Annal. Waverl. p. 196.

cupantes inter se diviserunt, sicut eis per car- A.D. 1234.
tam regis fuerant confirmata, possessionibus incumbentes.

Quod omnes exulati ad pacem regis venerunt.

Per idem etiam tempus, post Paschalem solen- The opposition received into favour.
nitatem, cum rex Anglorum versus Gloverniam tenderet cupiens obviare archiepiscopo et episcopis, quos in Walliam miserat, ut supradictum est, venit apud Wodestoke manerium suum, ut pernoctaret ibidem. Venerunt autem ibi ad eum nuntii ex Hibernia, casum ei referentes de morte comitis Marescalli; unde rex, admirantibus cunctis qui aderant, in fletum prorumpens conquestus est de morte tanti militis, asserens constanter, quod nullum sibi parem in regno moriens reliquisset; et continuo vocatis presbyteris de capella sua, fecit solenniter decantari obsequium defunctorum pro anima ipsius, et in crastino, completis missarum solenniis, largas pauperibus eleemosynas erogabat. Beatus ergo rex talis, qui novit inimicos diligere, et cum lachrymis [1]potest pro suis persecutoribus Dominum exorare. Cumque rex inde profectus ad Gloverniam pervenisset, venit ad eum ibi Eadmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, cum episcopis, qui cum ipso ad Loelinum fuerant destinati, denuntiantes ei, quod cum Loelino de [2]quadam forma pacis tractaverant, ita tamen, quod ante omnia regi reconciliarentur viri nobiles de regno, quibus confœderatus erat idem Loelinus, qui per pravum consilium fuerant ab Anglia exulati; quo rite peracto, præfata concordia plenius firmaretur. Tunc rex,

[1] *Potest.*] 'Potest' is marked for correction, probably to be expunged.

[2] *Quadam forma pacis.*] The terms of the treaty, to continue for two years from the feast of S. James (25 July), are printed in Rymer, i. p. 213, dated Westminster, June 30.

A.D. 1234. qui ut pax fieret modis omnibus suspirabat, fecit convocare per literas suas exulatos omnes, ut venirent apud Gloverniam Dominica proxima ante ascensionem Domini, quarto scilicet kalendas Junii, ad colloquium, recepturi plenam gratiam ipsius cum hæreditatibus suis; et hoc facerent omni suspicione remota, sub salvo archiepiscopi et episcoporum [1]conductu. Venerunt ergo [2]ad pacem regis, mediantibus archiepiscopo et episcopis, Hubertus de Burgo, Angliæ quondam [3]justiciarius, Gilbertus Basset et fratres ejus, Richardus Siuard, cum omnibus qui cum eis et pro eis in exilium fuerant pulsi, quos rex in osculo pacis recipiens reddidit eis omnia jura sua, quinto kalendas Junii. Et in eodem colloquio venit ad regem Gilebertus, frater Richardi comitis Marescalli, protestans mortem fratris sui, et postulavit ab eo, ut ipsum in hæreditate sua reciperet, offerens homagium suum regi et quicquid ei ut domino facere tenebatur. Tunc rex, cum consilio archiepiscopi, reddidit ei hæreditatem suam totam tam in Anglia quam in Hibernia, et homagium ejus recepit; atque post hæc, in die Pentecostes, apud Wigorniam eundem Gilebertum cingulo militari donavit, tradens ei virgam marescalciæ curiæ suæ, sicut eam antecessores melius et liberius habuerunt. Hu-

[1] *Conductu.*] At this point the Cotton. MS. of Matt. Paris, collated by Wats, has 'Dominus Rogerus de Wendovre, prior aliquando de Beluvoir, huc usque chronica sua hæc digessit.' The Wendover MS. however, collated by that editor, continues to the same period with our own.

[2] *Ad pacem regis.*] The king's letters to Llewellyn, informing him that, through the mediation of the archbishop of Canterbury, he had become reconciled to his disaffected nobles and restored them their property, at the same time urging him to confer with the archbishop and bishops respecting peace, are in Rymer, i. p. 212.

[3] *Justiciarius.*] Paris inserts a more lengthened account of the king's meeting with Hubert de Burgh, with the details of a vision of a crucifix that had formerly appeared to him.

bertum quoque de Burgo, Gilebertum Basset et Richardum Siuard inter domesticos et familiares consiliarios admisit, tunc plene intelligens, quod priorum fuerat consiliatorum astutia seductus, qui se modo cauteriatam habentes conscientiam a regis præsentia subtrahebant. A.D. 1234.

Quod rex ratiocinium exegit a Petro de Rivallis et Stephano de Segrave et Roberto Passelewe.

In eodem autem colloquio Eadmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, fecit recitari exemplar literarum de proditione Richardi comitis Marescalli coram rege et universo conventu episcoporum, comitum pariter ac baronum, qui adfuerunt, quæ a consiliariis regis missæ fuerant ad magnates Hiberniæ; unde rex ipse et alii omnes, qui eas audiebant, contristati sunt valde et usque ad lachrymarum effusionem compuncti. Rex autem confessus est in veritate, quod compulsus ab episcopo Wintoniensi et Petro de Rivallis et aliis consiliariis suis jusserat sigillum suum apponi in quibusdam literis sibi præsentatis, sed tenorem illarum se nunquam audisse cum juramento affirmavit. Ad hoc respondens archiepiscopus dixit, 'Scrutamini, rex, conscientiam vestram, quia omnes illi, qui literas illas mitti procuraverunt et hujus proditionis conscii fuerunt, rei sunt de morte Marescalli, ac si illum propriis manibus occidissent.' Tunc rex, habito consilio, fecit vocare per literas episcopum Wintoniensem, Petrum de Rivallis, [1] Stephanum de Segrave et Robertum Passelewe, ut venirent ad festum sancti Johannis ratiocinium

Peter de Rivaulx, Stephen de Segrave, and Robert Passelewe called to account.

[1] *Stephanum de Segrave.*] See in the Archæologia, xv. p. 209, a copy of an original charter of exemption from forest laws in Alkmundbury, Huntingdonshire, granted to Stephen de Segrave only on the 2nd March previous to this summons.

A.D. 1234. reddituri de thesauris suis receptis pariter et expensis, sed et de sigillo suo, quod male tractaverant, ipso penitus ignorante, mandavit, ut tunc venirent responsuri et juri parituri; sed illi, proprias conscientias habentes suspectas in omnibus, ex una parte regem, ex altera vero fratres et amicos metuebant Marescalli, cujus necem procuraverant. Unde ad pacem ecclesiæ confugientes episcopus et Petrus de Rivallis in ecclesia cathedrali apud Wintoniam latitabant, a conspectu hominum sese penitus subtrahentes; Stephanus vero de Segrave in ecclesia sanctæ Mariæ apud Legecestriam delituit, et, qui prius a clericatu ad militiam confugit, nunc e contrario ad clericatus officium reversus coronam, quam reliquerat inconsulto episcopo, renovavit; Robertus quoque Passelewe ad latibulum divertit ignotum, ita quod illum Romam petiisse multi contendebant; nec etiam ad mandatum regis limina ecclesiæ ausi sunt egredi, inde argumentum suspicionis trahentes, quod inimici eorum, qui villas suas et ædificia cum horreis frugibus plenis et cætera quæque sibi damnosa concremaverant, non parcerent corporibus suis, si nocendi opportunitatem haberent.

Quod rex exegit ratiocinium a Petro de Rivallis.

Peter de Rivaulx appears before the king.

Tandem Eadmundus, Cantuariensis archiepiscopus, qui pacis mediator erat hujus dissidii, impetravit a rege, ut sub salvo conductu ipsius et episcoporum possent ad diem certum coram illo venire responsuri super exactionibus prædictis, ut omnis in regno dissensionis occasio sopiretur. Statuit igitur illis diem rex pridie idus Julii apud Westmonasterium, ut breviter dicatur, ubi sub protectione archiepiscopi et episcoporum ad regis præsentiam sunt perducti;

inter quos Petrus de Rivallis primus in causam vocatus apparuit coram rege in habitu clericali cum tonsura et lata corona, quem reverenter salutavit, cum justiciariis in banco sedentem. Quem rex torvo respiciens oculo, 'O proditor,' inquit, 'per iniquum consilium tuum sigillum meum ignorans apposui in literis de proditione comitis Marescalli; per vestrum etiam pravum consilium ipsum et alios de regno meo homines naturales exulavi et eorum animos a me pariter et amorem averti; per pravum consilium vestrum guerram contra illos movi, per quam thesaurum meum et hominum meorum divitias consumpsi.' Exegit ab eo præterea rex ratiocinium de thesauro suo et custodiis puerorum nobilium et eschaetarum, cum aliis proventibus multis, quæ ad coronam spectabant. Cumque hæc et alia multa rex ab eo sub proditionis nomine exegisset, nihil omnino de objectis sibi criminibus negavit, sed coram rege in terram corruens per hæc verba ejus misericordiam imploravit; 'Domine rex,' inquit, 'nutritus sum a vobis et in bonis temporalibus dives factus, ne confundas hominem quem creasti; sed concede saltem tempus deliberandi, ut de rebus exactis competenter vobis valeam reddere rationem.' Cui rex, 'Mittam te in turrim Londoniarum, ut ibi deliberes, donec mihi satisfacias competenter.' Ad hæc Petrus, 'Domine, clericus sum,' inquit, 'nec debeo incarcerari vel sub laicorum custodia deputari.' Respondit rex, 'Ecce præsens est archiepiscopus, qui si pro te fidejubere voluerit, tradam te illi, ut mihi satisfaciat de exactionibus supradictis.' Ut igitur breviter dicatur, misit eum rex in turri memorata, accipiens in manu sua omnes laicas possessiones ejus, quia sub habitu clericali lorica erat armatus, quod cleri- A.D. 1234.

A.D. 1234. cum non decebat. Fuit autem in turri Londoniarum die Jovis et sequenti die Veneris, et tunc ab archiepiscopo liberatus apud Wintoniam perductus est et in ecclesia cathedrali dimissus.

Quod Stephanus de Segrave apparuit coram rege.

Stephen de Segrave answers before the king.

Apparuit autem eodem die in regis præsentia Stephanus de Segrave, veniens sub protectione archiepiscopi, de rebus sibi impositis responsurus; qui cum staret in judicio juri paiturus, increpavit eum rex sub nomine nequissimi proditoris de omnibus articulis, quibus increpaverat Petrum de Rivallis, hoc etiam adjiciens, quod consilium dederat ei, ut Hubertum de Burgo ab officio justiciarii amoveret, incarceraret, patibulo suspenderet, et nobiles de regno homines exularet. Cumque hæc et alia multa ei imposuisset flagitia, exegit ab eo ratiocinium ab officio justiciarii, quod sub eo administraverat post Hubertum de Burgo, de rebus perceptis pariter et expensis. Super his autem archiepiscopus et quidam episcopi impetrarunt inducias a rege usque ad festum sancti Michaelis, ut deliberandi tempus haberet. De pravis quoque consiliis sibi imputatis hoc regi respondit, quod, cum plures haberet consiliarios, quod male gestum fuerat sibi soli non debuit imputari. Robertus vero Passelewe, qui post Walterum Karleolensem [1]officium thesaurarii administraverat, abscondit se nec repertus fuit a quærentibus animam ejus.

[1] *Officium thesaurarii.*] Hugh de Pateshulle, clerk, son of Simeon de Pateshulle, was appointed to succeed him in the office; Paris.

Quod comes Britanniæ a rege Anglorum recessit.

Eodem anno, instante nativitate sancti Johannis Baptistæ, quo tempore erant exspirandæ treugæ in Britannia inter reges Francorum et Anglorum, rex Anglorum [1]misit comiti Britanniæ milites sexaginta et Wallenses duo millia, qui terræ illius infirmiora communirent. Rex autem Francorum, treugis evolutis, congregavit exercitum copiosum ex omnibus viribus suis, et quoddam castellum comitis Britanniæ obsidione vallavit. Milites quidem regis Anglorum et Wallenses venientibus Francigenis occurrentes equos quorundam hostium suorum peremerunt, ex equitibus pedites multos fecerunt, bigas et vehicula, quibus victualia deferebantur et arma, invadentes ceperunt, equos et spolia rapuerunt, et damna eis non modica inferentes absque sui læsione ad propria sunt reversi. At rex Francorum, ex damno sibi illato perturbatus, divisis agminibus, undique Britanniam invasit et Britannos gravi afflictione contrivit. Comes autem in arcto positus treugas usque ad festum Omnium sanctorum sub tali forma postulans impetravit, ut sciret interim si rex Anglorum, cui confœderatus erat, corporaliter vellet in ejus succursum venire; pro his siquidem treugis obtinendis sub tali forma tradidit regi Francorum tria castella optima, quod, si rex Anglorum infra terminum memoratum ad liberationem terræ suæ non veniret corporaliter, ipse tunc regi Francorum terram Britanniæ totam cum castellis et urbibus ex integro resignaret. Treugis autem in hunc modum confirmatis, comes Britanniæ milites regis An-

A.D. 1234. War in Britanny.

[1] *Misit comiti Britanniæ.*] In Rymer, i. p. 211, *seq.* are two writs, 'de auxilio comiti Britanniæ ferendo,' dated the 20th of April and 15th of May.

A.D. 1234. War in Britanny.

gliæ et Wallenses remisit in Angliam, a quibus rex præmunitus est, ne ultra thesauros regni effunderet pro defensione comitis Britanniæ, quia jam fœdus iniit cum rege Francorum, ut, diffugio a rege Anglorum facto, ad ejus pacem veniret, nihil exspectans nisi ut thesauros Angliæ exhausisset. Ipse siquidem comes, parvo post emenso temporis spatio, in Angliam veniens regi suggessit, quod pro treugis a rege Francorum obtinendis quicquid in auro habuit vel argento effuderat, petens sibi restitutionem fieri quindecim millium marcarum, quas consumpserat pro defensione terræ suæ et Anglorum regis honore. Ad hæc respondens rex dixit, quod per eum treugæ non erant obtentæ vel confirmatæ, adjiciens insuper, quod ad defensionem Britanniæ non sufficiebant Angliæ thesauri, quod jam per triennium comprobavit, nec voluit tam laboriosis expensis amplius fatigari; sed, si comes Britanniæ hoc sufficere crederet, ipse mitteret quatuor comites de regno Angliæ cum tot militibus et viris armatis, qui sufficerent ad defensionem terræ illius contra regem Francorum. Hæc audiens comes Britanniæ iratus a rege recessit, et transiens in terram suam continuo ad regem Francorum confugit; et, ut proditionem contra regem factam sub qualicumque schemate palliaret, venit ad regem Francorum laqueum in collo gerens, et proditorem se esse recognoscens reddidit ei Britanniam totam cum municipiis et castellis. Cui rex Francorum dicitur respondisse, 'Licet, proditor nequissime, mortem promerueris turpissimam, parcam tamen tuæ nobilitati ut vivas, et dabo Britanniam filio tuo ad vitam suam, ita ut post mortem ejus reges Francorum terræ illius hæredes existant.' Comes autem rebus omnibus ut proditor spoliatus

per internuntios regi Anglorum reddidit homa- A.D. 1234.
gium suum, quod ei pridem fecerat; et rex e converso cepit in manu sua omnia jura comitis Britanniæ in Anglia, et honores ad illum spectantes.

Miraculum de avaritia cujusdam episcopi.

Hoc denique anno, qui tertius erat sterilium Legend.
annorum, exitialis mortalitas crudeliter ubique sæviebat et fames; quæ pestilentiæ, tam exigentibus peccatis, quam ex præcedente aeris intemperie et agrorum generali sterilitate, absque dubio pervenerunt. Pauperes vero diversis in locis ob inediam tabescentes moriebantur, non invenientes Samaritanum, qui eos stabulario pascendos committeret vel vulnera mortalitatis curaret. Eleemosyna quidem, quæ etiam divitias augere solet, ubique deserta languebat; dum divites, qui in omnibus bonis temporalibus abundabant, tanta cæcitate percussi erant, quod homines Christianos ad imaginem Dei creatos mori ex alimentorum inopia permiserunt. Cæci quidem fuerunt, qui non ex dono Dei, sed propria industria, jactant se divitias acquisivisse. Et, si hoc quoque turpe fuit omnibus generaliter Christianis, turpissimum tamen exstitit episcopis et ecclesiarum prælatis, unde inter primos ex vitio avaritiæ notabiles Walterum, Eboracensem archiepiscopum, pono cæteris in exemplum; ad quem cum venissent plurimorum maneriorum præpositi pariter et ministri ostendentes, quod in locis diversis multum habuit bladum quinquennali jam tempore inveteratum, quod nimis habebant suspectum, ut vel a soricibus esset corrosum vel corruptione aliqua putrefactum, archiepiscopus autem, non habens in tanta necessitate nec ad Dominum nec ad pauperes respectum, præcepit

A.D. 1234. Legend. ministris suis ac præpositis, ut traderent frumentum vetus rusticis de maneriis suis, qui pro veteri novum sibi redderent post autumnum. Contigit ergo cum præpositus ejusdem archiepiscopi in villa de Ripun bladum circuiret, extra horrea positum illud trituraret, apparuerunt ubique in garbis capita vermium, serpentium scilicet, colubrorum, et bufonum terribilium; unde ministri, qui cum præposito ad hoc spectaculum convenerant, fugientes timuerunt ne a vermibus læderentur. Cumque hæc omnia archiepiscopo fuerant intimata, misit senescallos suos nimio rubore confusus, ut viderent, quid facere opus esset. At illi venientes ad locum, non obstante vermium multitudine, scalas applicaverunt ad bladum, et rusticos quosdam compulerunt, ut ascenderent et frumentum detegerent; qui cum ad summitatem pervenissent, exivit de blado fumus nigerrimus et fœtor quidam infernalis et intolerabilis, unde cum festinatione descendentes, ut periculum mortis evaderent, testificati sunt se nunquam antea talem sensisse fœtorem; vocem etiam audierunt sibi dicentem, ne ad bladum manus apponerent, quia archiepiscopus et omnia quæ habebat diaboli possessio erat. Videns autem senescallus, et alii qui cum illo erant, ex vermium multitudine grave periculum imminere, fecerunt murum altum in circuitu bladi diabolici et ignem adhibentes in gyrum omnia combusserunt, ne vermes exeuntes totam inficerent regionem.

Item miraculum de avaritia cujusdam presbyteri.

Legend. Erat in eadem Eboracensi provincia sacerdos quidam et vicarius dives valde et in officio prædicationis sanctæ magnus, sed tamen avarus, qui in hac æstate mortaliter infirmabatur secundum judicium præsentium medicorum. Venerunt au-

tem ad eum visitandum propter famam religionis, quam juxta opinionem totius regionis habebat, vicini ejus abbates et priores, ignorantibus cunctis, quod lupus esset in fabula et anguis esset in herba. Cum autem æger ille prælatos ad se venientes reverenter salutaret, nullam tamen de salute animæ suæ fecit mentionem, nisi ob hoc, quod prælatos illos diligens legavit illis bladum non modicum, quod in curia sua extra horrea positum habebat, dividens illud singulis, prout sibi melius competere videbatur. Cumque abbates illi et priores ad præceptum ægrotantis exirent, ut bladum sibi legatum viderent, conspexerunt juxta congeries illas quendam hominem stantem, vicario, quem in domo reliquerant lethaliter ægrotantem, in indumentis et forma corporis per omnia similem, qui sibi nimis acerbe loquens dicebat, 'Quid hic,' inquit, 'quæritis? Sciatis certissime quod bladum hoc totum, et ille, cujus esse videtur, possessio mea est; quia vicarius, qui illud vobis legavit, homo meus est et omnia quæ habet mea sunt, ut qui junctis manibus mihi homagium fecit. Et noveritis indubitanter, quod die quarto morte morietur, et tunc plene recuperabo quod meum est, et quem divitem feci cum pauper esset.' Audientes autem hoc abbates et qui cum eis erant, nimio terrore percussi, reversi sunt ad vicarium, quem invenerunt jam in extremis laborantem, cui omnia quæ audierant et viderant per ordinem referebant. Et cum hæc coram illo replicassent, quod homo diaboli esset, respondit vicarius, 'Verum,' inquit, 'dicit, quia jam elapsis viginti annis, cum pauper essem, pro dignitate terrena et lucro temporali homagium diabolo feci, qui vobiscum locutus est.' Et continuo ad lamenta pœnitentiæ et confessionis remedium

A.D. 1234. Legend.

A.D. 1234. Legend. confugiens diabolo abrenuntiavit et omnibus operibus ejus et pompis, et confestim, miseratione divina illum respiciente, ab omni corporali molestia sanus effectus est, ut congruum haberet spatium pœnitendi; unde manifeste constat, quod non vult Deus mortem peccatoris, sed ut magis convertatur et vivat.

De miraculo valde laudabili, quod hoc anno contigit.

Legend. Licet[1] in suprascriptis duobus capitulis sit evidenter expressum in quantum avaritiæ vitium omnibus Christianis detestandum existat, adjiciam adhuc et tertium, ut in ore duorum vel trium testium stet omne verbum. Cum hic annus, de quo prædiximus, pauperibus crudelis et sævus in diebus suis usque ad Julium mensem processisset, pauperes, quos diuturna fames afflixerat, ad agros proruunt fructiferos catervatim, ubi spicas frugum, licet nondum maturas, carpentes et manibus illas tremulis confricantes infelicem vitam, quæ vix in eorum pectoribus palpitabat, protrahere satagebant; nec id multum erat in pauperibus reprehensibile, cum legatur in apostolorum actibus Christi discipulos hoc fecisse. Sed rustici quarundam villarum, qui ex avaritia inopiam semper habent suspectam, per agros suos transeuntes, cum hoc pium et necessarium deprehendissent furtum, perturbati sunt valde; unde contigit, quod homines villæ, quæ Alboldeslea dicitur et in Cantebregensi provincia sita est, cum sequenti die Dominica, quæ tunc fuit decimo septimo kalendas Augusti, ad ecclesiam convenissent, presbyterum tumultuosis clamoribus rogabant, ut incontinenti omnes illos, qui spicas in agro carpentes bladum furati fuerant,

[1] *Licet.*] Raynaldi has inserted this and the previous accounts in his Annals, ii. p. 106.

anathematis sententia innodaret. Et, cum ad hoc rustici omnes vehementer instarent, vir quidam ex eadem villa religiosus et pius, cum videret presbyterum ad ferendam sententiam paratum, surrexit, et ex parte Dei omnipotentis et sanctorum omnium presbyterum adjuravit, ut ipsum, et omnes quas habuit in campo fruges, ab illa sententia sequestraret; addidit etiam, quod bene placuit sibi quicquid pauperes inedia compulsi de suis ceperant frugibus, et quod residuum erat Domino commendavit. Quid ergo? Instantibus pertinaciter cæteris in stulto proposito suo, cum presbyter compulsus ferre sententiam inchoasset, tanta subito exorta est in aere tempestas, tonitrui scilicet ac fulminis concussio, ventorum ac turbinum conflatio, pluviarum et grandinum inundatio, quod, quasi in momento turbine flatu diabolico agitata, fruges in agris, armenta cum arboribus ac cæteris quibusque crescentibus et avibus in campis, ita opprimendo contrivit, quod velut in curribus et in equis conculcata et in terra demersa videbantur. Visi sunt autem in aere sursum angeli [1]Sathanæ volitantes, qui hujus tempestatis ministri fuisse credebantur. Sed, cum justis ac piis stabilis semper sit inventa divina benignitas, vir ille simplex et justus, cum, peracta tempestate omnibus vicinis suis nimis damnosa, visitare pergeret agros suos, invenit prædia sua et jugera, licet inter terras aliorum permixta, ita ab omni tempestate intacta et illæsa, ut nullum in eis læsionis vestigium appareret; unde omni luce clarius constat, quod sicut Deo gloria in excelsis canitur ab angelis, ita et in terra pax est hominibus bonæ voluntatis. Inchoavit autem hæc tempestas in A.D. 1234. Legend.

[1] *Sathanæ volitantes.*] 'In modum nigrorum satyrarum;' Paris.

A.D. 1234. finibus Bedefordiæ, et sic per insulam Eliensem et Norfolc ad orientem tendens in mare descendit. Sæviebant siquidem hoc anno multæ consimiles tempestates in locis diversis, quæ multis tam terribiles quam damnosæ fuerunt; sed et hoc similiter notabile videtur, quod reliquiæ frugum, quæ tempestate completa in agris remanserant, ita fœtidæ erant inventæ, quod non equus vel asinus, non bos aut porcus, non auca vel gallina comedere illas voluerunt, cum sæpe eis fuissent ad comedendum oblatæ.

De discordia inter dominum papam et Romanos exorta.

Dissensions at Rome between the pope and the citizens.

Eodem[1] anno exorta est Romæ gravis dissensio inter dominum papam et cives Romanos his de causis. Usurpant sibi cives memorati ex antiquo jure, quod Romanus pontifex non potest aliquem ex civibus excommunicare, vel urbem pro quolibet excessu supponere interdicto. Ad hoc dicit summus pontifex, quod minor est Deo et major hominibus, ergo major civibus [2]Romanis; et, cum eorum sit pater spiritualis, debet et de jure potest filios corrigere delinquentes, ut sibi in fide Christi subjectos, unde de jure potest rationabilibus de causis eos excommunicare et civitatem interdicere. Item, potestates urbis et senatores annuum tributum exigunt ab ecclesia Romana, quod eis, tam ex novo quam ex antiquo jure, Romani pontifices persolvebant, de quo etiam semper usque ad istius papæ tempora in possessione fuerunt. Ad hoc dicit papa, quod si ecclesia Romana temporibus persecutionis, pro defensione sua et pro bono pacis, aliquando majores civitatis in donis gratuitis liberaliter re-

[1] *Eodem anno.*] Raynaldi, Annal. ii. p. 117.

[2] *Romanis.*] 'Vel etiam rege vel imperatore;' Paris.

spexit, non debet hoc in consuetudinem trahi, quia illa sola consuetudo tenenda est, quæ jure constat et ratione subnixa; et, quod his omnibus majus est, Christus in cruce suo sanguine ita liberam fecit illam, quod nec portæ inferæ prævalebunt adversus eam. His igitur et aliis de causis inter dominum papam et cives Romanos lite contestata, idem papa cum suis cardinalibus exivit ab urbe et apud urbem Perusium moram facturus divertit. At Romani contra eum invalescentes quædam ipsius ædificia in civitate prostraverunt, unde a papa excommunicati fuerunt; qui etiam, ipsum imperatorem cum in sui favorem attraxerat, congregavit exercitum copiosum, ut impetum reprimeret Romanorum. Tunc[1] exercitus imperatoris et exercitus summi pontificis simul convenientes casalia eorundem Romanorum per gyrum urbis posita numero octodecim prostraverunt et vineas succiderunt, unde cives ipsi perturbati exierunt ab urbe octavo idus Octobris, viri ut dicitur armati centum millia, ut civitatem Viterbii, quæ ad jus domini papæ spectabat, spoliarent et igne spoliatam concremarent; sed, cum irrationabile vulgus civitatis absque disciplina militari exirent et agminibus incederent dissolutis, acies militares ipsius papæ et imperatoris ab insidiis prorumpentes irruunt in Romanos et ex eis magnam stragem, non tamen sine suorum læsione, fecerunt. Ceciderunt autem hinc inde ad triginta millia armatorum; sed Romani tamen majorem perpessi sunt stragem, ut qui agminibus dissi-

A.D. 1234. Dissensions at Rome.

[1] *Tunc exercitus imperatoris.*] Paris here reads, 'Tunc exercitus summi pontificis, cui præerat comes Tholosanus, quærens gratiam, et episcopus Wintoniensis, quem dominus papa callide vocavit ad exercitum suum regendum, tum propter thesauri abundantiam, tum propter militandi peritiam;' see below, p. 327.

A.D. 1234 patis ad suam civitatem præcipites confugerunt. Exasperatum est quidem cor eorundem Romanorum nimis adversus dominum papam, quia in illo conflictu de civitate multi nobiles corruerunt. Duravit diu ista dissensio inter eos, sed Romani tamen cives semper aleam Martis sibi contrariam invenerunt. Eodem tempore obiit Hugo Foliot, Herefordensis antistes, et successit ei magister Radulphus de Maidenestan, vir in literali doctrina famosus, qui ab Eadmundo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus consecrationis suscepit.

De Judæis, qui puerum Christianum circumciderunt.

A.D. 1235. Outrage of the Jews at Norwich. Anno Domini MCCXXXV. rex Anglorum Henricus anno regni sui decimo nono ad Natale tenuit curiam suam apud Westmonasterium, præsentibus episcopis et principibus regni; et eodem tempore septem Judæi adducti sunt coram rege apud Westmonasterium, qui in Norwico puerum quendam, quem furatum jam per annum a conspectu Christianorum absconderant, circumciderunt, [1] volentes eum crucifigere in solennitate Paschali; sed super hoc facto convicti in regis præsentia confessi sunt rei veritatem, et sic de vita sua et membris in ipsius voluntate sub carcerali custodia remanserunt. Eodem tempore obiit Hugo, Lincolniensis episcopus, omnium virorum religiosorum inimicus, septimo idus Februarii, et sepultus est apud Lincolniam in ecclesia cathedrali quarto idus ejusdem; cui successit magister Robertus Grosseteste, vir ho-

[1] *Volentes eum crucifigere.*] Holinshed relates the same thing of them, as happening in the same town in 1145; Paris also says, that four Jews were hanged in Norwich for the same offence in 1240. In 1255 the same thing was done at Lincoln, when the Jew, in whose house the body of the victim was discovered, confessed that almost every year they sacrificed a child in a similar manner;' Tyrrell, ii. p. 972.

nestus et religiosus atque in lege divina suffi- A.D. 1235.
cienter eruditus, qui apud Radingum ab Eadmundo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, munus consecrationis suscepit tertio nonas Junii, reclamantibus monachis Cantuariensibus ne alibi consecraretur quam in ecclesia Cantuariensi, sed id tandem fieri hac vice permiserunt, ita tamen quod non ad consuetudinem de cætero traheretur. Per idem tempus, post purificationem beatæ Mariæ, concordati sunt cum rege Stephanus de Segrave et Robertus Passelewe, datis mille marcis; nec tamen in pristinam regis gratiam sunt recepti. Circa eosdem dies Henricus de Sandfort, Roffensis antistes, diem clausit extremum sexto kalendas Martii; post cujus obitum monachi Roffenses elegerunt magistrum Richardum [1] de Wendene, virum in liberali scientia eruditum; qui Eadmundo, Cantuariensi archiepiscopo, ad electionem confirmandam, a præfatis monachis præsentatus non fuit admissus, unde monachi domini papæ præsentiam appellarunt.

De morte Willelmi abbatis et de successione J. sancti Albani [abbatis] XXIII.

Eodem anno, in [2] crastino sancti Matthiæ apo- Election of John, abbot of S. Alban's.
stoli, obiit Willelmus, abbas ecclesiæ beati Albani, postquam eandem rexerat ecclesiam annis viginti et mensibus fere tribus, et sepultus est tertio kalendas Martii in capitulo [3] monachorum. Deinde conventus, impetrata a rege licentia ab-

[1] *De Wendene.*] 'De Wende' in *C.*

[2] *Crastino sancti Matthiæ.*] 24th of February.

[3] *Monachorum.*] Paris adds, that three monks were then sent to the king for leave to proceed to a new election, and that 'obtinuerunt etiam fratres a domino rege gratiam habendi totam domum suam in manu sua, exceptis eschaetis et ecclesiarum donationibus, a die obitus prædicti abbatis usque in annum completum.'

A.D. 1235. batem eligendi, in crastino annunciationis beatæ Mariæ elegerunt solenniter Johannem, priorem de Hertford, monachum suum professum, in pastorem animarum suarum, qui regi præsentatus ab eo favorabiliter receptus est Dominica in ramis palmarum; et tunc missi sunt monachi ecclesiæ ejusdem et clerici ad curiam Romanam, ad quam immediate spectat, ut electionem rite factam impetrarent a sede apostolica confirmari, ubi sine difficultate [1]electione confirmata cum benedictione apostolica reversi sunt in regionem suam.[2] Post hæc autem idem electus in crastino nativitatis beatæ Mariæ, in Dominica die, a Rogero, Londoniensi episcopo, benedictionem abbatis suscepit; medio autem tempore, quo hæc omnia facta sunt, remansit abbatia cum omnibus pertinentiis sub custodia conventus ex beneficio regis, hospitalitate integra remanente. Eodem anno Judæi privilegium impetraverunt a pontifice Romano, ne a regibus aut principibus pro exactione pecuniæ turpiter tractarentur vel in carcere ponerentur.

---

[1] *Electione confirmata.*] Gregory's letter to the bishops of Ely and London is printed in the collection of Councils, e Typ. Reg. xxviii. p. 288.

[2] *Suam.*] The mode of election is thus described by Paris: 'Confessores scilicet tres vel quatuor jubentur districte in virtute Spiritus Sancti, utpote qui cognoscunt corda et renes singulorum, ut ipsi eligant duodecim de conventu fratres electos, scilicet fideles et peritos, ut ipsi vel de seipsis, vel de ipso conventu ecclesiæ, vel de cellis, unum idoneum eligant in abbatem. Ut autem eorum electio et labor deliberationis super hoc negotio irritus non habeatur, litteras habent de conventu penes se sigillo conventus roboratas, ut ipse conventus illum, quem ipsi duodecim eligent in abbatem, sine contradictione unanimiter suscipient et gratanter. Unde series negotii sic prosecuta a summo pontifice et omnibus audientibus cum admiratione est commendata, et, facta examinatione, auctoritate apostolica confirmata. Veruntamen, quia de persona electi papæ non constabat, dedit summus pontifex in mandatis Eliensi et Londinensi episcopis, ut, rite facta ex persona electi examinatione, eundem in abbatem confirmatum benedicerent, plene in omnem tam spiritualium quam temporalium administrationem instituentes.'

Per idem tempus Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, ad mandatum domini papæ [1]Romam profectus est, instante solennitate Paschali, ut guerram ejus jam diu contra Romanos accensam ordinaret; erat enim juvenis in obsequio Richardi magnifici bellatoris atque Johannis regum Angliæ, cum quibus prius didicerat usum loricæ quam pontificalis planetæ, et acies castrorum disponere quam verbum fidei prædicare. A.D. 1235. The bishop of Winchester goes to Rome.

De prædicatione crucis.

Hoc denique anno, qui est annus octavus postquam constitutæ sunt treugæ decennales in terra promissionis inter Romanum imperatorem Fredericum et Babyloniæ Soldanum, facta est [2]prædicatio crucis per orbem universum Christiana fide insignitum, ad commonitionem et instantiam domini papæ Gregorii, qui literas in diversas orbis partes sub hac forma direxit; Preaching in behalf of a crusade.

Authenticum papæ.

'Gregorius[3] episcopus, servus servorum Dei, universis Domini nostri Jesu Christi fidelibus per regnum Angliæ constitutis, ad quos literæ istæ pervenerint, salutem et apostolicam benedictionem. Rachel [suum] videns in veræ fidei cognitione principium accrescentium in salutem, et filiorum dexteræ pia mater sancta Romana ecclesia, cujus magna est quasi mare de suæ prolis internecione contritio, vocem lamentationis, fletus et luctus emisit hactenus et emittit, quam audiri cu- The pope's letter on the crusade.

[1] *Romam profectus est.*] 'In cujus auxilium Petrus, Wintoniensis episcopus, grandem executionem (exercitum) de militibus et balistariis usque ad Perusium perduxit;' Chron. Dunst. p. 228.

[2] *Prædicatio.*] For the preaching of John of Vicenza, see Fleury, Hist. Eccl. xvii.

[3] *Gregorius.*] Compare the letter printed in the collection of Councils, xxviii. p. 309; see also Michaud, tom. iv. p. 51, *seqq.*

A.D. 1235. The pope's letter on the crusade.

pimus in excelso, ut per diem et noctem fidelium oculi doloris lachrymam deducentes non taceant, et, donec misereatur Dominus, non quiescant. Lamentatur autem, quia domus cælestis panis, mons Syon, unde lex exiit, civitas Regis magni, de qua dicta sunt multa gloriosa, terra quam Dei Filius fuso pro nobis suo sanguine consecravit, regni robur et pulchritudinem perdidit. Flet, quia quondam libera sub impiæ tyrannidis jugo servit. Luget, quia, ubi pacem multitudo militiæ cælestis cecinit, ibi pressura gentis immundissimæ scandala, simultates et schismata suscitavit, ac innovans exordia præliorum misit ad desiderabilia manum suam, sacerdotii et sacrorum ordinum pias leges et ipsius naturæ jura relegans a templo Domini, diversis ibi spurcitiis et abominationibus introductis; et ideo Hierusalem in suis derisa sabbatis obsorduit, quasi polluta menstruis inter hostes. Nam licet dudum carissimo in Christo filio nostro Frederico, Romanorum imperatori, semper augusto, Hierusalem et Siciliæ regi illustri, civitas eadem, præter templum Domini, fuerit restituta, tamen, quia Deus omnipotens tunc magnificentius agere cum populo Christiano non adjecit, imperator prædictus treugas iniit cum Soldano, quarum terminus adeo est vicinus, quod tempus medium præparationi vix sufficere creditur, nisi ad quæque necessaria per promptitudinem, spem et fervorem fidei festinetur. Ad ejus ergo succursum nullum tædeat peregrinari, et pro patria certare cum spe victoriæ, pro corona mori, pro vita, pro Illo sustinere ad tempus dura et tristia, qui, confusione contempta, sputo conspersus, colaphis cæsus, flagellis afflictus, spinis coronatus, coram Pilato sisti, tanquam multorum criminum reus, pertulit, ad ultimum crucifixus

et felle potatus, lancea perforatus, emittens cum clamore valido spiritum, pro conditionis humanæ viribus reparandis, cursum præsentis vitæ saturatus injuriis consummavit. Hic est autem, ut altius repetamus, qui de Paternæ solio gloriæ, cælis mirabiliter inclinatis, ad nostræ mortalitatis ima descendens non dedignatus est Deus homo, Creator creatura fieri, suscipere Dominus formam servi, ut, qui non poteramus per nostram justitiam sperare veniam, consecuti per hæc gratiam inauditam, hæredes Dei, cohæredes autem Christi, divinitatis consortium, felicitatis æternæ participium sortiremur. Et, licet per gratiam adoptati quotidie causas ingratitudinis cumulemus, Ipse tamen abundat in divitiis bonitatis, dum propter diversitatem voluntatum, virium facultatem, delinquentibus diversa pro tempore satisfaciendi genera contulit, varia medendi languoribus remedia suscitavit; dum terram, in qua nasci, mori et resurgere voluit, tamdiu ad exercitationem fidelium ab infidelibus detineri permittit, cum non sit abbreviata manus Domini, nec virtus ejus in aliquo diminuta, quin etiam, sicut fecit cuncta de nihilo, liberare valeat in momento. Sed illas compassionis et [1]dilectionis gratias exquirit ab homine, quibus, ad omnis consummationis finem legisque plenitudinem ostendendam, Ipse prior homini perdito et damnato voluit miseratus adesse, qui nullatenus permisisset manus impias contra [2]pios usque adeo roborari, nisi et suam vindicari de nostra confusione providisset injuriam et servari nostram de sua victoria disciplinam. Sub hac autem occasione delicti plurimi, satisfacere pro modo criminum aliter non valentes, velut in profundo malorum penitus desperas-

A.D. 1235. The pope's letter on the crusade.

[1] *Dilectionis.*] 'Dilationis' in MS.

[2] *Pios.*] 'Impios' in MS.

A.D. 1235. The pope's letter on the crusade.

sent, nisi occurrisset eis hæc tabula; nisi per hoc compendium, suis positis pro Christo animabus, consummati brevitate multorum temporum spatia complevissent. Multi enim, invenire locum ubi steterunt pedes Domini cupientes, prius ad bravium sine cursu, et primo ad coronam sine gladio pervenerunt; Illo suum remunerante militem, qui solam in oblatione considerat voluntatem. Nos autem, de omnipotentis Dei misericordia et beatorum Petri et Pauli apostolorum ejus auctoritate confisi, ex illa quam nobis, licet indignis, Deus ligandi atque solvendi contulit potestatem, omnibus, qui laborem istum in propriis personis et sumptibus subierint, vel qui viros idoneos cum suis expensis pro se destinaverint, sed et illis, qui in alienis expensis in propriis personis accesserint, vel qui de bonis suis ad subventionem terræ sanctæ congrue ministraverint, aut qui circa prædicta negotia consilium vel auxilium opportunum impenderint, plenam suorum peccaminum, de quibus veraciter fuerint corde contriti et ore confessi, veniam indulgemus. Statuimus etiam, ut omnes, sive clerici sive laici, post crucem assumptam sub beati Petri ac nostra protectione securi et eorum bona omnia permaneant, necnon sub archiepiscoporum, episcoporum et omnium ecclesiæ prælatorum defensione consistant, donec de ipsorum obitu vel reditu certissime cognoscatur; in quo utique termino nullus cruce signatus, sive a Judæis sive a Christianis, ad præstationem usurarum compellatur. Datum Spoleti, secundo nonas Septembris, pontificatus nostri anno octavo.' Assignati sunt autem prædicatores a domino papa in opus crucis per orbem universum fratres de ordine Minorum ac Prædicatorum, cum magistris in theologia perfectis, qui in opus evangelii

profecti prædicaverunt, ubique Domino coope- A.D. 1235.
rante et sermonem confirmante sequentibus signis; habuerunt siquidem ex mandato apostolico provinciarum archidiaconos et decanos, qui in locis singulis parochianos, viros et mulieres, convenire fecerunt, ita ut nullus remaneret, sub pœna anathematis, quin eorum prædicationibus interesset.

Miraculum de muliere contracta.

Contigit autem hoc anno, tertio idus Junii, in Legend.
villa de Clare, ubi magister Rogerus de [1] Lawes, frater quidam de ordine Minorum, pro negotio crucis evangelium in Dominica prædicavit, ut mulier quædam omni membrorum officio jam per triennium destituta, pœnam metuens excommunicationis, paucum quod habuit argentum cuidam viro sibi vicino contulit, qui eam in humeris suis ad locum prædicationis portaret; ubi cum gemens jaceret et lugens quousque vir Dei prædicationem complevisset, motus compassione super gemitibus mulieris, quam lugentem jacere conspexit, accessit ad eam atque causam ad quid illuc venisset inquisivit. Quæ cum diceret, quod metu excommunicationis ad locum prædicationis delata fuisset, præcepit ut iret in domum suam, nesciens quod membris omnibus esset dissoluta. Sed cum adstantes vicini ejus testarentur, quod omnium erat usu membrorum jam elapso triennio privata, interrogabat si crederet quod Deus potens erat ut sibi, si vellet, redderet sanitatem; cui illa, 'Credo, domine.' Tunc vir Dei mulierem inter brachia complectens levavit eam fiducialiter et ait, 'Sanet te Deus omnipotens, in quem credis.' Et, cum mulier ad vocem jubentis

[1] *Lawes.*] 'Lewes in Paris.

A.D. 1235. se erigeret confidens in Domino, cœperunt ossa ejus et nervi dum surgeret ita subito crepitare, ut visum sit adstantibus, quod omnia ossa ejus in frusta comminuta fuissent; et sic mulier sanitati pristinæ restituta abiit in domum suam exultans et magnificans Deum, qui talem servo suo contulit [1]potestatem.

Quod imperator sororem regis Angliæ postulavit.

The emperor asks the princess Isabella in marriage.

Eodem anno, mense Februario, venerunt apud Westmonasterium duo Templarii cum militibus et aliis nuntiis solemnibus ab imperatore Frederico ad regem Anglorum missi, ferentes [2]literas ipsius auro bullatas, in quibus postulavit Isabel sororem regis sibi matrimonio copulandam. Venientes autem septimo kalendas Martii ad regem petierunt literarum et suæ postulationis responsum sibi dari, ut regis voluntatem domino imperatori possent celeriter nuntiare. Rex autem Anglorum super dicto negotio sollicitus cum episcopis et regni sui magnatibus cœpit tractare per triduum, qui rem diligenter examinantes in hoc unanimiter consenserunt, ut puella imperatori daretur; et sic tertio kalendas Martii [3]respondens matrimonium petitum concessit. At nuntii cum postulassent, ut sibi liceret puellam videre, misit rex legatos fide dignos pro sorore sua ad turrim Londoniarum, ubi sub vigilanti custodia servabatur; quam reverenter apud Westmonasterium perducentes in præsentia regis, puellam, vicesimum primum ætatis agentem

[1] *Potestatem.*] Here follows in Paris a more full account of the election of the abbot of S. Alban's, containing the correspondence with the pope upon the subject.

[2] *Literas ipsius.*] They are printed in Rymer, i. p. 220, with a recommendation from the pope in the emperor's behalf.

[3] *Respondens.*] *Ibid.* i. p. 221; see also the marriage contract at length, p. 223.

annum, speciosam, flore virginitatis insignitam, indumentis et moribus regiis decenter ornatam, nuntiis imperialibus exhibebant. At illi, cum in virginis inspectione visum aliquandiu recreassent et eam imperiali thoro dignissimam in omnibus judicassent, confirmaverunt matrimonium in animam imperatoris interposito juramento, offerentes ei ex parte ipsius imperatoris annulum sponsalem; quem cum in ejus digito posuissent, pronuntiaverunt eam imperatricem esse Romani imperii, communiter dicentes, 'Vivat imperatrix, vivat!' Deinde cum legati ea, quæ facta fuerant, sub omni festinatione imperatori per fideles internuntios intimassent, post Paschalem solennitatem misit [1]archiepiscopum Coloniensem et Lovaniæ ducem cum virorum nobilium multo comitatu in Angliam, qui imperatricem ad ipsum honorifice perducentes matrimonium jam initiatum et ratum procurarent, ut in cognitione carnali fieret consummatum. A.D. 1235.

De ornatu nuptiali imperatricis et nobili apparatu.

Erat autem istarum tantus apparatus nuptiarum, quod quasi regias excedere divitias videbatur; nam ad ipsius imperatricis dignitatem fabricata est corona opere subtilissimo ex auro purissimo et gemmis pretiosis, in qua sculpti fuerunt reges quatuor Anglorum martyres et confessores, qui a rege ad suæ sororis animæ custodiam sunt specialiter assignati. In annulis siquidem et monilibus aureis cum gemmis pretiosis decenter ornatis, ac cæteris ornamentis lubricis, peplis sericis et lineis, et rebus consimilibus, quæ oculos intuentium et animos rapere Preparations for the departure of the princess.

[1] *Archiepiscopum Coloniensem.* 'Littera regis archiepiscopo Coloniensi, quod sororem ej commendaret ad imperatorem deducendam;' Rymer, i. p. 225.

A.D. 1235. solent in concupiscentiam mulierum, ita decorata resplenduit, ut quasi impretiabilia viderentur. In indumentis autem festivis, tam sericis quam laneis vel lineis diversi coloris et imperatrici dignissimis, adeo induta enituit, ut vix sciret ex multis qui eligeret quibus in sui amorem imperatoris animum inclinaret. Lectus quoque ipsius in opertoriis et culcitris sericis diversi coloris, cum varia supellectili et lintheaminibus ex sindone munda paratis, tam sumptuosus exstitit, ut sua mollitie in se quiescentes ad somnum delectabilem invitaret. Vasa etiam omnia, tam vinaria quam fercularia, ex argento erant et auro purissimo; et, quod omnibus superfluum videbatur, ollæ omnes coquinæ majores pariter, minores, ex argento fuere purissimo. Ad quorum omnium administrationem et custodiam tales deputati sunt ministri curiales, qui ipsi imperatrici et illius familiæ more regio ministrarent. Talibus autem et aliis multis puella a rege fratre suffulta honoribus et dotata muneribus remansit in custodia episcopi Exoniensis et Radulphi filii Nicolai, regis senescalli, et aliorum virorum nobilium de domestica illius familia, comitantibus matronis nobilibus et puellis generosis, qui omnes curialiter eruditi ad imperatricis sufficiebant obsequium et conductum. Et, his in hunc modum dispositis, rex in die sancti Johannis ante portam Latinam apud Westmonasterium tenuit solenne festum cum archiepiscopo Coloniensi et cæteris nuntiis imperatoris; et in crastino omnes apud Derteford burgum iter arripiunt, rege comite, cum magno comitum ac baronum conductu. Equos autem tot ei et tales rex procuravit variis coloribus distinctos et suaviter portantes, qui sufficiebant ad imperatricis honorem, dum sessores suos sine pedum offensione quadam delectabili

Departure of the princess Isabella.

suavitate ferebant; phalerarum quidem tot eis erant varietates in sellis deauratis et subtiliter sculptis, cum frænis deauratis et loris artificiose compositis, ut tam equos quam equites mirabiliter decorarent. Cumque per Roffensem civitatem ad abbatiam de Feveresham convenissent, inde apud Cantuariam profecti ad sanctum Thomam archipræsulem et martyrem orationis gratia pervenerunt; ubi completo devotionis obsequio, ad portum Sandwicensem quasi tria equitum millia convenerunt. Imperatrix autem et archiepiscopus Coloniensis, cum cæteris viris nobilibus et matronis ad conductum ejus assignatis, quinto idus Maii [1]naves ingressi velis patentibus sese pelago commiserunt; nec lachrymæ defuerunt cum frater a sorore, rex ab imperatrice, discessit. A.D. 1235.

Quomodo imperatrix apud Coloniam venit.

Navigantibus autem illis, post tres dies et totidem noctes ostium Rheni fluminis intraverunt, et, completo unius diei et noctis cursu, apud Anevers applicuerunt, in terra scilicet juri imperiali subjecta. Quibus applicantibus occurrit innumera multitudo nobilium armatorum ad custodiam imperatricis ab imperatore transmissa, quæ diebus ac noctibus circa corpus ejus diligentes excubias celebraret; erant enim quidam ex hostibus imperatoris regi Francorum confœderati, ut dicebatur, qui imperatricem rapere moliebantur, ut matrimonium impedirent. Occurrunt etiam presbyteri omnes et clerici ex regionibus circumpositis cum processione solenni cam- Her arrival at Cologne;

[1] *Naves.*] From the writs in Rymer to the sheriff and bailiffs of the sea-ports of Norfolk and Suffolk, to prepare ten ships for the passage of the empress, it appears that Orwell, in Suffolk, was intended to have been the port at which she should embark, and the 9th of April (die Lunæ in crastino instantis Paschæ) the day fixed for the departure; i. p. 225.

A.D. 1235. panas pulsantes et cantica lætitiæ modulantes, inter quos siquidem convenerunt omnes artifices, et magistri cujuscumque generis musicæ artis cum suis instrumentis, qui in omni lætitia nuptiali per viam quinque dierum imperatricem apud Coloniam conduxerunt; ubi cognito ipsius adventu, exierunt ab urbe in occursum ejus ad decem millia civium cum floribus et palmis ac festivis indumentis, qui in equis sedentes Hispanicis ad agilem eos cursum urgebant, dum hastas et arundines, quas ferebant in manibus, in alterutrum confregerunt. Talibus igitur imperatrix comitata tripudiis, conduxerunt eam per principales plateas civitatis contra ipsius adventum multipliciter adornatas; sed cum illa cognovisset quod omnes, et præcipue nobiles matronæ quæ in solariis sedentes, faciem ejus videre cupiebant, capellum ex capite demisit et peplum, ut universi liberum ipsius haberent aspectum, qui, oculis in ejus inspectione aliquamdiu recreatis, laudaverunt eam multum ex hoc facto, pulchritudinem illius pariter et humilitatem plurimum commendantes. Hospitata est autem imperatrix extra muros civitatis propter tumultum ejus, imperatoris ibi mandatum exspectans.

Quod imperator imperatricem apud Warmesiam desponsavit.

Is married at Wormes. Tempore quo imperatrix apud Coloniam venit, imperator erat bellicis expeditionibus implicatus contra filium suum sibi rebellem, sed pater contra eum tam copiosum conduxit exercitum, ut simul et semel castra decem obsidione vallaret; in quorum uno fortissimo cum filium obsedisset, ille patris severitatem metuens exivit de castro et, corruens in terram coram ipso, ejus misericordiam imploravit; sed ille sine misericordia vin-

culis filium constringi jubens, duxit eum secum apud Warmesiam, ubi cum illum sub arcta custodia commendasset, misit pro imperatrice ut ad eum veniret ibidem, postquam apud Coloniam per sex hebdomadas moram protraxisset. Archiepiscopus autem Coloniensis et episcopus Exoniensis, cum cæteris ad imperatricis conductum assignatis, iter cum ipsa aggredientes ad imperatorem eam in omni pompa ac nuptiali lætitia septem dierum itinere perduxerunt; quo cum pervenissent, suscepit eos imperator in magna lætitia et honore, quia supra modum sibi placuit decoris inspectio puellæ, quam natura speciali quodam studio decoravit. [1] Desponsavit ergo puellam ibidem solenniter imperator decimo tertio kalendas Augusti, in Dominica; quæ, si multum ei placuit in specie corporali, multo melius placuit in experientia thori, quam virginali puritate signatam invenit. Nuptiis igitur diebus quatuor continuis magnifice celebratis, episcopus Exoniensis et cæteri, qui cum imperatrice advenerant, ab imperatore licentia impetrata, ad Angliam cum gaudio sunt reversi. Misit ergo imperator regi Anglorum [2] tres leopardos, cum aliis donariis pretiosis, quibus regiones non abundant occidentales; cui etiam contra regem Francorum consilium promisit et auxilium opportunum. A.D. 1235.

[1] *Desponsavit.*] 'Accipiens pro dote triginta millia marcarum; pro quibus petitum et concessum fuit generale scutagium duarum marcarum per totam Angliam, non solum de feodis habitis in capite de rege, sed etiam de aliis cultis;' Chron. Dunst. — That this tax was a scutage, and not a carrucage, as Paris calls it, being laid upon all ecclesiastical as well as lay fees, see the prior of Coventry's plea, in the office of the king's remembrancer, inter commun. de term. S. Hilar. 17 Edw. III.; Tyrrell, ii. p. 891. Respecting the payment of the empress's dower, see two letters of the king to the pope in Rymer, i. p. 226; also two letters to the emperor, apologizing for the want of punctuality in making the payment, p. 228.

[2] *Tres leopardos.*] Paris adds, 'in signum regalis clypei, in quo tres leopardi transeuntes figurantur.'

De generis nobilitate hujus imperatricis.

A.D. 1235. Pedigree of the empress.

Erant autem multi in imperio Romano quibus nimis videbatur indignum, quod imperator tam potens et in omnibus divitiis pollens, qui quasi dominus et moderator exstitit totius orbis, [1]sororem duxerit regis Anglorum. Sed cum omnibus sit notissimum, quia major dignitas est esse genere nobilem quam divitem, sciendum est, hujus imperatricis patrem fuisse regem Anglorum Johannem; Henricum regem, qui nunc regnat in Anglia, fratrem; avunculos reges magnificos Henricum et Richardum, ac Britanniæ comitem Galfridum: hii autem reges generositate illustres dominabantur in Anglia et Hibernia, unde reges fuerunt; in Normannia et Aquitania, unde duces; in Pictavia et Andegavia, unde comites; præter Turonicam et Cenomanniam, Berri et Averniam, quæ ad eorum proprietatem spectare tenentur. In his quoque regionibus septem archiepiscopos habuerunt, cum regibus Scotiæ et Walliæ, Hiberniæ et Moniæ insulæ, subjectos; atque, præter istos, tot episcopos, totque comites, barones ac milites, quod quasi innumerabiles reputantur. Mater autem hujus imperatricis istarum omnium terrarum regina fuit; et duæ sorores illius, una regina Scotorum, et altera Penbroc comitissa. Amitæ quidem ipsius erant quinque, quarum primam duxit rex Hispaniæ Alphonsus, de qua nata est Blanca Francorum regina, et ejus filius, qui regnat in Gallia Lodowicus; alteram duxit rex Siciliæ Rogerus; et tertiam dux Saxoniæ Henricus, de qua natus est Otho post-

[1] *Sororem duxerit.*] She was the third wife of the emperor Frederic, and was the mother of Henry, (so called after Henry II.; Rymer, i. p. 233,) titular king of Jerusalem. She died in December 1241.

ea Romanorum imperator, et frater ejus Hen- A.D. 1235.
ricus Saxoniæ dux et rex tandem terræ sanctæ; quartam duxit comes Tholosanus Reimundus, et quintam comes Rotrodus Perticensis. His igitur et consimilibus imperatrix, 'atavis edita regibus,' patrem, ut dictum est, habuit regem Johannem, qui fuit filius magnifici regis Henrici, qui fuit filius Matildis quondam imperatricis, quæ fuit filia regis Anglorum Henrici senioris et Matildis reginæ. Hæc Matildis filia fuit Malcolmi regis Scotorum et sanctæ Margaretæ reginæ. Margareta filia fuit Eadwardi, quam genuerat ex Agatha sorore Henrici Romani imperatoris. Iste Eadwardus filius fuit Eadmundi regis Anglorum, qui Latus-ferreum dicebatur, cujus pater fuit rex Ethelredus, cujus pater rex Eadgarus Pacificus, cujus pater rex Eadmundus, cujus pater rex Eadwardus primus, cujus pater fuit illustris rex Anglorum Alfredus. Hujus genealogia in Anglorum historiis perducitur usque ad Adam primum parentem. Talibus autem imperatrix genitoribus procreata imperialibus nuptiis in omnibus dignissima judicatur.

Huc[1] usque scripsit cronica dominus Rogerus de Wendovre.

Cernis completas · hic nostro tempore metas,
Si plus forte petas · tibi [2]postea nuntiet ætas.

[1] *Huc usque.*] The same lines precisely, with the colophon, as above, occur in the Cotton. MS. as collated by Wats. In the MS. of Matthew Paris the same editor has noticed that on the margin is written, 'Huc usque e vetusto libro.'

[2] *Postea.*] An error probably of the scribe for 'postera.'

INDEX.

A.

Abgar, king of Edessa, his apocryphal letter, ii. 234.

Abingdon, H. abbot of, ordered to excommunicate the confederated barons by name, iii. 354; excommunicates the London clergy and the French invaders, 361, *seq.*

Abissa, a Saxon, his arrival in Britain, i. 13.

Abrincis (or Avranches), Richard de, earl of Chester, drowned, ii. 201.

Absimarus Tiberius deposes, mutilates, and imprisons Leontius, i. 190; is put to death by Justinian II., 200.

Acca, bishop of Dunwich, i. 164.

Acca, a priest of Wilfrid, succeeds him in the see of Hagustaldt, i. 205; expelled, 224.

Acca, daughter of Ella of Deira, married to Aethelfrith of Bernicia, i. 93; becomes mother of S. Oswald, 139.

Accianus, governor of Antioch, ii. 92; slain, 110.

Acephali, i. 19, 67, *seq.*

Acre, surrender of, iii. 41.

Acre, [Jacobus de Vitriaco?] bishop of, accompanies the crusaders against Damietta, iv. 36; baptizes the children taken there, 60; dissatisfied with the truce made with the Turks, 79.

Adamnanus, abbot of Iona, renounces his error respecting Easter, and convinces the people of Ireland, i. 196; writes on sacred topography, *ib.*

Adda, son of Ida, becomes king of Bernicia, i. 81; his death, 83.

Adela, third daughter of the Conqueror and wife of Stephen earl of Blois, takes the veil on becoming a widow, ii. 26.

Adelais, sister of Philip II. of France, ii. 437; affianced to Richard earl of Poitou, 442; the match broken off, iii. 28.

Adeliza, daughter of the duke of Louvaine, married to king Henry I., ii. 201, and subsequently to William d'Albiney, 227.

Adeodatus or Deusdedit II., pope, i. 161.

Adrian I., pope, (*read* Stephen III.) i. 237 and *note*; makes Lichfield an archbishopric, 238 and *note*; death of Stephen III. and accession of Adrian I., 240; he sends a mission to England to confirm the faith, 246; his death, 260.

Adrian II., pope, i. 298.

Adrian IV., pope, ii. 272; grants Ireland to Henry II., 282; makes peace with the king of Sicily, 284; dies, 288.

Aegelberht succeeds Birinus in the see of Dorchester, i. 144; goes to France, and receives the bishopric of Paris, 157.

Aegelric, bishop of Durham, vacates his see and retires to Peterborough, i. 496; is imprisoned for treason to the Conqueror, ii. 6.

Aegelwine, bishop of Durham, raises the body of S. Oswini, i. 506; is banished for treason to the Conqueror, ii. 6; excommunicates the invaders of ecclesiastical property, 7, *seq.*; is taken, and dies in prison, 9.

Aelfeah, bishop of Winchester, i. 391; dies, 399, *seq.*; punishment of a ribald who presumed to jest with him, 401; his prophecy respecting three monks, *ib.*

Aelfeah (abbot of Bath), made bishop of Winchester, i. 424; baptizes Anlaf of Norway, 429; is translated

to Canterbury, 437; taken by the Danes, 439; his martyrdom, 440; is buried at London, *ib.*, and translated to Canterbury by Cnut, 466.
Aelfeah, earl of Southampton, dies, i. 413.
Aelfleda, niece of king Aethelstan, entertains him at Glastonbury, i. 387; miraculous multiplication of her mead, 388.
Aelfleda, daughter of Offa of Mercia, married to Aethelred of Northumbria, i. 249.
Aelfred (the Great), son of Aetheluulf of Wessex, born, i. 284; his boyhood, 319; piety, 320; is crowned at Rome, 290, 318; marries Alswitha, 299; assists Burgred against the Danes, 300; joins his brother Aethelred, and commands a division of his army at Ashdown, 316; they are victorious at Basing, but defeated at Merton, 317; accession of Aelfred, 318; his genealogy, *ib.*; his children, 321; his encouragement of the arts, affability to foreigners, and affection for his nobility, 322, *seq.*; he is defeated at Wilton, 323; invites men of learning to his court, 324; takes a Danish vessel, 326; pursues the Danes to Exeter, 327; builds ships, besieges Exeter, and gains a naval victory, *ib.* 328; is expelled by Guthrum, 329; takes refuge with a swineherd in Athelney, 330; his adventure with the swineherd's wife, *ib.*; is encouraged personally by S. Neot, and in a dream by S. Cuthbert, 331, *seq.*; leaves his retreat, and re-assembles his followers, 332; overcomes Guthrum, becomes his sponsor, and gives him East-Anglia, 333; builds a large town, 334 and *note*; gains a great victory at sea, 335; receives presents from pope Marinus, 336; sends alms to S. Thomas in India, *ib.*; gives an asylum to Johannes Scotus, 339; drives the Danes from before Rochester, *ib.*; captures sixteen Danish ships, *ib.*; takes London, and makes his son-in-law, Aethelred, governor, 345; sends two eleemosinary missions to Rome, 352, 354; founds a monastery in Athelney, and a nunnery at Shaftesbury, 352; his appropriation of his revenues, *ib.*; his strictness with his judges, 353; three Irish hermits presented to him, 355; he institutes hundreds and tithings, 356; orders golden bracelets to be suspended on the highways, 357; invests Hasting's fortress at Milton, *ib.*; becomes sponsor for one of Hasting's sons, *ib.*; defeats a Danish army at Farnham, *ib.*; expels the Danes from Devon, 360; orders the captured wife and sons of Hasting to be set at liberty, *ib.*; is victorious in Mercia, 361; burns a fleet at the mouth of the Leigh, 362, *seq.*; appoints guardians of the kingdom and a marine coast-guard, 363; frustrates a piratical descent, 365; passes the remainder of his life in pious acts and in perfecting his laws, 366; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 367.
Aelfred, bishop of Selsey, i. 409; dies, 413.
Aelfred, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 396.
Aelfred, son of Eadulf, is expelled Bamborough castle by Aethelstan, and makes his submission, i. 386.
Aelfred, son of Aethelred II., i. 427; is sent for safety to Normandy, 448; remains there during the reign of Cnut, 462; returns, and is betrayed to Harold, 474; is deprived of sight, and dies at Ely, 475.
Aelfric, archbishop of Canterbury, (translated from Abingdon abbey,) i. 426; his death, *ib.*
Aelfric, archbishop of York, i. 467, 470; accuses the murderers of Aelfred, 478; assists at the coronation of Eadward the Confessor, 482; his death, 487.
Aelfric, bishop of Elmham, dies, i. 476, 483.
Aelfric, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495.
Aelfric, earl of Mercia, (son of Elfere,) banished, i. 424.
Aelfric, one of Aethelred's admirals, deserts to the Danes, i. 428; his son deprived of sight for his offence, 429.
Aelfsius, abbot of Medeshamstede, attends queen Emma to Normandy, i. 448.
Aelfwine, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 484.
Aelfwold, bishop of Crediton, i. 403, 419.

Aesc, (Osric,) son of Hengest, present in the battle of Wypeds-Fleot, i. 36; succeeds his father in Kent, 42.
Aescwini, king of Wessex, i. 162; his death and parentage, 167.
Aescwini, brother of Ecgfrith of Northumbria, slain at the battle of the Trent, i. 170; his weregild paid by archbishop Theodore, *ib.*
Aescwini, a Saxon admiral, i. 428.
Aeskynges, who so called, and why, i. 43.
Aethelbald of Mercia, his genealogy, i. 212; takes the castle of Somerton, 219; extends his dominion to the Humber, 220; harasses Cuthred of Wessex, 227; they become reconciled, and conjointly defeat the Welch, 227, *seq.*; unites with archbishop Cuthbert in holding the council of Clovesho, 231; again quarrels with Cuthred, and sustains a severe defeat, 232; falls in the battle of Seckington, 233.
Aethelbald, son of Aetheluulf of Wessex, assists his father against the Danes, i. 285; conspires against him on account of his foreign marriage, 290; is appeased by receiving a moiety of Wessex, 291; obtains the whole at his father's death, 294; his incest, *ib.*, and penitence, 295; dies prematurely, and is buried at Sherborne, *ib.*
Aethelbald, bishop of Sherborne, i. 382.
Aethelberht, king of Kent, i. 81; extends his dominion to the Humber, 83; is defeated by Ceawlin, *ib.*; his interview with S. Augustine, 97; permits him to preach, 98; his baptism, 99; his death and burial, 113.
Aethelberht of Kent, i. 214 and *note*, 224, 231; his death, 236.
Aethelberht of Kent dies, i. 261.
Aethelberht of East-Anglia, son of Aethelred and Leofrona, i. 224; visits Offa of Mercia to obtain one of his daughters in marriage, 249; murdered during the night by the orders of the queen, *ib.*; his body buried in Hereford cathedral, 251.
Aethelberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, dies, i. 264.
Aethelberht, bishop of Whiterne, i. 242.
Aethelberht, son of Eormenred, his martyrdom, i. 150.
Aethelberht (second son of Aetheluulf of Wessex, i. 279, 294) becomes king of Kent and Sussex, 294, and of Wessex and Essex at his brother's death, 295; his death, 297.
Aethelflaed, daughter of king Aelfred and wife of Aethelred earl of Mercia, i. 322; on becoming a widow she retains Mercia, with the exception of London and Oxford, 375; towns and fortresses built and restored by her, 379, 380 and *note*, 381; takes Derby, and destroys part of the garrison, 382 and *note*; her death and burial, *ib.*, 383.
Aethelfrith of Northumbria (at first king of Bernicia only) marries Acca, daughter of Ella of Deira, i. 93; names of his seven sons, 94; seizes Deira, and expels Eadwin, 96; massacres the monks of Bangor, 100 and *note*, 104; his pride and ambition, 110; is slain by Reodwald of East-Anglia, 116.
Aethelgar (or Algar, i. 403,) bishop of Crediton, 388; his death, 403, 419.
Aethelgar, abbot of Hyde, i. 411; becomes bishop of Winchester, afterwards of Selsey, and is finally translated to Canterbury, 426; his death, *ib.*
Aethelgiva, daughter of Aelfred the Great, becomes a nun, i. 322; is made abbess of Shaftesbury by her father, 352.
Aethelhard of Wessex succeeds his kinsman Ini, i. 215; quells the insurrection of Oswald the Aetheling, 217; his death, 226.
Aethelhard, bishop of Winchester, translated to Canterbury, i. 251; petitions Ecgfrith of Mercia to restore the jurisdiction of his province, 263; obtains it from Cœnuulf, *ib.*; his death, 270.
Aethelheah, bishop of Sherborne, i. 318.
Aethelhelm, earl of Dorset, defeats the Danes, but is slain through indiscretion in the pursuit, i. 280.
Aethelhilda, daughter of Eadward the Elder, a nun, buried at Wilton, i. 369.
Aethelhun, a nobleman of Wessex, rebels against Cuthred, and is se-

verely wounded, i. 231; his death, 232 and *note*.
Aethelm, bishop of Sherborne, his jurisdiction, i. 372.,
Aethelnoth, or Agelnoth, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 463, 470; dedicates Bury S. Edmund's abbey, 471; his death, 476.
Aethelred (third son of Aetheluulf of Wessex, i. 279), his accession, 297; assists Burgred against the Danes, 300; is joined by his brother Aelfred, 316; his piety at the battle of Ashdown, *ib.*; gains a victory at Basing, and is defeated at Merton, 317; his death and burial, 318.
Aethelred II., son of Eadgar and Alfrida, i. 410; his person, 421; his coronation, *ib.*; extorts a hundred pounds from the bishop of Rochester, 423; pays Danegeld, 424; ill-treats his wife, and quarrels with her father, 427; is reconciled to him by the pope, *ib.*; defeats a Danish fleet, 428; purchases the forbearance of Sweyn and Anlaf, 429; becomes Anlaf's sponsor, *ib.*; conquers the Isle of Man, 434; again pays Danegeld, 435; orders the sons of Eadric to be blinded for a murder committed by their father, 437; purchases a temporary peace, *ib.*; builds ships, 438; pays a further sum to the Danes, and allows them to settle in the country, 440; orders a simultaneous massacre of the Danes, 444; retires to London on the death of Sweyn, 447; sends his family to Normandy, and goes thither himself, *ib.*; is recalled, 449; defeats Cnut, 450; dies, and is buried at S. Paul's, London, 453.
Aethelred of East-Anglia, i. 224.
Aethelred of Northumbria, i. 240; his expulsion and death, 243.
Aethelred, son of Aethelwald Mull, obtains the Northumbrian throne on the expulsion of Osred, i. 248; marries Aelfleda, daughter of Offa, 249; is slain by his subjects for bigamy, 261.
Aethelred of Northumbria succeeds his father Eandred, i. 281; is expelled, restored, and slain, 283.
Aethelred of South Mercia succeeds his brother Wulfheri, i. 167; marries Ostritha, sister of Ecgfrith of Northumbria, *ib.*; fights with Ecgfrith near the Trent, 170; becomes an abbot, and consents to the restoration of archbishop Wilfrid, 187; his death and burial, 199.
Aethelred, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 312; consecrates Herefrith, bishop of Worcester, 324; his death, 354.
Aethelred, earl of Mercia, marries Aethelflaed, daughter of Aelfred the Great, i. 322; becomes sponsor for one of Hasting's sons, 360; presents Hasting's wife and sons as prisoners to Aelfred, *ib.*; is appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 363; rebuilds Leicester, 373; his death, 375.
Aethelred, son of Eormenred, his martyrdom, i. 150.
Aethelred, nephew of Sweyn, murdered, i. 445.
Aethelric, bishop of Selsey, i. 463; his death, 476.
Aethelstan, natural son of Aetheluulf of Wessex, made king of the territories conquered by Ecgberht, i. 279 and *note*; takes nine Danish ships, 283.
Aethelstan, illegitimate son of Edward the Elder, i. 368 and *note*; legendary account of his birth, 389; is crowned at Kingston, 385; gives his sister Eadgitha to Sihtric of Northumbria, *ib.* and *note*; obtains that kingdom, 386; his conquests, *ib.*; gives another sister to Hugh, count of Paris, *ib.* and *note*; his amity with Rollo, or Robert, of Normandy, 387 and *note*; visits Glastonbury, and is entertained by his niece Aelfleda, 387; invades Scotland, and receives the king's son as a hostage, 389; forces his brother Eadwin to sea in an open boat, 390; his penance for the crime, and punishment of the instigator, *ib.*; defeats Anlaf of Ireland, and Constantine of Scotland, 392; builds the monasteries of Middleton and Michelney, 393; dies at Gloucester, and is buried at Malmsbury, *ib.*
Aethelstan, bishop of Hereford, one of the tutors of king Aelfred, i. 324.
Aethelstan, bishop of Hereford, dies, i. 495.
Aethelstan, bishop of Sherborne, sent by Ecgberht of Wessex to subdue Kent, i. 276.

Aethelstan, bishop of Wilton, (or Ramsbury, i. 495,) dies, 383.
Aethelstan, abbot of Ramsey, assassinated, i. 483.
Aethelstan, earl, murdered at the instigation of Eadric Streona, i. 437.
Aethelstan, brother-in-law of Aethelred II., defeated by the Danes, i. 438.
Aethelswitha, daughter of Aetheluulf of Wessex, married to Burgred of Mercia, i. 286; dies at Pavia, 355.
Aetheluulf (or Adulf, i. 279), son of Ecgberht of Wessex, is sent by him to subdue Kent, i. 276; his accession, 279; his family, *ib.*; distribution of his kingdom, *ib.* and *note*; is defeated by the Danes, 282; defeats them with the aid of his son Aethelbald, 285; conquers the Welch, 288; his charter to the church, 289; goes to Rome with his son Aelfred, whom he procures to be crowned, 290; marries Judith, daughter of Charles le Chauve, *ib.*; his subjects dissatisfied, *ib.*; reconciles his son Aethelbald by giving him a moiety of Wessex, 291; his will, 293; his death, 294; is said to have been ordained bishop of Winchester, 293.
Aethelwald of East-Anglia, his death, i. 231.
Aethelwald, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 224; his death, 226.
Aethelwald, bishop of Sherborne, i. 278, 366.
Aethelwald Mull of Northumbria, i. 234; kills earl Oswin in battle, 236, *seq.*; marries Etheldreda, 236; his death, 237.
Aethelwald, (or Aethelward, i. 384,) youngest son of Aelfred the Great, educated with the young nobility, i. 322; buried at Winchester, 384.
Aethelwald, cousin of Eadward the Elder, rebels against him, and marries a nun, i. 367, *seq.*; flies to the Northumbrian Danes, and becomes their king, 368; goes to France for aid, *ib.*; ravages Mercia, 369; is slain by Eadward, 370.
Aethelwald, *v.* Aethelwold.
Aethelward, second son of Eadward the Elder, i. 368; his death, 390.
Aethelward, earl, banished by Cnut, i. 463.
Aethelwine, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168.
Aethelwine, the officer sent by Oswiû to kill king Oswin, i. 145.
Aethelwold, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 294.
Aethelwold, (a pupil of Dunstan, and abbot of Abingdon,) made bishop of Winchester, i. 410; gives benediction to Aethelgar, abbot of Hyde, 426; his vision, 411; translates the body of S. Swithune, 413; his death, 424.
Aethelwold, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 452.
Aethelwold and Hereberht rebel against Aethelred of Northumbria, and kill three of his generals, i. 242; they expel Aethelred, and make Alfwold king, 243.
Aethelwold, earl of the East-Angles, and first husband of queen Alfrida, i. 410.
Aethelwold, earl, conducts Anlaf to Aethelred II., i. 429.
Affridus, king of Bernicia, i. 92.
Africa, a miracle respecting some orthodox bishops of, i. 69.
Aganippus, king of the Franks, marries Cordeilla, daughter of king Leir, *Pref.* x; restores Leir to his kingdom, xi.
Agapetus, pope, i. 66; deposes Anthymus, the heretical bishop of Constantinople, 78.
Agatha, a Hungarian princess, and wife of Eadward Aetheling, i. 462; is, with her family, driven to Scotland by a storm, ii. 2.
Agatho, pope, i. 168.
Ageric, bishop of Verdun, becomes famous for sanctity, i. 78.
Agnellus, a Minorite, carries the proposals of Henry III. to Richard, earl marshal, iv. 282.
Agricola, a disciple of Pelagius, confuted by Germanus and Lupus, *Pref.* xxvi.
Aidan invited from Scotland by Oswald of Northumbria, i. 134; made bishop of Lindisfarne, *ib.*; anecdote of his charity, 146; consecrates Hilda abbess at Hertesey, 171; his death, 148.
Aidulf, a Northumbrian commander, slain by rebels, i. 242.
Aigle, Richer de l', his fortress burnt by Henry of Normandy, ii. 249.

Aigulf, a monk of Fleury, brings the remains of S. Benedict and his sister from Monte Casino, i. 173.
Ailnoth, bishop of Lincoln, i. 409.
Ailward, father of S. Godric, ii. 341.
Aimar, bishop of Puy, assumes the cross, ii. 61; his march, and rescue from a band of Bulgarians, 77; orders a three days' fast during the famine before Antioch, 95; administers an oath against desertion, 114; is one of the leaders in the great sally from Antioch, 120; his death, 126; his spirit said to have been seen on the taking of Jerusalem, 144.
Aimeric, chancellor of the Roman see, ii. 238.
Aix-la-Chapelle, council of, i. 273.
Alamundarus, a Christian king of the Saracens, his device to prove two natures in Christ, i. 56.
Alan, earl, present in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 228.
Alaric the Goth, his death, i. 35.
Alban (S.), history of, *Pref.* xiv. *seqq.*; his body found in the time of Offa, and placed in a costly shrine, i. 253.
Albano, Walter bishop of, brings Anselm his pall, and reconciles Urban II. and Rufus, ii. 48.
—— Henry bishop of, and legate, preaches a crusade in the Empire, ii. 426.
—— Alban bishop of, consecrates Savary bishop of Bath, iii. 70.
Alban's, S., battle of, i. 59; British church there thrown down by the Saxons, i. 91, 253; monastery of, founded, i. 257; its privileges, 258; dedicated, ii. 193; council at, iii. 262; list of abbots of, 295; ecclesiastical court (respecting a divorce) held at, iv. 231.
Alban's, S., abbots of:
—— Paul, his reforms, ii. 18; sends monks to Tynemouth priory, 39; his death, 44.
—— Richard Essay, Lessay, or d'Albiney (ii. 200), ii. 99; translates the relics of S. Oswin, 187; entertains the king, etc. at the dedication of his abbey, 193; dies, 200.
—— Geoffrey de Gorham, ii. 200; dies, 237.
—— Ralph Gubiun, ii. 237; appoints a proctor during his illness, 245; dies, 250.
Alban's, S., abbots of, *continued.*
—— Robert de Gorham, proctor of the preceding, ii. 245; elected, 249; his final concord with the see of Lincoln, 293; dies, 315.
—— Simon, receives benediction, ii. 321; translates the relics of S. Amphibalus, 391, *seqq.*; dies, 410.
—— Warine, prior, elected, ii. 410; dies, iii. 89.
—— John, iii. 89; dies, 285.
—— William [Trumpington], receives benediction, iii. 295; plundered by prince Louis, iv. 6, and by Faulkes de Breaute, 11; dies, 325.
—— John, prior of Hertford, receives benediction, iv. 326.
Albemarle, (or Aumale,) Stephen count of, a crusader, ii. 62, 79, 120.
Albemarle, William earl of, a commander in the battle of the Standard, ii. 222; his actions in the battle of Lincoln, 229; surrenders to the French king, 372.
Albemarle, earl of, *v.* Fortibus.
Alberht, bishop of Hereford, i. 294.
Albert, one of the legates who absolve Henry II., ii. 368; persuades him to permit elections to the vacant sees, 370.
Albert, *v.* Hunbeanna.
Albigenses, crusade against, iii. 266, *seqq.*; they elect an antipope, iv. 87; are totally destroyed in Spain, 294.
Albinus carries back to Charlemagne a heterodox book sent by him to England, together with an epistle of his own condemnatory of the same, i. 249.
Albion, duke of Saxony, baptized, i. 244.
Albuinus, king of Lombardy, kills king Cunimund in battle, i. 77; marries his daughter, *ib.*; is slain at her instigation, 85.
Alcaçar do Sal taken from the Moors, iv. 34.
Alcfleda, daughter of Oswiû and wife of Peada, i. 144; murders her husband, 154.
Alchad, governor of Silves, surrenders it to the king of Portugal, ii. 441.
Alcher, earl, fights with king Aethelstan against the Danes, i. 283.
Alcmund, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 239; his death, 244.

Alcmund, son of king Ealred, put to death by Eardulf of Northumbria, i. 266.
Aldegils, a king of Frisia baptized by Wilfrid, i. 168.
Aldelm, abbot of Thetford, murdered, i. 403.
Aldhelm, bishop of Sherborne, i. 198; extent of his jurisdiction, *ib.*, 199; his death, and writings, 202.
Aldhun, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 426.
Alditha, daughter of earl Orm and wife of king Anlaf, i. 395.
Aldred, bishop of Leicester, i. 296; deposed, 325.
Aldred, bishop of Worcester, i. 484; sent to Hungary for Eadward son of Edmund, 496; translated to York, 502; consecrates Wlstan bishop of Worcester, 503, ii. 51; retains a portion of the possessions of that see, 55; crowns William the Conqueror, ii. 1.
Aldroenus, king of Britanny, refuses the sovereignty of Britain, *Pref.* xxii.
Aldulf, archbishop of York, translated from the monastery of Medeshamstede, i. 428; places the relics of S. Oswald in a shrine, 435; his death, *ib.*
Aldulf, bishop of Dorchester, i. 246.
Aldulf, bishop of Lincoln, dies, i. 237.
Aldwin, bishop of Lichfield, i. 219; his death, 225.
Alexander II., pope, clears himself from a charge of simony, ii. 5.
Alexander III., pope, ii. 288; confirms the concord between the churches of S. Alban's and Lincoln, 295; sanctions the translation of bishop Gilbert from Hereford to London, 296; holds the council of Tours, 298; absolves Becket for subscribing the Constitutions of Clarendon, 303; is visited by him, 306; his sentence, 311; his letter to Becket, 321; to the bishop of London, 324; to king Henry, and to Becket, 330; sends legates to effect a reconciliation, 333; prohibits Becket from excommunicating Henry or his subjects, 336; forbids the coronation of prince Henry without the acquiescence of Becket, 354; congratulates Becket on his restoration, 356; suspends the archbishop of York and others, 357; his proceeding upon the murder of Becket, 364; canonizes him, 371; holds the third Lateran council, 398; orders the archbishop of Sens to extirpate the heresy of Peter Lombard, 400; his letter to Prester John, 408; dies, 409.
Alexander I. of Scotland, (son of Malcolm III., ii. 2,) his accession, 184; death, 205.
Alexander II. of Scotland knighted, iii. 238; reduces Northumberland to the power of Louis, 379; does homage to him, 382; treats with Henry III. for the hand of his sister, iv. 64; visits him at York, 207.
Alexander (bishops), *v.* Lincoln, and Coventry.
Alexius I., emperor, allows Sansavoir to encamp near Constantinople, ii. 66; orders Peter the Hermit to pass into Bithynia, 68; rescues the remnant of Peter's army, 70; releases Hugh the Great, 75; is offended with Godfrey, *ib.*; his munificence to Robert of Normandy, 81; receives the surrender of Nice, 86; is deterred from relieving Antioch, 114; his treachery to an army of crusaders, 173; makes oath to assist pilgrims, 186.
Alexius, son of the emperor Manuel, dethrones and mutilates the emperor Isaac, iii. 85.
Alexandria, bishops of:
—— Dioscorus, his heresy condemned, i. 12.
—— Protherius, killed by the citizens, i. 39.
—— Timotheus, allows himself to be made bishop, i. 39.
—— Cyrus, preaches Monothelitan doctrines, i. 121, 129.
Alfleda, daughter of earl Elfelm, and wife of Eadward the Elder, i. 368.
Alfleda Enede, daughter of duke Ordmar, and first wife of king Eadgar, i. 410.
Alfrida, daughter of Ordgar, relict of earl Aethelwold, and second wife of king Eadgar, i. 409; intrigues to procure the succession of her son Aethelred, 417; circumvents Eadward, and usurps the royal powers, 419; causes him to be murdered, *ib.*; her severe penance, 420.

Alfritha, wife of Cêenuulf of Mercia, and mother of S. Cênelm, i. 263.
Alfsi (or Mildred, i. 426), bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 412 and *note*; conducts Kenneth III. to the presence of Eadgar, 416; his death, 426.
Alfsius (or Leofsius, i. 471), bishop of Winchester, 452; dies, 471.
Alfwine, bishop of Wells, i. 431.
Alfwold of Northumbria raised to the throne by rebels, i. 243; sends for a pall for his archbishop, 244; is murdered, 247.
Alfwold of Northumbria, i. 270; his death, 271.
Algar, bishop of Elmham, dies, i. 465.
Algar, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495.
Algar, son of Aelfric, deprived of sight for the treason of his father, i. 428.
Algar, earl, banished by Eadward III., i. 494; joins Griffin of Wales, *ib.*; makes his peace with Eadward, *ib.*
Algiva, daughter of Eadward the Elder, and wife of Hugh count of Paris, i. 369, 386 and *note*.
Algiva, or Alwina, lady of Mercia, (daughter of earl Aethelred,) brought into Wessex by order of king Eadward, i. 383.
Algiva, wife of king Eâdmund, gives birth to Eadgar, i. 396; builds a nunnery, 334; her grave miraculously revealed, 415.
Algiva persecutes Dunstan, i. 405; plunders his monastery and procures his banishment, *ib.*; divorced from Eadwy, 407.
Algiva, widow of earl Sigeferth of Northumbria, married by Eâdmund Iron-side, i. 451.
Algiva, daughter of earl Elfelm and first wife of Cnut, dies, i. 462.
Alhfrid, a natural son of Oswiû of Northumbria (i. 177), persuades Peada to be baptized, 144; fights against Penda, 152; present at the council of Streneshalh, 157; succeeds Ecgfrith, 177; his great knowledge of the Scriptures, *ib.*; expels Wilfrid, 186; his death, 187, 199.
Alhun (or Alcwine, i. 300, 324), bishop of Worcester, i. 283; builds S. Andrew's oratory at Kemesey; 300; his death, 324.
Almar, abbot of S. Augustine's and archdeacon of Canterbury, his treachery, i. 439.
Almar, earl of Devon, mak mission to Sweyn, i. 447.
Almaric, master of the Te England, present with ki Runnymede, iii. 302.
Alphonso III. of Castill Eleanor, daughter of He England, ii. 332; his di the king of Navarre, 386.
Alphonso of Gallicia expel nish Arabs, ii. 31.
Alswitha, wife of Aelfred i. 300; founds a nunner chester. 371; dies, *ib.*
Alwine, bishop of Elmham,
Amalric, son of Alaric escapes from Clovis I., i.
Amand, S., translation of, i.
Amauen, Amanen, or Am liam, a crusader, ii. 62, 7
Amphibalus (S.), history of *seqq.*; legend respecting *seqq.*
Anacletus, antipope, chose sition to Innocent II., ii.
Anagnia, John cardinal o reconcile the English an kings, ii. 435; again sent between the archbishop bury and his monks, iii laxes the interdict upon of John earl of Mortain,
Anastasius II., pope, i. 52.
Anastasius III., pope, i. 37
Anastasius IV., pope, ii. stores William archbisho and consecrates Hugh Durham, 271; dies, 272.
Anastasius, emperor, durat reign, i. 49; wishes to res tius, the heretical bisho stantinople, but is oppos Romans, 50; confers the and a golden crown upon 58.
Anastasius, emperor, depriv picus of sight, i. 211.
Anastasius, the pseudo-pa Constantinople, encoura stantinus IV. in persec orthodox Christians, i. 2 of the plague, 229.
Anceis (? Ancenis), Theod French prisoner, iii. 132.
Andredes-wode, battle near,
Anjou, Foulques of, joins against Henry I., ii. 194 the Holy Land, and

daughter of Baldwin II., 208; becomes king, 212; gains a victory over the Turks, 213; his death and burial, 233.
Anjou, Geoffrey Plantagenet count of, (son of Foulques,) marries the empress Maud, ii. 208; seizes several castles in Normandy, 219; flies before king Stephen, 220; takes Hiesmes and Bayeux, and besieges Falaise, 225; makes peace with the earl of Meulant, 230; sends his son Henry to England, 231; becomes duke of Normandy, 236; gives that duchy to Henry, 244; dies, 245.
Anlaf of Ireland defeated at Brunenburg, i. 392.
Anlaf, a Norwegian, who had been expelled Northumbria, marches upon York, i. 395; fights with Eâdmund, and receives half the kingdom as the condition of peace, *ib.*; marries Alditha, daughter of earl Orm, *ib.* and *note*; his death, 396.
Anlaf, son of Sihtric, expelled Northumbria by king Eâdmund, i. 396; becomes his godson, 397.
Anlaf, king of Norway, ravages England, i. 429; receives tribute from Aethelred II., *ib.*; becomes his godson, *ib.*, and returns to Norway, 430.
Anna, daughter of Uther-pendragon and Igerna, i. 54; becomes the wife of Dubritius, and mother of Hoel, both kings of Britanny, 62.
Anna, son of Eni, becomes king of East-Anglia, i. 148; gives his daughter Sexburga to Earconberht of Kent, 137; is slain by Penda, 149.
Anselm, the papal legate, consecrates Ralph archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 192.
Anselm (archbishop), *v.* Canterbury.
Anselm, chaplain of Richard I., iii. 66.
Ansian, the swineherd of Cumbra, avenges the murder of his master, i. 234.
Anthony (S.) the monk, his body discovered, i. 69.
Anthropomorphitæ, heresy of the, i. 402.
Antioch taken by the infidels, ii. 20; history of, 92; besieged by the Christians, 93; taken, 107; besieged by the Turks, 112, *seqq.*
Antioch, Gregory, bishop of, i. 96.
Anxa, Robert de, a crusader, ii. 76.
Aquitaine, William duke of, a crusader, ii. 173.
Arabs kill and wound 5,000 pilgrims, ii. 5.
Arabs, Spanish, defeated by the Christians, ii. 412, *seq.*
Arator Ligurensis writes the Acts of the Apostles in hexameter verse, i. 82.
Argenton, Giles de, (son of Richard,) taken prisoner by the Welch, iv. 223.
Argenton, Roger de, assists the escape of Richard I., iii. 67.
Armenia converted, i. 84.
Armesbach, Reginald de, a crusader, dies of the plague, ii. 126.
Arnulph, emperor, i. 355.
Arnulph (bishop), *v.* Rochester.
Arnulph, son of Geoffrey earl of Mandeville, banished, ii. 235.
Arragon, [? Peter II.] king of, confederates with the Albigenses, iii. 271; slain, 273, *seq.*
Arras, Nevelon d', marshal of France, excommunicated, iii. 362; marches to the relief of Montsorel, iv. 15; reconnoitres the royal army near Lincoln, 21; escapes to London, 26.
Arras, the castellan of, sent by prince Louis to the aid of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362; escapes from the battle of Lincoln, iv. 26.
Artaud, archbishop of Rheims, crowns Louis d'Outremer, i. 391.
Arthur, son of Uther-pendragon by Igerna, i. 54; his coronation, 61; defeats Colgrin at the Duglass, and besieges him in York, 62; is joined by Hoel, king of Britanny, 63; destroys 6000 Saxons at Lincoln, *ib.*; gains the victory of Bannesdon Hill, and sends Cador in pursuit, 65; his successes over the Picts and Scots, and clemency towards them, 66; appoints Pirannus archbishop of York, and restores the churches, *ib.*; marries Guenhamara, 67; celebrity of his court, *ib.*; his conquests in Ireland, Iceland, etc., *ib.*; establishes Loth on the throne of Norway, 70; goes to Normandy, and leaves the queen and Modred as regents, 71; his conquests in France, *ib.*; routs and kills the consul Lu-

cius, 72; returns, and forces a landing at Sandwich, 74; pursues Modred to Winchester, *ib.*; and thence into Cornwall, where he is himself mortally wounded and Modred slain, 75; his death, *ib.*; the British superstition that he yet lived, *ib.*; his remains found, iii. 48.
Arthur earl of Britanny, *v.* Britanny.
Arundel, earl of, *v.* D'Albiney.
Arwald, viceroy of the Isle of Wight, martyrdom of his two sons, i. 182.
Asaph, S., bishops of:
—— Geoffrey Arthur, the historian, ii. 250.
—— Godfrey, ii. 294; prepares chrism in the church of S. Alban, 313; suspended by the pope, 358.
Ascalon, battle of, ii. 147.
Asceline (bishop), *v.* Rochester.
Ascha, Godfrey de, a crusader, ii. 74.
Ascha, Henry de, a crusader, ii. 62, 74, 120; one of the constructors of a machine used at the siege of Nice, 84; dies, 126.
Asci, Reginald de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Asgent, Thomas de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Ashdown, battle of, i. 317.
Aslat, maternal grandfather of Aelfred the Great, had been chief butler of king Aetheluulf, i. 284; his noble descent, *ib.*
Asowine, or Ascwine, bishop of Lincoln, counsels the building of Ramsey monastery, i. 409.
Assassins, account of the, ii. 245.
Asser of S. David's invited by king Aelfred to his court, i. 324; dies bishop of Sherborne, 336.
Asterius, bishop of Genoa, consecrates Birinus a bishop, i. 135 and *note.*
Athelac, bishop of Dunwich, i. 224.
Athelburga, daughter of Aethelberht of Kent, marries Eadwin of Northumbria, i. 125; on the death of her husband, she returns to Kent, 133.
Athelburga, sister of bishop Earconwald, and abbess of Barking, i. 164.
Athelm, archbishop of Canterbury, translated from Wells, i. 380; his death, 385.
Athelm, bishop of Winchester, carries king Aelfred's alms to Rome, i. 352 and *note.*
Athelwald of Sussex is conquered by Wulfheri, and becomes his godson, i. 156; sends Eopa to convert the Isle of Wight, *ib.*; gives Wilfrid land at Selsey, to build a monastery, 204; is put to death by Ceadwalla, 182.
Athelwulf, prior of S. Oswald's, *v.* Carlisle.
Athulf, earl of Berkshire, defeats the Danes near Winchester, i. 295, and at Anglefield, 316; is slain at Reading, *ib.*
Auch, Gerard archbishop of, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24, 30.
Audoenus, referendary of king Dagobert, i. 136; nature of his office, *ib.*
Audun, with Berthun, expels Ceadwalla and obtains Sussex, i. 182.
Auge, Florence d', a crusader, iii. 21.
Augustine (S.) arrives in England, i. 97; his interview with king Aethelberht, *ib.*; is allowed a dwelling in Canterbury, with permission to preach, 98; goes to Arles for archiepiscopal ordination, 99; receives a pall from Rome, 100; summons the British clergy to two synods, 101; ordains Justus to Rochester, and Mellitus to London, 105; ordains his successor, 109; his death and burial, *ib.*
Aurelius Ambrosius, second son of king Constantine, educated first by Guithelinus, and afterwards in Britanny, *Pref.* xxiii; invited, with his brother, to the assistance of his countrymen, i. 19; is crowned king, 34; destroys Wyrtgeorne by fire, 35; fights with Hengest at Wypeds-Fleot, 36; routs him at Maisbely, 40; restores the churches, and destroys the pagan temples, 41; causes Hengest to be beheaded, etc., 42, *seq.*; sends to Ireland for the stones of the 'Chorea Gigantum,' 44, and places them in their relative positions near Salisbury, 45; repels the invasion of Pascentius, 51; is poisoned by Eopa, *ib.*, and buried at Stonehenge, 52.
Ausilius, a coadjutor of S. Patric, i. 48.
Austria, Leopold duke of, makes Richard I. a prisoner, iii. 69; sells him to the emperor, 70; is excommunicated, 87; his death, 88.

Austria, [Leopold] duke of, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7; assists in fortifying Cæsarea, 12; marches against Damietta, 36; his floating scaling-apparatus destroyed, 38, and standard taken, 40; takes a tower near Damietta, 42; assaulted by the Turks, 50.
Authie, Gerard de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238.
Authie, Ingelard de, (nephew of Gerard,) adheres to king John, iii. 238; defends Windsor castle against the barons, 381; encourages the earl of Albemarle against Henry III., iv. 66; surrenders the custody of his castles to the king, 93.
Avennes, Jacques de, a crusader, iii. 21.
Avennes, Walter de, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7; fortifies Castel-Pelerin, 13.
Avignon besieged, iv. 129; taken by treachery, 134.

B.

Baalim [? Balon], Anfrid de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Baccanceld, council of, i. 263.
Bainbald, count, a crusader, ii. 76.
Balac, an emir, takes Jocelyn, count of Edessa, and his cousin Waleran, ii. 202; captures Baldwin II., 203; is routed by Eustace Grenet, 204.
Baldred of Kent, i. 270; expelled by Ecgberht of Wessex, 276.
Baldulf, bishop of Whiterne, consecrated, i. 251, 261.
Baldulf, brother of Colgrin, plans a night-attack upon king Arthur, i. 62; is intercepted and put to flight, *ib.*, and slain at Bannesdon Hill, 65.
Baldwin II., emperor of Constantinople, iv. 157.
Baldwin (I. of Jerusalem), brother of Godfrey, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins his brother, 74; takes Tarsus, 89; obtains the sovereignty of Edessa, 90; sends provisions to the army, 104; is elected king, 167; anecdote of his humanity, 169; his conquests, 174; defeated at Rama, 176; takes Acre, 178, Tripoli, 187, Beirout, 188, and Sidon, 190; routed by the Persians, 191; his grant to the Templars, 195, and death, 196.
Baldwin (II. of Jerusalem), count of Edessa, taken prisoner by the Turks, ii. 180; released, 187; becomes king, 196; avenges the death of prince Roger of Antioch, 201; again captured, 203; released, 204; defeats the Turks, 206; gives two of his daughters in marriage, 208; puts Rodoam to flight, 211; dies, 212.
Baldwin III. of Jerusalem conducts Conrad III. into the holy city, ii. 241; repulses Noureddin, 244; takes Ascalon, 273; dies, 295.
Baldwin IV. of Jerusalem (son of Amalric) appoints an administrator of the kingdom, ii. 414; dies of leprosy, 415.
Baldwin V. of Jerusalem, son of William, marquis of Mont-Ferrat, and Sibylla, ii. 414; placed under the tutelage of count Raymond of Tripoli, 415; dies, 420.
Baldwin, abbot of Ford, *v.* Worcester.
Baldwin, son of Saladin, slain, iii. 12.
Balian, lord, escapes from the battle of Tiberias, ii. 423.
Baliol, Bernard de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.
Baliol, Hugh de, adheres to king John, iii. 237; appointed one of the governors of the country north of the Tees, 352; defends his castle against the Scots, 379; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, iv. 34.
Balzo, the murderer of William I. of Normandy, i. 397.
Bamborough castle built, i. 78.
Banceto, William de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Bangor, Hervey bishop of, (mentioned also as bishop of Ely,) assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, ii. 185.
Bannesdon Hill, battle of, i. 64.
Bar, [Henry I.] count of, a crusader, iii. 21.
Bar, [Henry II.] count of, absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., iv. 136; confederates against the count of Champagne, 212.
Bar, Genton de, a crusader, ii. 62, 77.
Bar-sur-Seine, [Milo III.] count of, and his son Gaucher, arrive in the Holy Land, iv. 44.

Barbara, S., William de, dean of York, *v.* Durham.
Bardolph, Hugh, one of the guardians of the realm during the absence of Richard I., iii. 15; ordered to act independently of the chancellor, 49.
Barking, Mary, sister of archbishop Becket, made abbess of, ii. 371.
Barnabas the apostle, discovery of his body and of a Gospel of S. Matthew written by his hand, i. 38.
Barneville, Roger de, a crusader, ii. 62, 80; slain, 112.
Barre, R., one of the embassy to Rome against Becket, ii. 336.
Bartholomew (bishop), *v.* Exeter.
Bartholomew, official of Hubert Walter, appeals against the election of Geoffrey to the archbishopric of York, iii. 4.
Bartholomew, antipope of the Albigenses, iv. 87.
Basil, Peter, the soldier who mortally wounded Richard I., iii. 135.
Basing, battle of, i. 317.
Basset, Alan, attends king John to Runnymede, iii. 302.
Basset, Gilbert, deprived of a manor by Henry III., iv. 269; joins a confederacy against him, 271; lies in wait for his foraging parties, 282; assists in the destruction of Alcmundbury, 297; restored to favour, 310.
Basset, Thomas, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238, and against the barons, 301; is present at Runnymede, 302; marches to the relief of Lincoln, iv. 19.
Bassingbourne, John de, an adherent of king John, iii. 237, 301.
Bath, bishops of:
—— Godfrey, ii. 203.
—— Reginald, *v.* Salisbury.
—— Savary, archdeacon of Northampton, elected, iii. 69.
—— Jocelyn, of Wells, consecrated, iii. 188; withdraws from England during the interdict, 222; present at the concession of Magna Charta, 302; assists at the consecration of bishop Bingham of Salisbury, iv. 203.
Baugency, Ralph de, a crusader, ii. 62.
Bavaria, [Louis I.] duke of, (the emperor's deputy in the crusade,) is one of the hostages for the restoration of Damietta, iv. 76.
Bayonne, Bernard [de Lescarre], bishop of, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24.
Beauchamp, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; entertains the insurgents at Bedford, 299; loses his castle there, 349; excommunicated, 355; taken prisoner, iv. 24; receives again the town of Bedford, 99; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, 279.
Beaulieu, ——, abbot of, sent to Rome to accuse archbishop Langton, iii. 344.
Beaumeis, Richard de, (bishops,) *v.* London.
Beaumeis, castellan of, excommunicated, iii. 362.
Beaumont, [? Ralph] viscount of, taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.
Beaumont, Roger de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Beaumont, W. de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.
Beauvais, bishops of:
—— [Philip de Dreux,] a crusader, iii. 21; bribed by Saladin, 23; taken prisoner by the English, 96; terms of his release, 143.
—— [Milo de Chatillon], bishop elect, taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.
Beauvais, Reginald de, a crusader, ii. 120.
Bec, abbots of:
—— Theobald, *v.* Canterbury.
—— Robert, renounces his election to the see of Canterbury, ii. 369.
Becket, Thomas, archdeacon of Canterbury, etc. becomes chancellor of Henry II., ii. 281; is sent to Paris for the princess Margaret, 288; does homage to prince Henry, 292; becomes archbishop of Canterbury, and resigns the office of chancellor, *ib.*; his previous history, 293; present at the concord between S. Alban's and the church of Lincoln, 294; causes of his dissension with the king, 295; his seat in the council of Tours, 298; repents his subscription to the Constitutions of Clarendon, and is absolved by the pope, 303; opposes the subjection of the clergy to lay jurisdiction, 304; charges against him, 305; flies to the pope, 306; his appeal, 310;

excommunicates the observers of the 'consuetudines avitæ,' 313; refuses to plead until restored to his temporalities, 314; receives a maintenance from the king of France, *ib.*; his letter to king Henry, 315; letter of his suffragans and his reply, 316, *seqq.*; orders the bishop of London to restore their benefices to the deprived clergy, 320; is confirmed in the archbishopric by the pope, 321; excommunicates the bishop of London, 331, *seq.*; his mental sufferings, 337; his terms of reconciliation, 338; offends the king by his reservations, 355; is restored, *ib.*; returns with papal letters excommunicating the archbishop of York and others, 356, *seqq.*; refuses to absolve them, 359; is murdered, 360, *seqq.*; reputed miracles at his tomb, 365; is canonized, 370; a chapel dedicated to him at Acre, iii. 22; legend of his apparition, 28; his body translated, iv. 65.

Beda, the Venerable, educated at Jarrow, under Benedict Biscop and Ceolfrith, i. 220; his prayer on concluding his history, 221; dedicates it to king Céoluulf, 214; is invited to Rome, 221; his death, 223; buried at Jarrow, but afterwards translated to Durham, 223.

Bederi, Bediers, or 'Biternensis,' Gastus de, a crusader, ii. 62, 77, 120.

Bedford, the castle of, besieged, iv. 95, *seqq.*; rased, 99.

Bedford, John, archdeacon of, spokesman for the clergy in the council at Westminster, iv. 115.

Bedwin, bishop of Elmham, i. 164.

Belesme, Robert de, succeeds to the earldom of Salop, ii. 128; is banished, 170; escapes from the battle of Tinchebrai, 182.

Benedict I., pope, i. 85; his intended mission of Gregory to England frustrated by the populace, *ib.*; he promotes Gregory, *ib.*

Benedict II., pope, i. 176.

Benedict III., pope, i. 292, 294.

Benedict IV., pope, i. 370.

Benedict V., pope, i. 410.

Benedict VII., pope, i. 418.

Benedict IX., pope, i. 471.

Benedict Biscop, his noble birth and military education, i. 196; studies at Rome, and becomes a monk, 197; builds a monastery at Weremouth, and appoints abbots to that and the one at Jarrow, *ib.*; is said to have visited Rome five times, 198; his death, *ib.*

Benet (S.), the younger, miracle respecting, i. 72; time of his death, according to some, 71; his monastery at Monte Casino destroyed by the Lombards, 173; his remains translated to Fleury, 174; futile attempt to re-convey them to Monte Casino, 229; again translated during the Danish invasion, 335.

Bensington, battle of, i. 243.

Beorhtferth, son of Beorhtuulf of Mercia, murders his kinsman Wulstan, i. 284.

Beorhthelm, bishop of London, dies, i. 406.

Beorhthelm, bishop of Wells, translated to Canterbury, but returned to his see for indecision of character, i. 408.

Beorhthelm, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 410.

Beorhtric, son of Cyneuulf, succeeds him in Wessex, i. 246; marries Eâdburh (268) daughter of Offa of Mercia, and drives Ecgberht into exile, 247; is poisoned by his wife, 268.

Beorhtric, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 438.

Beorhtric, brother of Eadric Streona, accuses Wlnoth falsely, i. 438.

Beorhtuulf of Mercia expelled by the Danes, i. 285; his death, *ib.*

Beorn, a relative of Eadward III., murdered by earl Sweyn, i. 491.

Beornraed of Mercia, i. 233; expelled for tyranny, 234; burns the town of Cattrick, 239; perishes by fire, *ib.*

Beornraed, bishop of Rochester, dies, i. 270.

Beornuulf of Mercia, i. 275; defeated by Ecgberht of Wessex, and slain by the East-Angles, *ib.*

Berctuuald (abbot of Reculver) elected archbishop of Canterbury, i. 185; votes for the restoration of archbishop Wilfrid, 187; is consecrated by Godwin, archbishop of Lyons, 188 and *note*; his death, 219.

Berengaria, daughter of Sancho VI. of Navarre, is carried to Richard I.

by his mother, iii. 27, and espoused by him, 38.
Berengarius, archbishop of Tours, his heresy and repentance, ii. 27, *seq.*
Berenguin (or Bregwin), archbishop of Canterbury, his prudence and scholarship, i. 236; his death, *ib.*
Berkeley, or Brackley, R. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.
Berkhampstead castle besieged and taken, iv. 5.
Bern, huntsman of Eadmund of East-Anglia, murders Lothbroc through envy, i. 305; his sentence and its consequences, 306, *seq.*; advises Hinguar and Hubba to cast Eadmund's head into the wood where Lothbroc had been murdered, 312.
Bernard, king of Italy, deposed, blinded, and put to death for treason to the emperor, i. 273.
Bernard (bishop), *v.* David's, S.
Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux, persuades Louis VII. to submit to the pope, ii. 238; preaches a crusade, 239; dies, 254.
Bersabea rebuilt, ii. 213.
Bertha, a French princess, the wife of Aethelberht of Kent, i. 98.
Bertheg, bishop of Chichester, i. 372.
Berthun, with Audun, expels Ceadwalla, and obtains the government of Sussex, i. 182.
Bertoldi, Walter, assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, iv. 54.
Bertulph, son of Florus, educated by S. Maurus, i. 79.
Besançon, [Thierri de Montfaucon] archbishop of, a crusader, iii. 21.
Bethun, bishop of Leicester, dies, i. 296.
Bethun, Baldwin de, accompanies Richard I. on his route through Germany, iii. 66.
Beuna of East-Anglia succeeds Ethelwald, i. 185.
Beziers besieged and taken, iii. 268, *seq.*
Bigod, Hugh, conspires against Rufus, and plunders Norwich, ii. 33.
Bigod, Roger, witnesses a charter of Henry I., ii. 164.
Bigod, Hugh, seneschal of Henry I., swears that Henry had disinherited the empress, and appointed Stephen his successor, ii. 217; seizes the castle of Norwich, 219; is present in the battle of Lincoln, 228; surrenders his castles to Henry II., 287; purchases a truce from the English barons, 375; joins the Flemish invaders, 376; submits to the king, 380.
Bigod, Roger, earl, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; his lands wasted by the king, 381.
Bigod, Hugh, (son of Roger,) excommunicated, iii. 355; dies, iv. 104.
Bigod, Hugh, earl of Norfolk, escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, iv. 279.
Biham castle, siege of, iv. 66, *seq.*
Binard, William, banished, ii. 187.
Bingham, Robert de, (bishop,) *v.* Salisbury.
Birds, battles of, i. 162; ii. 211.
Birinus sent by pope Honorius to preach in Wessex, i. 135; consecrated by Asterius, bishop of Genoa, *ib.* and *note*; baptizes Cynegils, and receives the see of Dorchester, *ib.*; his body buried there, but afterwards translated to Winchester, 140.
Birstan, bishop of Winchester, i. 388; dies, 391.
Bisi, bishop of the East-Angles, present at the council of Hertford, i. 162; deposed on account of ill-health, 163.
Blanche of Castille married to prince Louis of France, iii. 147; sends a fleet to facilitate his escape from England, iv. 28; causes her son Louis IX. to be crowned, 135; imputations upon her character, 213; takes an oath to administer justice to the barons, 216.
Blecca, prefect of Lincoln, baptized by Paulinus, i. 128.
Bleda, a son of Port, i. 55.
Bloet, Robert, (bishop,) *v.* Lincoln.
Blois, Theobald IV. of, (elder brother of king Stephen, ii. 216,) invited by the Norman barons to take possession of the duchy, 220; receives an annuity from Stephen, *ib.*
Blois, Theobald V. count of, a crusader, iii. 21; dies, 36.
Blois, Stephen de, dies before Acre, iii. 36.
Blois, William de, (bishop,) *v.* Lincoln.

Blundus, John, elected archbishop of Canterbury, iv. 248; rejected by the pope, 267.
Blundville, Thomas de, (bishop,) *v.* Norwich.
Boby, Osbert de, conspires against king John, iii. 297; is taken prisoner, 335; excommunicated, 357.
Bocland, Hugh de, sheriff of Hertfordshire, ii. 161 and *note*.
Boetius joins his father-in-law Symmachus in translating from the Greek, i. 55; writes his book 'de consolatione Philosophiæ,' 64; his death, 65.
Bohemond, (I. of Antioch,) prince of Tarento, son of Robert Guiscard of Apulia, ii. 27; assumes the cross, 62; his march, 76; reaches Nice, 81; assists in repulsing Solyman, 83; is attacked by him, 87; his actions before Antioch, 94, and ruse to rid the camp of spies, 96; is sent with others to conduct the Genoese to the camp, 101; his negotiations with Emyfer, 105; takes Antioch, 107, *seqq.*; loses 200 men in a sally, 112; administers an oath against desertion, 114, 118; commands the reserve in the great sortie, 120; is again attacked by Solyman, 122; becomes prince of Antioch, 125; quarrels with Raymond, 128; is captured by the Turks, 168, and redeemed, 178; effects of his jealousy of count Baldwin, 179; his expedition against Alexius, and death, 186.
Bohemond II., son of the preceding, ii. 186; receives Antioch, and one of his daughters, from Baldwin II., 208; is slain by the Turks, 211.
Bohemond III., taken prisoner by the Turks, ii. 313.
Bohun, Henry de, earl of Hereford, excommunicated, iii. 355; taken prisoner, iv. 23.
Boniface II., pope, i. 63.
Boniface III., pope, i. 109.
Boniface IV., pope, i. 109 and *note*; prevails on Phocas to acknowledge his spiritual supremacy, *ib.*; consecrates the Pantheon, 110; calls a council in Italy, *ib.*
Boniface V., pope, i. 120.
Boniface VI., pope, i. 363.
Boniface (or Winfrid), bishop of Mayence, his martyrdom, i. 232.
Boniface, bishop of Dunwich, i. 144.
Bordeaux, archbishops of:
—— [Elie de Malmort,] pays a large sum to Rome to be cleared from the accusation of his clerks, iii. 27; marries the dauphin Louis and Blanche of Castille, 147.
—— [Gerald de Malmort,] sent by the barons of Gascony, etc. to invite Henry III., iv. 179.
Borsequin, a Turkish prince, defeated, ii. 206.
Bosa (a monk of Streneshalh, i. 172), one of the substitute bishops for archbishop Wilfrid, 168.
Bosel, bishop of Worcester, i. 205.
Botulph builds the church of Ycanno, i. 152.
Boulogne, Reginald count of, is banished by Philip II., and receives a grant of land from king John, iii. 236; undertakes that John will observe his compact with the pope, 249; is a witness of his submission, 254; accompanies the fleet sent against the French, 257; quarrels with Hugh de Boves, 288; unhorses the French king in the battle of Bovines, 290; taken prisoner, 291; his release demanded by the French peers, iv. 136.
Boulogne, Philip, son of Philip II. of France, receives from his father the earldom of, and the daughter of the banished earl Reginald, iii. 236; confederates against the count of Champagne, iv. 212; is one of the commissioners to negotiate a truce with England, 224.
Bourges, council at, iv. 118, *seq.*
Bourges, Peter archbishop of, rejected by Louis VII., ii. 238.
Boves, Hugh de, (an auxiliary of king John against the French,) his character, iii. 287; his quarrel with the earl of Boulogne, 288; put to flight in the battle of Bovines, 291; sent by John to engage foreign mercenaries, 320; is shipwrecked, and drowned, 332.
Bovines, battle of, iii. 287, *seqq.*
Brabant, Mercadeus prince of, assists prince John of England in harassing the French, iii. 96, and the queen-mother in taking Angers, 136.
Brabant and Louvaine, [Henry] duke of, assists king John against the French, iii. 287.

Brai, Gilbert and Jokenus de, French prisoners, iii. 132.
Brantefeld, Elias de, a monk of Canterbury, sent on a mission to Rome, iii. 186; refuses to join in the election of Stephen de Langton, 213.
Braose, Philip de, banished, ii. 187.
Braose, William de, his treachery to the Welch, ii. 384; his castle besieged by them, iii. 129; flies to Ireland from king John, 225; dies in France, 237.
Braose, William de, son of the preceding, cast into prison by king John, and starved to death, iii. 234, *seq.*
Braose, Reginald de, his castle besieged by the Welch, iv. 72.
Braose, William de, taken prisoner by the Welch, iv. 173; hanged, 209.
Braybroke, Robert de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.
Braybroke, Henry de, son of Robert, supports king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; excommunicated, 356; defends the castle of Montsorel, iv. 14; is seized by Faulkes de Breaute, 94; released, 98.
Breaute, Faulkes de, one of those left by king John to observe the barons, iii. 347; takes Hanslape and Bedford castles, 349; receives the custody of Oxford castle, etc., 353; plunders S. Alban's, iv. 10; present at the siege of Montsorel, 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; is taken prisoner, and rescued, 22; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; encourages the insurrection of the earl of Albemarle, 66; hangs three citizens of London, 81; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93; seizes one of his justices in eyre, 95; escapes to Wales, 96; throws himself upon the king's mercy, 98; is banished, 103; dies, 137; anecdote respecting, *ib.*
Breaute, William de, defends Bedford castle against Henry III., iv. 95; hanged, 97.
Breis, Reginald de, a crusader, slain, ii. 69.
Brendan (S.), flourishes in Scotland, i. 81; his seven years voyage, *ib.*
Brenville, battle of, ii. 198.
Bretel, Baldwin, sent by prince Louis to the aid of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.
Breton, Richard le, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.
Breton, Ralph le, treasurer of Henry III., dismissed from his office and fined, iv. 244.
Breun [? Brienne], Theobald de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
? Brewer, *v.* Briwer.
Bridget (S.), her death, i. 63.
Brien, nephew of king Cadwallo, assassinates king Eadwin's astrologer, i. 131; escapes to Exeter, where he is besieged by Penda, *ib.*
Brienne, John de, king of Jerusalem, his march, iv. 7, *seq.*; repulsed at Mount Thabor, 9; strengthens the castle of Cæsarea, 12; marches against Damietta, 36; opposes a general engagement with the Turks, 53; covers the retreat of the Christians, 54; is favourable to the Sultan's terms, 58; is one of the hostages for the restoration of Damietta, 76; invades Germany, and assumes the title of emperor, 182, *seq.*; endeavours to intercept Frederic II. on his return from the crusade, 207; flies to France, 209.
Britain, why so called, i. 93; its name changed to 'England' on the expulsion of the Britons, *ib.*; Saxon kings contemporary with that event, with a specification of their dominions, 92.
Britanny, Hoel earl of, expelled, ii. 283.
Britanny, Conan earl of, dies, ii. 329.
Britanny, Geoffrey earl of, (son of king Henry II.,) born, ii. 287; his marriage, 329; fealty sworn to him at Nantes, 340; joins the rebellion of his brother Henry, 369; does homage to his father, 382; knighted, 389; does homage to his brother Henry, 410; dies, 419.
Britanny, Arthur earl of, (posthumous son of the preceding,) ii. 419; declared by Richard I. his heir, iii. 27; placed under the safeguard of Philip II., 138; is knighted by him, and does him homage, 141; leaves his protection, and returns, 142; does homage to his uncle John, 148; besieges queen Eleanor in the castle of Mirabeau, 168; is made

prisoner, 169; his interview with John, and death, 170.
Britanny, Henry earl of (*v.* iv. 205, *note*), absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., iv. 136; is reconciled to him, 141; recommends Henry III. to defer his expedition into France, 205; surrenders his fortresses to him, 210; negotiates a truce with the French king, and comes to England, 224; dissuades Henry from marrying the sister of the Scottish king, 227; is attacked by Louis, 315; being refused money by Henry, he submits unconditionally to Louis, 316.
Brithegus, bishop of Worcester, i. 471; dies, 476.
Brithmar, bishop of Lichfield, dies, i. 476.
Brithnoth, earl of Essex, slain by the Danes, i. 427.
Brithric, *v.* Beorhtric.
Brithulf, earl, guardian of the realm in Essex, i. 363.
Brithwold, bishop of Ramsbury, dies, i. 483; his vision respecting Eadward the Confessor, 495.
Britons, sufferings of, under Caretius, i. 90.
Briwer, Foulques de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238.
Briwer, William, one of the guardians of the realm during the absence of Richard I., iii. 15; ordered to act independently of the chancellor, 49; becomes an adviser of king John, 238, and is a witness of his submission to the pope, 254; adheres to him against the barons, 301; is one of the commanders of the force appointed to observe London, 347; excuses Henry III. in refusing the confirmation of Magna Charta, iv. 84.
Broc, Philip de, canon of Bedford, deprived, and banished, ii. 305.
Broc, Robert de, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 360.
Brocmael, a British general appointed to protect the monks in the battle of Bangor, allows them, through his cowardice, to be massacred, i. 104.
Bruilun, Geoffrey de, taken prisoner by the French, ii. 439.
Brun, Hugh le, earl of La Marche, attacked by the Griffons, iii. 32; deprived of his intended wife by king John, 148; joins prince Arthur, 168; does homage to king John, etc., 281; goes to the Holy Land, iv. 44; is surprised and routed by Richard earl of Cornwall, 102.
Brunai, Ferri de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Bruning, an auxiliary of Modred, slain by king Arthur, i. 75.
Brus, Peter de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; assists in reducing Yorkshire, 379.
Buck, Walter, one of king John's foreign mercenaries, iii. 331; commands the auxiliaries from Brabant, 347; wastes the isle of Ely, 358.
Burgenilda, daughter of Cœnuulf of Mercia, i. 263.
Burgh, Geoffrey de, (bishop,) *v.* Ely.
Burgh, Baldwin de, a crusader, ii. 62, 74, 120.
Burgh, Hubert de, (seneschal of Poitou,) settles a truce with the French commissioners, iii. 293; present at the granting of Magna Charta, 302; is left in charge of Dover castle, 368; defends it against Louis, 380; refuses his overtures, iv. 4; punishes, as justiciary, some London rioters, 81; is accused of injustice by the barons, 88; procures the grant of a fifteenth for the king, 99; obtains the royal consent to the marriage of his nephew with the countess of Salisbury, on the supposition of her husband's death, 113; begs pardon of the earl, 116; becomes sole adviser of Henry III., 139; created earl of Kent, 141; advises Henry to seize his brother Richard, 142; recommends the building of a castle, called in derision 'Hubert's Folly,' 173, *seq.*; advises the king to decline the overtures of the foreign barons, 179; is assaulted by him, and restored to favour, 204, *seq.*; opposes the invasion of Normandy, 215; receives the custody of the possessions of the late earl of Gloucester, 217; orders some Welch prisoners to be beheaded, 221; accused of conniving at the spoliation of the Italian clergy, 242; removed from his office, 245; charges against him, 246, *seqq.*; flies to Merton priory, 248; apprehended in Boi-

sars church, 251 ; replaced therein, 252; surrenders himself, 253 ; gives up his treasure to the king, 257 ; placed in free custody at Devizes, 258 ; escapes to a neighbouring church, 274 ; is dragged thence, and again placed therein, 275 ; is rescued by the insurgent barons, 277, and restored to favour, 310.

Burgh, John de, son of the preceding, knighted, iv. 204.

Burgh, Richard de, assists in suppressing an insurrection in Ireland, iv. 214; joins in a conspiracy against the earl-marshal, 292, *seq.*; meets him in a conference, 303 ; lends his armour to a powerful knight, 305.

Burgred of Mercia marries Aethelswitha, daughter of Aetheluulf of Wessex, i. 285 ; joins his father-in-law's expedition against the Welch, 288 ; marches with Aethelred and Aelfred against the Danes, 300 ; makes a truce with them, *ib.*, and obtains another by a pecuniary payment, 323 ; affords an asylum to Ecgberht of Northumbria and to archbishop Wulfher, 324 ; is expelled by the Danes, and dies at Rome, 325.

Burgundy, Stephen count of, arrives in the Holy Land, ii. 173 ; is slain at Rama, 177.

Burgundy, Hugh III. duke of, one of the mediators between kings Henry II. and Philip II., ii. 442 ; becomes commander of the French crusaders, iii. 45 ; refuses to march on Jerusalem, 55, *seq.* ; his treachery, 56 ; withdraws the French, 57 ; dies mad, 59.

Burgundy, Eudes III. duke of, one of the leaders of the crusade against the Albigenses, iii. 267 ; continues the war after the secession of the greater portion of the army, 270.

Burgundy, Henry duke of, absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., iv. 136 ; confederates against the count of Champagne, 212.

Buteville, Geoffrey de, one of king John's Poitevin mercenaries, iii. 331 ; receives the custody of Belvoir castle, 350.

Buteville, Oliver de, brother of the preceding, iii. 331 ; associated with him in the aforesaid custody, 350.

C.

Cadelo convicted of simony, ii. 5.

Cadisan, lady of Corazin, the wife of Mahomet the impostor, i. 122.

Cador, duke of Cornwall, frustrates a threatened night-attack upon king Arthur, i. 62 ; conducts the pursuit at Bannesdon Hill, 65 ; follows the fugitives into Thanet, slays Celdric, and receives the surrender of the rest, *ib.*

Cadwallan, prince of Wales, murdered, ii. 404.

Cadwallo, the British king, flies to Ireland, after his defeat by Eadwin, i. 130 ; returns, and arrives at Exeter, *ib.* ; takes Penda prisoner, 132 ; they ravage Northumbria, and kill Eadwin, *ib.* ; Cadwallo's cruelty to the vanquished, 133 ; marries a sister of Penda, 166 ; kills Osric and Eanfrid, the successors of Eadwin, 133, *seq.* ; his death, 165.

'Cæmentarius,' Alexander, encourages king John in his opposition to the pope, etc., iii. 231, *seq.*

Cæsarea, P. archbishop of, joins with other prelates in a letter from the Holy Land, iv. 146 ; is one of the leaders of the crusaders, 175.

Calderon, Baldwin, a crusader, slain, ii. 84.

'Caliburn,' king Arthur's sword so called, i. 64.

Calixtus II., pope, ii. 196; visits king Henry I., 200 ; makes the antipope Maurice a monk, 202.

Cambray, archbishops of:

—— [Roger de Warin], a crusader, iii. 21.

—— Peter de Douai, imprisoned and released, iii. 143.

Cambridge taken by the barons, iii. 380.

Camelec, bishop, redeemed from the Danes, i. 380.

Camville, Richard de, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24, 30.

Cantelo, *v.* Cantilupe.

Canterbury (Kaerkeint) built, *Pref.* xii. ; burnt by the Danes, i. 439 ; precedency of the see of, established, ii. 12 ; again disputed, 191 ; state of cathedral after the death of Becket, 366 ; monks of, expelled by king John, iii. 214.

Canterbury, archbishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Augustine, Lawrence, Mellitus, Justus, Honorius, Deusdedit, Theodore, Berctuuald, Tatwin, Nothelm, Cuthbert, Berenguin or Bregwin, Jaenberht, Aethelhard, Wilfrid, Ceolnoth, Aethelred, Plegmund, Athelm, Wulfhelm, Odo, Elfsi, Beorhthelm, Dunstan, Aethelgar, Aelfric, Siricius, Living, Aethelnoth or Agelnoth, Eadsius, Robert, Stigand.]
—— Lanfranc, ii. 8; dedicates S. Mary's at Bec, 20; his advice to the Conqueror respecting Odo, 32; attempts to degrade Wlstan, 52; crowns William Rufus, 31; his death, 36.
—— Anselm, ii. 41; consecrated, 44; refuses to pay Rufus for his appointment, 47; persists in going to Rome, 49; his return prohibited, *ib.*; is restored by Henry I., 165; officiates at his marriage, 169; degrades the prelates who had received investiture from laymen, 171; goes with them to Rome, and procures their restoration, 172; his return again interdicted, 176; is restored, and consecrates five bishops, 183; claims the submission of the archbishop of York, 184; his death, 185.
—— Ralph, *v.* Rochester.
—— William de Corbolio, (prior of Chicche,) elected, ii. 203; goes to Rome for his pall, 204; disputes precedency with archbishop Turstan, 205; consecrates Gilbert the Universal, 207; crowns Stephen, 216; dies, 220.
—— Theobald, (abbot of Bec,) elected, ii. 225; consecrates Robert bishop of Lincoln, 244; reconciles king Stephen and duke Henry, 255; crowns Henry, 273; dies, 289.
—— Thomas Becket, *v.* Becket.
—— Richard, prior of Canterbury, elected, ii. 370; goes to Rome, 375; consecrates four bishops, 381; appoints three archdeacons to his province, 384; consecrates Walter bishop of Lincoln, 410; dies, 411.
—— Baldwin, *v.* Worcester.
—— Reginald, *v.* Salisbury.
—— Hubert Walter, *v.* Walter.
—— Stephen de Langton, (cardinal of S. Chrysostom,) consecrated, iii. 212, *seq.*; procures a relaxation of the interdict, 226; goes to Rome with complaints against king John, 241; carries the pope's sentence to Philip II., 243; returns to England, 260; directed to advise the guardians of the realm during the king's absence, 261; prevents John from proceeding against the barons, 262; still farther relaxes the interdict, and urges the barons to claim the laws of Henry II., 263; attends councils respecting the compensation due to the clergy, 275, *seq.*; appeals against the conduct of cardinal Nicholas, 278; becomes a surety for John to his barons, 296; is sent to inquire their claims, 298; attends the king at Runnymede, 302; the custody of Rochester castle and of the Tower of London restored to him, 319; is suspended for refusing to excommunicate the barons, 340; the sentence confirmed by the pope, 345; relaxed, 360; crowns Henry III. at Canterbury, iv. 63; appointed to inquire respecting the miracles ascribed to Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 64; translates the body of Becket, 65; demands the confirmation of Magna Charta, 83; is sent on an embassy to France, 86; excommunicates the earl of Chester and his colleagues, 92; his act against the concubines of the clergy, 104; procures the recall of the legate Otho, 123; lays the pope's demands before the council at Westminster, *ib.*; is ordered to publish the excommunication of the emperor, 165; dies, 170.
—— Richard, chancellor of Lincoln, appointed by the pope, iv. 185; consecrated, 204; refuses to pay scutage, 219; excommunicates all who withhold from him Tunbridge castle, etc. and appeals to Rome, 220; his charges against Henry III., and death, 226.
—— Edmund Riche, canon of Salisbury, offered by the pope to the monks, iv. 267; consecrated, 298; threatens to excommunicate Henry III., *ib.*; is sent to make peace with Llewellyn and the earl-marshal, 299; returns with Llewellyn's terms, 309;

causes a copy of the letters issued against the earl-marshal to be read in parliament, 311; obtains a safe-conduct for the late ministers, 312; releases Peter de Rivaulx from the Tower, and replaces him in Winchester cathedral, 314; refuses to consecrate Richard de Wendene to Rochester, 325.
Canterbury, archdeacons of:
—— Almer, i. 439.
—— Geoffrey Ridel, *v.* Ely.
—— Savary, ii. 384.
—— Nicholas, ii. 384.
—— Herbert Poore, *v.* Salisbury.
Canterbury, Clarenbald abbot elect of S. Augustine's, endeavours to avoid canonical subjection to Becket, ii. 296.
Canterbury, priors of:
—— Jeremiah, ii. 225.
—— Walter, *v.* Coventry.
—— Richard, *v.* among the archbishops.
—— Roger, deposed, and made abbot of Evesham, iii. 13.
—— John, elected archbishop, iv. 234; is persuaded by the pope to renounce his election, 243.
Canterbury, Reginald sub-prior of, privately elected archbishop by the junior monks, iii. 183; rejected by them for betraying their secret, 184; his election annulled at Rome, 211.
Cantilupe, Foulques de, sent to expel the monks from Canterbury, iii. 214; adheres to king John in his quarrel with the pope, 237.
Cantilupe, Roger de, sent to Rome by Henry III. to oppose the appeal of the archbishop of Canterbury, iv. 220; fails in his mission, 226.
Cantilupe, William de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; is one of the confederacy against Hubert de Burgh, 93.
Cantilupe, William de, the younger, supports king John against the pope, iii. 237; marches to the relief of Lincoln, iv. 19; confederates against Hubert de Burgh, 93.
Canute, *v.* Cnut.
Capua, Peter cardinal of, reconciles Richard I. and Philip II., iii. 133, *seq.*; lays France under an interdict, and orders king John to release the bishop of Beauvais, 143.
Carcassonne, city of, taken from the Albigenses, iii. 269, *seq.*
Caretius (the successor of Maglocun), a general union of the Saxons formed against him, i. 89; is driven into Wales and Cornwall, *ib.*
Carlisle rebuilt, ii. 42; made an episcopal see, 212.
Carlisle, bishops of:
—— Athelwulf, prior of S. Oswald's and confessor of Henry I., consecrated, ii. 212.
—— Walter Mauclerc, iv. 85; returns from a mission to France, 140; removed from the office of treasurer, and fined, etc., 264; prevented from complaining to the court of Rome, 272.
Carloman (brother of Charlemagne) invades Saxony, i. 239; dies suddenly, 240.
Carthusians, Hugh, prior of the, *v.* Lincoln.
Carvi, Herman de, a crusader, ii. 76.
Castan, bishop of Sherborne, i. 244 and *note.*
Castel, Thomas and Puncard de, French prisoners, iii. 132.
Castel-Sarazin, battle of, iv. 169.
Castello, Hugh de, a prisoner of Henry II., ii. 380.
Castillon, Reginald de, plunders the mother of Saladin, ii. 421.
Catigern, second son of Wyrtgeorne, i. 11; slain by Hors, 15.
Ceadwalla (or Cadwallador), son of Cadwallo, becomes king of the Welch, i. 166; succeeds Centwini in Wessex, 181; discrepancy between the Saxon and Welch writers respecting his paternity, *ib.* 182; ravages Kent, subdues the Isle of Wight, and puts Athelwold of Sussex to death, 182; is expelled Sussex by Berthun and Audun, *ib.*; abdicates, goes to Rome, and is baptized by the pope, 183; his death, *ib.*, and epitaph, 184.
Ceawlin, son of Cynric, succeeds to the throne of Wessex, i. 80; defeats Aethelberht of Kent, 83; his magnificent conquests, 86; is defeated by the Britons, 88; obtains

Sussex on the death of Cissa, 94; dies, 95.
Cecilia, a daughter of the Conqueror, takes the veil, ii. 16; becomes abbess of Caen, 26.
Cedd sent by Oswiû to preach in Essex, i. 143; consecrated bishop of the East-Saxons, and baptizes Swithelm, *ib.*
Cedd, bishop of Hereford, dies, i. 294.
Cedda (brother of Cedd) consecrated uncanonically archbishop of York, i. 159; deposed by archbishop Theodore, and receives the see of Lichfield, 155, 161; was present in the council of Streneshalh, 157.
Celdric arrives in Scotland, i. 62; leaves the country, returns, and is defeated at Bannesdon Hill, 64, *seq.*; slain in the Isle of Thanet, 65.
Celestine I., pope, sends Palladius to the Scots, and afterwards S. Patric, i. 47.
Celestine II., pope, ii. 234.
Celestine III., pope, iii. 37; consecrates Henry VI. of Germany, 38; appoints archbishop Hubert legate of England, 90; reproves Philip II. for his divorce, *ib.*; his bull on behalf of the Holy Land, 91; consecrates Philip bishop of Durham, 123; dies, 124.
Celidon Wood, battle of, i. 63.
Cênelm of Mercia (S.), son of Cœnuulf, his passion, i. 273.
Centwini, son of Cynegils, succeeds Aescwini in Wessex, i. 167; gains a victory over the Welch, 175; dies, 181.
Ceolfrith, abbot, succeeds Benedict Biscop, i. 198; letter of pope Sergius to him, 221.
Ceolmund, bishop of Hereford, i. 344.
Ceolmund, guardian of the realm in Kent, i. 363.
Ceolnoth, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 277; dies, 312.
Ceolraed, son of Aethelred of South Mercia, i. 167; succeeds Cœnraed, 203; fights a dubious battle with Ini, 211; dies, and is buried at Lichfield, 212.
Ceolraed, bishop of Leicester, i. 325.
Ceolric succeeds Ceawlin in Wessex, i. 95; his death, 108.
Cêoluulf of Mercia succeeds his nephew Cênelm, i. 274; is deposed, 275.
Cêoluulf of Mercia holds the kingdom during the pleasure of the Danes, i. 326.
Cêoluulf of Northumbria, his genealogy, i. 218, and learning, 219; receives the tonsure, *ib.*; dies, 226.
Cêoluulf of Wessex, i. 108; dies, 110.
Cêoluulf, bishop of Dorchester, dies, i. 246.
Cêoluulf, bishop of Lincoln, i. 237, 252.
Ceorl, a kinsman of Wibba, succeeds him in Mercia, i. 96.
Cerdic, a Saxon, arrives in Britain, i. 13.
Cerdic and his son Cynric arrive in Britain, i. 50; Cerdic founds the kingdom of Wessex, *ib.*; they gain a victory over the Britons, and kill Natanleod, 57; great increase of Cerdic's power, 60; they subdue the Isle of Wight, 68; death of Cerdic, 70.
Cerni, John de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Certichesore, the place so named where Cerdic landed, i. 50.
Chainedut, Ralph, taken prisoner in the battle of Lincoln, iv. 24.
Chaisneio, Robert de, (bishop,) *v.* Lincoln.
Chalcedon, council of, i. 12.
Chalchuthe, council of, i. 246.
Chalons, [William II.] count of, a crusader, iii. 21.
Chaluz, siege of, iii. 135.
Champagne, Odo count of, banished, ii. 46.
Champagne, Henry I. count of, joins Louis VII. against Henry of Normandy, ii. 248.
Champagne, Henry II. count of, (son of Henry V. of Saxony, ii. 410; iv. 339,) his station before Acre, iii. 21; marches with his uncle Richard I., 45; is made king of Jerusalem, and marries the marchioness of Mont-Ferrat, 46; killed by a fall from a window, 117.
Champagne, Theobald IV. count of, one of the French commanders in the battle of Bovines, iii. 291; persists in leaving the army before Avignon, iv. 132; absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., 136; defeated by the confederated barons, 212.

Champagne, Frumentin de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Charles (Martel), king of the Franks, deposes the bishops of Rheims and Arles for closing the gates of their cities against him, i. 214.
Charlemagne obtains, upon Carloman's death, the whole of his father's possessions, i. 240; takes Pavia, and subjugates all Italy, *ib.*; makes a treaty with Offa, and sends him presents, 242; transmits a heterodox book to England, 249; visits Rome and destroys the enemies of Leo III., 266, by whom he is crowned, 267; accepts the empire of the East, *ib.*; orders five councils to be held, 271; his death, 272.
Charles le Chauve patronizes Johannes Scotus, i. 337; orders him to translate the 'Hierarchia' of Dionysius the Areopagite, 338.
Charles le Gros, emperor, i. 334; his vision, 340.
Charles le Simple, i. 366; marries Eadhilda, daughter of Eadward the Elder, 369; makes peace with Rollo, and gives him his daughter Gilla, 377.
Charmouth, battle of, i. 282.
Charneles, Hugh de, associated with Nicholas d'Albiney in the defence of Belvoir castle, iii. 350.
Charta de foresta, iii. 311, *seqq.*
Chartres, Ivo bishop of, dies, ii. 194.
Chartres and Blois, Stephen count of, (husband of Adela, daughter of the Conqueror, ii. 26), assumes the cross, 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 79; deserts at Antioch, 105; deters Alexius from attempting its relief, 114; returns, 173; is slain at Rama, 177.
Chartres, Boeleis de, a crusader, ii. 76.
Chartres, William de, [son of Milo III. count of Bar-sur-Seine,] arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.
Châtellerault, the vicomte de, a crusader, iii. 22.
Chaumont, Galo de, a crusader, ii. 63, 120.
Chaumont, Hugh de, his capture by the English and escape, iii. 95.
Chaurna, Robert de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 336.
Chazares, emperor, i. 242.
Cheldric, a Saxon, slain by king Arthur, i. 75.
Chertsey, [Martin] abbot of, sent by Richard I. on a mission to the pope, iii. 134.
Chester, Dubritius archbishop of, *v.* Dubritius.
Chester, Robert Peccam, bishop of, ii. 27; dies, 213.
Chester, see of, transferred to Coventry, ii. 213.
Chester, constables of, *v.* Lacy.
Chester, earls of, *v.* Abrincis, Meschines, and Scot.
Chichester, bishops of:
—— Bertheg, i. 372.
—— Ralph, assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, ii. 185.
—— Sifred (abbot of Glaston) consecrated, ii. 205.
—— Hilary, ii. 294.
—— John, dean of Chichester, elected, ii. 370; consecrated, 381.
—— Richard [Poore], dean of Salisbury, consecrated, iii. 293; ordered, as bishop of Salisbury, to inquire into the bishop of Durham's conduct, iv. 69; is translated to Durham, 156; appointed to inquire respecting the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241; procures Hubert de Burgh to be restored to the church from which he had been taken, 275.
—— Ralph de Neville (chancellor of Henry III.), elected archbishop of Canterbury, iv. 227; rejected by the pope, 228; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, 278.
Childebert, king of the Franks, his death, i. 100.
Chilperic succeeds his father Clotaire I., i. 82.
'Chorea Gigantum,' what, i. 44.
Chori, Gerard de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Christiana, grand-daughter of Edmund Iron-side, i. 462, 496; becomes a nun, ii. 2.
Christopher, pope, i. 370.
Cincio (a native of Rome), canon of S. Paul's, seized by insurgents, iv. 231.
Cineferth (or Cyneberht, i. 324), bishop of Lichfield, 297; his death, 324.
Cinque Ports, barons of, ordered to

watch the coasts, and intercept the fleet of prince Louis, iv. 28.
Cirencester, battle of, i. 128.
Cissa, third son of Ella, arrives in Britain, i. 38; succeeds his father in Sussex, 60, 92; was founder of Chichester, 60.
Cistercians, extension of the order of, prohibited, ii. 250; when first taxed in England, iii. 73.
Clare, Roger earl of, refuses homage to Becket for the castle of Tunbridge, ii. 298.
Clare, Richard earl of, submits to Henry II., ii. 380.
Clare, Henry earl of, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.
Clare, Richard earl of, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; loses Tunbridge castle, 349; excommunicated, 355.
Clarendon, Constitutions of, ii. 298, *seqq.*
Claudian, a priest of Vienne, his controversial skill, i. 37.
Clement II., pope, i. 484.
Clement III., pope, ii. 426; sends a cardinal to reconcile the kings of England and France, 435; makes the bishop of Ely legate, iii. 18, and confirms the election of the archbishop of York, 20; dies, 37.
Clement (S.), first bishop of Metz, invention of, ii. 40.
Clere, Matthew de, sheriff of Kent, apprehends Geoffrey, archbishop of York, iii. 38; is excommunicated, 75.
Clergy subjected to lay jurisdiction, ii. 304; concubines of, prohibited, i. 37; ii. 205, 210; act respecting, iv. 104.
Clerks, secular, expelled from the old monastery at Winchester, i. 410; general ordinance against them, 413; restored, 417, *seq.*; again expelled, 418.
Clermont, council of, ii. 56.
Clermont, [Ralph] count of, a crusader, iii. 21.
Clifford, Walter de, joins a confederacy against Henry III., iv. 271.
Clodesuida of Metz receives the veil from an angel, i. 112.
Clotaire I., king of the Franks, besieges Saragossa, i. 75; dies, 82.
Clotaire II., i. 93.
Clotaire III., i. 157.
Clovis I. subdues Alaric the Goth, i. 35; expels the Arian Goths from Thoulouse, etc., 36; obtains a miraculous victory, 37; is baptized by S. Remigius, 38; kills his kinsman Regnacarius, 39; his bounty to the church of Rheims, 55; receives the consulate and a jewelled crown from the emperor Anastasius, 58.
Clovis II., king of the Franks, i. 141; is visited by S. Furseus, 142; struck with madness for his irreverence, 155.
Clovis III., king of the Franks, i. 188.
Clugny, Hugh abbot of, his vision respecting Rufus, ii. 159.
Cnut, son of Sweyn, left by his father in charge of the fleet, i. 446; made king by the Danes, 449; defeated by Aethelred II., 450; mutilates his hostages, and departs for Denmark, *ib.*; returns, and receives the submission of Wessex, 452; ravages Mercia, *ib.*, and Northumbria, 453; chosen king by the majority of the Saxons, *ib.*; put to flight by Eâdmund Iron-side, *ib.*; fights two drawn battles with him in Worcestershire, 454; twice defeated in Wessex, 455; gains the sixth battle through the treachery of Eadric Streona, 456; fights a single combat with Eâdmund, 458, and obtains half the kingdom, 459; succeeds to the remainder on Eâdmund's death, 460; puts Eadric to death, *ib.*; banishes the family of the late king, 461; on the death of his wife, he marries Emma, relict of Aethelred II., 463; sends home his fleet, and winters in Denmark, *ib.*; places monks in Bury S. Edmund's, and enriches the place, 464; builds churches where his battles were fought, *ib.*; banishes Turketel and Yric, 465; confirms the laws of Eadward the Elder, *ib.*; translates the body of S. Aelfeah, 466; conquers the Swedes, *ib.*; his bounty to Winchester, and offerings to S. Eâdmund, 467; seizes upon Norway, 468; banishes earl Hacon, *ib.*; visits Rome, 469; his letter home to his subjects, 470; defeats Malcolm II., 471; makes his son Sweyn king of Norway, and Hardacnut king of Denmark, 472;

his death, *ib.*; the anecdote respecting his command to the sea, *ib.*
Cnut, son of king Sweyn, attempts an invasion of England, ii. 15; is murdered, when king, by his subjects, 31.
'Coat without a seam,' our Lord's, discovered, i. 94; ii. 283.
Coellac, bishop of Lichfield, retires to Scotland, i. 154.
Cŏenraed of Mercia, i. 200; vision and awful death of one of his household, *ib.* 201; abdicates, visits Rome, and becomes a monk, 203.
Cŏenraed of Northumbria, i. 211; his death, 212.
Cŏenuulf of Mercia, son of Cuthberht, his piety and valour, i. 263; restores the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 264; takes Eadberht Pren prisoner, and makes Cuthred king of Kent, *ib.*; releases his prisoner at the dedication of his church of Winchelcombe, *ib.*; is buried in the same, 273.
Cŏenuulf, bishop of Dorchester, i. 372.
Cognano, Albered de, and Humphrey his son, crusaders, ii. 76.
Coinage, new, ii. 287; old called in, and new issued, 409.
Colchester, Ralph de Hauterive, archdeacon of, iii. 36.
Colgrin subdues the country between the Humber and Caithness, i. 62; is defeated at the Duglass, and driven into York, *ib.*; leaves the country, but returns, 64, and is slain at Bannesdon Hill, 65.
Colla, second bishop of Selsey, i. 205 and *note*.
Colman, bishop of Lindisfarne, his arguments in the council of Streneshalh, i. 157; goes to Scotland, 158.
Cologne, phenomena in the province of, iv. 13.
Cologne, archbishops of:
—— Annon, ii. 5.
—— Reginald, comes to England for the princess Matilda, ii. 312; letter to him from Henry II., 322.
—— Philip, visits Becket's tomb, ii. 412.
—— [Henry de Molenare,] sent to England by Frederic II. for the princess Isabella, iv. 333.
Colonna, John cardinal of, appointed to examine John archbishop elect of Canterbury, iv. 243.
Columbanus (S.), arrives in Britain, i. 83; his death, 99.
Colville, Roger de, excommunicated, iii. 357; taken prisoner, iv. 11.
Colville, William de, deprived of Biham castle by king John, iii. 353; excommunicated, 357; taken prisoner, iv. 24.
Comets: i. 73, 167, 218, 300, 355, 372, 418, 521; ii. 182, 188, 191, 237.
Comminges, [Bernard IV.] count of, an ally of the Albigenses, iii. 272.
Conan, a noble crusader from Britanny, ii. 80.
Conan, earl, *v.* Britanny.
Conanus, Aurelius, of Britain, imprisons his uncle Constantine, murders his cousins, and usurps the throne, i. 76; his death, 86.
Conon, pope, i. 178.
Conrad, emperor, i. 379.
Conrad II., emperor, i. 467; gives presents to Cnut at Rome, 470.
Conrad III., emperor, ii. 221; assumes the cross, 239; the greater portion of his army destroyed by the Turks, 240; arrives at Jerusalem, 241; his feat before Damascus, 243; leaves the Holy Land in disgust, *ib.*; dies, 251; legend respecting, *ib.*
Cons, Dodo de, a crusader, ii. 74.
Constance, second daughter of the Conqueror, and wife of Alan earl of Britanny, ii. 26.
Constance, daughter of Philip I. of France, and wife of Bohemond I. of Antioch, ii. 186.
Constance, sister of Louis VII., married, firstly, to prince Eustace of England, ii. 226, and secondly, to the earl of Thoulouse, 228.
Constance, daughter of Alphonso king of Castille, married to Louis VII., ii. 281.
Constance, a Scottish princess, wife of Conan earl of Britanny, ii. 329.
Constance, daughter of Conan earl of Britanny, wife of prince Geoffrey of England, and mother of prince Arthur, ii. 419; places her son under the protection of Philip II., iii. 138.
Constans, eldest son of Constantine

of Britain, becomes a monk at Winchester, *Pref.* xxiii.; is crowned by Wyrtgeorne, and assassinated by his Pictish body-guard, xxiv.
Constans, emperor, the senate mutilate the usurpers of his throne, and place them at his disposal, i. 138; duration of his reign, and his acts, 140; his wish to transfer the government to Rome resisted by the Constantinopolitans, 160; strips Rome of its public ornaments, *ib.*; his death, 161.
Constantiis, Walter de, archdeacon of Oxford, *v.* Lincoln.
Constantine, pope, i. 200; grants privileges to a monastery at Worcester, 205; rejects the heretical letters of the emperor Philippicus, 206.
Constantine III., emperor, puts to death the murderers of his father, i. 161; restores the churches, and labours to subvert the Monothelitan heresy, *ib.*; his death, 181.
Constantine IV., emperor, i. 227; his cruelty to the orthodox Christians, 228; dies, 242.
Constantine V., emperor, i. 243, 249; his atrocities towards the orthodox, 260.
Constantine III. of Scotland conquered by Aethelstan, i. 386; breaks a treaty, and is compelled to give his son as a hostage, 389; is assisted by Anlaf of Ireland, and defeated at Brunenburg, 392.
Constantine, brother of Aldroenus of Britanny, sent by him into Britain with archbishop Guithelinus, *Pref.* xxii.; is chosen king, marries, and is stabbed by a Pict, xxiii.
Constantine, son of Cador, succeeds his kinsman king Arthur, i. 75; quells the rebellion of the sons of Modred, and puts them to death, 76; his death and burial, *ib.*
Constantine, uncle and nephew, (both citizens of London,) hanged for a riot, iv. 81.
Constantinople, [Robert de Courtenay] emperor of, dies, iv. 157.
Constantinople, council of, (fifth general,) i. 78.
Constantinople, bishops and patriarchs of:
—— Acatius, a heretic, his death, i. 50.
Constantinople, bishops and patriarchs of, *continued.*
—— Deuterius, an Arian, legend of, i. 56.
—— Anthymus, deposed by Agapetus for heresy, i. 78.
—— Eutychius, his heresy respecting the resuscitated human body, i. 87.
—— John, i. 96.
—— John, assumes the title of universal patriarch, i. 100; his sudden death, *ib.*
—— Sergius, adheres to the Monothelitan heresy, i. 121, 129.
—— Paul, condemned by the Lateran council for favouring the Monothelitæ, i. 149.
—— Cyrus, banished by Philippicus, i. 206.
—— John, an heretical monk, appointed by Philippicus, i. 206.
—— Anastasius, pseudo-patriarch, *v.* Anastasius.
Coradin, second son of Saphadin, and sultan of Damascus and Jerusalem, iii. 76; destroys the latter city, iv. 42; harasses the defenders of Acre, etc., 74; assists his brother in cutting off the retreat of the Christians, 76; engages in civil war with his neighbours, 147.
Corbolio, William de, prior of Chicche, *v.* Canterbury.
Corbolio, D. de, one of prince Louis' ambassadors to Rome, iii. 372.
Cordeilla, daughter of king Leir, her history, *Pref.* x. *seqq.*
Cornhill, Henry de, sheriff of Kent, attends William bishop of Ely to Dover, iii. 52; sent to expel the monks from Canterbury, 214; adheres to king John against the pope, 237, and against the barons, 301.
Cornwall, bishops of, *v.* Herstan, Living, Leofric.
Cornwall, Henry earl of, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 300.
Cosdroa, king of Persia, takes Damascus and destroys Jerusalem, i. 116; his conquests in Africa, and death, 117.
Courçon, Robert de, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 43.
Courcy, Ingelram de, one of the confederacy against the count of Champagne, iv. 212.

Courtenay, Robert de, confederates against the count of Champagne, iv. 212.
Coutance, Geoffrey bishop of, conspires against William Rufus, ii. 32.
Coventry (or Chester), bishops of:
—— Roger, ii. 213; dies, 237.
—— Walter (prior of Canterbury), consecrated, ii. 237; suspended, 358.
—— Richard, ii. 294.
—— Gerard, (surnamed 'Puella,') his consecration and death, ii. 411.
—— Hugh de Nonant, suspended for acting as a sheriff, iii. 18; robbed, 75; his death-bed penitence, 125.
—— Geoffrey de Muschamp, iii. 128; dies, 220.
—— William, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302.
—— Alexander, protects Faulkes de Breaute in his access to the king, iv. 98; sent to Rome to oppose an election made by the monks of Durham, 129, and one made by those of Canterbury, 171; assists at the consecration of bishop Bingham of Salisbury, 203; excommunicates the persons who had traduced him to the king, 295; is sent to make peace with the earl-marshal, 299.
Coventry, dispute between the monks of, and canons of Lichfield, decided, iv. 156, *seq.*
Craddoc, son of Griffin of Wales, kills some workmen of earl Harold, i. 507.
Craucumbe, Godfrey de, one of the accusers at Rome of archbishop Langton, iii. 344; returns to England, 346; seizes Hubert de Burgh in Boisars church, iv. 251; replaces him therein, 252.
Credda, first king of Mercia, i. 88; his death, 94.
Crediton, bishops of, *v.* Werstan, Eadulf, Aethelgar or Algar, Aelfwold, Living, Leofric.
Crema, John cardinal of, holds a council in London, ii. 205.
Crepin, William, constable of Eu, surrenders his castles to Richard I., iii. 121.
Cressy, Gerald de, a crusader, ii. 62.
Cressy, Roger de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; his lands wasted by the king, 381; is taken prisoner, iv. 24.
Cressy, John de, (son of Roger,) excommunicated, iii. 355.
Croxton, [Adam] abbot of, confesses king John, and administers to him the eucharist, iii. 385.
Cuichelm, brother of Ceawlin, his death, i. 95.
Cuichelm, son of Cynegils, admitted by his father to a share in the government, i. 112; sends an assassin to murder Eadwin of Northumbria, 125; is slain in battle by the latter, 126.
Culeworthe, William de, a collector of taxes, iv. 254.
Cumbra, a nobleman put to death by Sigeberht of Wessex for expostulating on behalf of the people, i. 233.
Cunimund, king of the Gepidæ, slain in battle by Albuinus, i. 77.
Cuthard, bishop of Lindisfarne, dies, i. 380.
Cuthbald, abbot of 'Indalum,' i. 187.
Cuthbert (S.), bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 176; endeavours to dissuade Ecgfrith from invading the Picts, 177; returns to his cell, 179; his death and burial, *ib.*; miracle at his tomb, *ib.*; his body found entire eleven years after his death, 180, 189, and twice translated, 326, 430; privileges of his shrine, 336.
Cuthbert, archbishop of Canterbury, consecrates Dun bishop of Rochester, i. 227; holds the council of Clovesho, 231; his death, 236.
Cuthburga, sister of Ini, i. 216; separates from her husband, Ecgfrith of Northumbria, and founds Wimborne abbey, 212, 367.
Cuthfrith, bishop of Lichfield, i. 237.
Cuthred, son of Cuichelm, receives large possessions from Cynewealh, i. 141, *seq.*
Cuthred of Wessex succeeds his brother Aethelhard, i. 226; is harassed by Aethelbald of Mercia, 227; they make peace, and conjointly defeat the Welch, *ib.* 228; Cuthred quells the insurrection of Aethelhun, 231; again quarrels with Aethelbald, and gains a victory, 232; kills him in the battle of Seckington, 233; his own death, *ib.*
Cuthred made king of Kent by Cœnuulf of Mercia, i. 264; his death, 270.

Cuthred, son of Hardacnut, redeemed from slavery and raised to the throne, i. 335.
Cuthwine, brother of Ceawlin, slain in the battle of Fretherne, i. 88.
Cuulcu, the master of S. Patric when a slave, i. 47.
Cymen, eldest son of Ella, the place of their landing (Cimens-hore) called after him, i. 38.
Cyneberht, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168, 224.
Cyneburga, daughter of Penda and wife of Aelfred son of Oswiû, i. 144.
Cynegils, his accession to the throne of Wessex, i. 110; shares the kingdom with his son Cuichelm, 112; kills in battle the sons of Sebert of Essex, 124; fights with Penda at Cirencester, 128; is baptized by Birinus, 135; dies, 138.
Cynehard, bishop of Winchester, i. 234.
Cynehard, brother of Sigeberht of Wessex, banished by Cyneuulf, i. 244; conspires against and murders him, 245; is buried at Repton, 246.
Cynesius, bishop, a kinsman of Dunstan, sent with him to bring Eadwy back to his coronation banquet, i. 404.
Cyneuulf elected king of Wessex, i. 233; defeated by Offa of Mercia, 243; killed by conspirators, and buried at Winchester, 245.
Cyneuulf, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 226; imprisoned by king Eadberht, 231; his death, 243.
Cyneuulf, a Northumbrian general, slain by rebels, i. 242.
Cynewald, bishop of Wells, dies, i. 424.
Cyneward, abbot of Middleton, i. 411.
Cynewealh, king of Wessex, i. 138; repudiates his wife, the sister of Penda, by whom he is expelled his kingdom, 141; on his restoration, he gives large possessions to Cuthred son of Cuichelm, *ib.*; defeats the Welch at Pen, 155; is himself defeated by Wulfheri, *ib.*; expels Wina from his bishopric, 159; dies, 162.
Cynewold, bishop of Worcester, i. 388; dies, 406.
Cynoth, king of the Picts, gives an asylum to Aethelred of Northumbria, i. 243.
Cynric, his arrival in Britain, i. 50; his reign and death, 80.
Cynric, son of Cuthred of Sussex, slain, i. 231.
Cyprus, Isaac (or Cursac) emperor of, imprisoned by Richard I. for ill-treating some shipwrecked Englishmen, iii. 37; becomes emperor of Constantinople, and is dethroned, etc. by the son of his predecessor, 85.
Cyprus, [Hugh] king of, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7; dies, 12.

D.

Dagobert, king of France, i. 136.
D'Albiney, William, his valour in the battle of Tinchebrai, ii. 182; having married the widow of Henry I., he receives the empress Maud at Arundel castle, 227.
D'Albiney, William, earl of Arundel, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302; deserts to Louis, 369; his lands wasted by John, 381; makes his submission to Henry III., iv. 12; arrives in the Holy Land, 44.
D'Albiney, William, the younger, excommunicated, iii. 355; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, iv. 279.
D'Albiney, Odinel, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 335.
D'Albiney, William, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 300; is invited by them to a tournament, 321; takes the command of Rochester castle, 329; is taken prisoner by the king, 335; excommunicated, 355; is released, and does homage to Henry III., iv. 5; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19.
D'Albiney, Nicholas, son of William, (a clerk,) surrenders Belvoir castle to king John, iii. 350.
D'Albiney, Philip, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301; attends him to Runnymede, 302, and on his northern expedition, 348; is present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; ordered

to intercept the French fleet, 28; sends news of his victory to the king, 30; his letter from the Holy Land, 75; accompanies prince Richard into Gascony, 101; is sent to treat with the French malecontents, 136; returns, 140.
D'Albiney, Richard, (abbot,) *v.* Alban's, S.
Dalfinus, archbishop of Leyden, ordains Wilfrid, i. 156.
Damascus, siege of, ii. 242.
Damasus II., pope, i. 484.
Damietta, tower near, besieged and taken, iv. 37, *seq.*; the city besieged, 45, *seqq.*; state of the inhabitants, 56; capture of the city, and its spoils, 59, *seq.*
Dampiere, Guy, a crusader, iii. 21; bribed by Saladin, 23.
Damsiva, the Turk who captured Bohemond I., ii. 168.
Danegeld, payments of, i. 424, 427, 429, 435, 437; remitted, 487; abolished, ii. 218.
Daniel, bishop of Winchester, i. 198, 204; extent of his jurisdiction, 198; present at the consecration of archbishop Tatwin, 219; dies, 228.
Daubeney, *v.* D'Albiney.
David I. of Scotland, son of Malcolm III., ii. 2; anecdote of him and his sister, 180; his accession, 205; his alliance with Stephen, 218; ravages Northumberland, 221; defeated in the battle of the Standard, 222, *seqq.*; knights Henry duke of Normandy, 244; dies, 254.
David's, S., bishops of:
—— Bernard, ii. 192.
—— [Anselm le Gros,] carries the defiance of Henry III. to the earl-marshal, iv. 273.
Delaval, G., one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.
Demetia, the ancient name of South Wales, i. 91.
Deneberht, bishop of Worcester, i. 205; made a suffragan of Lichfield, 238.
Denmark, ancient law of, enforcing emigration, i. 364.
Desiderius, king of Lombardy, taken prisoner by Charlemagne, i. 240.
Deusdedit, pope, his regulation respecting the spiritual affinity of sponsors, i. 112.
Deusdedit succeeds Honorius in the see of Canterbury, i. 141, 149.
Diceto, Ralph de, dean of London, iii. 22.
Dié, Ysoard count of, a crusader, ii. 62, 120.
Diocletian persecutes the Christians of the East, *Pref.* xiii.
Dionotus, abbot of Bangor, i. 102.
Dionysius Exiguus, the cycle of, i. 69.
Diuma, bishop of Lichfield, i. 154.
Diva, William de, a retainer of the bishop of Lincoln, slain at Newark, iv. 35.
Dodo, the murderer of S. Lambert, his miserable death, i. 190.
Doldequin, king of Damascus, defeated, ii. 206.
Domedart, Walter de, a crusader, ii. 120.
Domesday-book, origin of, ii. 22.
Dominicans, or Friars Preachers, their origin and rule, iii. 124.
Domnus, pope, i. 414.
Don, battle of the, i. 42.
Donald VII. of Scotland expelled by his nephew Duncan and William Rufus, ii. 42.
Donus, pope, i. 167.
Dorchester, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Birinus, Aegelberht, Hedda, Cêoluulf, Aldulf, Halard, Cêenuulf, Eadnoth, Eadric, Eadnoth, Ulf.]
—— Remigius, removes his see to Lincoln, ii. 24; is prevented from dedicating his church by the archbishop of York, 40; his death, *ib.*
Dorylæum, battle of, ii. 86.
Dover, affray of the men of, with the suite of Eustace II. of Boulogne, i. 488; the castle besieged, iii. 380; siege raised, iv. 4.
Dragon, origin of, as a royal standard, i. 53.
Drepinges, Geoffrey de, precentor of Lincoln, his loss in the plunder of that city, iv. 25.
Dreux, Robert count of, a crusader, iii. 21; bribed by Saladin, 23; his son taken prisoner by king John, 286.
Dreux, [Robert III.] count of, confederates against the count of Champagne, iv. 212.
Drichthelm's vision of purgatory, i. 190.

Dublin, archbishops of:
—— Henry, witnesses king John's charter of submission to the pope, iii. 254, and the granting of Magna Charta, 302.
—— Luke, intercedes with Henry III. for Hubert de Burgh, iv. 247, *seq.*; obtains time for him to make his answer, 250; again interposes on his behalf, 253.
Dubritius, king of Britanny, brother-in-law of king Arthur, i. 62.
Dubritius, archbishop of Chester, i. 45 and *note*, 57.
Du Chêne, *v.* Chaisneio.
Duduc, bishop of Wells, dies, i. 502.
Duglass, battle of the, i. 62.
Dummail of Cumberland deprived of his kingdom, and his two sons of their sight, by king Eâdmund, i. 398 and *note*.
Dun, bishop of Rochester, his consecration, i. 227.
Dunberht, bishop of Winchester, dies, i. 334.
Duncan II., son of Malcolm III., gains the throne of Scotland by the aid of Rufus, ii. 42.
Dunewulf (or Bertulf, i. 363), bishop of Winchester, said to have been the swineherd who gave shelter to Aelfred, 334; appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 363.
Dunstan (S.), his birth, i. 385; ordained by S. Aelfeah, 400; called by king Eâdmund to his councils, 393; traduced and dismissed, *ib.*; restored, and made abbot of Glastonbury, 394; hears heavenly greetings on the birth of Eadgar, 396; becomes king Eadred's treasurer, 399; refuses the see of Winchester, 400; his vision, *ib.*; Eadred's death revealed to him, 404; he performs his obsequies, *ib.*; incurs the hatred of Algiva by forcibly taking king Eadwy from her company, 405; banished, *ib.*; restored by Eadgar, and made bishop of Worcester, 406; translated to London, *ib.*; builds a monastery at Westminster, and makes Wlstan abbot, *ib.*; is translated to Canterbury, 408; receives his pall at Rome, 409; consecrates Oswald bishop of Worcester, *ib.*; calls two synods respecting secular clerks, 418; his miraculous escape from the falling refectory at Calne, *ib.*; his prophecy respecting Aethelred, 421; rebukes his avarice, 423; his death, 425; legendary anecdotes respecting him, *ib.*
Dunwich, bishops of, *v.* Thomas, Boniface, Acca, Athelac, Tidferth, Weremund.
Dunwich, see of, incorporated with that of Elmham, i. 315.
Durand, a Templar, sent with cardinal Pandulph to negotiate with king John, iii. 235.
Durham, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Halchun, Eâdmund, Eadred, Aegelric, Aegelwine.]
—— Walcher, killed for his extortions, ii. 17.
—— William, joins the conspiracy against Rufus, ii. 32; is taken, liberated, and goes to Normandy, 34.
—— Ralph [Flambard], ii. 157; imprisoned by Henry I., 165; assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, 185, and at the dedication of S. Alban's, 193; permits S. Godric to build a hermitage, 346; dies, 209.
—— Geoffrey, ii. 214.
—— William de S. Barbara, (dean of York,) ii. 237; dies, 250.
—— Hugh de Pudsey, nephew of king Stephen, consecrated, ii. 272; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, 294, and at the council of Tours, 298; purchases the earldom of Northumberland, and an exemption from joining the crusade, iii. 9, *seq.*; appointed one of the guardians of the realm during the absence of Richard I., 15.
—— Philip, (the clerk and companion of Richard I. in his pilgrimage, iii. 66,) sent on an embassy to Rome by the king, iii. 118; consecrated by the pope, 123; protests against the coronation of king John in the absence of his metropolitan, 139; dies, 220; is stated to have countenanced John's opposition to the pope, 237.
—— Richard de Marsh, *v.* Marsh.
Dusual, king of South Wales, i. 415.
Duval, Guy, deserts from Henry II. of England to his son Richard, ii. 443.

E.

Eabbi, a supporter of Wulfheri against Oswiû, i. 155.
Eadbald of Kent succeeds his father Aethelberht, i. 113; his apostacy and incest, *ib.*; is brought to repentance by Lawrence, 115; recalls Mellitus and Justus, *ib.*; gives his sister to Eadwin on condition of his becoming a Christian, 125; dies, 136.
Eadberht of Kent, his death, i. 231 and *note*.
Eadberht, king of Kent, i. 236 and *note*.
Eadberht (Pren, i. 264), of Kent, 261; deposed by Cŏenuulf of Mercia, 264.
Eadberht of Northumbria succeeds Cèoluulf, i. 226; imprisons bishop Cyneuulf, 231; abdicates, and becomes a monk, 234.
Eadberht, bishop of Elmham, i. 224.
Eadberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 266.
Eadberht, second bishop of Leicester, i. 239.
Eadberht, bishop of London, i. 165; his death, 269.
Eadberht, bishop of Lindisfarne, translates the body of S. Cuthbert, i. 180, 189.
Eadberht, abbot of Selsey, made bishop there, i. 204.
Eadberht, bishop of Worcester, dies, i. 283.
Eadberht, an insurgent against Oswiû, i. 155.
Eadberht slain in Sussex by Iui for seizing his castle of Taunton, i. 213.
Eadburga, mother-in-law of king Aelfred, i. 300.
Eàdburh, daughter of Offa, poisons her husband, Beorhtric of Wessex, i. 268; flies to France, *ib.*; is made an abbess by Charlemagne, but expelled for incontinence, 269.
Eadelm, bishop of Selsey, i. 413.
Eadfleda, daughter of Eadward the Elder, a nun, buried at Wilton, i. 369.
Eadgar (the Pacific, i. 410), son of Eàdmund, born, 396; is chosen king by the Mercians, 406; restores Dunstan, *ib.*; sells the see of Canterbury to bishop Elfsi, 407; obtains the whole kingdom at his brother's death, 408; his family, 410; places nuns in Rumsey and monks at Exeter, 412; orders a general expulsion of the secular clerks, *ib.*; directs New Minster to be dedicated, 414; his coronation, *ib.* and *note*; punishes plunderers in the Isle of Thanet, 415; receives the fealty of eight kings, and steers a vessel which they row, *ib.*; his fleet, and its stations, *ib.*; his diligent supervision of his judges, 416; orders a new coinage, *ib.*; his munificence to Kenneth III., *ib.*; is buried at Glastonbury, 417.
Eadgar Aetheling, grandson of Eàdmund Iron-side, i. 462; comes to England with his family, 496; they fly from the Normans, and are driven upon the Scottish coast, ii. 2; Eadgar joins the Danish invaders, 6; submits to the Conqueror, 7; again flies to Scotland, and again makes his peace with William, 8.
Eadgar, king of Scotland, (son of Malcolm III., ii. 2,) dies, 184.
Eadgar, bishop of London, i. 165, 269.
Eadgar, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168.
Eadgitha, second wife of Eadward the Elder, i. 369; endeavours to persuade Dunstan to accept the see of Winchester, 400.
Eadgitha, daughter of Eadward the Elder, married to Sihtric of Northumbria, 369 and *note*, as also 385 and *note*; see also *note* [2], p. 368: is repudiated, 385, and dies a nun, 386.
Eadhed, bishop of Lincoln, i. 168.
Eadhilda, daughter of Eadward the Elder, married to Charles le Simple, i. 369.
Eàdmund of East-Anglia, his repugnance to be made king, i. 292; causes of his martyrdom, 303; his reply to the message of Hinguar, 309; fights with him at Thetford, 310; is taken at prayers in a church, 311; his cruel death, *ib.*; his head thrown into a wood, 312, and discovered, 313; a small church built on the spot of his martyrdom, *ib.*; translation of his body, 314.
Eàdmund (king), son of Eadward the Elder, i. 369; assists his half-bro-

ther Aethelstan in the battle of Brunenburg, 392; his accession, 393; makes Dunstan one of his councillors, *ib.*; his subsequent treatment of him, 394; fights with Anlaf the Norwegian, and agrees to give him half his kingdom, 395; recovers it on Anlaf's death, 396; becomes sponsor for Anlaf son of Sihtric, and Reginald, 397; his offering to S. Eâdmund, *ib.*; takes Cumberland from Dummail, and gives it to Malcolm, 398 and *note*; is murdered at a banquet, and buried at Glastonbury, 399.

Eâdmund, son of king Eadgar and Alfrida, i. 410; dies, 413.

Eâdmund Iron-side born, i. 422; marries the widow of earl Sigeferth, and obtains his possessions and those of his brother, 451; retreats before Cnut, 452; is made king, 453; defeats Cnut in Dorsetshire, *ib.*; fights twice with him in Worcestershire, 454; follows him into Wessex, where he twice defeats him, 455; loses his sixth battle through the treachery of Eadric Streona, 456; his single combat with Cnut, 458; shares the kingdom with him, 459; is assassinated, and buried at Glastonbury, 460.

Eâdmund, son of Eâdmund Iron-side, i. 459; is sent into Sweden to be put to death, 461, but is brought up by the king of Hungary, 462.

Eâdmund, grandson of Eâdmund Iron-side, born in Hungary, i. 462.

Eâdmund, bishop of Durham, singular circumstances of his election, i. 463, *seq.*; his death, 486.

Eâdmund, bishop of Winchester, i. 278.

Eâdmund, an unattached monk, discovers the body of S. Oswin, i. 505.

Eadnoth, bishop of Dorchester, slain by the Danes, i. 456.

Eadnoth, bishop of Dorchester, i. 472; dies, 486.

Eadred (son of Eadward the Elder, i. 369) crowned, 399; receives the submission of the North, and gives two large bells to York cathedral, *ib.*; makes Dunstan his treasurer, *ib.*; offers him the see of Winchester, 400; interprets Dunstan's dream, *ib.*; reduces a rebellion in Northumbria, 402; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 404.

Eadred, bishop of Durham, i. 486.

Eadred, bishop of Hagustaldt, consecrated, i. 264; his death, 266.

Eadred, abbot of Lindisfarne, his vision respecting Cuthred son of Hardacnut, i. 335.

Eadric, son of Ecgberht, fights against his uncle Hlôðheri, i. 179; succeeds him in Kent, *ib.*; his death, 181.

Eadric, bishop of Dorchester, dies, i. 472.

Eadric Streona, earl of Mercia, his unprincipled character, i. 436; procures the murder of earl Aethelstan, 437; beheads princess Gunhilda, and murders her husband and son, 445; causes earls Sigeferth and Mercher to be treacherously put to death, 450; plots against Eâdmund Iron-side, and deserts to Cnut, 452; returns to Eâdmund, 455; deserts him at Ashdown, and gives the victory to Cnut, 456; recommends a single combat between the kings, 457; causes his son to murder Eâdmund, 459; upbraids Cnut with ingratitude, and is smothered by his orders, 460; another account of his death, 461.

Eadric, cousin of Aethelred II., attends queen Emma during her sojourn in Normandy, i. 448.

Eadsius, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 476; crowns Hardacnut, 477, and Eadward the Confessor, 482; appoints himself a vicar, 483; his death, 486.

Eadulf, bishop of Crediton, dies, i. 388.

Eadulf, bishop of Sidnacester, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.

Eadulf, bishop of Wells, his jurisdiction, i. 372.

Eadulf, guardian of the realm in Sussex, i. 363.

Eadulf, earl, one of those who conducted Kenneth III. to king Eadgar, i. 416.

Eadwald (son of Ethelher) succeeds Eadwulf in East-Anglia, i. 154.

Eadward (the Elder, i. 380, 384), son of Aelfred the Great, 322; his accession, 367; expels his cousin Aethelwald, and rescues the nun he had forcibly married, 368; re-

pairs the ruined towns, *ib.*; his family, *ib.*; slays Aethelwald, and makes peace with the Danes, 370; subdues a domestic rebellion, *ib.*; calls a council to appoint bishops, 371; overcomes the Danes in Essex, East-Anglia, Mercia, and Northumbria, and receives the submission of the Scots, Cumbrians, and people of Galloway, 373; reconquers Northumbria, *ib.*; is victorious at Wodensfeld, 375; builds towns and fortresses, *ib.* 380, 381, 384; redeems bishop Camelec from the Danes, 380; destroys a great army of Danes, and makes subsequent conquests, 382; dies, and is buried at Winchester, *ib.*

Eadward II. (the Martyr), son of Eadgar and Alfleda, i. 410; his accession, 417; retains the name of king, but allows his stepmother to perform the functions, 419; is stabbed by her orders, *ib.*, and buried privately at Wareham, 420; miracles at his grave, *ib.*; his body honourably translated to Shaftesbury, *ib.* 422.

Eadward III. (the Confessor), son of Aethelred II., i. 427; is sent to Normandy for safety, 448; comes to England on a mission, 449; returns to avoid Cnut, 462; his honourable reception by Hardacnut, 479; succeeds him, 482; his genealogy, *ib.*; deprives his mother of her property, but allows her a maintenance, *ib.*; marries Editha, daughter of earl Godwin, 483; equips a fleet, *ib.*; remits Danegeld, 487; is visited by William of Normandy, *ib.*; banishes Godwin and his family, 489, and repudiates Editha, 490; is compelled to restore them, 491; the head of Rhesus presented to him, 492; he makes Harold earl of Kent, and Malcolm king of Scotland, 493; receives the head of Griffin, 504; orders S. Peter's, Westminster, to be dedicated, 509; his visions, *ib.* 511; chastity, 512; death, 510; was last of the royal line of Wessex, 511.

Eadward Aetheling, son of Eâdmund Iron-side, i. 459; is sent by Cnut to the king of Sweden, to be put to death, 461, and sent by him to the king of Hungary, whose sister-in-law he marries, 462; dies in England, 496.

Eadwenna, mother of S. Godric, ii. 341.

Eadwi, earl, defeated by the Danes, i. 438.

Eadwin, son of Ella, on his expulsion from Deira, takes refuge with Reodwald, i. 96; his vision, 127; his valour in the battle of the Idle, 116; is restored to the kingdom of Northumbria, *ib.*; marries Athelburga of Kent, 125; his life attempted, *ib.*; permits his daughter Eanfled to be baptized, 126; kills Cuichelm in battle, *ib.*; his own baptism, 127; builds a church of stone at York, and procures the conversion of his subjects, *ib.*; his measures for the security and convenience of travellers, 128; induces Eorpwald to become a Christian, 129; defeats Cadwallo, and ravages Wales, 130; is slain by him in the battle of Hatfield, 132; his head buried at S. Peter's, York, *ib.*

Eadwin, third son of Eadward the Elder, i. 369; is forced to sea in an open boat by his brother, 390; drowns himself in despair, *ib.*

Eadwin, uterine brother of Eâdmund Iron-side, is delivered to Aethelward to be put to death, but is concealed by him in a monastery, i. 461.

Eadwin, *v.* Morchar.

Eadwulf (son of Ethelher), king of East-Anglia, i. 154; the council of Heathfield held in his reign, 172.

Eadwy (son of Eâdmund, i. 399) crowned, 404; leaves the coronation banquet to join his mistress, *ib.*; is brought back forcibly by Dunstan, whom he banishes, 405; is rejected by the Mercians, 406; divorced from Algiva, 407; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 408.

Ealhstan, bishop of Sherborne, defeats the Danes, i. 283; orders weekly prayers to be said for king Aetheluulf and the other parties to the royal charter, 289; conspires against the king on account of his foreign marriage, 290; dies, 299; summary of his martial acts, *ib.*

Ealdulph, archbishop of Lichfield, receives his pall, i. 238.

Ealdulph, bishop of Rochester, i. 214;

present at the consecration of archbishop Tatwin, 219; his death, 227.
Ealferth, bishop of Winchester, i. 297.
Ealmar, bishop of Selsey, dies, i. 463.
Ealred (or Alcred, i. 266) of Northumbria succeeds Aethelwald Mull, 237; his death, 240.
Eanbald, archbishop of York, i. 238; consecrates Baldulph bishop of Whiterne, i. 251; his death, 261.
Eanbald, archbishop of York, succeeds the preceding, i. 261; cooperates with archbishop Aethelhard in restoring the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 238, 263; consecrates Eadred bishop of [Hagustaldt], 264; holds the second council of Finchale, 265.
Eanberht, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 283; dies, 288.
Eandred of Northumbria, i. 271; made tributary by Ecgberht of Wessex, 277; his death, 281.
Eanfled, daughter of Eadwin of Northumbria, baptized, i. 126; is carried into Kent upon the death of her father, 133; becomes the wife of Oswiù, 177.
Eanfrith, son of king Aethelfrith, succeeds Eadwin in Bernicia, i. 133; his baptism and apostacy, *ib.*; is killed by Cadwallo, 134.
Eanwulf, earl of Somerset, conspires against Aetheluulf of Wessex, i. 290.
Earconberht of Kent, son of Eanbald, supplants his elder brother in the kingdom, i. 137; destroys the idols, and orders Lent to be observed, *ib.*; his children by Sexburga, *ib.*; his death, 149, 158.
Earconwald (founder of the monasteries of Chertsey and Barking), bishop of London, i. 164; his miraculous powers, *ib.*; his death, 165.
Earconwine, king of Essex, i. 92; his death, 93.
Eardulf of Northumbria, i. 261; suppresses the insurrection of Wade, 265; puts to death Alcmund, son of Ealred, 266; is expelled by Alfwold, 270.
Eardulf, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 288; translates the body of S. Cuthbert, 326.
Earmenred, elder son of Eanbald of Kent, supplanted in the kingdom by his younger brother, i. 137; his sons, *ib.*
Earnulf, earl of Somerset, defeats the Danes, i. 283.
Earthquakes, i. 275, 415; ii. 21, 191, 194.
East-Anglia settled by the Saxons, i. 68.
Eastan, bishop of London, i. 165; dies, 365.
Easter, dispute as to the proper time for celebrating, i. 84.
Easterwine made abbot by Benedict Biscop, i. 197.
Eatta, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 168; removes to Lindisfarne, *ib.*; his death, 178.
Ebba, aunt of Ecgfrith of Northumbria, abbess at 'Coludesburch,' i. 171 and *note*.
Ebba, abbess of Coldingham, her desperate expedient to save the honour of her convent, i. 301; her heroic death, 302.
Ebroin, an apostate monk, the murderer of S. Leodegar, i. 188.
Ecgberht, son of Earconberht, succeeds him in Kent, i. 149, 158; connives at the murder of his two cousins, 150; his repentance, *ib.*, and reparation, 151.
Ecgberht of Wessex banished by Beorhtric, i. 247; succeeds him in the kingdom, 269; subdues Cornwall and ravages North Wales, 271; defeats Beornuulf of Mercia, 275; conquers Kent and Sussex, and receives the submission of East-Anglia, 276; expels Wiglaf of Mercia and Suuithraed of Essex, *ib.*; makes Northumbria tributary, 277; subjects the Welch kings to his power, *ib.*; is defeated by the Danes, 278; defeats a confederacy of them and the Welch, *ib.*; is again victorious, *ib.*; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 279.
Ecgberht of Northumbria acts as viceroy of the Danes, i. 299; is expelled, and takes refuge with Burgred of Mercia, 323; dies, 325.
Ecgberht of Northumbria, i. 327.
Ecgberht, archbishop of York, his skill in sacred literature, i. 227; recovers the pall of his see from Rochester, 228; dies, 238.
Ecgberht, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 270; dies, 276.

Ecgbriht, an abettor of Modred, slain by king Arthur, i. 75.
Ecgfrith, son of Oswiû, succeeds him in Bernicia, i. 162; expels Wilfrid, and appoints three bishops in his stead, 167; strips Wulfheri of Lichfield, 168; fights with Aethelred of Mercia, but is reconciled to him by archbishop Theodore, 170; permits his wife Etheldrith to take the veil, 171; ravages Ireland, 176; invades the country of the Picts, and is slain by them, 177; his ancestry, *ib.*
Ecgfrith, son of Offa of Mercia, crowned in the council of Chalchuthe, and admitted by his father to a share in his government, i. 247; his liberality to S. Alban's and other monasteries, 262; is prevented by death from restoring the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 263.
Ecgfrith (in MS. 'Earduulf') bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 276; dies, 283.
Ecgwini, third bishop of Worcester, i. 205; visits Rome, and obtains privileges for a monastery of his foundation, *ib.*
Eclipses, solar, i. 72, 159, 180, 189, 220, 284; iii. 40; iv. 211: lunar, i. 180, 232, 236, 335; ii. 192, 215; iii. 220; iv. 37, 218.
Editha (S.), a natural daughter of king Eadgar, i. 410.
Editha, daughter of earl Godwin, married by Eadward the Confessor, i. 483; repudiated, 490, and restored, 491; her attainments, 513; buried with her husband by the Conqueror, ii. 16.
Edmund's, S., abbots of:
—— Hugh Norwold, *v.* Ely.
—— [Richard de Insula, or Ely,] ordered to excommunicate the insurgents against the Italian clergy, iv. 241.
Eggen, a Northumbrian general, slain by rebels, i. 242.
Eggiva (or Elgiva, i. 392) daughter of Eadward the Elder, married to the emperor Otho, i. 369, 392.
Egric of East-Anglia succeeds his kinsman Sigeberht, i. 136; is slain by Penda, 148.
Egwinna, concubine of Eadward the Elder, and mother of Aethelstan, i. 368 and *note*; her legendary history, 389.
Eiglaf, a Swedish king, slain by earl Godwin, i. 466.
Elafdalius, an Armenian renegade, his futile expedition against Jerusalem, ii. 147, *seqq.*
Elafius slain by king Arthur, i. 75.
Eldad (brother of Eldol), bishop of Claudiocestria (Gloucester), his speech against Hengest, i. 42.
Elder-tree, a remarkable one in Italy, i. 78.
Eldol, consul of Claudiocestria (Gloucester), escapes from the massacre of the British nobles, i. 18; takes Hengest at the battle of the Don, and beheads him, 42.
Eleanor, daughter of the duke of Aquitaine and wife of Louis VII., ii. 221; accompanies her husband to the crusade, 242; is divorced, 247; marries Henry II. when duke of Normandy, 248; gives birth to William, 255, Henry, 279, Matilda, 284, Richard and Geoffrey, 287, Eleanor, 291, Joan, 312, and John, 315; is said to have encouraged the rebellion of her sons against their father, 367, 369; released from prison by her son Richard, and appointed regent, iii. 2, *seq.*; prohibits the cardinal of Anagnia from coming beyond Dover, 13; receives her dowry, etc. from Richard, 14; visits him while on his way to the Holy Land, and leaves Berengaria with him, 27; goes to Germany to him, 80; assists her son John in taking Le Mans, 138; takes Angers, *ib.*; is sent for Blanche of Castille, 147; is besieged by Arthur in the castle of Mirabeau, 168.
Eleanor, daughter of Henry II., born, ii. 292; married to the king of Castille, 332.
Elfeh, bishop of Wells, i. 385.
Elfelm, earl, father-in-law of Eadward the Elder, i. 368.
Elfelm, earl, father of Cnut's first wife, i. 462.
Elfere, earl, destroys many monasteries in Mercia, i. 418; repents, and translates the body of Eadward the Martyr, 420, 422; his miserable death, 421.
Elfsi, or Elfsinus, bishop of Winchester, i. 401; purchases the see of Canterbury, 407; his flagitious conduct at the tomb of archbishop Odo,

ib.; his prophetic dream, and death on the Alps, *ib.*
Elfsius, bishop of Winchester, i. 437.
Ella and his three sons land at Cimenshore, and defeat the Britons, i. 38; they are themselves defeated at Mercredesburne, 40; Ella sends home for reinforcements, *ib.*; besieges and takes Andred-ceaster, 48; founds the kingdom of Sussex, 49; his death, 60.
Ella, son of Yffa, i. 81; marries his daughter Acca to Aethelfrith of Bernicia, 93; his death, 96 and *note*.
Ella of Northumbria made king in the place of Osberht, i. 298; is assisted by him against the Danes, and falls at York, *ib.*
Ellandune, battle of, i. 275.
Elle, bishop of Lichfield, i. 387.
Elmar, bishop of Sherborne, i. 438.
Elmham, bishops of, *v.* Bedwin, Eadberht, Hyrald, Humberht, Wilred, [also the names at i. 315,] Algar, Alwine, Aelfric, Grinketel, Stigand.
Elstan, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495.
Elstan, a Saxon admiral, i. 428.
Ely, bishops of:
—— Hervey, ii. 185; dies, 214.
—— Nigel, ii. 214; banished, 227.
—— Geoffrey Ridel (archdeacon of Canterbury, ii. 296), elected, 370; consecrated, 381; dies intestate, iii. 4.
—— William de Longchamp, elected, iii. 9; appointed, as chancellor, one of the guardians of the realm during king Richard's absence, 15; consecrated, 16; obtains the office of legate, 17; levies horses for the king's use, 20; receives letters patent in aid of his office, 24; price paid by him for the office of legate, 27; holds a council at Westminster, 32; his overbearing conduct, 35; orders the apprehension of the archbishop of York, 38; consecrates Robert bishop of Worcester, 49; his fall, 50; flight and disguise, 53; obtains a hearing for king Richard before the emperor, 71; returns to England for the king's ransom, 73; dies during his embassy to Rome, 118.
—— Eustace, (dean of Salisbury,) consecrated, iii. 128; delegated with others to expostulate with king John, 220; joins in interdicting the land, and leaves the country, 222; ordered to excommunicate the king, 228; accompanies his metropolitan to Rome, 241, and to the king of France, 243; returns to England, 260; gives benediction to William abbot of S. Alban's, 294; becomes surety to the barons for king John, 296; dies, *ib.*
—— John of Fountains, *v.* Fountains.
—— Geoffrey de Burgh, (archdeacon of Norwich,) iv. 102; dies, 179.
—— Hugh Norwold, (abbot of S. Edmund's,) elected, iv. 179; consecrated, 204.
Ely, Richard abbot of, degraded, ii. 171; restored, 172; dies, 185.
Emico, a German count, persecutes the Jews, ii. 72.
Emma, daughter of Richard I. of Normandy and wife of Aethelred II., is ill-treated by her husband, and complains to her father, i. 427; is sent with her family to Normandy for safety, 448; on becoming a widow, she is married to Cnut, 463; recommends him to send home his fleet, *ib.*, and reconciles him to his subjects, 466; deprived of her property and banished by her stepson Harold, 473; takes refuge with Baldwin V. of Flanders, *ib.*; visited by her son Hardacnut, 476; her property again invaded by her son Eadward, 482; dies, and is buried at Winchester, 490.
Emmo, bishop of Noyon, killed by the Danes, i. 349.
Emyfer, notary of Accianus, betrays Antioch, ii. 105, *seqq.*
Engelram, son of Hugh de S. Paul, a crusader, ii. 74, 120.
England, first so called on the expulsion of the Britons, i. 93; state of, at the death of Beda, 224; the national sins, the cause of the Danish invasion, 280, and of the Norman conquest, ii. 3; catalogue of the various kings of, i. 345—349; its state under the Conqueror, ii. 23.
Eni, father of Anna of East-Anglia, i. 148.
Eopa, the Saxon who poisoned Aurelius Ambrosius, i. 51.

Eopa, sent by Athelwald to convert the Isle of Wight, i. 156.
Eormenburga, daughter of Earmenred and wife of Merewald of West Mercia, her children by him, i. 167; separates from him, and founds a nunnery, 151, *seq.*
Eormenric, father of Aethelberht of Kent, i. 83.
Eorpwald, (son of Reodwald,) king of East-Anglia, i. 100, 124; his conversion, 129; is killed by Regberht, *ib.*
Eosa, a kinsman of Hengest, flies to the town of Alclud after the battle of the Don, i. 42; *v.* Octa.
Erchenwine believed to have been the first king of Essex, i. 68 and *note*; his pedigree, *ib.*
Ercongota, daughter of Earconberht of Kent, takes the veil at Bruges, i. 137; celestial apparition at her death, 138.
Ermenhilda, daughter of Earconberht of Kent, wife of Wulfheri of Mercia, and mother of S. Werburgh, i. 166.
Eschans, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Esne, bishop of Hereford, i. 344.
Espec, Walter, a commander in the battle of the Standard, ii. 222.
Espinay, William d', hanged for permitting the escape of his prisoner, iii. 96.
Essex, kingdom of, founded, i. 68.
Essex, Henry de, hereditary standard-bearer, is defeated in a trial by battle, and becomes a monk, ii. 296.
Essex, earl of, *v.* Mandeville.
Etheldreda, wife of Aethelwald Mull, i. 236.
Etheldrith (S.), daughter of Anna of East-Anglia, i. 166; twice married, but preserves her celibacy, 170; takes the veil at 'Coludesburch,' 171; becomes abbess at Ely, where she dies, *ib.*; her body found uncorrupted, *ib.*
Ethelher, brother of Anna, succeeds him in East-Anglia, i. 149; is slain by Oswiû, 153.
Ethelhun (abbot of Berkeley) made bishop of Worcester, i. 380; his death, 384.
Ethelwald, brother of Ethelher, succeeds him in East-Anglia, i. 153; becomes sponsor for Swithelm, 143.
Eu, William count of, deprived of sight, ii. 46.
Eu, Denebert d', a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Eudes, his heresy condemned, ii. 239.
Eugenius I., pope, i. 155.
Eugenius II., pope, i. 275.
Eugenius III., pope, ii. 235; excommunicates Louis VII., 238; holds a council at Rheims, 239; dies, 253.
Eumer, an assassin, cut to pieces by the attendants of Eadwin, i. 125.
Eustace II. of Boulogne, brother-in-law of the Confessor, affray between his suite and the men of Dover, i. 488.
Eustace of Bouillon, brother of Godfrey, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 79; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 120.
Eustace, son of king Stephen, does homage to Louis VI., ii. 220; marries his daughter Constance, 226; joins Louis VII. against Geoffrey of Anjou, 245, and against Henry of Normandy, 248; his death and burial, 254.
Eustace (bishops), *v.* Ely, and London.
Eutherius, bishop of Arles, deposed by Charles of France, i. 214.
Eutyches, abbot of Constantinople, his heresy condemned, i. 12.
Evesham, Roger abbot of, iii. 13.
Evreux, William Crispin, count of, wounds Henry I. and is made prisoner, ii. 199.
Exeter, bishops of:
—— William, consecrated, ii. 183; dies, 220.
—— Robert, dies, ii. 280.
—— Robert (dean of Salisbury), consecrated, ii. 280.
—— Bartholomew, legend respecting, ii. 289; present at the concord between S. Alban's and Lincoln, 294; suspended by the pope, 358; his text upon re-opening Canterbury cathedral, 367.
—— John (precentor of Exeter) made bishop, ii. 419.
—— William, goes to the crusade, iv. 145; is one of the leaders, 175; besieged in his house by the emperor, 199; appointed to conduct the princess Isabella to the emperor, 334; fulfils his mission, 337.

Eynsford, William patron of the church of, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 297.
Eynsford, W. de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 335.

F.

Faie, Ralph de, great-uncle of prince Henry, incites him against his father (Henry II.), ii. 367.
Famines, i. 418, 436; ii. 43; iv. 289, 317.
Felix II., pope, i. 40.
Felix IV., pope, orders the separation of the clergy from the laity in churches, i. 60.
Felix, a Burgundian, preaches to the East-Angles, i. 129; converts Eorpwald, *ib.*; holds the see of Dommoc (or Dunwich) seventeen years, *ib.*
Fereby, J. de, excommunicated, iii. 356.
Fergand, a noble crusader from Britanny, ii. 80.
Feria, Thomas de, a crusader, persecutes the Jews, ii. 72; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 120.
Ferrers, Robert earl of, makes his peace with Henry II., ii. 380; dies at Acre, iii. 36.
Ferrers, William earl of, undertakes that king John will observe his compact with the pope, iii. 249; is a witness of his submission, 254; present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1, and at the siege of Montsorel, 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; confederates against the king, 143; becomes a surety for Hubert de Burgh, 258; attends a council at Westminster, 270.
Ferrers, Walkelin de, a crusader, iii. 21.
Fersi, Biset de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.
Finan, bishop, baptizes Sigeberht II., i. 143, and Peada, 144; succeeds Aidan in Lindisfarne, 148.
Finchale, council of, i. 248; second council of, 265.
Fitz-Alan, John, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.
Fitz-Alan, Osbert, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.
Fitz-Alan, William, violently deprived of the castle of Salop by king Stephen, ii. 222.
Fitz-Earl, Brien, supports the empress Maud, ii. 227; receives the custody of William Martel, 231; affords a refuge to the empress, 232.
Fitz-Gerald, Warine, one of the witnesses of king John's submission to the pope, iii. 254, and present at the granting of Magna Charta, 302.
Fitz-Gerald, Maurice, justiciary of Ireland, consents to a plan for the destruction of Richard the earl-marshal, iv. 292, *seq.*; meets him in a conference, 303; sends a surgeon to dress his wound, 307.
Fitz-Gerard, Robert, a crusader, ii. 120.
Fitz-Gervase, Hugh, taken prisoner by the English, ii. 204.
Fitz-Godfrey, Ralph, a crusader, ii. 120.
Fitz-Hamon, Robert, one of the courtiers of Rufus, ii. 158.
Fitz-Herbert, Matthew, attends king John to Runnymede, iii. 302.
Fitz-Herbert, Peter, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238; is a witness of his submission, 254; supports him against the barons, 301, and is present at Runnymede, 302.
Fitz-Hugh, John, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301.
Fitz-John, Eustace, holds Melton castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.
Fitz-John, Peter, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.
Fitz-John, Philip, excommunicated, iii. 356.
Fitz-Nicholas, Ralph, seneschal of Henry III., appointed to conduct the princess Isabella to the emperor Frederic II., iv. 334.
Fitz-Osbert (or Longbeard), William, goes to the crusade, iii. 29; his sedition in London, and execution, 94, *seq.*
Fitz-Ours, Reginald, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.
Fitz-Piers, Geoffrey, ordered by Richard I. to act independently of the chancellor, iii. 49; appointed justiciary of England, 129; gains a

victory over the Welch, *ib.*; associated with others to receive the fealty of the nobles to king John, 137; his severity in exacting the taxes, 173; adheres to John against the pope, 237; is a witness of his submission, 254; appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 261; present in the council at S. Alban's, 262; dies, 271.

Fitz-Radulph, Humphrey, a crusader, ii. 76.

Fitz-Richard, Roger, becomes prince of Antioch during the minority of Bohemond II., ii. 190; is summoned by Baldwin I. to his aid, 191; is slain by the Turks, 200.

Fitz-Robert, John, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297.

Fitz-Robert, Ralph, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.

Fitz-Turstan, Robert, a crusader, ii. 76.

Fitz-Walter, Robert, delivers the castle of Ruil to Philip II. and is imprisoned by him, iii. 172; flies to France from king John, 240; joins the barons confederated against him, 297; appointed marshal of their army, 299; invites William d'Albiney to a tournament, 321; is excommunicated, 355; sent to offer the crown to prince Louis, 359; subdues Essex and Suffolk, 371; is refused the custody of Hertford castle, iv. 5; marches to the relief of Montsorel, 15; reconnoitres the royal army, 20; is taken prisoner, 24; arrives in the Holy Land, 44.

Fitz-Warine, Foulques, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.

Fitz-William, Adam, a collector of taxes, iv. 254.

Flambard, Ralph, (bishop,) *v.* Durham.

Flanders, Arnulph earl of, procures the assassination of William I. of Normandy, i. 397.

Flanders, Robert earl of, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 79; assists in rescuing Raymond, 83; his valour in a foraging expedition, 94; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 119; returns home, 151; his death, 189.

Flanders, Baldwin VII. earl of, ii. 190; joins Louis VI. against Henry I., 194; is mortally wounded in the battle of Brenville, 199.

Flanders, Charles, son of king Cnut, becomes earl of, ii. 200; is murdered, 207.

Flanders, Philip earl of, deserts the expedition of Louis VII., ii. 372; swears to conquer England for prince Henry, 376; is one of the besiegers of Rouen, 381; makes peace with Henry II., *ib.*; sends him an embassy, 387; visits Becket's tomb, 412; takes the cross, 426, *seq.*; is one of the mediators between England and France, 442; accompanies Richard I. into Normandy, iii. 15; dies in the Holy Land, 38.

Flanders, Baldwin earl of, bribed by Richard I., iii. 121; compels Philip II. to come to terms, 122.

Flanders, Philip earl of, refuses to join the French king in his invasion of England, iii. 256; sends to king John for aid, 257.

Flanders, Ferrand earl of, joins king John against the French, iii. 287; is one of the leaders in the battle of Bovines, 289; is taken prisoner, 291; his release demanded by the French peers, iv. 136.

Flaye, Eustace abbot of, preaches respecting the observance of the Lord's day, iii. 151, *seq.*

Floods, i. 266, 450; ii. 24, 43; iv. 45.

Florus, a French nobleman, gives land to S. Maurus, and entrusts him with the education of his son, i. 79.

Florus, a writer against Johannes Scotus, i. 338.

Foillanus, a brother of S. Furseus, builds the monastery in France, in which he suffered martyrdom, i. 142.

Foix, Raymond Roger count of, an ally of the Albigenses, iii. 272.

Foliot, Gilbert and Hugh, (bishops,) *v.* Hereford.

Fougères, Ralph de, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375; deserts to the king's son Richard, 443; dies at Acre, iii. 36.

Foulques, king of Jerusalem, *v.* Anjou, Foulques of.

Ford, Baldwin abbot of, *v.* Worcester.

Forenza, John of, a papal legate, holds a council at Reading, iii. 187.
Forez, or Foreis, William count of, a crusader, ii. 62; marches with Raymond, 77; is slain, 84.
Forez, William de, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24, 30.
Forli, [John] bishop of, sent to Thoulouse to demand the Albigenses, iii. 271.
Formosus, pope, i. 360.
Forther, bishop of Sherborne, his skill in sacred literature, i. 203; visits Rome with queen Fredegitha, 225.
Fortibus, William de, earl of Albemarle, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 300; marches with him towards the north, 348; appointed governor of Rockingham castle, etc., 353; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; the castle of Rockingham taken from him by Henry III., 65; seizes Fotheringay castle, 67; is reconciled to the king, *ib.*; surrenders the custody of his castles to him, 93; appointed one of the commanders of the army in Britanny, 217.
Fortunatus becomes bishop of Poitiers, i. 82.
Fountains, John abbot of, one of the commissioners to investigate the miracles ascribed to Hugh bishop of Lincoln, iv. 64; named subsequently, as bishop of Ely, to inquire into the bishop of Durham's conduct, 69; dies, 102.
Francis (S.), life and death of, iv. 149, *seqq.*
Franco, archbishop of Rouen, baptizes Rollo or Robert I., i. 377.
Frane, a treacherous Saxon general, i. 429.
Franks defeated by the Bohemians, i. 285.
Frea, a Saxon goddess, wife of Woden, i. 235; Friday dedicated to her, 8, 235, 346.
Fredegitha, queen of Wessex, visits Rome with bishop Forther, i. 225.
Frederic I. emperor, ii. 253; sends an embassy to Henry II., 387; takes the cross, 426; his letter to Saladin, 428; sets out upon his pilgrimage, 443; is drowned, iii. 28.
Frederic II., emperor, harassed when king of Sicily by Otho IV., iii. 232; embarks for the Holy Land, but turns back, iv. 148; is excommunicated by the pope, 157; states his case to the princes of Christendom, 165; makes war upon the pope, 166; arrives at Acre, 174; recovers the Holy Land, 188; his letter to Henry III., 189, *seqq.*; wears the crown in Jerusalem, 192; his conduct to the clergy, etc., 198, *seq.*; returns to Germany, 207; expels his enemies, and makes a truce with the pope, 209; is absolved, 216; assists the pope against the Roman citizens, 323; asks the English princess Isabella in marriage, 332; crushes the rebellion of his son, and marries the princess, 336; sends presents to king Henry, 337.
Frescati, Nicholas bishop of, and papal legate, sent to England respecting the compensation to be made by king John to the clergy, iii. 274; receives the king's submission, 275; favours him, and postpones the settlement, 276; his arbitrary conduct with respect to the vacant churches, 277, *seq.*; defeats the archbishop of Canterbury's appeal to Rome, 279; is ordered to remove the interdict, 281; requires an account of the payments made to the clergy, 283; removes the interdict, 284; refers the minor claimants to the pope, *ib.*
Fretherne, battle of, i. 88.
Frethwlf, king of Bernicia, i. 84; his death, 86.
Frideswithe (S.), legend of, ii. 188.
Frison, Robert le, one of the captains of the second division in the great sortie from Antioch, ii. 119.
Fritheberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 224, 226; his death, 238.
Frithegist, a treacherous Saxon general, i. 429.
Frithewold, bishop of Whiterne, dies, i. 236.
Frithstan, bishop of Winchester, i. 372; his jurisdiction, *ib.*; ordains his successor, abdicates, and embraces a life of poverty, 388; his

charity to the souls of the departed, and death, 389.
Frost, severe, iii. 182 ; iv. 289.
Furnes, Thomas de, (nephew of Robert de Turnham,) delivers the city of Angers, &c. to Arthur of Britanny, iii. 138.
Furnival, G. de, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301.
Furseus (S.) becomes celebrated in Ireland, i. 142 ; visits Clovis II., and founds the monastery of Lagny, *ib.*

G.

Gallinicus, patriarch, blinded and sent to Rome by Justinian II., i. 200.
Galloway, Alan de, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302.
Gamius, a Moorish king, slain at Santarem, ii. 412, *seq.*
Gant, Baldwin de, a crusader, slain, ii. 84.
Gant, Gilbert de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297 ; created earl of Lincoln by prince Louis, 379 ; flies before John, 382 ; besieges Lincoln, iv. 17 ; is taken prisoner, 23.
Gant, Maurice de, confederates against king John, iii. 297 ; is excommunicated, 356.
Garlandia, Guy de, a crusader, ii. 63.
Gaugy, Robert de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238 ; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14 ; defends Newark against the royal army, 35 ; restores it to the bishop of Lincoln, on being remunerated for the stores, 36.
Gawaine, or Walwyn, nephew of king Arthur, educated and knighted by pope Vigilius, i. 70 ; is slain at Sandwich, 74 ; his tomb discovered, ii. 28.
Gelasius, pope, i. 50.
Gelasius, antipope, ii. 194 ; dies, 196.
Génévière (S.), her death, i. 59.
Gennadius of Marseilles finishes his book ' de Viris Illustribus,' i. 45.
Geoffrey, second son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Maud, born, ii. 214 ; sides with Louis VII. against his brother Henry, 248 ; is forced to make peace, 249 ; his second quarrel and reconciliation with his brother, 283 ; dies, 288.
Geoffrey, earl of Britanny, *v.* Britanny.
Geoffrey (bishops), *v.* Asaph, S., Durham, and Lincoln.
Geoffrey, a London crier, hanged for making a seditious proclamation, iv. 81.
Gerard (bishops), *v.* York, Coventry, and Hereford.
Gerloc, daughter of Rollo I., i. 376.
Germanus (S.), bishop of Auxerre, comes to Britain to put down the Pelagian heresy, *Pref.* xxv. ; his controversy with Agricola, xxvi. ; deposits relics in the grave of S. Alban, *ib.* ; his second visit to assist the Britons against the Picts and Scots, i. 6 ; again recalled to confute the Pelagians, 9 ; his death and burial, 11 ; singular fulfilment of his promise to the priest Severus, *ib.*
Germanus (S.), bishop of Paris, dies, i. 86.
Gernon, William, sent by king John to hire foreign mercenaries, iii. 320.
Gertrude (a noble virgin) assists Foillanus to build his monastery, i. 142.
Geruntius, king of the Welch, defeated by Ini, i. 202.
Geta, a Saxon god, i. 235, 319.
Giffard, Walter, (earl,) witnesses a charter of Henry I., ii. 164.
Giffard, Osbert, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 335 ; excommunicated, 357.
Giffard, Richard, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 336.
Giffard, William, (bishop,) *v.* Winchester.
Gilbert, earl, the guardian of William of Normandy, i. 469.
Gilbert, son of Richard earl of Clare and Gloucester, excommunicated, iii. 355 ; espouses the cause of the earl of Cornwall, iv. 143 ; dies, 217.
Gilbert (bishop), *v.* London.
Gilernallis (? Jaulnais), Foulques de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Gilla, daughter of Charles le Simple and wife of Rollo, or Robert I., i. 377.
Gillamurius, or Gillomaur, an Irish king, made prisoner by king Arthur, i. 67.
Gillomannius, or Gillomaur, an Irish

king, resists the removal of the 'Chorea Gigantum,' i. 44; lands at S. David's with Pascentius, 51; slain by Uther, 52.
Gisa, bishop of Wells, consecrated at Rome, i. 502.
Glamorgan, Urban bishop of, consecrated, ii. 183.
Glanville, Ralph de, justiciary of England, dismissed from his office, and fined, iii. 9; lands at Tyre, 30; dies, 36.
Glanville, Gilbert de, (bishop,) *v.* Rochester.
Glappa, king of Bernicia, i. 83; his death, 84.
Glastonbury abbey rebuilt, i. 216.
Glastonbury, Sifred abbot of, *v.* Chichester.
Gloucester, Robert earl of, (natural son of Henry I., ii. 222,) surrenders Falaise to Theobald IV. of Blois, 220; holds Ledes castle and Bristol against king Stephen, 222; brings the empress Maud to England, 226; commands the third division in the battle of Lincoln, 228; taken prisoner, and exchanged for the king, 230; goes to Geoffrey Plantagenet for aid, 231; is driven from Faringdon, 236.
Gloucester, William earl of, submits to Henry II., ii. 380; adopts prince John as his heir, 385.
Gloucester, Milo de, an adherent of the empress Maud, ii. 227.
Gloucester, Gilbert Foliot, abbot of, *v.* Hereford.
'Gloria in excelsis' directed to be sung on Sundays and on the anniversaries of martyrs, i. 56.
Goda, sister of Eadward the Confessor, and wife of Eustace II. of Boulogne, i. 488.
Godarville, Walter de, receives the custody of Hertford castle from king John, iii. 353; compelled to surrender it to prince Louis, iv. 4; is deceived by the Welch, while governor of Montgomery castle, 222.
Godbald, king of the Orcades, slain in the battle of Hatfield, i. 132.
Godeschal, a priest, his disastrous expedition, ii. 70.
Godeschal, one of king John's foreign mercenaries, iii. 331; accompanies him on his northern expedition, 348.
Godfrey of Bouillon assumes the cross, ii. 62; his march and companions, 73; liberates the Christian prisoners at Constantinople, 75; offends Alexius, 76; reaches Nice, 81; assists in rescuing the division of Raymond, 83; kills an insolent Turk, 85; his combat with a bear, 97; feat performed by him before Antioch, 103; leads the seventh division in the great sortie, 120; rescues Bohemond, 122; marches upon Jerusalem, 129; liberates Guenemer of Boulogne, 130; his conduct at the siege of Jerusalem, 140; is chosen king, 146; gains the battle of Ascalon, 150; anecdote of his great strength, 166; his death, 167.
Godfrey (bishops), *v.* Asaph's, S., and Bath.
Godiva, countess of Chester, anecdote of, i. 497.
Godmund (or Gebmund), bishop of Rochester, i. 188.
Godric (S.) becomes a hermit, ii. 188; life of, 340, *seqq.*; fulfilment of his prophecy respecting the bishop of Durham, iii. 10.
Godwin, earl of Kent, his exploit in the Swedish expedition, i. 466, and intrigues on the death of Cnut, 473; betrays Aelfred, son of Aethelred II., 474; swears that he had no part in his death, and propitiates Hardacnut by a costly present, 478; becomes father-in-law of Eadward the Confessor, 483; sides with the men of Dover against Eustace of Boulogne, 489; is banished, and takes refuge in Flanders, *ib.*; plunders the south of England, and is joined by malecontents, 491; is restored to favour, *ib.*; his death, 492.
Godwin, bishop of Rochester, made prisoner by the Danes, i. 439.
Godwin, a treacherous Saxon general, i. 429.
Godwin, the murderer of earl Aethelstan, i. 437.
Gontran, king of the Franks, vision of, i. 93.
Gordian, a Roman senator, father of Gregory the Great, i. 80.
Gorlois, duke of Cornwall, attends a great festival held at Easter by Uther-pendragon, i. 54; the consequences to himself, *ib.*

Gournay, Hugh de, his castle burnt by Henry of Normandy, ii. 249; present at the siege of Acre, iii. 21; submits to Philip II., 79, and delivers to him the castle of Montfort, 172.
Granges, John des, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Grantemenil, Alberic de, deserts from Antioch, ii. 113.
Grantemenil, Hugh de, one of Odo's conspiracy, plunders Leicester, ii. 33.
Grantemenil, William de, deserts from Antioch, ii. 113 and *note*; deters Alexius from attempting its relief, 114.
Gratian, one of the legates sent to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, ii. 333.
Gray, Walter de, made chancellor by king John, iii. 231; becomes bishop of Worcester, 293; present at the granting of Magna Charta, 302; sent to engage foreign mercenaries, 320; elected archbishop of York at Rome, 346; affords the earl of Albemarle safe conduct to Henry III., iv. 67; consecrates Walter bishop of Carlisle, 85; is sent to treat with the French malecontents, 136; returns, 140; commissioned by the pope to inquire respecting the spoliation of the Italian clergy, 241; anecdote of his avarice, 317.
Gray, John de, (bishop,) *v.* Norwich.
Gregory the Great, son of Gordian, i. 80; founds seven monasteries, serves the office of city prætor, and becomes a monk, *ib.*; prevented by the Roman populace from visiting England, 85; promoted by pope Benedict, *ib.*; orders a sevenfold litany to be recited during the plague, 95; becomes pope, *ib.*; composes a book of antiphons, etc., *ib.*; sends S. Augustine to England, 97; transmits him a pall, 100; his intercession for the soul of Trajan, and his death, 106; was the first who styled himself 'servus servorum Dei,' and used the greeting 'salutem,' 108.
Gregory II., pope, i. 211; reproves the emperor Leo III. for breaking sacred images, 215; permits Ini to build the English School at Rome, *ib.*; absolves Rome, Italy, and Spain from their allegiance to the emperor, 217.
Gregory III., pope, i. 218.
Gregory IV., pope, i. 277; builds San Leone, 279.
Gregory V., pope, i. 430.
Gregory VI., pope, i. 484.
Gregory VII. (Hildebrand), pope, his edict against married priests, ii. 13, and dispute with the emperor, 19; his ambiguous prophecy, 21; is deposed by the Romans, 22; his confession and death, 26.
Gregory VIII., pope, ii. 426.
Gregory IX., pope, iv. 140; his letter reciting one from the patriarch of Jerusalem, 145; excommunicates the emperor Frederic II., 157, *seqq.*; his letter to the French legate respecting him, 166; is driven from Rome by the citizens, 169; appoints a day for considering the election of Walter de Heynesham to the see of Canterbury, 171; makes war upon the emperor, 182; annuls the election of Heynesham, 184, and appoints Richard, chancellor of Lincoln, archbishop of Canterbury, 186; his causes of complaint against the emperor, 198; sends large sums of money to John de Brienne, 203; absolves and entertains the emperor, 216; annuls the election of Ralph de Neville as archbishop of Canterbury, 228; orders Henry III. to punish the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241; persuades the prior of Canterbury to renounce his election to the archbishopric, 243; his bull for a general visitation of monasteries, 258, and directions to the visitors, 261; cancels the election of John Blundus to the see of Canterbury, 267; orders a crusade against the Albigenses, 294; his dissension with the citizens of Rome, 322, *seqq.*; grants the Jews generally a protection from unjust spoliation, 326; sends for the bishop of Winchester to conduct his war against the Romans, 327; his letter on the crusade, *ib.*
Grenet, Eustace, appointed procurator of Jerusalem during the captivity of the king, ii. 203.
Gres, Garner count de, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Robert of Normandy, 74; is sent with others to

conduct the Genoese to the camp, 101; is a leader in the great sortie from Antioch, 120; is retained by king Godfrey, 151.
Gresley, Robert de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.
Griffin of Wales ravages Hereford, i. 490; in conjunction with earl Algar, he defeats the Saxons, and kills seven canons of Hereford, 494, and the bishop, 496; they fly before Harold, 494; Griffin is expelled, 503, and put to death, 504.
Grimbald, a learned French monk, invited to England by king Aelfred, i. 324; dies, 371.
Grinketel, bishop of Selsey, i. 476; purchases the additional see of Elmham, *ib.*; is expelled, *ib.*; dies, 484.
Grosmunt, battle of, iv. 278.
Grosseteste, Robert, (bishop,) *v.* Lincoln.
Gubiun, Ralph, (abbot,) *v.* Alban's, S.
Guelders, the count of, a crusader, iii. 21; bribed by Saladin, 23.
Guelph, a Burgundian crusader, takes Adama, ii. 90.
Guenemer of Boulogne, a crusader, liberated, ii. 130.
Guenhamara married by king Arthur, i. 67; is left joint regent with Modred during the absence of her husband, 71; is seduced by Modred, 73; on the return of Arthur, she flies to Chester, and takes the veil, 74.
Guibert, bishop of Ravenna, antipope, ii. 20; is accepted by the Romans under the name of Clement III., 22.
Guiscard, [Robert,] duke of Apulia, dies, ii. 27.
Guisnes, Baldwin de, governor of Monmouth, takes Richard the earl-marshal prisoner, iv. 280; is severely wounded, 281.
Guithelinus (archbishop), *v.* London.
Gundulf (bishop), *v.* Rochester.
Gunhilda, sister of king Sweyn, put to death, with her husband and son, in the great massacre of the Danes, i. 445.
Gunhilda, daughter of Cnut and Emma, married to the emperor Henry III., i. 479; accused of adultery, and cleared in a duel by her page, 480; refuses to be reconciled to the emperor, *ib.*
Gurth, son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489; restored, 491; his prudent advice to Harold, 518.
Guthard, bishop of Selsey, dies, i. 409.
Guthferth, son of Sihtric, expelled Northumbria by Aethelstan, i. 386.
Guthlac, S., (a monk of Croyland,) life of, i. 206.
Guthrum, a Danish king, joins Hinguar and Hubba, i. 313; overruns Wessex and expels Aelfred, 329; is defeated by him, and becomes his godson, 333; his name changed to Aethelstan, *ib.*; receives East-Anglia from Aelfred, *ib.*; his death, 354.
Gyva, wife of Godwin earl of Kent, i. 489; buries the body of her son Harold, 521.

H.

Hacon, a Danish noble banished by Cnut through fear of his family connections, i. 468; his death, 469.
Hacon, a Danish admiral, ii. 15.
Hadrian, *v.* Adrian.
Haencurt, Oliver de, taken prisoner in the battle of Lincoln, iv. 24.
Hagustaldt, bishops of, *v.* Eatta, Tunberht, John, Acca, Fritheberht, Alcmund, Tilberht, Aethelberht, Eadred, Eadberht.
Hagustaldt, functions of the see of, cease on account of the ravages of the Danes, i. 336.
Halard, bishop of Dorchester, one of the guardians of the realm, i. 363.
Halchun, bishop of Durham, attends queen Emma to Normandy, i. 448 and *note*.
Haldene, a Danish king, subdues Northumbria, i. 326, and apportions it among his followers, 327; is slain in Devonshire, 329.
Ham, Odo de, a crusader, iii. 21.
'Hamauci,' Baldwin count of the, assumes the cross, ii. 62, 74.
Hamund, a Danish king, i. 326.
Hamund, bishop of Sherborne, slain in the battle of Merton, i. 317.
Harcourt, William de, receives the custody of Peter [of Pontefract], iii. 240; arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.

Hardacnut, son of Cnut and Emma, made king of Denmark by his father, i. 472; visits his mother in Flanders, 476; is elected king, and exhumes the body of Harold, 477; punishes the murderers of Aelfred, 478; burns Worcester for killing two of his tax-collectors, 479; gives his brother Eadward an honourable maintenance, and marries his sister to the emperor Henry III., *ib.*; is struck with death at a wedding, and is buried at Winchester, 482.

Harold I., son of Cnut, i. 462; his accession, 473; banishes his stepmother Emma, and confiscates her property, *ib.*; orders Aelfred, son of Aethelred II., to be deprived of sight, 475; dies at Oxford, and is buried at Westminster, 477; his body exhumed, decapitated, and cast into the Thames, *ib.*; the head found by a fisherman, and interred in the Danish cemetery, *ib.*

Harold (II.), son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489; plunders Wessex, 490; is restored, 491; receives the earldom of Kent, 493; fortifies Hereford, 494; is cast on the coast of Ponthieu, and treated as a spy, 501; is released by William of Normandy, whom he promises to assist in obtaining England, and whose daughter he espouses, *ib.*; another version of the matter, 502; expels Griffin from Wales, 503; builds a royal hunting-lodge there, 507; is assaulted by his brother Tosti, *ib.*; seizes the crown, 513; slays Tosti and Harold Harvagre at Standford Bridge, 514; his excuses for his conduct to duke William, 515; sends spies into his camp, 517, and rejects his proposals, 518; his conduct in the battle, 520; his body buried at Waltham, 521.

Harold, a Danish king, baptized, i. 412.

Harold Harvagre of Norway slain at the battle of Standford Bridge, i. 514.

Hasting the Dane, places destroyed by him in France, i. 349; his cruel stratagem to take Limoges, 351; makes peace with king Charles, and receives the city of Chartres, *ib.*; sails up the Thames, and fortifies himself at Milton, 356; promises to leave the country, and allows two of his sons to be baptized, 357, *seq.*; breaks his word, and fortifies Benfleet, 359; his wife and sons made prisoners there, 360.

Hastings, battle of, i. 519.

Hatfield, battle of, i. 132.

Hauterive, Ralph de, archdeacon of Colchester, dies at Acre, iii. 36.

Hawise, daughter of William earl of Gloucester, married to John earl of Mortain, iii. 4; divorced, 148.

Hawk, anecdote of a, iii. 53.

Haye, Ralph de, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375; invades England with the Flemings, 376; returns, 380.

Hecca, bishop of Selsey, i. 484.

Hedda, first bishop of Winchester, translates the body of Birinus, i. 140.

Hedda, a monk of Streneshalh, becomes bishop of Dorchester, i. 172; his death noticed as of a bishop of Winchester, i. 198; his see divided after his death, *ib.*

Hefenfeld, battle of, i. 134.

Helias, count of Maine, expelled by Rufus, ii. 157; put to death by Henry I., 187.

Hemeli, bishop of Lichfield, dies, i. 237.

Hengest, his arrival in Britain, i. 7; his origin and religion, 8; his compact with Wyrtgeorne, 9; defeats the Picts and Scots, 10; his influence over Wyrtgeorne, 11; is defeated by Wortemer, 15; becomes king of Kent on the death of Hors, *ib.*; is compelled to leave Britain, *ib.*; returns with a large force, 17; massacres the British nobles, and makes Wyrtgeorne prisoner, 18; compels him to abdicate, *ib.*; fights a doubtful battle at Wypeds-Fleot, 37; is routed at Maisbely, 40; is taken in the battle of the Don, and beheaded, 42.

Henry (l'Oiseleur), emperor, i. 383.

Henry III., emperor, marries Gunhilda, daughter of Cnut, i. 479; legend respecting him, 480.

Henry IV., emperor, his dispute with Gregory VII., ii. 19; defeats his rival Rodolph, and makes Guibert pope, 20; slays Rodolph, 21; is acknowledged by the Romans, 22.

Henry V., emperor, ii. 170; marries

princess Matilda of England, 185; his contention with pope Paschal, 190; makes Maurice pope, 202; dies, 206.

Henry VI., emperor, consecrated, iii. 38; purchases Richard I. from the duke of Austria, 70; his charges against him, 71; subdues Apulia and Sicily, 89.

Henry I. of England born, ii. 5; knighted, 23; satisfies the claimant of the ground in which his father was to be buried, 30; is sent by Rufus to continue the war in Normandy, 45 and *note*; his coronation and charter, 161; gives the bishopric of Winchester to William Giffard, 164; restores archbishop Anselm, and imprisons Ralph Flambard, 165; marries Matilda of Scotland, 169; buys off the claims of his brother Robert, 170; banishes Robert de Belesme, *ib.*; quarrels with Anselm, 171; invades Normandy, 175; prohibits the return of Anselm, 176; receives the submission of the Norman barons, 180; takes his brother Robert at Tinchebrai, 181; restores Anselm, 183; gives his daughter Matilda to the emperor Henry V., 185; banishes Philip de Braose and others, 187; wastes Anjou, 188; gives the archbishopric of Canterbury to Ralph bishop of London, 191 and *note*; subdues the Welch, 191; causes the barons to swear allegiance to prince William, 192; maintains the precedency of Canterbury, 193; attends the dedication of S. Alban's, *ib.*; assists Theobald of Blois against the French, 194; gains the battle of Brenville, 199; is visited by Calixtus II., 200; his second marriage, 201; fortifies the tower of Rouen, etc., 203; appoints three bishops, and punishes debasers of the coin, 205; his expedition into France, 208; circumvents the clergy, 210; espouses the cause of Innocent II., 211; marries his daughter the empress to Geoffrey of Anjou, *ib.*; appoints her his successor, 213; goes into Normandy, 214; his death and burial, 215, *seq.*

Henry II. of England (son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Maud) born, ii. 212; is sent to England with the earl of Gloucester, 231; returns to Normandy, 236; knighted, 244; receives Normandy from his father, *ib.*; his marriage with queen Eleanor, and its consequences, 248; invades England, 254; his composition with king Stephen, 255; quells a rebellion in Aquitaine, and makes peace with France, 272; his acts on his accession, 273; his pedigree, 279; banishes William Peverel, and obliges the barons to swear fealty to his sons, 280; receives the pope's permission to subdue Ireland, 282; takes the castle of Mirabeau, etc., 283; his terms with Malcolm IV. and with William earl of Mortain, 286; subjugates the Welch, 287; abandons the use of his crown, *ib.*; visits the French king, 288; besieges Thoulouse, *ib.*; offends Louis, 289; makes peace with him, 291; causes the nobility to do homage to prince Henry, 292; is present at the concord between the churches of S. Alban's and Lincoln, 294; his quarrel with Becket, 296; receives the homage of Malcolm IV. and of the various Welch princes, 298; subjects the clergy to lay jurisdiction, 304; sends ambassadors to Rome, to state his case against Becket, 306; his measures against Becket's family and adherents, 308, *seq.*; visits Normandy, 313; meets Becket in the presence of the legates, 314; quarrels with France, 322; his letter to the archbishop of Cologne, *ib.*; his defence of his conduct, 327; condoles with the excommunicated bishop of London, 332; his letter to the pope, 334; offers to refer the dispute to the arbitration of the French church, 339; fealty sworn to him at Nantes, 340; causes prince Henry to be crowned, 354; his second interview with Becket, *ib.*; orders him to absolve the excommunicated bishops, 359; his conduct upon the murder of the archbishop, 363; attends the death-bed of the bishop of Winchester, 365; visits Ireland, *ib.*; his transactions there, 367; terms of his absolution, 368; allows elections to be made to the vacant sees, 370; orders the French king to

evacuate Normandy, 372; refuses Northumberland to the Scottish king, 373; his success in Britanny, 374; recovers Saintes, 376; returns to England, 377; his penance at Canterbury, 378; his success in England, 379; raises the siege of Rouen, 380; is reconciled to his sons, 381; again visits Becket's tomb, 384; rases Leicester castle, and appoints justiciaries, *ib.*; his concessions to the papal legate, 385; decides the controversy between the kings of Castille and Navarre, 386; his concord with the French king, 388; knights his son Geoffrey, 389; meets the French king at Dover, 397; his convention with Philip II., 404; receives from him the disposition of France, 407; his grant to the Holy Land, 409, *seq.*; requires his sons Geoffrey and Richard to do homage to their brother Henry, 410; refuses the kingdom of Jerusalem, 417; knights his son John, and visits the French king, 418; gives the earldom of Huntingdon to the king of Scotland, *ib.*; takes the cross, 426; quarrels with king Philip, and ravages his territory, 428; is harassed by him and by his own son Richard, 435; refuses Philip's terms, 438; is besieged in Le Mans, and escapes to Tours, 439, *seq.*; terms forced upon him there by the French king, 442; his death and burial, 444.

Henry III. of England born, iii. 219; crowned at the age of ten, iv. 2; placed under the tutelage of William Marshal earl of Pembroke, 3; makes a truce with Louis, 11; concludes a peace with him and with the insurgent barons, 31; is removed to the guardianship of Peter bishop of Winchester, 46; crowned again, at Canterbury, 63; consents to the marriage of his sister with the Scottish king, 64; seizes two castles belonging to the earl of Albemarle, 65; present at the translation of Becket, *ib.*; is reconciled to the earl of Albemarle, 67; represses an insurrection in Wales, and builds the castle of Montgomery, 71, *seq.*; deposes the magistrates of London, 82; orders an inquisition respecting the liberties of the kingdom, 84; demands the restoration of Normandy, etc. from Louis, 86; declared of age by the pope, 88; demands the custody of their castles from the barons, 92; his proceedings against Faulkes de Breaute, 94, *seqq.*; obtains a grant of carucage, 99; confirms the great charter, 100; sends an expedition into Gascony, 101; banishes de Breaute, 103, and refuses to recall him, 108; consents to a marriage between the nephew of Hugh de Burgh and the countess of Salisbury, 113; falls ill, 114; his answer to the pope's demands, 124; defers his expedition to France, 126; sends to Rome against the bishop elect of Durham, 129; makes overtures to the French barons, 136; extorts money from the Londoners and others, 138; dismisses the bishop of Winchester, and revokes the forest liberties, 139; orders the clergy to purchase a renewal of their charters, 140; his quarrel with his brother Richard, 141, and reconciliation, 143; orders a revision of the measures of grain, etc., 155; marches to the relief of Montgomery castle, etc., 172, *seqq.*; refuses the invitation of the Norman and French barons, 179; knights John de Burgh, 204; his quarrel with Hubert de Burgh, and reconciliation, *ib. seq.*; entertains the Scottish king at York, 207; lays heavy taxes upon his subjects, 209; passes into Britanny, 210; receives the homage of the Gascons and Poitevins, and takes Mirabeau castle, 215; returns to England, 217; demands scutage from all his baronial tenants, 218; opposes the archbishop of Canterbury's appeal at Rome, 220; collects an army against the Welch, 221; orders Matilda castle to be rebuilt, 223; makes a truce with France, 224; his treatment of Richard Marshal, 225; is dissuaded from marrying the sister of the Scottish king, 227; demands an aid from the laity and clergy, 233; is ordered by the pope to punish the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241; requires an account from his sheriffs, etc., and fines defaulters, 244;

removes Hubert de Burgh, 245; his charges against him, 246; encourages the Londoners to accuse him, 248; receives the grant of a fortieth, 249; orders the mayor of London to apprehend Hubert de Burgh, *ib.*; countermands his order, and sends a knight to seize him, 250, *seq.*; directs him to be replaced in sanctuary, and the church to be watched, 252; confines him in the Tower of London, 253; his writ for collecting the fortieth, *ib. seqq.*; seizes Hubert's treasure, but refuses to put him to death, 256, *seq.*; removes his other ministers, and introduces Poitevins, 263; orders his barons to meet him at Oxford, 268; his proceedings upon their refusal, 269; summons his military tenants to meet him at Gloucester, 271; marches to the city of Hereford, 272; prevents the bishop of Carlisle from laying his complaints before the pope, *ib.*; deceives the earl-marshal into the surrender of one of his castles, 273; directs a church to be watched, into which Hubert had a second time escaped, 275; orders another muster at Gloucester, 277; is defeated before Grosmunt, 278; his proposals to the earl-marshal, 282, *seqq.*, and reply to the remonstrant bishops, 291; seals letters for the destruction of the marshal, 292; accuses the bishop of Coventry of countenancing the insurgents, 295; his answer to the second remonstrance of the bishops, 297; restores eight manors to Hubert's wife, *ib.*; present at the consecration of archbishop Riche, 298; dismisses the Poitevins, and makes overtures to the earl-marshal, 299; his grief on learning his death, 309; recalls the exiled nobles, 310; calls the late ministers to account, 311; reproaches Peter de Rivaulx, and commits him to the Tower, 313; sends military aid to the earl of Britanny, 315; refuses him money, and breaks the alliance, 316; imprisons seven Jews for an outrage at Norwich, 324; gives his sister Isabella in marriage to the emperor Frederic, 332; accompanies her to Sandwich, 335.

Henry I. of France, supervisor of the guardian of William of Normandy, i. 469.

Henry, son of king Yric, murdered, i. 403.

Henry, son of David of Scotland, a hostage to king Stephen, is rescued by him at Ludlow, ii. 226.

Henry, second son of Henry II. of England, born, ii. 279; espouses princess Margaret of France, 289; receives the homage of the nobility, 292, and of Malcolm IV. of Scotland, and the prince of South Wales, 298; is crowned, 354; is ordered to restore Becket's temporalities, and those of his adherents, 355; becomes dissatisfied with his father, 367; joins him in his oath to the legates, 368; rebels, 369; takes the castle of Gournay, 371; his invasion of England prevented by a storm, 378, *seq.*; joins the king of France in besieging Rouen, 381; submits to his father, 382; receives the homage of the Scottish king William, 383; visits Becket's tomb, 384; amuses himself with tournaments, 397; receives the controul of Normandy, 407; dies during an expedition against his brother Richard, 411.

Henry, son of Theobald of Flanders, marries a daughter of Louis VII., ii. 221.

Henry, abbot of Glastonbury, *v.* Winchester.

Heptarchy, names of the component states, and of the chief cities of each, i. 88.

Heraclius, emperor, procures the murder of his predecessor, i. 111; his ambassadors treated contemptuously by Cosdroa, 117; crowns his son Constantinus, and gives him the title of 'Augustus,' *ib.*; conquers Cosdroa, and takes him prisoner, *ib.*; his empire ravaged by the Saracens, 121; he falls into the Monothelitan heresy, 129; his death, 138.

Heraclius Constantinus, son of the preceding, crowned by his father, i. 117; poisoned by his stepmother, 138.

Heraclonas placed by his mother on the throne of Heraclius Constantinus, i. 138; mutilated by order of

the senate, and sent prisoner to Constans, *ib.*
Herbert, earl, defeated and slain by the Danes, i. 281.
Herbert, bishop of Cologne, legendary anecdote of, i. 442.
Herculianus, bishop of Perugia, beheaded by Totila, i. 76.
Herdinton, Adam de, one of king John's messengers to Rome respecting the interdict, iii. 282.
Herdinton, Thomas de, sent to Rome by king John respecting the interdict, iii. 282; his second mission to accuse archbishop Langton, 344; returns. 346.
Hereberht, *v.* Aethelwold and Hereberht.
Hereford, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Wastold, Wulward, Cedd, Alberht, Aethelstan, Esne, Ceolmund, Aethelstan, Leofgar, Walter.]
—— Robert, ii. 56.
—— Gerard, ii. 164.
—— Reinelm, invested uncanonically by Henry I., ii. 170; returns him the bishopric, 171; is consecrated, 183.
—— Richard, dies, ii. 208.
—— Robert, ii. 210; dies, 237.
—— Gilbert Foliot (abbot of Gloucester) consecrated, ii. 237; present at the concord between the churches of S. Alban's and Lincoln, 294; translated to London, 296; absolves Alan de Neville, 314; prays to be exonerated from the custody of the churches of Becket's clergy, 320; gives benediction to Simon, abbot of S. Alban's, 321; legend respecting him, 323; his answer to the pope's letter, 324; is excommunicated by Becket, 331; visits the king, 334; is absolved, 340; suspended by the pope, 358; restored, 369; preaches in exculpation of the king, 378; appoints a prior to Waltham abbey, 387; dies, 426.
—— Robert de Melun, or Maldon, ii. 325, *seq.*
—— Robert (archdeacon of Oxford) elected, ii. 370; consecrated, 381.
—— William de Vere, ii. 419.
—— Giles, withdraws from England during the interdict, iii. 222; returns, 260.
—— Hugh Foliot, dies, iv. 324.
Hereford, Ralph de Maidstone, bishop of, consecrated, iv. 324.
Hereford, W. archdeacon of, excommunicated, iii. 356.
[Hereford], Roger earl of, conspires against the Conqueror, ii. 14; is imprisoned by him, 15.
Hereford, Henry de, slain by the Welch, ii. 384.
Hereford, Henry earl of, [? *Humphrey* de Bohun,] supports the earl of Cornwall against Henry III., iv. 143.
Hereford, earl of, *v.* Bohun.
Herefrith, bishop of Winchester, slain by the Danes, i. 278.
Herefrith (or Werefrith, i. 380), bishop of Worcester, 324; translates Gregory's Dialogues into Saxon, *ib.*; assists king Aelfred in his studies, *ib.*; his death, 380.
Hereswitha, sister of S. Hilda and mother of Aldulph of East-Anglia, becomes a nun at Chelles, i. 171.
Hereward, earl, his escape from Ely, and enmity to the Conqueror, ii. 9.
Herlewin, abbot of Bec, dies, ii. 19.
Herman, count, a crusader, persecutes the German Jews, ii. 72; constructs, with Henry de Ascha, a machine used at the siege of Nice, 84.
Herman, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 483; vacates his see, 495; returns, receives Sherborne in addition, and removes his episcopal throne to Salisbury, *ib.*
Hernostus (bishop), *v.* Rochester.
Hersi, Giles de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.
Herstan, bishop of Cornwall, i. 372; Padstow, the head of his diocese, *ib.* and *note.*
Hertford, council of, i. 162.
Hertford castle besieged and taken, iv. 4.
Hervey (bishop), *v.* Ely.
Hewald (SS.), two English priests, suffer martyrdom in Frisia, and are buried at Cologne, i. 188, *seq.*
Heynesham, Walter de, a monk of Canterbury, elected archbishop, but opposed by the king, iv. 170; his election declared void by the pope, 184.
Highald, a nobleman of Wessex, slain by the Welch, i. 202.

Higbald, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 243; assists at the consecration of Eadred, bishop of [Hagustaldt], 264; his death, 269.
Higberht, archbishop of Lichfield, i. 259.
Hilary I., pope, directs Victorinus to write the Paschal cycle of 532 years, i. 22; prohibits the clerical habit to laymen, and concubines to the clergy, 37.
Hilary, bishop of Arles, his character, i. 36.
Hilary (bishop), *v.* Chichester.
Hilda (S.), a descendant of king Eadwin, is prevented by Aidan from going to Chelles, and is made abbess of Hertesey, i. 171; is removed to her foundation at Streneshalh, 172; present in the council held there, 157; her mother's vision, and her own long illness and death, 172.
Hildebert III. king of the Franks, i. 189.
Hinguar and Hubba, sons of Lothbroc, i. 304; invade England to avenge their father's murder, 307; their cruelty, 301; Hinguar's message to Eadmund of East-Anglia, 308; he is defeated at Thetford, 310; is reinforced by Hubba, 311; they capture Eadmund, and put him to death, *ib.*; are joined by Guthrum, 313; Hinguar and Hubba slain, 329.
Hlôðheri of Kent dies of a wound, i. 178.
Hoel, king of Britanny, comes to the aid of king Arthur, i. 63; is besieged in Alclud during an illness by the Picts and Scots, 66.
Hoel (earl), *v.* Britanny.
Holland, William duke of, accompanies king John's expedition to Flanders, iii. 257; is present at the battle of Bovines, 287; his station there, 289; takes Alcaçar do Sal in Portugal, iv. 34; assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, 54.
Holy Land, taxes in aid of, ii. 314; iii. 16, 167.
Honoricus, an Arian king of the Vandals, banishes 303 bishops from Africa, closes the churches, and persecutes the laity, i. 39.
Honorius I., pope, i. 123; sends Birinus to preach in Wessex, 135.
Honorius II., pope, ii. 210; dies, 211.
Honorius III., pope, iv. 27; canonizes Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 64; orders an inquiry into the bishop of Durham's conduct, 69; upon appeal, he remits the cause for decision in England, 71; declares Henry III. to be of age, 88; his demands upon the English church, 114, and upon that of France, 121; orders Henry to refrain from attacking Louis during his crusade against the Albigenses, 126; dies, 140.
Honorius, bishop of Lincoln, and subsequently archbishop of Canterbury, i. 128.
Horinges (? Origny or Alderney), Reinbald count of, a crusader, ii. 120.
Hormisda, pope, i. 57.
Hors, brother of Hengest, arrives in Britain, i. 7; his origin and religion, 8; receives Kent from Wyrtgeorne, and is called king by the Saxons, 14; kills Catigern in battle, and is himself slain by Wortemer, 15.
Houton, John de, archdeacon of Bedford, sent by Henry III. to Rome, to oppose the election of Walter de Heynesham, iv. 171; promises the pope, in the king's name, a tenth of all the moveables in England and Ireland, 184.
Howbridge, Gervase de, precentor of S. Paul's, London, excommunicated, iii. 370; excepted from the amnesty, and sent to Rome, iv. 32.
Howbridge, W. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.
Howel, a Welch king, i. 415.
Hubba, *v.* Hinguar.
Hubert, papal legate, holds a council at Windsor, ii. 12.
Hugh, count of Paris, marries Algiva, daughter of Eadward the Elder, i. 369 and *note* [3], 386; sends to England for Louis d'Outremer, 391.
Hugh, a Norman adviser of Eadward III., takes refuge in Scotland, i. 492.
Hugh the Great, brother of Philip I. of France, assumes the cross, ii. 62; is imprisoned by the Greeks, 74; liberated by Godfrey, 75; leads the van in the great sortie from Antioch, 119; deserts, 126; returns to the

Holy Land, 173; dies, and is buried at Tarsus, 174.
Hugh (bishops), *v.* Lincoln.
Humberht, bishop of Elmham, consecrates Eâdmund of East-Anglia, i. 292; his advice to him when beset by the Danes, 309; suffers martyrdom with him, 312.
Humberht, bishop of Winchester, i. 294; dies, 297.
Humphrey, bishop of Winchester, i. 228; dies, 234.
Huna, commander of the army, prevails on Aethelred II. to order the massacre of the Danes, i. 444.
Hunbeanna and Albert divide East-Anglia between them, i. 231 and *note*.
Hunberht (or Berthun), archbishop of Lichfield, i. 239, 252; dies, 259.
Hungary, [Andrew] king of, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7; returns home, and is excommunicated, 12.
Huntingdon, earldom of, given to William king of Scotland, ii. 418.
Huntingfield, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356; assists in subduing Essex and Suffolk, 371; his lands wasted by the king, 381.
Hunwal (or Howel) of Wales, conquered by Aethelstan, i. 386.
Hunwald, the traitor who betrayed Oswin to Oswiû, i. 145.
Hyrald, bishop of Elmham, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.

I.

Iba, an heretical epistle so called, condemned, i. 78 and *note*.
Iconoclasts, acts of, i. 214, 215, 260.
Ida, first king of Northumbria, i. 77; names of his sons, legitimate and illegitimate, *ib.*; builds Bamborough castle, 78; dies, 81.
Idatius, bishop, extent of his Chronicles, i. 45.
Idle, battle of the, i. 115.
Igerna, duchess of Cornwall, her great beauty, i. 54; married by Utherpendragon, *ib.*; her children by him, *ib.*
Immin, an adherent of Wulfheri, i. 155.
Ingald (Jugwald, i. 165), bishop of London, i. 219.
Ingelburga (erroneously called Botilda, iii. 148), sister of Cnut VI. married by Philip II. and divorced, iii. 79.
Ingleis, brother of Ini, i. 216; dies, 212.
Ini of Wessex, his genealogy, i. 184; receives pecuniary compensation for the death of Mull, 187; his successes against the Welch, 202; conquers part of Sussex, 204; fights a doubtful battle with Ceolraed, 211; enters Sussex, and kills Eadberht, 213 and *note*; makes Aethelhard his successor, and goes to Rome, 215; his buildings there, 216; he rebuilt Glastonbury abbey, *ib.*; his family, *ib.*
Innocent II., pope, flies to France, where he crowns Louis VII., ii. 211; dies, 234.
Innocent III., pope, iii. 124; condemns the heresy of abbot Joachim, ii. 402; restores the monks in Coventry, iii. 126; orders Richard I. to dismiss the archbishop of Canterbury from the office of justiciary, 129; mediates between Richard and the French king, 133; orders the archbishop of Canterbury to take down his new church at Lambeth, 134; decides the controversy between the churches of Tours and Dol, 143; sends missionaries to preach a better observance of the Lord's day, 151; settles the right of electing the archbishop of Canterbury, 188; annuls two elections to that dignity, and consecrates Stephen Langton, 211, *seqq.*; writes in his favour to king John, and to the monks of Canterbury, 213; his second letter to John, 216, *seqq.*; threatens him with an interdict, 220; consecrates Otho IV., 227; orders John to be excommunicated, 228; excommunicates Otho, 232; absolves John's subjects from their allegiance, 237; orders a crusade against him, 241, and another against the Albigenses, 267; directs cardinal Nicholas to fill up the vacant English sees, 277; orders the interdict to be removed, 281; summons the fourth Lateran council, 322; annuls Magna Charta, 323, *seqq.*; his letter to the barons, 327; excommunicates them, 336; cancels the election of

Simon Langton to the see of York, 339, 346; his oration respecting the crusade against the Turks, 342; confirms the suspension of archbishop Stephen, 345, and the election of Walter de Gray to the see of York, 346; orders the barons to be individually excommunicated, 353; his answer to the ambassadors of prince Louis, 372, *seqq.*; dies, iv. 27.
Ireland granted to Henry II., ii. 281; English laws and coinage introduced into, iii. 233, *seq.*; disturbances in, iv. 213.
Irene, empress, reigns jointly with her son Constantine V., i. 243; rules alone, 265.
Isaac, emperor of Cyprus, *v.* Cyprus.
Isabella of Angoulême affianced to Hugh le Brun, count of La Marche, but married by king John, iii. 148; crowned at Westminster, 155, and at Canterbury, 165; accompanies the king to Paris, 166; gives birth to Henry, 219, and Richard, 220.
Isabella, sister of Henry III. of England, asked in marriage by the emperor Frederic II., iv. 332; her jewels and bridal appointments, 333; progress to Cologne, 335; marriage at Wormes, 336; pedigree, 338.
Iserinus, a fellow-labourer with S. Patric, i. 48.
Issoudun, the lord of, a crusader, iii. 21.
Italian clergy in England, disturbances on account of, iv. 228, *seqq.*, 240; inquiry respecting, instituted by command of the pope, 242.
Ithamar succeeds Paulinus in the see of Rochester, i. 142.
Ivo of Beauvais consecrated to the see of Chartres, ii. 43.

J.

Jaenberht, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 236; despoiled of the greater part of his province, 238; gives a formal assent to the spoliation, 246; his death, 251, 261.
James, king of Galloway, i. 415.
Jarrow, monastery at, founded, i. 173; endowed by Ecgfrith, 197.
Jaruman, bishop of Lichfield, i. 155.
Jerusalem besieged by the Christians, ii. 133; the city, its holy places, and religious institutions described, 152, *seqq.*; taken by Saladin, 424; destroyed by Coradin, iv. 42.
Jerusalem, patriarchs of:
—— Thomas, i. 96.
—— Zacharias, expelled by Cosdroa, i. 116.
—— Simeon, ii. 63.
—— Arnulph, ii. 146.
—— Daibert, late bishop of Pisa, elected, ii. 146; crowns Baldwin I., 168.
—— Heraclius, sent to offer the kingdom to Henry II. of England, ii. 415.
—— Gerold, bears the cross into the Christian camp, iv. 7; accompanies the army against Damietta, 36; prays for the success of the Christians, 40; endeavours to rally the fugitives, 54; opposes the Sultan's terms, 58; his letter respecting the crusade, 145; is one of the leaders of the army, 175; performs lustrations in the churches of Jerusalem, 197; besieged in his house by the emperor, 199.
Jews, German, massacred by crusaders, ii. 72.
—— English, persecuted, iii. 7, *seq.*; 19, *seq.*; plundered and tortured by king John, 231; pay a tax of one-third to Henry III., iv. 209; outrage of, at Norwich, 324.
—— of Christendom obtain a protection from the pope against arbitrary extortions, iv. 326.
Joachim, abbot of Flore, his book against Peter Lombard condemned, ii. 402.
Joan, daughter of Henry II., born, ii. 313; married to the king of Sicily, 385; receives a fortified place in Calabria from her brother Richard I., iii. 31; returns with him from Palestine, 65.
Jocelyn, cousin of Baldwin II., taken prisoner by the Turks, ii. 180; released, 187; again made prisoner, 202.
Jocelyn (bishop), *v.* Salisbury.
Johannes Eleemosynarius, anecdote of his liberality, i. 111; becomes patriarch of Alexandria, 119; an altar dedicated to him at Jerusalem, *ib.*
Johannes Scotus, anecdotes of his wit,

i. 337; he translates into Latin the Hierarchia of Dionysius the Areopagite, and composes another book, 338; being suspected of heresy, he leaves France and comes over to Aelfred, *ib.*; is appointed master of the school at Meldon, 339; is stabbed by the boys with their writing-stiles, and dies, *ib.*; his body buried humbly at first, but afterwards honourably translated, *ib.*

John the Baptist, discovery of his head, i. 16; the head translated to Edessa, 236.

John I., pope, i. 59.

John II., pope, i. 65.

John III., pope, i. 83.

John IV., pope, i. 136.

John V., pope, i. 177.

John VI., pope, i. 196.

John VII., pope, i. 200.

John VIII., pope, i. 325.

John IX., pope, i. 366.

John X., pope, i. 379.

John XI., pope, i. 388.

John XII., pope, i. 405; gives Dunstan his pall, 409.

John XIII., pope, i. 411.

John XIV., pope, i. 424.

John XV., pope, i. 424.

John XVII., pope, i. 431, and *note.*

John XVIII., pope, i. 436.

John XIX., pope, i. 465; forbids extortions, 470.

John (surnamed Sans-terre, ii. 369) born, 315; betrothed, 369; becomes heir of the earl of Gloucester, 385; is knighted, and goes to Ireland, 418; confirmed in his possessions and in the earldom of Mortain by his brother, Richard I., iii. 2; espouses Hawise daughter of the earl of Gloucester, 4; receives Cornwall, Devon, Somerset, and Dorset, 14; appeals against the archbishop of Canterbury, 15; his proceedings with respect to the bishop of Ely, 50, *seq.*; makes attempts upon the crown, 78; is pardoned by Richard, 82; joins the prince of Brabant in harassing the French, 96; his accession, 137; his proceedings against the adherents of Arthur, 138; is invested with the sword of Normandy, *ib.*; crowned at Westminster, 139; returns to Normandy, and makes a truce with his opponents, 140; his interview with Philip II., 141; is promised aid by the emperor, 142; his concord with Philip, 146; does him homage, and receives the homage of the dauphin, 147; divorces Hawise, and marries Isabella of Angoulême, 148; orders the property of archbishop Geoffrey to be seized, 154; is crowned with his queen, and reconciled to Geoffrey, 155; receives the homage of the Scottish king, 161; assists in carrying the corpse of Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 162; crowned at Canterbury, 165; visits the French king, 166; rescues his mother at Mirabeau, and takes prince Arthur prisoner, 168; his interview with him, 170; is accused of his murder, 171; deserted in Normandy by many of his barons, *ib.*; comes to England for money, 173; scutage granted to him at Oxford, 175; loses his foreign possessions, 181; embarks with the intention of crossing the seas, but returns, 182; sends to Rome in favour of John de Gray, archbishop elect of Canterbury, 186; takes the castle of Montauban, 187; makes a truce with France, 188; takes a thirteenth from his subjects, 209; gives 5000 marks of silver to the emperor Otho, 210; his proceedings upon the election of archbishop Langton, 213, *seq.*; his answer to the pope's threatenings, 215, and reply to the threat of an interdict, 221; confiscates the property of the clergy, 223; takes hostages from the barons, 224; prohibits fowling, 225; makes a treaty with Scotland, and receives the homage of the Welch, 226, *seq.*; excommunicated, 228; dismisses his chancellor, 231; plunders the Jews, *ib.*; his transactions in Ireland, 233, *seq.*; extorts money from the English clergy, 234; takes hostages from the Welch, 235; refuses the pope's terms, 236; knights prince Alexander of Scotland, 238; marches towards Wales, but, being warned of treachery, returns, 239; imprisons Peter of Pontefract, 240; deposed by the pope, 241; his preparations to meet the French, 244; is visited by Pandulph, 246; rea-

sons of his submission, 247; his charter, 248; resigns his crown to the pope, 252; form of his homage to him, 254; orders the execution of Peter of Pontefract, 255; his preparations against France, 259; his meeting with the exiled bishops, 260; on the refusal of the barons to follow him, he puts to sea with his household, 261; is prevented by archbishop Langton from proceeding against them, 262; resigns his crown to cardinal Nicholas, 275; agrees to refer his dispute with the clergy to the decision of four barons, 276; sends money to his troops in Flanders, and an embassy to Rome, 279, *seq.*; his letter from Poitou, 280, *seq.*; gives letters patent respecting the compensation due to the clergy, 284; invades Britanny, 285; is deserted by the Poitevin barons, 286; his exclamation on hearing of his defeat at Bovines, 292; makes a truce with France, and returns to England, 293; promises to consider the complaints of his barons, 296; his conduct on learning their claims, 298; is deserted by most of his adherents, 301; meets the barons at Runnymede, *ib.*; grants Magna Charta, 302, and the Charta de foresta, 311; promises to dismiss the foreigners, 317; sends letters patent to the sheriffs, etc., 318; retires to the Isle of Wight, 319; complains to the pope, and sends abroad for mercenaries, 320; besieges Rochester castle, 331; his rage on hearing of the loss of Hugh de Boves and wreck of his fleet, 334; takes Rochester castle, 335; prevails on the pope to cancel the election of Simon de Langton to the see of York, 338; leaves an army to observe London, while he ravages the north, 347, *seq.*; takes Belvoir castle, 350; flies before Louis, 368; is deserted by many of the foreigners, 370; garrisons Wallingford castle, etc., 371; wastes the possessions of the barons, 381, *seq.*; loses his baggage, 384; his illness, last will, and death, 385; his epitaph, 386; legend of his apparition, iv. 127.

John of Beverley (S.), his death, i. 213; wild bulls lose their ferocity at his burial-place, *ib.*

John, a monk of Streneshalh, i. 172, becomes bishop of Hagustaldt, 178.

John (bishops), *v.* Chichester, Exeter, Man, Norwich, Rochester, and Worcester.

John, a learned monk, invited by king Aelfred to his court, i. 324 and *note.*

John, first abbot of Athelney, i. 352.

Joibert, prior of Daventry, Wenlock, Coventry, and Bermondsey, iii. 128.

Joppa, siege of, iii. 59; battle near, 61.

Jornandes finishes his history, i. 78.

Judith, daughter of Charles le Chauve, married to Aetheluulf of Wessex, i. 290; commits incest, 294.

Judith, daughter of Baldwin of Flanders, and wife of Tosti, i. 489; her test of the sanctity of S. Oswin, 506.

Jukil, king of Westmoreland, i. 415.

Justin, emperor, i. 64.

Justin II., emperor, i. 82.

Justinian, emperor, i. 68; his digest of the Roman laws, 70; institutes the festival of the Purification, 73; banishes pope Vigilius, 77; sends for him again, and commands him to restore Anthymus, 78.

Justinian II. emperor, i. 181; is deposed, mutilated, and exiled by Leontius, 189; restored, 200; his savage treatment of his enemies, *ib.* 206; is, with his son Tiberius, slain by Philippicus, 205, *seq.*

Justus, first bishop of Rochester, i. 105; retires to France on the restoration of idolatry, 114; is recalled by Eadbald, 115; succeeds Mellitus in the see of Canterbury, 120; his death, 128.

K.

Kaercaradec, the ancient name of Salisbury, i. 43.

Kaerlindcoit, the ancient name of Lincoln, i. 63.

Kenneth III. of Scotland, one of the kings who rowed king Eadgar, i. 415; receives Lothian from him, on condition of attending his principal festivals, 416.

Kent, earls of, *v.* Godwin, Harold (II.), and Burgh, Hubert de.
Kerboga, a Persian prince, besieges Antioch, ii. 111, *seq.*; names of his emirs, 121; is attacked and put to flight by the garrison, 122, *seq.*
Kime, S. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.
Kinesdrida, daughter of Penda, a nun of great sanctity, i. 199.
Kingils, *v.* Cynegils.
Kinsius, archbishop of York, i. 487; dies, 502; he held also the see of Hereford, *ib.*
Kyneswitha, a daughter of Penda, betrothed to Offa of Essex, persuades him to adopt a life of celibacy, i. 199.

L.

Lacy, Gilbert de, a commander in the battle of the Standard, ii. 222.
Lacy, John de, constable of Chester, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; goes to the Holy Land, iv. 44; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93; succeeds to the earldom of Lincoln, 256; meets Henry III. at Westminster, 270; deserts the earl-marshal, 271.
Lacy, Hugh de, lord of Meath, slain, ii. 418.
Lacy, Hugh de, joins a conspiracy against Richard earl-marshal, iv. 292, *seq.*; comes to a conference with him, 303.
Lacy, Roger de, constable of Chester, holds the castle of Roche-Andely against Philip II., iii. 172; is taken prisoner, and placed in free custody, 180; dies, 236.
Lacy, Walter de, (earl of Ulster,) flies before king John, iii. 234; assists in quelling an insurrection of the Irish, iv. 214; consents to the destruction of the earl-marshal, 292, *seq.*
Lambert, pupil of S. Laudo, i. 136, made bishop of Utrecht, 185; reproves Pepin for adultery, and is murdered by Dodo, 190.
Lancaster, W. de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 335.
Landslip, a destructive one in France, i. 82.
Lanfranc (archbishop), *v.* Canterbury.
Langton, Stephen de, (archbishop,) *v.* Canterbury.
Langton, Simon de, (brother of archbishop Stephen,) prosecutes his brother's appeal at Rome, iii. 279; is elected archbishop of York, 338; rejected by the pope, 339; becomes the chancellor of prince Louis, 369; excommunicated, 370; excepted from the amnesty, and sent to Rome, iv. 32; procures the election of Ralph de Neville to the archbishopric of Canterbury to be annulled, 228.
Lanthony, [John] prior of, sent to Rome to oppose an election made by the monks of Durham, iv. 129.
Lanvaley, W. de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.
Lateran council, the third, ii. 398; the fourth, iii. 341.
Latonia, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Laudo, pope, i. 381.
Laudo (S.), the instructor of Lambert, bishop and martyr, i. 136.
Lawes, Roger de, a preacher of the crusade, legend respecting, iv. 331.
Lawrence elected pope concurrently with Symmachus, i. 55.
Lawrence, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 109; scourged by S. Peter for attempting to desert his charge, 114; converts Eanbald, 115; his death, 120.
Legends:
of a Jewish boy who received the sacrament, i. 79.
of a Jew who persecuted a crucifix, i. 81.
of bread changed into stones by the imprecation of a beggar, i. 108.
of a woman who desired a relic of S. John the Baptist, i. 111, *seq.*
of two brothers, Imma and Tunna, i. 177.
of a worldly-minded monk, i. 217.
a girl who had fasted three years, i. 275.
the witch of Berkeley, i. 286.
of Gerbert, *v.* Silvester II.
of a disobedient party compelled to dance for a year, i. 441.
of Herbert, archbishop of Cologne, *v.* Herbert.

Legends, *continued.*
metamorphoses performed by two witches at Rome, i. 485.
of an unchaste priest, who ventured to celebrate mass, i. 487.
respecting a bridegroom and the priest Palumbus, i. 498.
the double woman of Normandy, i. 503.
the two clerks of Nantes, ii. 10.
of a man devoured by mice, ii. 35.
the niggardly cellerar of Fulde, ii. 40.
a clerk cured by the Virgin, ii. 214.
the entranced maid of Gascony, ii. 251.
the voluntary eunuch, ii. 284.
vision of a monk of Evesham, iii. 97, *seqq.*
miraculous image of the Virgin, iii. 175, *seqq.*
Turchill's vision of purgatory and paradise, iii. 190, *seqq.*
of a soldier who stole a crucifix, iv. 16.
miracles at Bromholm, iv. 89.
temptations of the noble maid of Burgundy, iv. 108, *seqq.*
the fasting nun of Leicester, iv. 113.
a prophecy substituted for the psalm 'Exsurgat Deus' in a hermit's psalter, iv. 143.
the wandering Jew, iv. 176, *seqq.*
respecting avarice, iv. 317, *seqq.*
miraculous cure of a paralytic woman, iv. 331.
Leicester, from whom it derives its name, i. 239; siege of, ii. 372.
Leicester, bishops of, *v.* Totta, Eadberht, Wereberht, Unwona, Bethun, Aldred, Wereberht, Ceolraed.
Leicester, Robert de Chaisneio, archdeacon of, *v.* Lincoln.
Leicester, Robert earl of, justiciary of England, present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, ii. 294; refuses to salute the archbishop of Cologne, 312.
Leicester, Robert earl of, deserts to the young king, ii. 371; is taken prisoner, 373, *seq.*; sent in chains to England, 377; carried back to Normandy, 388; dies before Acre, iii. 36.
Leicester (Robert Fitz-Parnell), earl of, repulses Philip II. from Rouen, iii. 79.
Leicester, earl of, *v.* Montfort.
Leini [? Lagny], Arnulph de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Leir, king of Britain, his story, *Pref.* x., *seq.*; buried at Leicester (Leircestria), xii.
Leisni, Baldwin de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Lemberg, Peter landgrave of, present in a battle near Antioch, iii. 11; his station before Acre, 21; bribed by Saladin, 23.
Lemberg, Theobald prefect of, present in a battle near Antioch, iii. 11.
Leo the Great, pope, calls the council of Chalcedon, i. 12.
Leo II., pope, i. 176.
Leo III., pope, i. 260, restores the jurisdiction of Canterbury, 264; his sufferings from the Romans, 265; is released by Charlemagne, 266, whom he crowns, 267; crowns also Louis le Débonnaire, 272; his death, *ib.*
Leo IV., pope, i. 283; crowns king Aelfred, 290; his death, 292.
Leo V., pope, i. 370.
Leo VI., pope, i. 387.
Leo VIII., pope, i. 411.
Leo IX., pope, i. 484.
Leo the Great, and Leo the Less, emperors, i. 16.
Leo III. emperor, i. 212; orders sacred images to be broken, 215; is excommunicated, 217.
Leo, son of the emperor Zeno, escapes from the cruelty of his father, and takes holy orders, i. 38.
Leo, bishop of Trèves, reconciles Richard I. of Normandy and Aethelred II., i. 427.
Leo, the legate, concessions made to him by Henry II., ii. 384.
Leodegar, bishop of Autun, his martyrdom, i. 188.
Leof, the murderer of king Eâdmund, is cut to pieces by his attendants, i. 398.
Leofgar, bishop of Hereford, killed by the Welch, i. 496.
Leofric, bishop of Crediton and Cornwall, i. 484.
Leofric, earl of Chester, and founder of several monasteries, dies, i. 496; story of him and his wife Godiva, 497.

Leofrona, wife of Aethelred of East-Anglia, i. 224.
Leofrona, abbess of S. Mildred, made prisoner by the Danes, i. 439.
Leofsius, bishop of Worcester, i. 436, 462 and *note*; his death, 471.
Leofwin, son of earl Godwin, flies to Ireland with Harold, i. 490; joins him in ravaging Wessex, *ib.*; is pardoned, 491.
Leofwine, bishop of Lincoln, dies, i. 409.
Leontius (or Leo) deposes, mutilates, and banishes Justinian II., i. 189; is himself mutilated and imprisoned by Absimarus Tiberius, 190.
Leontius, bishop of Saintes, his celebrity, i. 81.
Leopold, *v.* Austria.
Leutherius, bishop of the West-Saxons, present in the council of Hertford, i. 162.
Lichfield, bishops of, *v.* Cedda, Diuma, Coellac, Tunher, Jaruman, Winfrid, Aldwin, Wicta, Hemeli, Cuthfrith, Ealdulph (abp.), Hunberht or Berthun (abp.), Higberht (abp.), Cineferth or Cyneberht, Tunberht or Tunfrith, Elle, Brithmar, Wlsius.
Lichfield made an archiepiscopal see, i. 237; list of its suffragans, 238.
Lilla, an attendant of Eadwin, slain by the assassin who attempted his master's life, i. 125.
Limburg, [Henry IV.] duke of, lieutenant of the emperor in the Holy Land, iv. 146.
Limerick besieged and taken by Richard earl-marshal, iv. 304.
Limeth, G., one of prince Louis' ambassadors to Rome, iii. 372.
Lincoln besieged, ii. 227, *seqq.*; again besieged, 235; battle of, iv. 21, *seq.*; plunder of the city, 24.
Lincoln, earl of, *v.* Lacy.
Lincoln, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Eadhed, Aethelwine, Eadgar, Cyneberht, Aldulf, Céoluulf, Leofwine, Ailnoth, Asowine or Ascwine.]
—— Alexander, flies to Scotland, ii. 7.
—— Remigius, *v.* Dorchester.
—— Robert Bloet, gives Rufus 500 pounds for the liberties of his church, ii. 41, *seq.*; dedicates S. Alban's abbey, 193; dies, 202.
Lincoln, bishops of, *continued.*
—— Alexander, ii. 203, 210 *note*; imprisoned by king Stephen, and deprived of his castles, 226.
—— Robert de Chaisneio (or de Querceto), archdeacon of Leicester, consecrated, ii. 243; his final concord with the abbot of S. Alban's, 293; dies, 321.
—— Geoffrey (natural son of Henry II.), archdeacon of Lincoln, elected, ii. 370; takes the castle of Malessart, 379; sets out for Rome, 381; resigns the bishopric, 409; elected archbishop of York, iii. 4; prohibited by the archbishop of Canterbury from being consecrated by any but himself, 9; his election confirmed, 20; receives consecration abroad, 38; is maltreated and imprisoned on his return, 39; joins in excommunicating his persecutors, 50; reconciled to his brother, Richard I., 128; stripped of his temporalities by king John, 154; reconciled to him, 155; assists at the burial of the bishop of Lincoln, 162; withdraws from England, and excommunicates the collectors of the thirteenth in his province, 210; dies, 242.
—— Walter de Constantiis, archdeacon of Oxford, consecrated, ii. 410; enthroned, 411; translated to Rouen, 412; is one of the umpires between the kings of England and France, 435; invests Richard I. with the sword of Normandy, iii. 2; assists at his coronation, 5; receives a letter from him while in Palestine, 45; appointed one of the guardians of the realm, 49; joins in excommunicating the maltreaters of the archbishop of York, 50; is summoned to Germany by king Richard, 80; lays Normandy under an interdict, 95; his convention with Richard, 119; invests John with the sword of Normandy, 138.
—— Hugh, prior of the Carthusians, consecrated, ii. 419; his life, miracles, death, and burial, iii. 155, *seqq.*; canonized, iv. 64.
—— William of Blois, precentor of Lincoln, consecrated, iii. 174; dies, 188.
—— Hugh, archdeacon of Wells, and chancellor of king John, elected,

iii. 228; consecrated by archbishop Langton, and dismissed from his office by the king, 231; returns to England, 260; is present at Runnymede, 302; makes fine for having countenanced the insurgent barons, iv. 33; obtains his castle of Newark, on paying for the stores, 35, *seq.*; dies, 324.
Lincoln, Robert Grosseteste consecrated bishop of, iv. 324.
Lincoln, Robert canon of, *v.* Worcester.
Lincoln, Adam de, excommunicated, iii. 356.
Lincoln, Robert de, holds Wareham castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.
Lincoln, Thomas de, taken prisoner by king John, iii. 336.
Lindis, a rivulet in Lindisfarne, i. 260.
Lindisfarne, bishops of, *v.* Aidan, Finan, Colman, Tuda, Eatta, Cuthbert, Eadberht, Aethelwald, Cyneuulf, Higbald, Ecgberht, Ecgfrith, Eanberht, Eardulf, Cuthard, Milred or Tilred, Witred, Alfsi or Mildred, Aldhun.
Lindisfarne, see of, translated to Chester, 335, and enlarged, 336.
Lisieux, [William de Rupière] bishop of, one of an embassy sent to Rome by king Richard, iii. 118.
L'Isle, Brian de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; appointed one of the governors of Yorkshire, 353; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93; appoints inspectors of the forests, 103.
L'Isle, Galo de, a crusader, slain, ii. 84.
Lismore, council of, ii. 367.
Living, archbishop of Canterbury, dies, i. 463.
Living, bishop of Worcester, translated from Crediton, i. 476; is deposed by Hardacnut, 478; he held the sees of Worcester, Crediton, and Cornwall at his death, 484.
Llandaff, [Urban] bishop of, dies, ii. 214 and *note*.
Llewellyn of South Wales assists Eâdmund in conquering Cumberland, i. 398 and *note*.
Llewellyn, king of Wales, besieges Builth castle, and is put to flight by Henry III., iv. 71; seizes two castles belonging to the earl of Pembroke, and beheads the garrison, 85; besieges Montgomery castle, and makes a truce with king Henry, 172, *seq.*; hangs William de Braose, 209; ravages his lands, and those of others upon the border, 220; is excommunicated by the English prelates, 221; his ruse against the garrison of Montgomery castle, 222; again ravages the border, 243; in conjunction with the earl-marshal, he burns Shrewsbury, 291; terms of peace insisted on by him, 309.
London, councils at, ii. 205, 210, 232; iii. 263, 275, 283; the city delivered up to the barons, 299; its inhabitants excommunicated, 355; besieged by the earl of Pembroke, iv. 30; riots in, 79, *seqq.*
London, archbishops of:
—— Guithelinus offers the sovereignty of Britain to Aldroenus king of Britanny, *Pref.* xxi.; educates Aurelius Ambrosius and Uther-pendragon, xxiii.
—— Theoneus forced to take refuge with his countrymen in Wales, i. 90.
London, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Mellitus, Wina, Earconwald, (also the names at i. 165,) Eadberht, Eadgar, Eastan, Theodred, Dunstan, Beorhthelm, Robert, William.]
—— Maurice, ii. 27, 164; dies, 184.
—— Richard de Beaumeis, ii. 184; consecrates Thomas, archbishop of York, 185; assists at the dedication of S. Alban's, 193; dies, 204.
—— Gilbert the Universal, ii. 207; dies, 214.
—— Robert 'de Sigillo,' ii. 230.
—— Richard de Beaumeis (II.), ordained deacon, ii. 225; consecrated bishop, 253; dies, 292.
—— Gilbert Foliot, *v.* Hereford.
—— Richard, archdeacon of Ely, elected, iii. 9; consecrated, 16; appointed one of the judges in the bishop of Coventry's case, 18; procures the release of the archbishop of York, 39; gives benediction to John abbot of S. Alban's, 90; dies, 130.

London, bishops of, *continued*.
—— William, canon of S. Paul's, consecrated, iii. 139; consecrates William bishop of Ely, 174, and Jocelyn bishop of Bath, 188; appointed with others to expostulate with king John, 220; lays an interdict on England and leaves the country, 222; ordered to excommunicate John, 228; accompanies his metropolitan to Rome, 241, and to the French king, 243; returns to England, 260; is present at the concession of Magna Charta, 302.
—— Eustace, receives custody of the person and property of Faulkes de Breaute, iv. 98; dies, 178.
—— Roger Niger, canon of London, elected, iv. 178; consecrated, 204; his conduct in a thunderstorm which occurred during the celebration of mass, 208; excommunicates the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 233; procures Hubert de Burgh to be replaced in sanctuary, 251; goes to Rome to answer a charge of conniving at the plunder of the Italians, 263; excommunicates all who had shown violence to the bishop of Carlisle, 272; joins the bishop of Salisbury in again procuring Hubert de Burgh's restoration to sanctuary, 275; consecrates archbishop Riche, 298, and gives benediction to John abbot of S. Alban's, 326.
London, Ralph de Diceto, dean of, iii. 22.
London, Gervase chancellor of, excommunicated, iii. 355, 357.
Longbeard, William, *v.* Fitz-Osbert.
Longchamp, William de, (bishop,) *v.* Ely.
Longchamp, Henry and Osbert de, hostages for their brother the bishop of Ely, iii. 51.
Longespee, William, (natural son of Henry II.,) earl of Salisbury, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237; undertakes that John will observe his compact with him, 249; present at his submission, 254; destroys a French fleet, 257, *seq.*; appointed marshal of the army in Flanders, 287; is a leader of the van in the battle of Bovines, 289; is taken prisoner, 291; supports John against the barons, 300; is present at Runnymede, 302; appointed with others to observe the barons in London, 347; wastes the isle of Ely, 358; deserts to Louis, 369; returns to his allegiance, iv. 12; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, 54; accompanies the expedition into Gascony, 101; is wrecked in returning, 105, *seq.*; his arrival and death, 116.
Longespee, William, earl of Salisbury, escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, iv. 279.
Lord's day, letter respecting the observance of the, iii. 148, *seqq.*; miracles consequent upon its infraction, 153, *seq.*
Losinga, Herbert, (bishop,) *v.* Norwich.
Loth, a British general, defeated by Octa and Eosa, i. 57.
Loth, brother-in-law of king Arthur, appointed by his uncle Sichelin his successor on the throne of Norway, i. 70; is established thereon by Arthur, *ib.*
Lothair, emperor, subdues a rebellion in Saxony, i. 282; his death, 292.
Lothair II., emperor, ii. 206.
Lothair, *v.* Hlôðheri.
Lothbroc, a Dane of royal descent, cast on the English coast, and presented to Eâdmund of East-Anglia, i. 304; grows in favour with him, 305; is murdered by Bern, *ib.*; his body discovered, 306; punishment of the murderer, *ib.*
Louis II., emperor, i. 292.
Louis III., emperor, i. 334.
Louis le Débonnaire, his accession and coronation, i. 272; expels Seloamir from his kingdom, *ib.*; calls the council of Aix-la-Chapelle, 273; his death, 282.
Louis d'Outremer leaves England, and is crowned at Laon, i. 391.
Louis VI., his accession, ii. 184, 187; his war with Theobald of Blois and Henry I., 194; loses the battle of Brenville, 199; receives the homage of prince Eustace, 220; dies, 221.
Louis VII. (le Jeune), ii. 211, 221; excommunicated and absolved, 238; goes to the crusade, 239; defeats the Turks, 241; is himself defeated, and arrives at Jerusalem, 242; returns home in disgust, 243; is

divorced from his wife, 247; makes war upon Henry of Normandy for marrying her, 248; marries Constance, daughter of Alphonso of Castille, 281; entertains Henry when king of England, 288; quarrels with him for precipitating the marriage of their children, 289; becomes reconciled, 291; affords Becket an asylum, 314; again quarrels with Henry, 322; mediates between him and Becket, 338; is present at their concord, 355; invades Normandy, 372; is compelled to raise the siege of Rouen, 381; his concord with Henry, 388; visits Becket's tomb, 397; his death and burial, 405.

Louis (VIII.) does homage, when dauphin, to John of England, and marries Blanche of Castille, iii. 147; knighted, 226; his territory ravaged by John, 280; advances to the relief of Roche-au-Moine, and then retreats, 286 and *note*; chosen king of England by the barons, 359; appoints a day for his arrival, 363; his reply to the expostulations of the legate, 365, *seq.*; sends messengers to defend his claim at Rome, 367; lands at Sandwich, 368; receives the homage of the barons, etc., 369; is excommunicated, 370; reduces the south of England, *ib.*; receives a letter from his ambassadors at Rome, 371; his progress in the eastern and northern counties, 378, *seq.*; besieges Dover castle, 380; his interview with the governor, iv. 4; takes Hertford and Berkhampstead castles, *ib. seq.*; levies a contribution on S. Alban's abbey, 6; places the castles in the hands of foreigners, 10; makes a truce with Henry III. and leaves the country, 11, *seq.*; returns, and sends a force to the relief of Montsorel, 15; reproaches the fugitives from the battle of Lincoln, 26; sends to France for means of escape, 27; makes peace with Henry, 30, *seq.*; is absolved, 32; besieges Thoulouse, and is repulsed, 62, *seq.*; becomes king of France, 86; his answer to the demands of the English king, *ib.*; obtains possession of Rochelle, 93; sends a force to seize Richard earl of Cornwall, 102; assumes the cross against the Albigenses, 125; besieges Avignon, 129; orders his slain to be cast into the Rhone, 132; prohibits the earl of Champagne from leaving the army, 133; dies, *ib.*

Louis IX. of France crowned in the tenth year of his age, iv. 135; reconciled to his nobility, 140; sends an expedition against the earl of Thoulouse, 169; collects an army to oppose Henry III., 210; confiscates the estates of some Norman deserters, 215; makes peace with his barons, 216; loses his baggage, and makes a truce with England, 224; attacks the earl of Britanny upon its expiry, 315; his conduct to the earl upon his submission, 316.

Louth, in Ireland, Gervase abbot of, receives land whereon to build a monastery, ii. 270.

Louvaine, [rather probably Lorraine, Matthew II.] duke of, sent to England by Frederic II. for the princess Isabella, iv. 333.

Louviers, Alard de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Lovel, William, holds Castle-Cary against king Stephen, ii. 222.

Lucius, a Roman consul, slain by king Arthur, i. 72.

Lucius II., pope, attempts to erect Winchester into an archbishopric, ii. 234; dies, 235.

Lucius III., pope, ii. 409; urges Henry II. of England to accept the kingdom of Jerusalem, 416; dies, 419.

Lucy, Godfrey de, (bishop,) *v.* Winchester.

Lucy, Geoffrey de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; appointed one of the governors of Yorkshire, 353; marches to the relief of Lincoln, iv. 19.

Lucy, Richard de, (justiciary of England,) excommunicated by Becket, ii. 314; lays the first stone of Westwood abbey, 388.

Ludeca of Mercia, i. 275; slain by Ecgberht of Wessex, 276.

Ludolphe, duke of Saxony, translates the body of pope Innocent, i. 295.

Luke, chaplain of Henry III., rejected as bishop by the monks of Durham, iv. 128.

Lupus, bishop of Troyes, assists Germanus against Agricola, *Pref.* xxv., and against the Picts and Scots, i. 6.
Lusignan, Geoffrey de, deprived of his castle by Richard duke of Aquitaine, ii. 405; murders one of the duke's friends, and is again vanquished, 427; surrenders, with his sons, to king John, iii. 281.
Lusignan, Guy de, count of Joppa and Ascalon, and brother-in-law of Baldwin IV., appointed administrator of the kingdom, and deposed, ii. 414; made king by his wife, 421; summons the strength of the kingdom against Saladin, 422; taken prisoner, 423; sent to Damascus, 424; released, 432; besieges Acre, 433; defeated near Antioch, iii. 11; present with the army before Acre, 21; acquiesces in the election of the earl of Champagne as king, and receives Cyprus, 46.
Lusus naturæ, ii. 185.
Lynne subjected to a heavy ransom by prince Louis, iii. 379.

M.

Macbeth of Scotland expelled by earl Siward, i. 493.
Macemunt (Joseph Amiral-mumenin), emperor of the Moors, slain, ii. 412, *seq.*
Machutus (S.), a disciple of S. Brendan, i. 81; curses the Britons and goes to France, *ib.*; returns, and absolves them, 82.
Maco, the murderer of king Yric, i. 403.
Maco, king of Man, i. 415.
Maçon, [John de Braine] count of, confederates against the count of Champagne, iv. 212.
Magla, a son of Port, i. 55.
Maglocun succeeds the British king Vortipore, i. 87.
Magna Charta, confederacy of the barons to obtain, iii. 293, *seqq.*; the charter, 302, *seqq.*; twenty-five barons appointed to carry out its provisions, 315.
Mahomet, history of, i. 121, *seqq.*
Maidstone, Ralph de, (bishop,) *v.* Hereford.
Maidul, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Maisbely, battle of, i. 40.
Malcolm I. of Scotland receives Cumberland on condition of defending the north of England, i. 398 and *note*.
Malcolm III. (son of the king of Cumberland) made king, i. 493; marries Margaret, sister of Eadgar Aetheling, ii. 2; harbours the Saxon exiles, and harasses the border, 4; makes his submission to William I., *ib.*; ravages England in the time of Rufus, 37; is again compelled to submit, *ib.*; his magnanimity towards a traitor, 38; is slain with his son in a border foray, 42.
Malcolm IV. of Scotland, ii. 254; his composition with Henry II., 286; does homage to him and to prince Henry, 298.
Malcolm, king of Cumberland, i. 415.
Maldon, Geoffrey, constable of, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356.
Malet, William, banished, ii. 187.
Malet, William, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.
Malger (bishop), *v.* Worcester.
Malmesbury, William of, completes his history, ii. 234.
Malta, Henry count of, dissatisfied at the restoration of Damietta to the Turks, iv. 79.
'Malveisin,' what, ii. 46.
Mamertus (S.), bishop of Vienna, miracle of, i. 15.
Mamistra destroyed by an earthquake, ii. 191.
Man, bishops of:
—— John, ii. 250.
—— Wimund, ii. 250.
Mandeville, William de, taken prisoner by king Stephen, ii. 233.
Mandeville, Geoffrey earl of, slain, ii. 235.
Mandeville, William de, dies, iii. 11.
Mandeville, Geoffrey de, earl of Essex, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; mortally wounded in a tournament, 363.
Mandeville, William de, (brother and successor of Geoffrey,) one of the

confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; assists in reducing Essex and Suffolk, 371; loses his standard, iv. 5; dies, 138.
Mandeville, R. de, excommunicated, iii. 356.
Mans, Le, siege of, ii. 439.
Mans, Le, price paid to Rome for the consecration of a bishop of, iii. 27.
Manuel, emperor, visited by Conrad III. and Louis VII., ii. 239; his treachery to Conrad, 240; sends an embassy to Henry II., 387.
Marc, or Marcay, Philip, castellan of Nottingham, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237; present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; encourages the earl of Albemarle against Henry III., 66; surrenders the custody of his castles to the king, 93.
Marcellinus and Peter (SS.), translation of, i. 275.
Marche, La, Hugh count of, v. Brun.
Marcher, brother of Sigeferth, put to death by Eadric Streona, i. 451.
Marcian, the emperor, death of, i. 16.
Maresfelth, battle of, i. 140.
Margaret, grand-daughter of Eadmund Iron-side, i. 462, 496; married by Malcolm III., ii. 2; her family by him, *ib.*; dies of grief for the loss of her husband and son, 42.
Margaret, daughter of Louis VII., married to prince Henry of England, ii. 289; crowned, 369; brought to England by Henry II., 377.
Margaret, first wife of Philip II. of France, ii. 409.
Marianus Scotus, i. 468; labours to correct the chronology of Dionysius, ii. 21.
Marines, Albert de, excommunicated, iii. 50.
Marinus, pope, frees the English School at Rome from tribute, and sends presents to Aelfred, i. 336.
Marmion, Robert, slain, ii. 235.
Marsh, Richard de, chancellor of king John, adheres to him against the pope, iii. 237; is sent to hire foreign mercenaries, 320; consecrated bishop of Durham, iv. 46; his dissension with his monks, 66, *seqq.*; dies suddenly, 126.
Marsh, Robert de, archdeacon of Northumberland, one of king John's embassy to Rome respecting the interdict, iii. 282.
Marsh, Geoffrey de, justiciar of Ireland, represses an insurrection there, iv. 213; joins a conspiracy against the earl-marshal, 292, *seq.*; his insidious advice to him, 300, 302; throws off the mask, 303.
Marshal, John le, claims a manor in the possession of Becket, ii. 305.
Marshal, John le, adheres to king John against the barons, iii. 301; attends him at Runnymede, 302, and in his northern expedition, 348; is present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; ordered to intercept the French fleet, 28; is the bearer of a royal message to the council at Westminster, 116.
Marshal, William, earl of Pembroke, is surety for Richard I. that he will go to the crusade, iii. 12; ordered to act independently of the chancellor, and to receive the archbishop of Rouen as an associate, 49; sent by king John to receive the fealty of the barons, 137; is his surety respecting compensation to the clergy, 283; acts for him in a council held at London, *ib.*; becomes his surety to the barons, 296; is sent to inquire their claims, 298; and to signify the king's acquiescence, 301; is present at Runnymede, 302; attends the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; issues letters on Henry's behalf to the sheriffs, 3; orders the castle of Montsorel to be besieged, 14; collects an army for the relief of Lincoln, 18; carries the news of his victory to the king, 25, *seq.*; takes measures to intercept the French fleet, 28; assists in promoting a peace, 30, *seq.*; besieges Newark, 35; dies, 46.
Marshal, William, earl of Pembroke, (son of the preceding,) joins the confederacy against king John, iii. 279; excommunicated, 355; joins prince Louis, 369; makes his submission to Henry III., iv. 12; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; recovers two of his castles from the Welch, and ravages their country, 85; confederates with the

earl of Cornwall against the king, 143; accompanies the king to Britanny, 213; is left there as one of the commanders of the army, 217; dies, 220.

Marshal, Richard, (brother and heir of the preceding,) compels Henry III. to grant him his inheritance, iv. 225; becomes one of the sureties for Hubert de Burgh, 258; is offended at the dismissal of his deputy, 264; remonstrates against the employment of foreigners, 265; is warned of an intrigue against him, 270; confederates with Llewellyn, 271; is deceived into the surrender of one of his castles to the king, 273; recovers it by force, 275; is taken prisoner, 279; rescued, 281; his answers to the king's proposals, 282, *seqq.*; routs John of Monmouth, and wastes his lands, 289; in company with Llewellyn, he burns Shrewsbury, 291; carries on the war in Ireland, 300; defends his conduct, 302; confers with the Irish nobles, 303; reproaches Geoffrey de Marsh with his treachery, 304; is wounded and taken prisoner, 306; his death and burial, 307, *seq.*

Marshal, Gilbert, (brother of the preceding,) knighted, and created earl-marshal, iv. 310.

Marshal, Walter, a younger brother of the preceding, iv. 304.

Martel, William, butler of king Stephen, taken prisoner, ii. 231.

Martel, A., deputy-preceptor of Henry III., iv. 77.

Martin I., pope, i. 142; calls the council of the Lateran, 148; is banished by Constans to the Chersonesus, 149.

Martin III., pope, i. 397.

Martina poisons her step-son Heraclius Constantinus, and places her own son Heraclonas on the throne, i. 138; is mutilated by order of the senate, and sent prisoner to Constans, *ib.*

Mascon, Louis de, a crusader, ii. 120.

Mategrifun, a castle so called, iii. 32.

Matilda, daughter of Baldwin of Flanders, and wife of the Conqueror, buried at Caen, ii. 21.

Matilda, daughter of Malcolm III. and wife of Henry I. of England, ii. 169; anecdote of her humility, 180; attends the dedication of S. Alban's, 193; dies, 194.

Matilda, or Maud, daughter of Henry I., married to the emperor Henry V., ii. 185; becomes a widow, 206; receives the homage of the English and Norman barons, 207; marries Geoffrey of Anjou, 208; gives birth to Henry II., 212, Geoffrey, 214, and William, 220; arrives at Arundel castle, 226; is acknowledged as 'Domina,' 229; receives Sherborne castle for the liberation of William Martel, 231; escapes from Oxford castle, 232.

Matilda, wife of king Stephen, takes Dover castle, ii. 222; maintains her husband's cause in Kent, 229; captures the earl of Gloucester, 230; dies, 250.

Matilda, daughter of Henry II. of England, born, ii. 284; married to Henry V. of Saxony, 312; gives birth to a son, 412; dies, 445.

Matilda, wife of William de Braose, refuses to give her children as hostages to king John, iii. 225; is imprisoned, and starved to death, 234, *seq.*

Matthæus, the archbishop who ordained S. Patric, i. 48 and *note.*

Mauclerc, Walter, (bishop,) *v.* Carlisle.

Maudut, William, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; loses his castle of Hanslape, 349; excommunicated, 356; taken prisoner, iv. 24.

Mauleon, Peter de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 238; encourages the insurrection of the earl of Albemarle against Henry III., iv. 66; surrenders the custody of his castles to the king, 93.

Mauleon, Savary de, employed by king John against his barons, iii. 331; prevents him from hanging the garrison of Rochester castle, 335; commands the Poitevin auxiliaries, 347; wastes the Isle of Ely, 358; arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 55; employed to guard the French coast, 106, *seq.*

Maurice, the emperor, i. 88; his prayer, 105, and vision, 106; put to death with his family by order of Phocas, *ib.*

Maurice, antipope, made a monk by Calixtus II., ii. 202.
Maurice (bishop), *v.* London.
Maurienne, Hubert earl of, his eldest daughter betrothed to prince John of England, ii. 369.
Maurus (S.) builds a monastery in France, and educates many of the young nobility, i. 79.
Maximianus Hercules, his persecution in the West, *Pref.* xiii.
Mayenne, Geoffrey de, a partizan of Richard earl of Poitou, ii. 443.
Medardus, bishop of Nimègue, his death, i. 70; buried at Soissons, 80.
'Medeshamstede,' the Saxon name of Peterborough, i. 199.
Medo, abbot of Fleury, i. 230.
Melealim (Malek-el-Kamel), eldest son of Saphadin, and sultan of Cairo, iii. 76; put to flight at Damietta, iv. 48, *seq.*; makes three assaults upon the camp of the Christians, 50, *seqq.*; defeats them in a pitched battle, 52, *seqq.*; treats for peace, 55; his proposals, 57; endeavours to surprise the Christians, 58; cuts off their communications with Damietta, 73, 78; makes a truce with them, 76, 79; sends presents to Frederic II., 175; restores to him the Holy Land, 188; releases the Christian captives, 193.
Mellitus, first bishop of London, i. 105; converts Sebert of Essex, *ib.*; is present at an ecclesiastical council in Italy, 110; expelled by the sons of Sebert, 114; withdraws with Justus into France, *ib.*; is recalled by Eadbald, 115; succeeds to the see of Canterbury, 120.
Mello, William de, taken prisoner, iii. 96; again captured, 132.
Melun, Giles viscount of, sent by prince Louis to the aid of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362; his death-bed confession of the ill-faith of Louis, 383.
Melun, Robert de, (bishop,) *v.* Hereford.
Menduc, prince of Persia, routs Baldwin I. and ravages the Holy Land, ii. 191.
Mercadeus, prince of Brabant, *v.* Brabant.
Mercher, son of earl Algar, elected earl of Northumbria, i. 509; flies to Scotland at the Conquest, ii. 5; taken prisoner in the Isle of Ely, 8.
Mercia, rise of the kingdom of, i. 88.
Mercredes-burne, battle of, i. 39.
Merefin, son of Merewald and Eormenburga, his sanctity, i. 167.
Merewald of West Mercia, his children by Eormenburga, i. 167; he permits her to take the veil, 151.
Merlin Ambrosius, the boy without a father, discovered, i. 20; his conversation with Wyrtgeorne, 21; baffles the Magi, *ib.*; his prophecy, 22; portions of it said to have been fulfilled, 72, 105; ii. 255, 379, 443; iii. 3, 234; foretells the death of the king, i. 34; instructs Aurelius Ambrosius what monument to raise to his predecessors, 44; is sent to Ireland with Uther to bring away the stones of the 'Chorea Gigantum,' *ib.*
Merové, king of the Franks, i. 7.
Merwinna, abbess of Rumsey, i. 412.
[Meschines,] Ranulph de, earl of Chester, (an adherent of the empress Maud,) commands the van in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 228; compels Stephen to raise the siege, 235; surrenders the place, 236; is poisoned, 280.
[Meschines,] Ranulph de, earl of Chester, an adherent of the young king, made prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375.
[Meschines,] Ranulph de, earl of Chester and Lincoln, one of king John's sureties for making compensation to the clergy, iii. 283; adheres to him against the barons, 300; present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; besieges Montsorel, 14; raises the siege, 17; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; arrives in the Holy Land, 44; assists in covering the flight of the Christians at Damietta, 54; is favourable to the Sultan's terms, 58; returns home, 62; loses Fotheringay castle, 67; surrenders the custody of his castles to the king, 92, *seq.*; joins the earl of Cornwall against him, 143; prohibits his clerical tenants from paying tithes to the pope, 203; prevents the king from killing Hubert de Burgh, 205; appointed one of the commanders of the force left in Britanny, 217;

his doings in Anjou, 218; negotiates a truce, and returns to England, 224; expostulates with the king respecting a pecuniary aid, 233; prevails upon him to recall his order touching the seizure of Hubert de Burgh, 250; dies, 256.
Meulant, Robert earl of, revolts against Henry I., ii. 203; is taken prisoner, 204; is present in the battle of Lincoln, 228.
Meulant, Waleran earl of, makes peace with Geoffrey of Anjou, ii. 230.
Meulant, Roger de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Milburga (S.), daughter of Merewald and Eormenburga, i. 167.
Mildred, bishop of Worcester, i. 205; dies, 264.
Mildritha (S.), daughter of Merewald and Eormenburga, i. 167.
Milgytha (S.), daughter of Merewald and Eormenburga, i. 167.
Milred (or Tilred, i. 386), bishop of Lindisfarne, 380; dies, 386.
Minorites, their rule, iii. 210.
Mirabeau, battle at, iii. 168.
Misci, Theobald de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Mizentius, an Armenian, made emperor by the army, and put to death by Constantine III., i. 161.
Modred, nephew of king Arthur, coregent with the queen during Arthur's absence, i. 71; usurps the crown, and seduces the queen, 73; is assisted by the Saxons, *ib.*; opposes Arthur's landing at Sandwich, 74; flies to Winchester, and thence into Cornwall, *ib.*, where he is slain, 75; rebellion and death of his sons, 76.
Mohun, William de, holds Dunster castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.
Moine, Eustace le, collects a fleet for the invasion of England by prince Louis, iii. 368; is defeated, iv. 28; is dragged from the hold of a ship, and put to death, 29, *seq.*
Monasteries, names of, destroyed by the Danes in England, i. 302, *seq.*; general visitation of, iv. 258, *seqq.*
Monci, Drogo de, a crusader, ii. 120.
Monfichet, Richard de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 356; taken prisoner, iv. 24.
Monmouth, John of, appointed a captain of his Poitevin mercenaries by Henry III., iv. 279; surprised and put to flight by the earl-marshal, 289.
Monmouth, battle of, iv. 281.
Monothelitæ, heresy of the, i. 121, 129, 140; condemned in the council of the Lateran, 149.
Monpelier, William de, a crusader, ii. 62, 77, 120.
Montagu, Cono de, a crusader, ii. 74.
Montagu, Lambert son of Cono de, a crusader, ii. 120.
Montagu, Peter de, master of the Temple, letters from, on the affairs of Palestine, iv. 72, 77.
Montagu, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.
Mont-Begon, Roger de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.
Monte, Godfrey de, a crusader, slain, ii. 88.
Monte, Adulph count de, (a crusader,) his vessel set on fire by the Turks, iv. 38; his scaling-apparatus, 39.
Monte Casino, the Benedictine monastery of, destroyed by the Lombards, i. 99.
Montevisito, J. de, one of prince Louis' ambassadors to Rome, iii. 372.
Mont-Ferrat, Conrad marquis of, his letter to Baldwin archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 436; present in the battle near Antioch, iii. 11; his station at the siege of Acre, 21; slain by the Assassins, 46.
Montfort, Robert de, witnesses a charter of Henry I., ii. 164.
Montfort, Hugh de, taken prisoner, ii. 204.
Montfort, Robert de, overcomes Henry de Essex in a trial by battle, ii. 296.
Montfort, Simon de, earl of Leicester, a leader in the crusade against the Albigenses, iii. 267; made prince of the captured territory, 270; gains a victory over the Albigenses, 273; slain, iv. 63.
Montfort, Simon de, claims the possessions of the earl of Thoulouse in the council of Bourges, iv. 119.
Montgomery, Roger de, conspires against Rufus, ii. 32; returns to his allegiance, 33.

Montgomery castle built, iv. 72; besieged by the Welch, 172.
Mont-Michel, Robert abbot of, the historian, ii. 287.
Montmorency, Matthew de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Mont-Royal, or Montregeau, Ansier de, confesses his treachery to the crusaders, iii. 23.
Montsorel besieged, iv. 14; siege raised, 17; the place abandoned by its garrison, 26.
Moravia, [Otho] duke of, joins the crusaders at Acre, iv. 7.
Morchar and Eadwin (brothers) repulse Tosti from Northumbria, i. 513; Morchar is driven into York, 514; they fly to Scotland after the Conquest, ii. 2, 5; Eadwin joins the disaffected in Ely, 8.
Mortain, William earl of, is banished by Henry I., and harasses him in Normandy, ii. 175; is made prisoner at Tinchebrai, 182.
Mortain and Warren, William earl of, (called, in the text, natural son of king Stephen,) present in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 229; compounds with Henry II., 286.
Mortimer, Hugh de, rebels against Henry II., ii. 281.
Morville, Hugh de, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.
Mosepha, what, iv. 199.
Mowbray, Robert de, earl of Northumberland, conspires against William Rufus, ii. 32; endows Tynemouth priory, 39; absents himself from the court, 45; is taken prisoner at Tynemouth, 46.
Mowbray, Roger de, (in arms against Henry II.,) defeated by the royalists of Lincoln, ii. 375; makes his peace with the king, 380.
Mowbray, William de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; taken prisoner, iv. 24.
Muchel, earl of Gainsborough, and father-in-law of king Aelfred, i. 300.
Mull, brother of Ceadwalla, killed (by fire, i. 187) in Kent, 182.
Multon, Thomas de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; taken prisoner, 335; excommunicated, 357; becomes a justice in eyre, iv. 94.
Mummolus, abbot of Fleury, sends to Monte Casino for the remains of SS. Benedict and Scholastica, i. 173.
Muntciun (? Mont-Sion), Odo de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Muntini (? Montigny), Everard de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Murdac, Henry, (archbishop,) *v.* York.
Muschamp, Geoffrey de, (bishop,) *v.* Coventry.

N.

Nanteuil, Philip de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Nanteuil, Andrew de, taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.
Naples, John cardinal of, one of the legates sent to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, ii. 314.
Narbonne, archbishops of:
—— [Arnold Amaury], legate in the crusade against the Albigenses, iii. 267; summons several bishops and abbots to his aid, 272.
—— N., joins other prelates in a letter from the Holy Land, iv. 146; is one of the leaders of the crusaders, 175.
Natanleod, a British general, slain by Cerdic and Cynric, i. 57 and *note*.
Nazareth, N. archbishop of, joins other prelates in a letter from the Holy Land, iv. 146; is one of the leaders of the crusaders, 175.
Nesle, Drogo de, released from captivity at Constantinople, ii. 75.
Nesle, John de, a crusader, iii. 21.
Nevers, [Mahaut] count of, a leader in the crusade against the Albigenses, iii. 267; returns home, 270; besieges Windsor castle, 381; is suspected of having been bribed by king John, 382; goes to the Holy Land, but deserts at a period of danger, iv. 44.
Nevers, Guy de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Neville, Alan de, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 314; absolved, *ib.*; again excommunicated, 329.
Neville, Eustace de, sent by prince Louis to encourage the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.

Neville, Hugh de, chief forester of king John, adheres to him against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; is present at Runnymede, 302; surrenders Marlborough castle to Louis, and does him homage, 371; appoints inspectors of the forests, iv. 103.
Neville, Ralph de, (bishop,) *v.* Chichester.
Newark, siege of, iv. 34.
Nice, siege of, ii. 81, *seqq.*
Nicephorus III. deposed, ii. 75.
Nicholas (S.), translation of, ii. 27.
Nicholas I., pope, i. 294; allows the translation of SS. Eusebius and Pontianus, 297; his letter respecting the churches of Tours and Dol, iii. 145.
Nicholas II., pope, i. 502.
Nigel (bishop), *v.* Ely.
Niger, Roger, (bishop,) *v.* London.
Nonant, Hugh de, (bishop,) *v.* Coventry.
[Norfolk], Ralph de Waher, earl of, forms a conspiracy against William I., ii. 14; invites the Danes and Welch, 15; flies the country, *ib.*
Norfolk, earls of, *v.* Bigod.
Norhale, William de, (bishop,) *v.* Worcester.
Normandy, laws for the church in, iii. 32, *seq.*
Northampton, siege of, iii. 299; council at, iv. 94.
Northampton, Savary archdeacon of, *v.* Bath.
Northumberland, Robert earl of, slain, ii. 6.
Northumbria, kingdom of, founded, i. 77; divided, on the death of Ida, into Deira and Bernicia, 81; reunited by Aethelfrith, 96.
Norton, Walter de, excommunicated, iii. 356.
Norwold, Hugh, (bishop,) *v.* Ely.
Norwich, church of, founded, and supplied with monks, ii. 80; the city plundered by the Flemings, 376.
Norwich, bishops of:
—— William, ii. 27.
—— Herbert Losinga, his simony and repentance, ii. 45; assists at the consecration of Thomas archbishop of York, 185; dies, 200.
—— William, ii. 294.
Norwich, bishops of, *continued.*
—— John (dean of Salisbury), consecrated, ii. 384; obtains a dispensation from joining the crusade, iii. 30; his quota towards the ransom of Richard I., 73.
—— John de Gray, elected archbishop of Canterbury, iii. 185; his election annulled, 211; made justiciary of Ireland, 234; adheres to king John against the pope, 237; returns from Ireland with a force in aid of the king, 245; is a witness of his submission to the pope, 254; is sent to Rome respecting the interdict, 283; undertakes that John will make compensation to the clergy, 284; dies on his return, 292.—[He is subsequently stated (at p. 320) to have been sent to engage foreign mercenaries.]
—— Pandulph, *v.* Pandulph.
—— Thomas de Blundville, a clerk of the exchequer, consecrated, iv. 138.
Norwich, archdeacons of:
—— Geoffrey, dies in prison, iii. 229.
—— Geoffrey de Burgh, *v.* Ely.
—— John, (a Florentine,) escapes to London from some English insurgents, iv. 231.
Norwich, Robert official of the church of, ordered to excommunicate the confederated barons by name, iii. 354.
Nothelm, the literary coadjutor of Beda, elected archbishop of Canterbury, i. 225; dies, 227.
Nottingham, William earl of, a commander in the battle of the Standard, ii. 222.
Noureddin, son of Zenghi, slays Raymond prince of Antioch, ii. 244; captures Bohemond II. and others, 313.

O.

Ockley, battle of, i. 285.
Octa, son of Hengest, arrives in Britain, i. 13; flies to York after the battle of the Don, i. 42; surrenders himself to Ambrosius, 43; rises, with Eosa, against Uther, 53; they ravage the country between York and Scotland, *ib.*; are made prisoners in a night-attack, *ib.*; escape to Germany, return, and defeat the British general Loth, 57; are slain in the battle of S. Alban's, 59.

Octavian, antipope, ii. 288.
Odiham castle, gallant defence of, iii. 371.
Odo, bishop of Wilton (or Ramsbury, i. 495), had been one of king Eadward's Danish mercenaries, 383 and *note*; is translated to Canterbury, 391; advises Eâdmund to compromise with Anlaf, 395; crowns Eadred, 399, and Eadwy, 404; consecrates Dunstan bishop of Worcester, 406; divorces Eadwy and Algiva, *ib. seq.*; dies, 407.
Odo, bishop of Bayeux, and brother of the Conqueror, imprisoned for treason, ii. 20; confirms his nephew Robert in the duchy of Normandy, and comes to England, 31; forms a conspiracy against Rufus, *ib.*; is taken, 33, rescued, retaken, and forced to abjure the realm, 34.
Odoacer the Goth captures Rome, i. 39.
Offa of Mercia expels Beornraed from his throne, i. 234; is elected king, 235; his genealogy, *ib.*; quarrels with the Kentishmen, and erects Lichfield into an archbishopric, 237; subdues the Angles, 239; gains a victory over the men of Kent, 240; obtains the friendship of Charlemagne, 241; defeats Cyneuulf of Wessex, 243; crowns his son Ecgfrith, 247; marries his daughters, *ib.* 249; seizes upon East-Anglia, on the murder of Aethelberht, 251; translates the body of S. Alban, 253; sets out for Rome to procure privileges for the monastery of that saint, 254; his acts and return, 255, *seqq.*; endows the abbey of S. Alban, 257; specification of his dominions, *ib.*; his death, 261; summary of his conquests, 235.
Offa of Essex is induced by Kyneswitha to embrace a religious life, i. 199; visits Rome with Cŏenraed, 203, where he receives the tonsure and dies, 199.
Offer, a Northumbrian noble, avenges the death of king Ecgfrith, i. 202.
Oidwald, son of Oswald, succeeds Oswin in Deira, i. 148.
Olaf, king of Norway, dethroned by Cnut, i. 468.
'Old Man of the Mountain,' the title explained, ii. 246; letter of, exculpatory of Richard I., iii. 74.
Oliver, natural son of king John, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.
Olympus, a blasphemer, consumed by lightning, i. 56.
Omer, S., *v.* S. Omer.
Orange, William bishop of, assumes the cross, ii. 62; joins Raymond of Thoulouse, 77; dies, 127.
Ordbriht, bishop of Selsey, i. 426.
Ordgar, earl of Devon, builds Tavistock abbey, i. 409; was father of Eadgar's second queen, 410; his death, 413.
Ordmar, duke, father of Eadgar's first queen, i. 410.
Orfevre, Geoffrey l', an English crusader, iii. 29.
Orkneys, Ralph bishop of the (ii. 222), his harangue before the battle of the Standard, 223.
Orleans, Fulcher of, a crusader, slain, ii. 69.
Orm, earl, father-in-law of king Anlaf, i. 395.
Osberht of Northumbria, i. 283, deposed, 298; joins his successor against the Danes, and falls at York, *ib.*
Osbern, a Norman adviser of Eadward III., flies to Scotland, i. 492.
Osbern, brother of king Sweyn, his invasion of England, and defeat, ii. 6.
Osburga, mother of Aelfred the Great, i. 284; her mode of inducing him to study, 320.
Osfrith, a son of Eadwin of Northumbria, slain in the battle of Hatfield, i. 132.
Osgod Glappa, Hardacnut struck with death at the bridal banquet of his daughter, i. 482.
Osketel, a Danish king, i. 326.
Osketel, archbishop of York, i. 403; dies, 414.
Osmund (bishop), *v.* Salisbury.
Osred, son of Alhfrith, succeeds him in Northumbria, i. 199, *seq.*; restores archbishop Wilfrid, 187; is slain in battle, 211.
Osred, son of Ealred of Northumbria, succeeds Alfwold, i. 247; is driven from his throne, and slain at Tynemouth, 248.

Osred of Northumbria, his accession and death, i. 261.
Osric, cousin of king Eadwin, succeeds him in Deira, i. 133; his baptism and apostacy, *ib.*; is slain by Cadwallo, *ib.*
Osric, ruler of the territory of Worcester, i. 172.
Osric of Northumbria, i. 212, resigns his kingdom to Cëoluulf, 218.
Osric, earl of Dorset (and Hampton, i. 295), defeats the Danes, 283, 295.
Ossuna, Hervey de, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.
Ostford, a monk of Streneshalh, becomes bishop of Worcester, i. 172, 205.
Ostia, bishops of:
—— Alberic, papal legate, holds a council at London, and consecrates Theobald archbishop of Canterbury, ii. 225; acknowledges the empress Maud, 229.
—— Octavian, invites Richard I. to visit the pope, iii. 26.
Ostritha, sister of Ecgfrith of Northumbria and wife of Aethelred of South Mercia, i. 167, 170; murdered by the Mercians, 189.
Osuulf of Northumbria, son of Eadberht, murdered, i. 234.
Osuulf, bishop of Wilton, (or Ramsbury, i. 495,) 391 and *note.*
Osuulf, earl, his treachery to king Yric, i. 403.
Oswald, son of Aethelfrith, king of Northumbria, i. 134; sends to Scotland for Aidan, and appoints him bishop of Lindisfarne, *ib.*; his piety in the battle of Hefenfeld, *ib.*; becomes sponsor for Cynegils, 135; anecdote of his charity, 139; is slain by Penda, 140; his translation, 374.
Oswald the Aetheling, his unsuccessful insurrection against Aethelhard of Wessex, i. 217.
Oswald (S.), bishop of Worcester, consecrated by Dunstan, i. 409; builds Ramsey abbey, *ib.*; orders his clerks to become monks, and deprives the recusant, 413; is translated to York, 414; is buried in a church of his foundation at Worcester, 428; his body placed in a shrine, 435.
Oswen, her devotion to the relics of S. Eadmund, i. 314.
Oswin of Deira, son of king Osric, i. 141; his passion, 145; person and character, 146; burial, 147; discovery of his remains, 504; his sanctity tested. 506.
Oswini, earl, defeated by the Danes, i. 438.
Oswiu succeeds his brother Oswald in Bernicia, i. 141; persuades Sigeberht II. to become a Christian, 142; sends an emissary to kill Oswin, 145; his country invaded by Penda, 152; his vow, *ib.*; slays Penda, *ib.*; gives Peada the kingdom of South Mercia, 154; his speech at the council of Streneshalh, 157, and decision, 158; his death and funeral, 161, *seq.*; his pedigree, 162.
Otford, battle of, i. 240.
Otho I. emperor, marries a sister of king Aethelstan, i. 392.
Otho II. emperor, i. 414.
Otho III. emperor, i. 424.
Otho IV. of Germany, (son of Henry V. of Saxony, ii. 410,) crowned and married, iii. 124; his election confirmed, 142; visits king John, 210; is furnished by him with money, 225; consecrated emperor by the pope, 227; excommunicated, 232; assists John against the French, 287; commands the third division in the battle of Bovines, 289; repels his assailants, 291.
Otho, the pope's legate, arrives in England, iv. 107; intercedes for Faulkes de Breaute, *ib.* 117; takes proxy-money from the conventual churches, 108; his demands in the council at Westminster, 114, *seq.*; prorogues the meeting, 116; recalled by the pope, 123.
Oxford, heretics branded in the council of, ii. 315; citizens of, expel the students, iii. 227; their penance, 274.
Oxford, archdeacons of:
—— Robert, *v.* Hereford.
—— Walter de Constantiis, *v.* Lincoln.
Oxford, John of, president of the council at Clarendon, ii. 298.
Oxford, earl of, *v.* Vere.

P.

Paganel, or Paisnel, holds Ludlow castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.
Paganis, Hugh de, one of the founders of the order of Knights Templars, ii. 195.
Paisnel, Foulques and William, of Normandy, desert to Henry III., iv. 214.
Paling, brother-in-law of Sweyn, murdered, i. 445.
Palladius, his mission to the Scots, and death, i. 47.
Pallas, son of Evander, his body found, i. 475.
Pandulph, cardinal, his negotiation with king John, iii. 235; is sent to excite the French king against him, with secret instructions to compound with John, 242; urges him to yield, 246, *seq.*; receives his formal submission, 252, and homage, 254; recommends the king of France to abandon his intended invasion, 256; opposes the appeal of archbishop Langton at Rome, 279; is present with John at Runnymede, 302, and sent by him to Rome against the barons, 329; is ordered by the pope to enforce their excommunication, 336; jointly with the bishop of Winchester, he suspends archbishop Langton, 340; elected bishop of Norwich, iv. 69; his vision respecting Faulkes de Breaute, 137; dies, 138.
Pantheon at Rome consecrated as a Christian church, i. 110; stripped of its brazen tiles by Constans, 160.
Papiro, John, cardinal legate, appoints four archbishops in Ireland, ii. 250.
Paris, Ferrius de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Paris, Robert de, a crusader, slain, ii. 88.
Pascentius, the third son of Wyrtgeorne, i. 11; history of, 51, *seq.*
Paschal I., pope, i. 272.
Paschal II., pope, ii. 166; his reply to the proctor of Henry I., etc., 172; his contention with the emperor Henry V., 190; his death, 194.
Paschal cycle, completion of the first, i. 84; of the second, ii. 13 and *note*; *v.* also p. 18.
Passelewe, Robert, clerk of Faulkes de Breaute, accompanies him in his exile, iv. 103; becomes deputy treasurer of Henry III., 264; has custody of the forfeited lands of Hubert de Burgh, 297; absconds on being called to an account by the king, 312, 314; makes fine, and is pardoned, 325.
Pateshulle, Martin de, a justice in eyre of Henry III., iv. 94.
Patric (S.), originally called Mannus, history of, i. 48; his purgatory, ii. 256, *seqq.*
Patric, William, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375
Paul I., pope, i. 233, *seq.*
Paulinus consecrated archbishop of York by Justus, i. 124; accompanies Athelburga to the court of Eadwin, 125; converts the people of Lincoln, builds a church there, and consecrates Honorius as bishop, 128; upon the death of Eadwin, he carries the royal family and the sacred vessels back to Kent, 133; obtains the see of Rochester, *ib.*; his death, 142.
Pavia, William cardinal of, authorizes the marriage of prince Henry and princess Margaret, ii. 289; endeavours to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, 314.
Peada, son of Penda, made king of the Mercians by his father, i. 144; receives Alcfleda from Oswiû on condition of becoming a Christian, *ib.*; is baptized, and directs the propagation of the Gospel, *ib.*; on the death of his father, he receives South Mercia from Oswiû, 154; is murdered by his wife, *ib.*
Peccam, Robert, (bishop,) *v.* Chester.
Pecthelm bishop of Whiterne, i. 224.
Pechtwine, bishop of Whiterne, i. 236; dies, 242.
Pelagius I., pope, i. 79.
Pelagius II., pope, i. 86; reduces the number of prefaces used in the mass, 87; sends Gregory, author of the 'Moralia in Job,' to Constantinople, *ib.*; was the first who died in the great inguinal plague, 94.
Pelagius, the legate, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 43; recommends an attack upon Damietta, 46; endeavours to rally the fugitives, 54; opposes the Sultan's terms, 58;

dedicates the principal mosque in Damietta, 60; urges an advance against the infidels, 73; is one of the hostages for the restoration of Damietta, 76.
Pelez, Raymond, a crusader, ii. 76.
Pellitus, an astrologer consulted by king Eadwin, i. 130, and assassinated by the nephew of Cadwallo, 131.
Pembroke, earls of, *v.* Marshal.
Penda, king of Mercia, i. 110; fights with Cynegils at Cirencester, 128; besieges Exeter, 131; is made prisoner by Cadwallo, 132; accompanies him into Northumbria, *ib.*; his sister married to Cadwallo, 166; he is sent by Cadwallo against Oswald, and is defeated by him, 134, *seq.*; slays him at Maresfelth, 140; expels his brother-in-law Cynewealh for repudiating his wife, 141; allows Christianity to be preached in Mercia, 144; invades Northumbria, and is slain by Oswiû, 152.
Pepin, king of the Franks, subdues Normandy, i. 185; orders the SS. Hewald to be buried at Cologne, 189; is reproved for adultery by bishop Lambert, 190.
Pepin, (le Bref,) king of the Franks, required by the pope to restore the relics of S. Benedict, i. 229; sends Remigius and three bishops to obtain them, *ib.*
Perche, Maurice bishop of, leaves Paris on account of a flood, iii. 97.
Perche, Rotrod II. count of, a crusader, ii. 62, 80, 120.
Perche, Robert (or Rotrod III.) count of, joins Louis VII. against Henry of Normandy, ii. 248; is sent by Philip II. to Richard I. respecting the crusade, iii. 12; dies before Acre, 36.
Perche, Thomas count of, one of the French commanders in the battle of Bovines, iii. 291; marches to the relief of Montsorel, iv. 15; reconnoitres the royal army near Lincoln, 21; is slain, 23.
Percy, Richard de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355; assists in subduing Yorkshire, 379.
Pestilences, i. 73, 159, 180, 229, 425; iv. 45.
Peter the Hermit, his visit to Jerusalem, ii. 63, *seq.*, and expedition, 66, *seqq.*; joins the crusaders before Nice, 80; bears a message of defiance to Kerboga, 119; his reception on returning to Jerusalem, 144.
Peter of the Alps, a crusader, ii. 90.
Peter, a priest among the crusaders, discovers the holy lance, ii. 116; his fiery ordeal, 129.
Peter of Pontefract, a hermit, imprisoned for his prophecy respecting king John, iii. 240; executed as a traitor, 255.
Peter Lombard, heresy of, ii. 401.
Phænomena reputed miraculous, i. 73, 80, 83, 224, 227, 229, 239, 242, 246, *seq.*, 259, 261, 276, 386; ii. 19, 43, 46, 157, 176, 182, 192; iii. 128, 165, 181; iv. 85, 144, *seq.*, 266, *seq.*
Philip I. of France forces the Conqueror to raise the siege of Dol, and assists his son Robert, ii. 16; his vulgar jest respecting William, 28; is bribed by Rufus to abandon Robert, 43; excommunicated for adultery, 58; his death, 184, 187.
Philip II. of France crowned, ii. 404; his convention with Henry II. of England, *ib.*; submits his realm to his disposition, 407; his marriage, 409; meets Henry at Rouen, 418; takes the cross, 426, *seq.*; quarrels with Henry, and seizes some of his castles, 428; is aided by Henry's son, Richard, 435; his successes in Normandy, 439; takes Tours, and imposes terms upon Henry, 442; demands the castle of Gisors, etc. from Richard I., iii. 2; his agreement with him, 16; sets out on the crusade, 25; sends to Richard for the loan of galleys, 26; conceives an enmity towards him at Messina, 31; joins the Christians before Acre, 41; leaves Palestine, 42; arrives at Paris, 54; invades Normandy, 79; marries a Danish princess, and divorces her, *ib.*; is driven from before Verneuil by Richard, 82; loses his baggage, 84; makes a truce with Richard, 85; is reproved by the pope for his divorce, 90; his treaty with Richard, etc., 93, *seq.*; driven from Paris by an overflowing of the Seine, 97; is compelled by the earl of Flanders to

come to terms, 122; defeated by Richard near Jumiéges, 130; procures the pope to interfere for the restoration of peace, 132, *seq.*; undertakes the guardianship of prince Arthur, 138; knights him, and receives his homage, 141; his demands upon king John, *ib.*, and treaty with him, 146, *seq.*; is visited by him at Paris, 166; espouses the cause of prince Arthur, 167; takes Arques, 169, and many places in Normandy, 171, *seq.*; grants a truce to the Norman barons, 173; receives the submission of Normandy, etc., 180, *seq.*; obtains the castle of Chinon, 183; knights his son Louis and an hundred nobles, 226; banishes the earl of Boulogne, and gives his possessions to his own son Philip, 236; is ordered by the pope to dethrone king John, 241; his preparations, 243; is directed by Pandulph to desist from his intended expedition, 256; invades Flanders, 257; loses his fleet, 258; evacuates Flanders, 259; encamps near the bridge of Bovines, 288; is unhorsed in the battle, 290, but gains the victory, 291; makes a truce with John, 292; takes hostages from the English barons for the safety of his son Louis, 360; his answer to the remonstrances of the legate Walo, 364, *seq.*; directs his daughter-in-law Blanche to assist her husband's escape, iv. 28; dies, 86.

Philip, son of Louis VI., accidentally killed, ii. 210.

Philip, son of Philip II. of France, *v.* Boulogne.

Philip (bishop), *v.* Durham.

Philippicus, emperor, kills Justinian II. and his son Tiberius, i. 205, *seq.*; banishes the patriarch of Constantinople, and introduces a heretic, 206; his heterodox letters rejected by the pope, *ib.*; is overthrown by Anastasius and deprived of sight, 211.

Philippus Presbyter, a commentator on Job, dies, i. 12.

Phocas usurps the empire, and destroys Maurice and his family, i. 106; acknowledges the spiritual supremacy of Rome, 109; grants the Pantheon to Boniface IV., 110; is killed by order of Heraclius, 111.

Pierrepont, William de, his prophecy respecting the king of France, iv. 126.

Piletus, Raymond, a crusader, ii. 120; takes Thalamania, but is repulsed at Marra, 126.

Pinci, Peter de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.

Pipewell, synod of, iii. 9.

Pirannus made archbishop of York by king Arthur, i. 66.

Pisa, Henry cardinal of, authorizes the marriage of prince Henry and princess Margaret, ii. 289.

Pisa, [Ubald Lanfranc] archbishop of, a crusader, iii. 22.

Planes, Roger de, slain by the partizans of William bishop of Ely, iii. 51.

Plantagenet, *v.* Anjou.

Plegmund, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 354; assists Aelfred in his studies, 324; summons a council to appoint bishops, 371, and consecrates seven in one day, 372; his death, 379.

Plenting, second son of Ella, his arrival in Britain, i. 38.

Poitiers, Richard archdeacon of, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 314; elected bishop of Winchester, 370; carries news of the Flemish invasion to Henry II., 377; consecrated, 381; dies, 428.

Poitou, Roger count of, taken prisoner by Robert of Normandy, ii. 43.

Ponte, Reginald de, assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, iv. 54.

Ponthieu, Godwin count of, imprisons Harold as a spy, i. 501.

'Pontibus,' R. de, abbot of S. John in England, one of king John's commissioners to treat for peace with Philip II., iii. 293.

Poore, Herbert, (bishop,) *v.* Salisbury.

Popa, daughter of duke Berengar and wife of Rollo, i. 376; repudiated, 377; restored, *ib.*

Popo, a clerk, his religious controversy with the Danes, and fiery test, i. 412; is made a bishop, *ib.*

Poreta, Gilbert, his heresy condemned, ii. 197.

Port and his two sons settle on the coast of Britain, i. 55.

Porta, Gallis de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Portesmuth, origin of the name of, i. 55.
Porto, Conrad bishop of, and legate, his letter respecting the Albigenses, iv. 87.
Possessa, Guy de, a crusader, ii. 62; dies, 84.
Prester John, king of India, letter to him from the pope, ii. 408
'Pridwen,' the name of king Arthur's shield, i. 64.
Principato, Richard and Ranulph del, crusaders, ii. 76.
Priscian the Grammarian flourishes, i. 82.
Prosper of Aquitaine writes against Eutyches, i. 37.
Pudsey, Hugh de, (bishop,) *v.* Durham.
Puinter, Puintil, or Puintuna, Alexander de, excommunicated, iii. 50; confederates against king John, 297; again excommunicated, 356.
Purification of the Virgin, festival of, instituted, i. 73.
Puthric, bishop of Rochester, i. 270 and *note*.
Putta, bishop of Rochester, present in the council of Hertford, i. 162.
Puysaye, Everard de, a crusader, ii. 62, 101, 120.

Q.

Quenburga, one of the sisters of Ini of Wessex, i. 216.
Quenci, Saher de, (earl of Winchester,) delivers the castle of Ruil to Philip II., and is imprisoned by him, iii. 172; is a witness of king John's submission to the pope, 254; becomes his surety that he will make restitution to the clergy, 283; joins the insurgent barons, 297; is excommunicated, 355; sent to offer the crown to Louis, 359; induces Louis to spare S. Alban's abbey, iv. 6; goes to the relief of his own castle of Montsorel, 15; reconnoitres the royal army near Lincoln, 20; is taken prisoner, 23; goes to the Holy Land, 44.
Quenci, R. de, (son of the preceding,) excommunicated, iii. 355.
Quendrida, wife of Offa of Mercia, murders Aethelberht of East-Anglia, i. 250.
Quendrida, daughter of Cêenuulf of Mercia, i. 263; murders her brother Cênelm, 273; her punishment, 274.

R.

Rabbodus, duke of Frisia, anecdote respecting his baptism, i. 212.
Radegundis (S.), wife of Clotaire I., takes the veil, i. 80.
Ralph (bishops), *v.* Chichester, Orkneys, and Rochester.
Ramsbury or Wilton, bishops of, *v.* Aethelstan, Odo, Osuulf, Brithwold, Herman, Algar, Elstan, Siricius, Aelfric.
Ramsey, Aldwin abbot of, degraded, ii. 171; restored, 172.
Rancona, Geoffrey de, a French crusader, ii. 242.
Ranulf, earl, (nephew of Eadward III.) defeated by the Welch, i. 494.
Ranulf, chancellor of king Henry I., his character and death, ii. 202.
'Ranulphus Teutonicus' appointed governor of Berkhampstead castle by king John, iii. 353.
Ravenna, Guibert bishop of, (antipope,) *v.* Guibert.
Ravenna (or Rancuna, *note*), Geoffrey de, his possessions wasted by Richard I., iii. 84.
Raymond, count of Thoulouse, assumes the cross, ii. 62; his march, 77; refuses an oath of fealty to Alexius, 78; joins the main army, 81; attacked by Solyman, 89; is sent with others to conduct the Genoese to the camp, 101; objects to giving Antioch to Bohemond, 107; is left in charge of the city during the great sortie, 120; takes Albara, 127; quarrels with Bohemond, 128; is accused of a religious imposture, 129; receives a bribe from the Turks, 130; his station before Jerusalem, 134; scales the walls, 142; leads a fresh army of crusaders from Constantinople, 173.
Raymond of Poitou marries a daughter of Bohemond II. and becomes prince of Antioch, ii. 213; slain by the Turks, 244.
Raymond, count of Tripoli, slain by the Assassins, ii. 245.

Raymond, count of Tripoli, taken prisoner by Noureddin, ii. 313; appointed administrator of the kingdom, and guardian of Baldwin V., 414, *seq.*; leads the army against Saladin, 422; defeated, 423; dies, 433.
Raymond, a monk of S. Alban's, one of the messengers of Richard I. to the pope, iii. 134.
Raymond, nephew of Hubert de Burgh, proposes marriage to the countess of Salisbury, iv. 113.
Reading, council at, iii. 187.
Reading, [Simon] abbot of, commissioned, with others, to excommunicate the barons in arms against king John, iii. 336.
Readuulf of Northumbria slain by the Danes, i. 283.
Récarede, king of the Visigoths, renounces Arian opinions in the council of Toledo, and procures the conversion of his nation, i. 96.
Rees, prince of South Wales, does homage to Henry II. and to prince Henry, ii. 298.
Regberht, the pagan who killed Eorpwald of East-Anglia, i. 129.
Reginald, son of Guthred, expelled Northumbria by king Eâdmund, i. 396; becomes his godson, 397.
Reginald, brother of king Yric, murdered, i. 403.
Reginald, lord of Sidon, escapes from the battle of Tiberias, ii. 423; is accused of the murder of the marquis of Mont-Ferrat, iii. 74.
Reginald, a retainer of Faulkes de Breaute, slain in the battle of Lincoln, iv. 24.
Regnacarius killed by his kinsman Clovis I., i. 39.
Reinelm (bishop), *v.* Hereford.
Reiner, the commander of Reodwald's army, slain in the battle of the Idle, i. 116.
Reiner, an officer of the earl of Mandeville, punishment of his sacrilege, ii. 235, *seq.*
Remigius, or Remi, archbishop of Rouen, sent to Fleury for the relics of S. Benedict, i. 229; his ill-success, 230.
Remigius (bishop), *v.* Dorchester.
Reodwald of East-Anglia (son of Tytillus, i. 86,) protects Eadwin on his expulsion from Deira, 96; kills Aethelfrith of Northumbria in the battle of the Idle, 116; his death, 100 and *note*, 124.
Rheims, council of, ii. 197.
Rheims, archbishops of:
—— Remigius or Remi, transfers his see to Laon, i. 55; consecrates Vedastus first bishop of Arras, 69; his death, 76.
—— Ricobert, deposed by Charles of France, i. 214.
—— Artaud, crowns Louis d'Outremer, i. 391.
—— William, crowns Philip II., ii. 404; confers the cross upon Henry II., 426; is one of the mediators between him and Philip, 442.
—— Henry, one of the commissioners to negotiate a truce with England, iv. 224.
Rhesus, a Welch prince, his head presented to Eadward III., i. 492.
Riburgismonte (? Riblemont, or Remiremont), Anselm de, a crusader, ii. 119.
Ricdritha, queen, dies, i. 246 and *note*.
Richard I. of Normandy, i. 397, retaliates on Saxon travellers the injurious treatment of his daughter by king Aethelred, 427; is reconciled to him by the pope, *ib.*; his death, 430.
Richard II. of Normandy, i. 430, gives an asylum to the family of Aethelred II., 448, 462; his death, 465.
Richard III. of Normandy, i. 465.
Richard, second son of the Conqueror, dies, ii. 25.
Richard, son of Henry I., drowned, ii. 201.
Richard I. of England (third son of Henry II. and Eleanor) born, ii. 287; joins the rebellion of his brother Henry, 369; seizes Saintonge, 376; is reconciled to his father, 382; takes the castle of Taillebourg, 405; refuses homage to his brother Henry, 410; assumes the cross, 426; again alienated from his father, 427; unites with Philip II. in harassing him, 435; does homage to Philip, 438; their joint successes in Normandy, 439; terms obtained for him from his father, 442, *seq.*; his conduct on viewing his father's corpse, 444; his first acts on his accession, iii. 1; orders the release of his mother,

and makes her regent, 2, *seq.*; his acts upon his arrival in England, 3; his coronation, 5, *seqq.*; his bounty to the Cistercians, 8; his expedients for raising money for the crusade, 9; promises to accompany the king of France, 12; reconciles the archbishop of Canterbury and his monks, 13; receives the homage of the Scottish king, 14; passes into Normandy, *ib.*; his agreement with king Philip, 16; his letters patent to his chancellor, 24; appoints statutes and officers for the government of his fleet, *ib.*; meets Philip, 25; hires ships, 26; enters the Tiber, but refuses the pope's invitation, 27; his transactions with the king of Sicily, *ib.*; declares his nephew Arthur his heir, *ib.*; sum paid by him to be released from his engagement to Philip's sister, 28; his reception at Messina, etc., 31, *seq.*; conquers Cyprus, 37; espouses Berengaria, 38; takes a Turkish vessel, 40; joins the army before Acre, 41; his offers to Philip to induce him to remain, 43; takes all the places on the coast, 44; his letter to the archbishop of Rouen, 45; redeems the relics taken by Saladin, 47; his letters home respecting his chancellor, 49; takes Darum, and captures 7000 laden camels, 54, *seq.*; his conduct on discovering the duke of Burgundy's treachery, 56, *seq.*; consults a hermit, 58; raises the siege of Joppa, 59, *seqq.*; gains a great victory, 61, *seqq.*; makes a truce with Saladin, 64; leaves Palestine, 65; travels as a merchant, 66, *seqq.*; is seized by the duke of Austria, 68, and sold to the emperor, 70; answers the accusations of the latter, 72; his ransom, 73; obtains the testimony of the Old Man of the Mountain, 74; is released, 80; crowned at Winchester, 82; pardons his brother John, and raises the siege of Verneuil, *ib.*; takes Loches, 83; expels the French from Touraine, 84; makes a truce with Philip, 85; orders tournaments in England, *ib.*; complains to the pope against the duke of Austria, 86; his treaty and subsequent rupture with Philip, 93, *seq.*; quarrels with the archbishop of Rouen, 95; sends to Rome to state his case, 118; his convention with the archbishop, 119, *seq.*; burns S. Valery, 121; bribes the earl of Flanders, etc., *ib.*; his laws against fraud, 123; is reconciled to his brother Geoffrey, 128; defeats king Philip, 130; orders a thanksgiving, 132; is prevailed upon by the legate to make peace, 133, *seq.*; is mortally wounded, 135; his epitaph, 136; vision and legends respecting him, iv. 234, *seqq.*; anecdotes of his piety, 238.

Richard, second son of king John, born, iii. 220; created earl of Cornwall and Poitou by his brother Henry, and sent into Gascony, iv. 100, *seq.*; routs the earl of La Marche, 102; returns to England, 141; his quarrel and reconciliation with his brother, *ib.*, *seqq.*; marries the countess of Gloucester, 220; becomes a surety for Hubert de Burgh, 258; attends a council at Westminster, 270.

Richard (natural son of king John) puts to death Eustace le Moine, iv. 29, *seq.*

Richard, son of earl Ranulph, a crusader, ii. 76.

Richard (bishops), *v.* Canterbury, Coventry, Hereford, London, and Poitiers.

Riche, Edmund, canon of Salisbury, *v.* Canterbury.

Ricsi of Northumbria, i. 325, dies of a broken heart, 327.

Ricula, sister of Aethelberht of Kent, and mother of Sebert of Essex, i. 105.

Ridel, Geoffrey, (bishop,) *v.* Ely.

Ridel, Stephen, pays a hundred marks for his ransom, iii. 358.

Ritherius, bishop of Verona, writes against the Anthropomorphitæ, i. 402.

Rivaulx, Peter de, (son of Peter, bishop of Winchester, iv. 264,) appointed treasurer by Henry III., 244; receives the custody of the castles throughout England, 264; becomes surety for the king to the earl-marshal, 275; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, 278; joins in a scheme for the destruction of

the earl-marshal, 292; is dismissed by the king, 299; flies to Winchester cathedral, and resumes the tonsure, 312; answers before the king, etc., 313.
Rivers, Baldwin de, banished by king Stephen, ii. 219.
Rivers, Margaret de, wife of Faulkes de Breaute, sues for a divorce, iv. 98.
Robert, duke, (i. 376 and *note*,) becomes sponsor for Rollo, and changes his name to Robert, 377.
Robert I. of Normandy, *v.* Rollo.
Robert II. of Normandy, i. 466; his amour, 469; appoints guardians for his son, and goes to Jerusalem, *ib.*
Robert, eldest son of the Conqueror, ii. 6; is refused Normandy by his father, and joins the French king, 16, 25; wounds his father, 17; inherits Normandy, 29; his duchy invaded by Rufus, etc., 37; his second quarrel with him, 43; assumes the cross, 62; pawns Normandy, 79; joins the grand army, 81; his conduct in the battle of Dorylæum, 87; takes Azena, 90; reconnoitres the passage of the Orontes, 91; feat performed by him before Antioch, 103; repulses an assault, 113; leads the third division in the great sortie, 120; marches upon Jerusalem, 129; is chosen king miraculously, 146 and *note*; his bravery in the battle of Ascalon, 149; deposits the Turkish standard in the church of the Holy Sepulchre, 150; returns to Normandy, 165; his agreement with his brother Henry, 170; gives up his annuity, 172; his duchy invaded by Henry, 175; is taken prisoner, 181; his death and burial, 214.
Robert, archbishop of Canterbury, translated from London, i. 486; banished, and restored, 491.
Robert (bishops), *v.* Exeter and Hereford.
Roche, Funcard de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Rochemont, William de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Roches, Peter des, (bishop,) *v.* Winchester.
Roches, William des, withdraws prince Arthur from the tutelage of Philip II., and delivers him and the city of Le Mans to king John, iii. 142.
Rochester castle besieged, iii. 331; taken, 333, *seqq.*
Rochester, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Justus, Paulinus, Ithamar, Putta, Godmund or Gebmund, Tobias, Ealdulph, Dun, Beornraed, Puthric, Suuithulf, Godwin.]
—— Hernostus, consecrated, ii. 36.
—— Gundulf, ii. 36, 54; sides with archbishop Anselm in his quarrel with Rufus, 48.
—— Ralph, assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, ii. 185; is translated to Canterbury, 191 and *note*; consecrated, 192; consecrates queen Adeliza, 201; dies, 202.
—— Arnulph, dies, ii. 204.
—— John, archdeacon of Canterbury, elected, ii. 205; dies, 220.
—— Asceline, dies, ii. 237.
—— Walter, archdeacon of Canterbury, consecrated, ii. 237; consecrates Bartholomew bishop of Exeter, 290; ordains Becket a priest, 292; is suspended by the pope, 358; dies, 410.
—— Gilbert de Glanville, (archdeacon of Luxeuil,) consecrated, ii. 418; appointed with others to adjudicate respecting the bishop of Coventry, iii. 18; accompanies the chancellor in his flight, 52; appeals against the consecration of the bishop of Ely by the bishop of London, 174; dies, 281.
—— Benedict, present with king John at Runnymede, iii. 302; dies, iv. 138.
—— Henry de Sandfort, archdeacon of Canterbury, consecrated, iv. 141; sent to Rome to oppose the election of Walter de Heynesham, 171; consecrates Richard archbishop of Canterbury and two bishops, 204; his vision respecting Richard I., 234; is sent to make peace with the earl-marshal, 299; dies, 325.
Rockingham castle taken, iv. 65.
Roderick, king of Connaught, withdraws himself to avoid doing homage to Henry II., ii. 366.
Rodoam, prince of Aleppo, kills Bohemond II., ii. 211.

Rodolph, duke of Burgundy, chosen emperor by insurgents, ii. 19; defeated by Henry IV., 20, and slain, 21.
Rodune, William, deputy-marshal, dismissed from his office by Henry III., iv. 263.
Roger, son of [Robert] Guiscard of Apulia, ii. 27.
Roger, master of the Hospital at Jerusalem, accompanies the patriarch on his mission to England, ii. 415.
Roger, lord of the territory taken from the Albigenses, placed in the custody of Simon de Montfort, iii. 270.
Roger (bishops), *v.* York, Coventry, Salisbury, and Worcester.
Rollo (or Robert I., i. 377) a noble Dane, his failure in England, and dream, 364; goes to France, and becomes duke of Normandy, 365; his panic before Chartres, 374; takes Bayeux, and marries Popa, 376; plunders Paris and Evreux, *ib.*; makes peace, marries a French princess, and is baptized by the name of Robert, 377; his indecorous treatment of the king, *ib.*; on becoming a widower, he restores the repudiated Popa, *ib.*; his genealogy, *ib.*; his friendship with Aethelstan, 387 and *note*; dies, 391.
Romanus, pope, i. 366.
Romanus succeeds to the see of Rochester, i. 121.
Romanus, the legate, calls the council of Bourges, iv. 118; his demands on the part of the pope, 120, *seq.*; confesses that he had opposed them when at Rome, 123; proclaims a crusade against the earl of Thoulouse, 124; excommunicates him and his adherents, 129, 132; conceals the French king's death, 133; takes Avignon by treachery, 134; is directed to excite the French against the emperor, 168.
Romscot, its origin and nature, i. 216; S. Alban's monastery alone exempted from its payment, 258.
'Ron,' the name of king Arthur's spear, i. 64.
Roos, William de, his feudal service disputed between Henry II. and Becket, ii. 297.
Roos, Robert de, fined for the loss of a prisoner, iii. 96; confederates against king John, 297; excommunicated, 355; assists in subduing Yorkshire, 379.
Roos, William de, (son of Robert,) excommunicated, iii. 355; taken prisoner, iv. 24.
Ropeley, Robert de, attends king John to Runnymede, iii. 302; excommunicated, 356; assists Gilbert de Gant in reducing Lincolnshire, 379; is taken prisoner, iv. 24.
Rouen, archbishops of:
—— Gildard, his death, i. 70.
—— Romanus, famous for his sanctity and miracles, i. 123.
—— Remigius, *v.* Remigius.
—— Franco, baptizes Rollo, i. 377.
—— William, holds a council at Lillebone, ii. 21.
—— Geoffrey, present at the dedication of S. Alban's, ii. 193.
—— Rotrod, procures the reconciliation of Henry II. and Becket, ii. 355; crowns princess Margaret, 369.
—— Walter de Constantiis, *v.* Lincoln.
Rouen, John dean of, *v.* Worcester.
Roussillon, Gerard de, a crusader, ii. 62, 77, 120.
Roussillon, the count of, and his brothers, crusaders, ii. 76.
Roussillon, Peter de, a crusader, takes Rufa, etc., ii. 90.
Roussillon, Accald de, sent to Thoulouse to demand the Albigenses, iii. 271.
Rouwen, daughter of Hengest, arrives in Britain, i. 11; her marriage with Wyrtgeorne, *ib.*; poisons her stepson Wortemer, and procures the recall of her father, 17.
Rufus, Walter, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Rusci, Alan de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
'Rutupi portus,' the ancient name of Sandwich, i. 74.

S.

Sabinianus, pope, i. 108; his vision and death, 109.
Sables, Robert des, one of the justiciaries of king Richard's fleet, iii. 24, 30.
Sackville, Nigel de, excommunicated by Becket, ii. 360.

Sagitta (la Flèche), Reginald de, a crusader, iii. 22.
S. Alban's, *v.* Alban's, S.
S. Asaph, *v.* Asaph, S.
S. Barbara, William de, dean of York, *v.* Durham.
S. David's, *v.* David's, S.
S. Denis, Robert de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
S. Edmund's, *v.* Edmund's, S.
S. Giles, count of, conspires to intercept Richard I. on his return from the Holy Land, iii. 66.
S. Hilary, Hasculph de, taken prisoner by Henry II., ii. 375.
S. Omer, Godfrey de, one of the founders of the order of Knights Templars, ii. 195.
S. Omer, Hugh de, governor of Tiberias, comes to the aid of Baldwin I., ii. 177.
S. Omer's, a castellan of, sent over to the English barons by prince Louis, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.
S. Paul, Hugh count of, a crusader, ii. 62, 74, 87, 120.
S. Paul, Guy II. count of, one of the French commanders in the battle of Bovines, iii. 291.
S. Paul, Hugh V., count of, absents himself from the coronation of Louis IX., iv. 136; confederates against the count of Champagne, 212.
S. Sabina, Thomas cardinal of, one of the examiners of Walter de Heynesham, iv. 185.
S. Victor, Hugh de, ii. 209.
Saintes, [Henry] archbishop of, sent to Thoulouse to demand the Albigenses, iii. 271.
Saladin, sultan of Damascus, his conquests, ii. 414; prepares to avenge an insult to his mother, 421; his successes, 422; captures the king of Jerusalem and the holy cross, 423; takes Jerusalem, etc., 424; his answer to the emperor Frederic, 430; releases the king of Jerusalem, 432; retires from before Acre, 434; fights a battle near Antioch, iii. 11; his officers and their territories, 22, *seq.*; breaks his engagements with the Christians, 42; defeated near Assur, 45; sells relics to king Richard I., 47; bribes the duke of Burgundy, 56; raises the siege of Joppa, 59; rout of his army, 61, *seqq.*; dies, 75.
Salisbury, bishops of:
—— Osmund, dies, ii. 157.
—— Roger, consecrated, ii. 183; grants land to Wimund the canon, 188; is present at the dedication of S. Alban's, 193; is deprived of his castles by king Stephen, 226; dies, 227.
—— Jocelyn de Baliol, ii. 294; excommunicated by Becket, 314, 334; suspended by the pope, 358; dies, 412.
—— Hubert Walter, *v.* Walter.
—— Herbert Poore, (archdeacon of Canterbury, ii. 384), consecrated, iii. 83.
—— Richard [Poore], dean, and afterwards bishop, *v.* Chichester.
—— Robert de Bingham, canon of, elected, iv. 156; consecrated, 203.
Salisbury, Reginald archdeacon of, one of the embassy to Rome against Becket, ii. 336; elected bishop of Bath, 370; goes again to Rome, 375; dies shortly after his election to the see of Canterbury, iii. 54.
Salisbury, deans of:
—— Robert, *v.* Exeter.
—— John, *v.* Norwich.
—— Eustace, *v.* Ely.
Salisbury, Edmund Riche canon of, *v.* Canterbury.
Salisbury, earls of, *v.* Longespee.
Salisbury, [Idonea] countess of, her conduct to a suitor for her hand, iv. 113.
Salop, Hugh earl of, slain by the Irish, ii. 128.
Salvianus, a priest of Marseilles, i. 36.
Samson, archbishop of York, i. 45 and *note*, 57; becomes subsequently archbishop of Dol, 82, iii. 144.
Samson (second of the name), archbishop of Dol, his sanctity and learning, i. 82.
Samson (bishop), *v.* Worcester.
Sancho VI. of Navarre, his dispute with the king of Castille, ii. 386.
Sancho I. of Portugal takes the town of Silves, ii. 440; hires eighty English crusaders, iii. 29.
Sandfort, Henry de, (bishop,) *v.* Rochester.
Sans-avoir, Walter, (the first crusader,) his expedition, ii. 65; he is slain by Solyman, 69.
Saphadin, brother of Saladin, iii. 22; sends reinforcements to Acre, 40;

murders his nephews, and seizes the empire, etc., 76, *seqq.*; dies, iv. 42.
Savary, P., nominated by Philip II. to treat for peace with king John, iii. 293.
Savary (bishop), *v.* Bath.
Saxony, Henry V. duke of, marries Matilda daughter of Henry II., ii. 312; sends an embassy to Henry, 387; is expelled by the emperor, 410; arrives in England with his family, 412; is restored, 418.
Saxony, Albert I. duke of, visits England, iv. 211.
Scholastica (S.), her body translated from Monte Casino to Le Mans, i. 175.
School, the English, at Rome, built, i. 215; is supported by an annual tribute called 'Romscot,' 216; is destroyed by fire, 272.
Scot, John le, succeeds to the earldom of Chester, iv. 256; meets Henry III. at Westminster, 270; deserts the earl-marshal, 271.
Scot, William le, a clerk of Durham, elected bishop by the monks, but opposed by Henry III., iv. 129; rejected by the pope, 156.
Scotland, *v.* names of the kings.
Scotus, *v.* Johannes, and Marianus.
Sea-fight in the Channel, iv. 28, *seq.*
Sebastian (S.), translation of his remains, i. 181.
Sebba and Sigheri jointly kings of Essex, i. 164.
Sebert of Essex converted, i. 105; his dominion, *ib.*; his death, 113.
Seckington, battle of, i. 233.
Segrave, Stephen de, appointed justiciary by Henry III., iv. 245; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, 278; his conduct on beholding his town in flames, 297; dismissed from his office, 299; takes refuge in S. Mary's, Leicester, 312; answers before the king, 314; makes fine, and is pardoned, 325.
Seinte More, *v.* Seymour.
Seloamir, king of the Abroditæ (or Abodriti, a people of Germany), is expelled by Louis le Débonnaire, and takes refuge with the Danes, i. 272.
Selraed, son of Sigeberht the Good, succeeds Offa of Essex, i. 203 and *note*; his death, 226.
Selsey, bishops of, *v.* Eadberht, Colla, Guthard, Aelfred, Aethelgar, Eadelm, Ordbriht, Ealmar, Aethelric, Grinketel, Hecca.
Sens, William archbishop of, prohibits the reconciliation of Henry II. and Becket without his knowledge, ii. 333; is present at the same, 355; ordered to put down the heresy of Peter Lombard, 400.
Sensabolus, son of Accianus, delivers his fortress to Kerboga, ii. 111.
Seraph, son of Saphadin, engages in a war against the eastern Saracens, iv. 74.
Sergius I., pope, i. 181; baptizes Ceadwalla, and gives him the name of Peter, 183; orders Alhfrith of Northumbria to reinstate archbishop Wilfrid, 186; discovers a great portion of the cross in the sacrarium of S. Peter's, 188; sends Wilbrord to Frisia, 189; his letter to abbot Ceolfrith, 221.
Sergius II. (or Pelagius), pope, i. 282.
Sergius III., pope, i. 371.
Sergius IV., pope, i. 438.
Sergius, an apostate monk, the instructor of Mahomet, iv. 43.
Severinus, pope, i. 136.
Severus, bishop of Trèves, a disciple of Lupus, aids Germanus against the Pelagians, i. 9.
Severus, priest, *v.* Germanus.
Sexburga, daughter of Anna of East-Anglia and wife of Earconberht of Kent, i. 137.
Sexburga, wife of Ini of Wessex, i. 216.
Sexburh, widow of Cynewealh, continues the government, but is expelled by the nobles, i. 162.
Sexred and Siward, sons of Sebert of Essex, restore idolatry, i. 113; are refused the eucharist by Mellitus, *ib.*, whom they expel, 114; are slain by Cynegils and Cuichelm, *ib.* 124.
Sexwulf, bishop of Mercia and the Mid-Angles, founder of Medeshamstede, loses part of his diocese, i. 164.
Seymour, Hugh de, incites prince Henry against his father (Henry II.), ii. 367.
Shaftesbury built, *Pref.* xii.
Sherborne, bishops of, *v.* Aldhelm, Forther, Wilberht, Castan, Wiberht, Aethelstan, Sighelm, Aethelwald,

Eahlstan, Hamund, Aethelheah, Asser, Suuithelm, Aethelwald, Werstan, Aethelbald, Aelfred, Wlsi or Wlstan, Beorhtric, Elmar, Herman.
Shrewsbury burned by Richard Marshal and Llewellyn, iv. 291.
Sibylla, sister of Baldwin IV. of Jerusalem, widow of William marquis of Mont-Ferrat, and wife of Guy de Lusignan, ii. 414; her coronation, and conjugal fidelity, 420, *seq.*; death, iii. 46.
Sichelin, king of Norway, bequeaths his throne to his nephew Loth, i. 70.
Sicily, William king of, his conquests, and reconciliation with the pope, ii. 284.
Sicily, Tancred king of, satisfies the claims of Richard I., iii. 27; dies, 89.
Sicily, Frederic king of, *v.* Frederic II., emperor.
Sideman, abbot of Exeter, i. 412.
Siferth, a Welch king, i. 415.
Sifred of Kent, *v.* Withred.
Sifred (bishop), *v.* Chichester.
Sigan, the murderer of Alfwold of Northumbria, i. 247.
Sigar, bishop of Wells, i. 424; dies, 430.
Sigeberht the Little, son of Siward, succeeds to the throne of Essex, i. 124.
Sigeberht II. of Essex, his baptism, i. 143; sends to Oswiu for instructors, *ib.*; dies by violence, *ib.*
Sigeberht of East-Anglia succeeds his brother Eorpwald, i. 135; becomes a monk, and makes Egric his successor, 136; is forcibly placed at their head by the East-Angles, and slain in battle by Penda, 148.
Sigeberht of Wessex succeeds his kinsman Cuthred, i. 233; his tyrannical conduct, *ib.*; his deposition and death, 234.
Sigeberht, brother of Clovis II., governs Austria, i. 141.
Sigebert of Gemblours finishes his chronicle, ii. 157 and *note*, 166.
Sigeferth, a Northumbrian earl, put to death by Eadric Streona, i. 451.
Sighelm, bishop of Sherborne, slain by the Danes, i. 278.
Sigheri, king of Essex, his death, i. 176.
Sigifred, archbishop of Mayence, crowns Rodolph of Burgundy, ii. 19.
Sigillo, or Seale, Robert de, (bishop,) *v.* London.
Sihtric of Northumbria becomes a Christian, i. 385, and marries Eadgitha, sister of king Aethelstan, 369, 385; relapses, repudiates his wife, and dies miserably, 385, *seq.*
Silverius, pope, i. 66.
Silves, in Portugal, taken by some crusaders, ii. 440.
Silvester II., (Gerbert,) legend of, i. 431.
Silvester (called the third), pope, i. 484.
Silvester (bishop), *v.* Worcester.
Simon, earl, present in the battle of Lincoln, ii. 229; surrenders to the French king, 372.
Simon (bishop), *v.* Worcester.
Simon (abbot), *v.* Alban's, S.
Simplicius, pope, i. 36.
Siricius, archbishop of Canterbury, i. 427; advises the payment of Danegeld, *ib.*; his death, 437.
Siricius, bishop of Ramsbury, i. 495.
Sisinnius, pope, i. 200.
Siward, son of Sebert of Essex, *v.* Sexred.
Siward, vicar of archbishop Eadsius, i. 483; his death, 486.
Siward, earl of Northumbria, expels Macbeth of Scotland, i. 493; dies, *ib.*
Siward, earl, taken prisoner by the Conqueror, ii. 8, *seq.*
Siward, Richard, his apprehension ordered by Henry III., iv. 270; joins the confederated barons, 271; lies in wait for the foreign mercenaries, 282; wastes the possessions of the king's brother, and of his ministers, 290; burns Alcmundbury, 297; again ravages the lands of the ministers, 308; is reconciled to the king, 310.
Siward, Thomas, taken prisoner by the royalists in the battle of Monmouth, iv. 282.
Sledda, son of Earconwine, succeeds his father in Essex, i. 93; marries a daughter of Eormenric of Kent, 94.
Soceinni or Soteini, Gerard de, employed by king John against his barons, iii. 331; marches with him towards the north, 348.

Solomon, king of Britanny, i. 130.
Solomon, governor of Cilicia, captured by Noureddin, ii. 313.
Solyman, Sultan, destroys the army of Peter the Hermit and of Sans-avoir, ii. 69; marches to the relief of Nice, 82; is repulsed, 83; his wife and two sons taken prisoners, 85; is routed at Dorylæum, 86; goes to the aid of Kerboga, 122.
Spain ravaged by the Moors, iii. 89.
Sprea, Thomas de, a crusader, ii. 63.
Stagno, William de, an attendant upon Richard I. in Germany, iii. 68.
Standard, battle of the, ii. 222.
Standford-Bridge, battle of, i. 514.
Stephen II., pope, i. 231.
Stephen III., pope, *v.* Adrian I.
Stephen IV., pope, i. 272.
Stephen VI., pope, i. 365.
Stephen VII., pope, i. 388.
Stephen VIII., pope, i. 392.
Stephen, (king,) son of Stephen count of Blois, does homage to the empress Maud, ii. 207; is crowned, 216; his alliance with David I., 218; rumour of his death, and its consequences, 219; his acts in Normandy, 220; besieges Bedford castle, 221; ravages Scotland, 222, 225; his conduct to the bishops of Salisbury and Lincoln, 226; banishes the bishop of Ely, 227; lays siege to Lincoln, *ib.*; is taken prisoner, 229; released, 230; put to flight at Winchester, 231, and *note*; takes Oxford castle, 232; captures William de Mandeville, 233; again besieges Lincoln, 235; takes Faringdon, 236; imprisons the earl of Chester, *ib.*; allows the monks of S. Alban's to elect an abbot, 249; rases the castle of Crowmarsh, 254; acknowledges Henry of Normandy as his heir, 255; his death and burial, 272.
Stephen, king of Hungary, protects the children of Eâdmund Iron-side, i. 462 and *note*.
Stephen, the pope's nuncio, arrives in England to collect the tithes promised to the pope, iv. 198; his proceedings in the council at Westminster, 200, *seq.*, and grievous exaction of the tithes, 202.
Stigand, his simony, i. 476; becomes bishop of Elmham, 483; of Winchester, 484; and archbishop of Canterbury, 492; is suspended, 503; flies to Scotland, ii. 7; is deposed, 8; he purchased the three sees, *ib.*
Stodham, William de, one of the knights entrusted with the defence of Belvoir castle, iii. 350.
Stonehenge, account of its origin, i. 44.
Storms, i. 266; ii. 215, 367; iii. 167, 210; iv. 82, 171, 208, 258, 266.
Streneshalh, council of, i. 157.
Stuph, a nephew of Cerdic, arrives in Britain, i. 60.
Stuteville, Nicholas de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355, 357.
Suabia, Philip duke of, his station before Acre, iii. 21; his election as king of Germany annulled, and himself excommunicated, 142; harasses Otho, 146.
Suabia, Henry duke of, sent by the emperor Otho to king John for money, iii. 225.
'Surda-valle,' Robert de, a crusader, ii. 76.
Sussex, rise of the kingdom of, i. 49; united to Wessex, 94.
Sutton (Sutuna), Alexander de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 357.
Sweyn, king of Denmark, ravages the south of England, i. 429; his forbearance purchased by Aethelred II., *ib.*; his second invasion, and receipt of a further sum, 437; procures a settlement for his countrymen, and goes back to Denmark, 441; returns to England, to avenge their massacre, 445; leaves the fleet in charge of Cnut, and subjugates the north, 446; devastates the south, and orders all males to be slain, *ib.*; is checked at London, 447; plunders Wallingford and Bath, receives the submission of the nobles, and assumes the title of king of England, 447; his death, 449.
Sweyn, son of Cnut, i. 462; made king of Norway by his father, 472.
Sweyn, eldest son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489; is excepted from the amnesty granted to his family, and frozen to death on a pilgrimage, 491.

Sweyn, a Danish prince, his army destroyed by the Turks, ii. 95 and *note*.
Suuithelm, bishop of Sherborne, carried king Aelfred's alms to S. Thomas in India, and brought back many precious stones, i. 336.
Suuithelm, son of Sexbald, becomes king of Essex, i. 143; his baptism, *ib.*
Suuithraed, king of Essex, i. 226 and *note*; expelled by Ecgberht of Wessex, 276.
Suuithulf, bishop of Rochester, one of the guardians of the realm, i. 363.
Swithune (S.), bishop of Winchester, orders weekly prayers to be offered for king Aetheluulf and the other parties to the royal charter, i. 289; his miracle, 296; orders his body to be buried without the church, 297; his translation, 413.
Symmachus, history of, after his election to the papal see, i. 55, *seq.*
Symmachus the patrician, father-in-law of Boetius, and his fellow-labourer in his translations from the Greek, i. 55.
Syria invaded by the Romans, who kill 200,000 Saracens, i. 196.

T.

Tabari, Hugh de, a crusader, iii. 21.
Tacinus, a minister of Alexius, receives the surrender of Nice, ii. 86; deserts the crusaders, 95.
Tadfrith, a bishop who died before the confirmation of his election, and had been a monk of Strenes-halh, i. 172.
Talbot, William, holds Hereford castle against king Stephen, ii. 222.
Talbot, William, arrests Geoffrey archdeacon of Norwich, iii. 229.
Tancarville, William de, chamberlain of Henry I., captures the earl of Meulant and his associates, ii. 204; deserts Henry II. and goes over to the young king, 371.
Tancred, king of Sicily, *v.* Sicily.
Tancred, son of marquis William, joins Bohemond the crusader, ii. 76; takes Maunstra, etc., 90; makes a sally from Antioch, 113; rescues Bohemond, 122; pursues the fugitives, 124; marches upon Jerusalem, 129; discovers the bribery of Raymond, 131; his station in the siege, 134; plunders the Temple, 142; receives the government of Tiberias and Caypha, 151; surrenders them, and governs Antioch, 168; takes Appamia and Laodicea, 178; obtains the government of Edessa, 180; dies, 190.
Tannis taken, iv. 60.
Tatwin, archbishop of Canterbury, receives his pall, and ordains two bishops, i. 219; dies, 224.
Taxes, *v.* Holy Land.
Templars, origin of the order of, i. 118; their history, ii. 195.
Thacaldin, brother of Saladin, mortally wounded, iii. 12.
Thacun, Hugh, sent by prince Louis to encourage the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.
Thadioceus, archbishop of York, flies from the Saxons into Wales, i. 90.
Thaneo, Peter de, a collector of taxes, iv. 253.
Theban legion, martyrdom of, *Pref.* xiv.
Thelesphorus, pope, directs 'Gloria in excelsis' to be used only on the festival of Christmas, i. 56.
Theobald, son of Theobald of Flanders, marries a daughter of Louis VII., ii. 221.
Theobald, abbot of Bec, *v.* Canterbury.
Theodebert, with Theodoric, succeeds his father Childebert, i. 100.
Theodin, one of the legates who absolve Henry II., ii. 368; prevails on him to allow elections to the vacant sees, 370.
Theodora, wife of the emperor Justinian, sent by him to pope Vigilius to procure the restoration of Anthymus, i. 78.
Theodore, pope, i. 136.
Theodore II., pope, i. 366.
Theodore made archbishop of Canterbury by pope Vitalianus, i. 160; degrades Cedda, and confirms the election of Wilfrid, *ib.*; calls a council at Hertford, 162; deposes Winfrid, and consecrates Sexwulf in his place, 164; makes Earconwald bishop of London, *ib.*; consecrates five bishops, 168; reconciles Ecgfrith of Northumbria and Ae-

thelred of Mercia, by paying the weregild of Aescwini, 170; his profession of faith in the council of Heathfield, 172; his death, 184, and epitaph, 185.
Theodore, bishop of Cyria, i. 35.
Theodore, his heresy condemned, i. 78.
Theodoric, king of the Goths, ravages Macedonia and Thessaly, and occupies Italy, i. 39; decides between Symmachus and Lawrence, 55; puts Boetius to death, 65.
Theodoric, king of Bernicia, length of his reign, i. 86.
Theodoric, with Theodebert, succeeds his father Childebert, i. 100.
Theodoric III. king of the Franks, i. 175.
Theodoric, abbot, becomes famous in France, i. 70.
Theodoric, a German duke, defeated in Flanders, ii. 209.
Theodoric, master of the Templars, escapes from the battle of Tiberias, ii. 423.
Theodorus (or Theodosius) III., emperor, his brief reign, i. 211.
Theodred, bishop of London, i. 365.
Theodred, a Saxon admiral, i. 428.
Theodulphus, abbot, becomes celebrated in France, i. 70.
Theodwald, king of Bernicia, i. 84.
Theoneus (archbishop), *v.* London.
Theoney, Ralph de, builds a monastery for the Cistercians, iv. 156; is appointed a captain of the Poitevin mercenaries, 279.
Theoney, Roger de, and his brother, legend respecting, iv. 155.
Theophilus the apostate, i. 71.
Theophilus (bishop), *v.* Worcester.
Thetford, see of, removed to Norwich, ii. 45.
Thomas (archbishops), *v.* York.
Thomas, bishop of Dunwich, i. 144.
Thomas, a monk of Coventry, his conversation with pope Celestine, iii. 127.
'Thomas Ateranensis,' (Acerra or Arras?) count, regent of the empire in the absence of Frederic II., restores to the Turks the spoil taken from them by the Templars, iv. 167; his letter to the emperor, 182.
Thoros, prince of Armenia, taken prisoner by Noureddin, ii. 313.
Thoulouse summoned to surrender its Albigeesian inhabitants, iii. 270, *seq.*: besieged by the dauphin, iv. 62.
Thoulouse, Bertrand count of, takes Biblum, and is made governor of Tripoli, ii. 187.
Thoulouse, Raymond VI. count of, joins the Albigenses, iii. 272.
Thoulouse, Raymond VII. count of, his proceedings in the council of Bourges with respect to his inheritance, iv. 119; harasses the besiegers of Avignon, 131; surprises the French army, 169; his cruelty to his prisoners, 170.
Thrum, the murderer of S. Aelfeah, i. 440.
Thunder in winter, rustic proverb respecting, iv. 279.
Thuner, the murderer of SS. Aethelberht and Aethelred, i. 149.
Tiberias, battle of, ii. 423.
Tiberius (emperor) stops a famine at Rome by importing Egyptian corn, i. 85; succeeds to the empire, *ib.*; is blessed by God for his liberality, *ib.*; dies mad, 88.
Tiberius, son of Justinian II., put to death by Philippicus, i. 206.
Tidferth, bishop of Dunwich, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.
Tilberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 244.
Tobias, bishop of Rochester, his proficiency in the learned tongues, i. 188; his death, 214.
Tocce (? Tacy), Iterius de, arrives in the Holy Land, iv. 44.
Toledo, council of, i. 96.
Toledo, predictions by the astronomers of, respecting the recovery of the Holy Land, iv. 180; and previously regarding its loss, 194.
Tonher, a soldier murdered with king Oswin, i. 145.
Tosti, son of earl Godwin, banished, i. 489; restored, 491; made earl of Northumbria, 494; visits Rome, 502; assists Harold against the Welch, 503; assaults him, 507; his horrid revenge, 508; is banished by both king and people, *ib.*; takes refuge in Flanders, 509; makes a descent in the north, and is repulsed by Eadwin and Morchar, 513; joins Harold Harvagre, and drives Morchar into York, 514; is slain at Standford-Bridge, *ib.*

Totila, king of the Ostrogoths, persecutes S. Benet, i. 72; beheads Herculianus, bishop of Perugia, 76.
Totta, first bishop of Leicester, i. 225, 239.
Toul, Reginald count of, a crusader, ii. 74, 120.
Tours, archbishops of:
—— Gregory, i. 84, 99.
—— Bartholomew, consecrates Geoffrey archbishop of York, iii. 38.
Tours, G. archdeacon of, appointed to treat for peace with king John, iii. 293.
Tours, Stephen de, seneschal of Anjou, burns the city of Le Mans, ii. 439; surrenders the castles, etc., in his custody to Richard I., iii. 1.
Tours, Amfrid de, a crusader, iii. 22.
Tours and Dol, disputes between the churches of, iii. 143.
Tracy, William de, one of the murderers of Becket, ii. 360.
Trehelbi, king of Bulgaria, assists Justinian II. to recover his throne, i. 200.
Trent, battle of the, i. 170.
Tresmes, Otho de, a crusader, iii. 21.
Trèves, William archbishop of, sends an embassy to Henry II., ii. 387.
Trie, Cedunal de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Triers, Aim, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Trumwine, a bishop among the Picts, i. 168.
Tuda, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 159.
Tuintune, William de, excommunicated, iii. 356.
Tunberht, bishop of Hagustaldt, i. 168.
Tunberht (or Tunfrith, i. 387), bishop of Lichfield, 324, dies, 387.
Tunher, abbot of 'Ingetlingum,' afterwards bishop of Lichfield, i. 154.
Turenne, —— vicomte de, a crusader, iii. 21.
Turketel leads the flight at the battle of Ipswich, i. 438; is made earl of East-Anglia by Cnut, 460; is banished, 465, and put to death in Denmark, *ib.*
Turnham, Robert de, surrenders to king John the treasure and castles in his custody, iii. 137.
Turpin, Guy, abbot, appointed by Philip II. to treat for peace with king John, iii. 293.
Turstan (archbishop), *v.* York.
Turstin, abbot of Glastonbury, his cruelty, ii. 20.
Twenge, Robert de, leader (under the name of William Wither) of the insurrection against the Italian clergy, iv. 241; justifies his conduct before the king, and receives testimonials from him to the pope, 242.
Tyre taken by the Christians, ii. 204.
Tyre, William archbishop of, legate to the West respecting the crusade, ii. 426.
Tyrel, Walter, kills William Rufus accidentally, ii. 157.
Tytillus, son of Uffa, succeeds him in East-Anglia, i. 86.

U.

Uffa, king of East-Anglia, i. 84; his death, 86.
'Uffingas,' who so called, and why, i. 86.
Uffrea, a son of Eadwin of Northumbria, flies to Kent on his father's death, i. 133.
Ulecotes, Philip de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237; appointed one of the governors of the country north of the Tees, 352; defends his castle against the Scots, 379.
Ulf, a Swedish king, slain by earl Godwin, i. 466.
Ulf, bishop of Dorchester, i. 487; banished, 491.
Ulm, Henry d', taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.
Ultanus, a brother of S. Furseus, follows him into France, i. 142.
Unnust, king of the Picts, dies, i. 236.
Unwona, fourth bishop of Leicester, i. 239; present at the invention of S. Alban, *ib.* 252.
Urban II., pope, ii. 35; consecrates Ivo of Beauvais to the see of Chartres, 43; excommunicates Philip I., 58; his sermon on the crusades, *ib.*, and death, 166.
Urban III. pope, allows the archbishop of Canterbury to build a church, ii. 419; revokes his permission, 425; dies, 426.
Urban (bishops), *v.* Glamorgan, and Llandaff.

Usurer, death of an, iv. 206.
Uther-pendragon, third son of king Constantine, educated in part by Guithelinus, and partly in Britanny, *Pref.* xxiii.; arrives in Britain, i. 34; brings the stones of the 'Chorea Gigantum' from Ireland, 45; slays the Irish king Gilloman and Pascentius in a battle in Wales, 52; consults astrologers respecting a singular atmospheric phenomenon, *ib.*; is crowned at Winchester, 53; origin and signification of his name, *ib.*; holds a solemn festival at Easter, 54; becomes enamoured of Igerna, wife of duke Gorlois, *ib.*; consequences of this attachment, *ib.*; his reverses during his last illness, 57; causes himself to be carried to battle in a litter; 59; is poisoned by the Saxons and buried at Stonehenge, 61.

V.

Valencel, Ralph de, a French prisoner, iii. 132.
Valentinus, pope, i. 275.
Valery (S.), his remains translated, iii. 121.
Vedastus (S.) consecrated first bishop of Arras, i. 69.
Vendolio, Clarenbald de, persecutes the German Jews, ii. 72; is released from captivity, 75.
Venedotia, the ancient name of North Wales, i. 91.
Venice, Michael doge of, blockades Tyre by sea, ii. 204.
Vere, Aubrey de, earl of Oxford, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.
Vere, Robert de, one of the confederacy against king John, iii. 297; excommunicated, 355.
Vere, William de, (bishop,) *v.* Hereford.
Vescy, Eustace de, (son-in-law of king William of Scotland, iii. 383,) sent on a mission to Scotland, 137; flies thither from king John, 240; joins the confederated barons, 297; is excommunicated, 355, and slain, 383.
Victor II., pope, i. 493.
Victor III., pope, (known previously as Desiderius, abbot of Monte-Casino,) ii. 22, 27.
Victorinus writes the Paschal cycle of 532 years, i. 22.
Vieuxpont, Ivo de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.
Vieuxpont, Robert de, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237, and against the barons, 301; appointed one of the governors of Yorkshire, 353; is present at the siege of Montsorel, iv. 14; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; continues to plunder after the proclamation of peace, 34; surrenders the custody of his castles to Henry III., 93.
Vigilius, pope, i. 67; educates and knights Gawaine, nephew of king Arthur, 70; is banished by Justinian for refusing to restore Anthymus, 77; his answer to the emperor, 78.
Vitalianus, pope, receives an embroidered pall from the emperor Constans, i. 160; appoints Theodore to the see of Canterbury, *ib.*
Vitré, Andrew de, refuses to do homage to Henry III., iv. 210.
Vitriaco, Jacobus de, *v.* Acre.
Vivian, one of the legates sent to reconcile Henry II. and Becket, ii. 333.
Vortigern, *v.* Wyrtgeorne.
Vortimer, *v.* Wortemer.
Vortipore, successor of Conanus, obtains several victories over the Saxons, i. 86; his death, 87.

W.

Wade, his rebellion against Eardulf of Northumbria, i. 265.
Walcher (bishop), *v.* Durham.
Waleran, the crusader, taken prisoner, ii. 202.
'Walerannus Teutonicus' surrenders Berkhampstead castle to prince Louis, iv. 6; deprived of a manor by the earl of Cornwall, 141.
Wales occupied by the Britons, i. 89; impracticable character of the country, 91.
Walkelin surrenders Dover castle to queen Matilda, ii. 222.
Walkelin (bishop), *v.* Winchester.
Wallangardum (? Val du Gardon), Theobald de, a French prisoner, iii. 131.
Walo, a legate sent by the pope to

deter prince Louis from invading England, iii. 363; expostulates with him and with his father, 365; follows him to England, 369; excommunicates him and Simon Langton, 370; levies an ecclesiastical tax, and confiscates the benefices of the adherents of Louis, 379; present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1; accompanies the army to the relief of Lincoln, 18; again excommunicates Louis, and absolves the royal army, 19; assists in effecting a peace, 30; absolves Louis, 32; his conduct to the clerical adherents of the barons, 33; procures the election of Richard de Marsh to the see of Durham, 46; mediates between the king and the earl of Albemarle, 67.

Walter, archdeacon of Oxford, brings a British history from Britanny, i. 184 and *note*.

Walter, bishop of Hereford, i. 496 and *note*; consecrated at Rome, i. 502.

Walter, Hubert dean of York, elected archbishop, but expelled by the ministers of archbishop Geoffrey, iii. 2; receives the bishopric of Salisbury, 9; consecrated, 13; lands at Tyre, 30; executes the will of archbishop Baldwin, 34; elected archbishop of Canterbury, and made justiciary, 79, *seq.*; appointed legate, 90; is ordered by the pope to promote the crusade, 91; procures laws to be enacted against fraud, 123; ejects the clerks from Coventry, and restores the monks, 127; consecrates two bishops, 128; discharged from the office of justiciary, 129; compelled to raze a church built by him at Lambeth, 134, *seq.*; deputed by king John to receive the fealty of the English barons, 137; consecrates William bishop of London, and crowns John, 139; again crowns him, and queen Isabella, 155; assists at the funeral of Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 162; emulates the king's munificence, 165; his severity in collecting the ecclesiastical tax, 173; is taken ill, 174; prohibits John's expedition to Normandy, 182; dies, 183.

Walter, chamberlain of Philip II. of France, taken prisoner by the Turks, iv. 54.

Walter, a preaching friar, celebrates mass in the suburbs of Jerusalem, iv. 197; excommunicates the emperor, 199.

Walter (bishops), *v.* Coventry, and Rochester.

Waltham, Ralph, canon of Chichester, made prior of, ii. 387.

Waltheof, earl, flies to Scotland, ii. 2, 5; joins the Danish invaders, 6; his prowess at York, 7; is imprisoned for conspiracy, 15, and beheaded, 16.

Walwyn, *v.* Gawaine.

Wandregisilus, or Wandrille, (S.) born, i. 84.

Warewast, William de, ransacks the baggage of archbishop Anselm, ii. 48; acts as proctor of Henry I. at the papal court, 172; interdicts the return of Anselm, 176.

Warneville, Ralph de, sacristan of Rouen and treasurer of York, made chancellor of England, ii. 370.

Warrenne, William earl of, one of king John's sureties that he will observe his compact with the pope, iii. 249, and a witness of his submission, 254; adheres to him against the barons, 300; is present at Runnymede, 302; deserts to Louis, 369; makes his submission to Henry III., iv. 12; receives the wardship of the wife of Faulkes de Breaute, 99; protects de Breaute in his access to the coast, 103; joins the earl of Cornwall against the king, 143; becomes a surety for Hubert de Burgh, 258.

Warwick, Gimdreda, countess of, delivers her castle to Henry of Normandy, ii. 254.

Warwick, William earl of, confederates with the earl of Cornwall against Henry III., iv. 143.

Wascuil, Gilbert de, delivers Gisors to Philip II., iii. 79.

Wastold, bishop of Hereford, i. 224.

Weiss, (or Wiche,) George count of, one of the captors of Alcaçar do Sal, iv. 34; assists in covering the retreat of the Christians at Damietta, 54.

Wells, bishops of:

[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Eadulf, Athelm, Wulfhelm, Elfeh, Beorhthelm, Cynewald, Sigar, Alfwine, Duduc, Gisa.]

Wells, John, bishop of, removes his see to Bath, ii. 42; dies, 202.
Wells, *v.* Bath.
Wells, Hugh archdeacon of, *v.* Lincoln.
Wells, Jocelyn of, (bishop,) *v.* Bath.
Wendene (or Wendover), Richard de, elected bishop of Rochester, but rejected by the archbishop, iv. 325.
Wenunwen, king of Wales, defeated, iii. 129.
Werburgh (S.), daughter of Wulfheri of Mercia and Ermenhilda, her history, i. 166.
Wereberht, third bishop of Leicester, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238; dies, 239.
Wereberht, bishop of Leicester, one of the instructors of king Aelfred, i. 324.
Weremund, bishop of Worcester, i. 205, 264.
Weremund, bishop of Dunwich, dies, i. 315.
Werstan, bishop of Crediton, his jurisdiction, i. 372.
Werstan, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 382.
Wessex, the kingdom of, founded, i. 50; receives the addition of Sussex, 94; increases in power on the death of Aethelbald of Mercia, 233; invaded by the Danes, 248; consort of the king of, not allowed to sit on the throne, or to bear the title of 'Queen,' 291.
Westminster, William abbot of, degraded, iii. 274.
Westminster, councils at, iii. 32; iv. 114, 123, 200.
Westminster Hall, first court held in, ii. 156.
Westwood abbey founded, ii. 388.
Whiterne, bishops of, *v.* Pecthelm, Frithewold, Pechtwine, Aethelberht, Baldulf.
Wibba, son of Credda, succeeds his father in Mercia, i. 94; dies, 96.
Wiberht, bishop of Sherborne, accompanies archbishop Wilfrid to Rome, i. 272.
Wibert (S.), founder of the abbey of Gemblours, dies, i. 410.
Wicta, bishop of Lichfield, i. 225.
Wiglaf of Mercia banished by Ecgberht of Wessex, i. 276; is restored on condition of paying tribute, 277.
Wihard, a noble sent by Ecgberht of Wessex to subdue Kent, i. 276.
Wihtgar, nephew of Cerdic, arrives in Britain, i. 60; dies prince of the Isle of Wight, 76; the place of his burial (Withgarus-berith) named after him, *ib.*
Wilberht, bishop of Sherborne, dies, i. 244 and *note.*
Wilbrord leaves England with twelve companions, and goes to France, i. 185; his mission to Frisia, 189; is made bishop of Utrecht, *ib.*
Wilferth, bishop of Worcester, i. 384; dies, 388.
Wilfric (S.), life of, ii. 274, *seqq.*
Wilfrid (a monk of Streneshalh, i. 172) receives the tonsure at Leyden, 156; is consecrated abbot of Ripon, *ib.*; his arguments in the council of Streneshalh, 158; goes to France for consecration as archbishop of York, 159; is present at the council of Hertford, 162; expelled by Ecgfrith, 167; embarks for Rome, but is driven to Frisia, 168; converts the people there, *ib.*; clears himself at Rome, 169; returns to England, converts the South-Saxons, and sends a mission to the Isle of Wight, *ib.*; builds a monastery at Selsey, 204; is restored by Alhfrid, 169; miracle performed by him, *ib.*; gives benediction to S. Etheldrith, 171; is accused to Alhfrid, and again expelled, 186; is again declared innocent, *ib.*; his vision while in France, *ib.*; is restored by Osred, 187; dies, *ib.*, 205, and is buried at Ripon, 187.
Wilfrid, bishop of Worcester, i. 205, 224.
Wilfrid (the younger, i. 227), bishop of Beverley, 213, was archbishop of York at the death of Beda, 224; dies, 227.
Wilfrid, archbishop of Canterbury, his election and confirmation, i. 270; visits Rome, 272; his death, 277.
Willegod, first abbot of S. Alban's, i. 257.
William I. of Normandy, son of Rollo, i. 376, 391; assassinated, 397.
William the Conqueror, (II. of Normandy and I. of England,) his birth, i. 468; visits Eadward the Confessor, 487; releases Harold,

receives his assurance of future support, and promises him one of his daughters, 501; expostulates with him on the breach of his engagement, 515; prepares to invade England, 516; lands at Hastings, *ib.*; his generosity to Harold's spies, 517, and proposals to himself, 518; his conduct in the battle of Hastings, 520; grants Harold's body to his mother, 521; his coronation, ii. 1; carries his English hostages to Normandy, 2, 5; takes Exeter, burns York, and subdues the Scots, 4; avenges the death of the earl of Northumbria, 6; defeats the Danes and the English exiles, 7; receives the submission of Eadgar Aetheling, *ib.*; subjects the churches to military service, *ib.*; captures the insurgents in the Isle of Ely, and invades Scotland, 9; conquers Maine, 13; defeats a conspiracy, 15; orders the widow of the Confessor to be buried with her husband, 16; makes peace with France, *ib.*; is wounded by his son Robert, 17; subdues Wales, 20; imprisons Odo, *ib.*; attends the council of Lillebone, 21; orders a general survey of England, 22; knights his son Henry, 23; his extortions and severity, *ib.*; builds Battle abbey, and S. Stephen's at Caen, 25; his family, *ib.*; character of his youth, 26; appoints three of his chaplains bishops, 27; burns the town of Mantes, 29; his last illness, testament, and death, *ib.*; his prophecy respecting his son Henry, 182.

William II. (Rufus), second son of the Conqueror, ii. 6; is wounded at Gerberai, 17; leaves his father's death-bed, and hastens to England, 30; his coronation, 31; conspiracy against him, *ib.*; his proceedings against the rebels, 33, and conduct to the clergy, 37; invades Normandy, and represses the Scottish irruptions, *ib.*; falls ill, and repents his conduct to the church, but relapses on his recovery, 41; extorts 500 pounds from the bishop of Lincoln, 42; assists Duncan of Scotland to obtain his throne, *ib.*; rebuilds Carlisle, *ib.*; his acts in Normandy, 43; returns to England, 44; sends his brother Henry to Normandy, to continue the war, 45 and *note*; seizes Robert de Mowbray and his family, 46; ravages Wales, *ib.*; his extortionate demand upon archbishop Anselm, 47; confiscates his property, 49; his heavy taxation of the English, 128; his first court in Westminster Hall, 156; his expedition to Maine, *ib.*; gives the bishopric of Durham to Ralph Flambard, *ib.*; his death, *ib.*; portents which preceded it, 158, *seq.*; his character, 160.

William, king of Scotland, ravages the north of England, ii. 373; is taken prisoner, 379; terms of his release, 383; receives the earldom of Huntingdon, 418; does homage to Richard I., iii. 14; is present at his second coronation, 82; receives friendly assurances from king John, 137; is directed to meet him at Lincoln, 155; does him homage, 161; assists in carrying the corpse of Hugh bishop of Lincoln, 162; purchases a peace from king John, 226.

William, king of Sicily, *v.* Sicily.

William, bishop of London, i. 487; banished, 491.

William (bishops), *v.* York, Exeter, Norwich, and Worcester.

William the Carpenter, [viscount of Melun,] his cruelty to the German Jews, ii. 72; is released from captivity, 75; deserts the crusaders at Antioch, 113.

William, prince, son of Henry I. of England, receives the homage of the nobility, ii. 192; is drowned, 201.

William, son of Robert of Normandy, commands the van in the battle of Brenville, ii. 198; becomes count of Flanders, and puts to death the murderers of his predecessor, 207; defeats duke Theodoric, 209; dies, *ib.*

William, third son of Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Maud, born, ii. 220.

William, eldest son of Henry II., born, ii. 255.

William, brother of Tancred the crusader, slain, ii. 88.

William, son of Henry V. of Saxony, born, ii. 412.

William, an Englishman, builds a

chapel at Acre, and is made its prior, iii. 22.
Wilred, bishop of Elmham, i. 315.
Wilton, *v.* Ramsbury.
Wimbledon, battle of, i. 83.
Wimes, W. de, one of the French auxiliaries of the English barons, iii. 360; excommunicated, 362.
Wimund, archbishop of York, i. 277; dies, 288.
Wimund, founder of a house for regular canons at Oxford, ii. 188.
Wimund (bishop), *v.* Man.
Wina, bishop of Winchester, consecrates Cedda archbishop of York, i. 159; on his expulsion by Cynewealh, he purchases the see of London, 160.
Winchester (Kaergueint) built, *Pref.* xii.
Winchester, earl of, *v.* Quenci.
Winchester, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Hedda, Wina, Daniel, Humphrey, Cynehard, Aethelhard, Herefrith, Eádmund, Swithune, Ealferth, Aethelwold, Humberht, Dunberht, Dunewulf or Bertulf, Athelm, Frithstan, Birstan, Aelfeah, Elfsi, Beorhthelm, Aethelwold, Aethelgar, Aelfeah, Elfsius, Aethelwold, Alfsius or Leofsius, Stigand, Aelfwine.]
—— Walkelin, ii. 44; his death, 128.
—— William Giffard, receives investiture from Henry I., ii. 164; banished for refusing to be consecrated by the archbishop of York, 171; his reception at Rome, 172; consecrated, 183; assists at the consecration of Thomas, archbishop of York, 185; consecrates William, archbishop of Canterbury, 204; dies, 209; erroneous entries respecting, at pp. 230, 232, 234.
—— Henry, abbot of Glastonbury, consecrated, ii. 210; ordains Richard de Beaumeis a deacon, 225; acknowledges the empress Maud, 230; holds, as legate, a council at London, 232; receives a pall from Lucius II., 234; withdraws privily from England, 281; consecrates Becket archbishop of Canterbury, 292; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, 294; when dying, he reproaches Henry II. for his conduct to Becket, 363.
Winchester, bishops of, *continued.*
—— Richard, *v.* Poitiers.
—— Godfrey de Lucy, elected, iii. 9; consecrated, 13; dies, 180.
—— Peter des Roches, (who had been a knight,) elected, iii. 181; adheres to king John against the pope, 237; appointed one of the guardians of the realm during the king's absence, 261; present in a council at S. Alban's, 262; undertakes that John will make compensation to the clergy, 283, *seq.*; attends him to Runnymede, 302; commanded to enforce the excommunication of the barons, 336; joins Pandulph in suspending archbishop Langton, 340; crowns Henry III., iv. 2; marches to the relief of Lincoln, 19; succeeds the earl of Pembroke as tutor of the king, 46; dismissed from the court, 139; goes to the crusade, 145; becomes one of the leaders, 175; besieged in his house by the emperor, 199; returns to England, 224; ordered to excommunicate the spoilers of the Italian clergy, 241; complains against the supineness of the justiciary, 243; asserts the king's right to inquire into his accounts, 246; procures the dismissal of Henry's ministers, 263, *seq.*; defends the king's conduct, 265; invites foreign soldiery, 268; advises Henry to coerce the barons, 269; requests the custody of Devizes castle, 273; becomes the king's surety to the earl-marshal, 275; his answer to the remonstrances of the bishops, 276; escapes from the battle of Grosmunt, 278; joins in sending letters to Ireland for the destruction of the earl-marshal, 292; is dismissed by king Henry, 299, and flies to his cathedral, 312; goes to Rome to conduct the pope's war against the citizens, 327.
Windsor castle besieged, iii. 380.
Winfrid, bishop of Lichfield, i. 155; is present at the council of Hertford, 163; is deposed for disobedience, and returns to his monastery at Barrowe, 164.
Winter of 554, its severity, i. 79.
Wipped, a Saxon prince, gives name, by his death, to the battle of Wypeds-Fleot, i. 37.

Wither, William, *v.* Twenge, Robert de.
Withichindus, a duke of Saxony, baptized, i. 244.
Withred and Sifred (brothers) reign jointly in Kent, i. 185; build and endow the monastery of S. Martin, Canterbury, 186; Withred pays the weregild of Mull, 187; dies, 213.
Witred, bishop of Lindisfarne, i. 386.
Wlfer, earl, defeated by the Danes, i. 438.
Wlfrida, concubine of king Eadgar, i. 410.
Wlnoth, a minister of Aethelred II., falsely accused by Beorhtric, i. 438; escapes, and becomes a pirate, *ib.*
Wlsi (or Wlstan, i. 406), bishop of Sherborne, 396; made abbot of Westminster by Dunstan, 406.
Wlsius, archbishop of York, dies, i. 277.
Wlsius, bishop of Lichfield, i. 476.
Wlstan, archbishop of York, advises Eadmund to compromise with Anlaf, i. 395; imprisoned for killing some murderers at Thetford, 403; released, but removed to Dorchester, *ib.*
Wlstan, archbishop of York, translated from Worcester, i. 435; he had been abbot of Thorney, 462; his death, 467 and *note.*
Wlstan (S.), his parents, ii. 49; his education and austere exercises, 50; becomes prior, 51; is made bishop of Worcester, i. 502, ii. 51; an attempt made to degrade him for ignorance of the Norman tongue, 52, miraculously frustrated, 54; he repulses Roger de Montgomery from Worcester, 33; recovers his temporalities from the archbishop of York, 55, and is requested to aid him in his pastoral duties, 56; his death, and request to be buried with his episcopal ring, *ib.*
Woden, the Saxon Mercury, his descendants, i. 8; 'Wednesday' dedicated to him, *ib.*, 235, 346.
Wodensfeld, battle of, i. 375.
Wodnesburch, battle of, i. 211.
Worcester, bishops of:
[For those before the Conquest, *v.* Ostford, Bosel, Ecgwini, (also names at i. 205,) Wilfrid, Deneberht, Mildred, Weremund, Eadberht, Alhun, Herefrith or Werefrith, Ethelhun, Wilferth, Cynewold, Dunstan, Oswald, Wlstan, Leofsius, Brithegus, Living, Aldred, Wlstan.]
—— Samson, ii. 99.
—— Theophilus, ii. 192; dies, 204.
—— Simon, ii. 205.
—— Roger, dies, ii. 398.
—— Baldwin (abbot of Ford) made bishop, ii. 409; translated to Canterbury, 412; receives his pall, with the office of legate in his own province, 418; obtains the pope's permission to build a church, 419; is prohibited from proceeding, 425; is one of the mediators between the kings of England and France, 435; letter to him from the Holy Land, 436; prohibits the marriage of prince John with Hawise, iii. 4; crowns Richard I., 5; claims the right of consecrating the archbishop of York, 9; consecrates the bishops of Winchester and Salisbury, 13; his convention with his monks, *ib.*; interdicts the lands of prince John, 15; his letter respecting the bishop of Coventry, 18; lands at Tyre, 30; dies, 34.
—— William de Norhale, ii. 419.
—— Robert, canon of Lincoln, and son of William seneschal of Normandy, consecrated, iii. 49.
—— John, dean of Rouen, consecrated, iii. 95.
—— Malger, one of those delegated by the pope to expostulate with king John, iii. 220; joins in imposing an interdict, and leaves the country, 222; ordered to excommunicate John, 228; dies abroad, 238.
—— Walter de Gray, *v.* Gray.
—— Silvester, present at the coronation of Henry III., iv. 1.
—— William, consecrates Robert de Bingham bishop of Salisbury, iv. 203.
Wortemer, eldest son of Wyrtgeorne, chosen king on the deposition of his father, i. 13; defeats the Saxons in the battles of the Darent, 14, and Ailesford, *ib.* and *note*; kills Hors, and puts Hengest to flight, 15; is poisoned by his step-mother, and buried at London, 17.
Wrotham, William de, warden of the sea-ports, adheres to king John against the pope, iii. 237.

Wulferth, king of Monmouth, subdued by Aethelstan, i. 386.
Wulfhelm, bishop of Wells, i. 380; translated to Canterbury, 385; dies, 391.
Wulfher, archbishop of York, i. 288; expelled, 324; restored, 325; dies, 361.
Wulfheri succeeds his brother Peada in South Mercia, i. 154; rebels against Oswiû, *ib.*; defeats Cynewealh, and takes the Isle of Wight, 155, *seq.*; conquers Athelwald of Sussex, and becomes his sponsor in baptism, 156; sells the see of London to bishop Wina, 160; is stripped of Lichfield by Ecgfrith, 168; his death, 166; his family, *ib.*
Wulfran, a Frisian bishop, i. 212.
Wulfward, earl, defeats the Danes at Southampton, i. 279.
Wulstan (S.) murdered by his kinsman Beorhtferth, i. 284; miracles at his tomb, *ib.*
Wulward, bishop of Hereford, made a suffragan of Lichfield, i. 238.
Wypeds-Fleot, battle of, i. 36.
Wyrtgeorne, consul of the Gewissi, crowns Constans with his own hands, *Pref.* xxiv.; persuades him to retain a Pictish body-guard, and induces them to murder him, *ib.*; his country invaded by the Picts and Scots, i. 5; sends for the Saxons, 6; gives Hengest lands in Lindsey, 10; disgusts his sons and nobility by marrying Hengest's daughter Rouwen, 11; his incest and excommunication, *ib.*; is supplanted by his son Wortemer, 13; on the death of his son, he recalls Hengest, 17; is seized by him, and compelled to abdicate, 18; departs into Wales, 19; consults the Magi, 20; discovers Merlin, *ib.*; his conversation with him, 21; his vision, 22; his death by fire, 35.

Y.

Yffa, father of Ella, first king of Deira, i. 81.
Yffi, grandson of Eadwin of Northumbria, carried into Kent, i. 133.
York, archbishops of:
[For those prior to the Conquest, *v.* Pirannus, Thadioceus, Samson, Paulinus, Wilfrid, Ecgberht, Eanbald, Wlsius, Wimund, Wulfher, Wlstan, Osketel, Oswald, Aldulf, Wlstan, Aelfric, Kinsius, Aldred.]
—— Thomas, acknowledges the precedency of Canterbury, ii. 12; restores his possessions to bishop Wlstan, and requests his assistance, 55, *seq.*; prevents Remigius from dedicating his church at Lincoln, 40; claims the jurisdiction of that place, 42; objects to the style of archbishop Anselm, 44; his death, 166.
—— Gerard, ii. 166; ordered by Henry I. to consecrate the bishops rejected by Anselm, 171; dies, 184.
—— Thomas II., archbishop elect, interdicted by Anselm from exercising his functions until he had made canonical submission to Canterbury, ii. 184; consecrated, 185; dies, 191.
—— Turstan, archbishop elect, disputes the precedency of Canterbury, ii. 191, 193; procures himself to be consecrated by the pope, 197; renews the dispute, 205; his claims rejected, 207; encourages the northern nobles to resist the Scots, 222; dies, 227.
—— William, treasurer of the church of York, elected, ii. 227; degraded, and restored, 271; dies, 272.
—— Henry Murdac, ii. 237; dies, 254.
—— Roger (archdeacon of Canterbury), ii. 272; present at the concord between the churches of Lincoln and S. Alban's, 294, and at the council of Tours, 298; crowns prince Henry, 354, and is suspended in consequence, 357; is restored, 366; his property confiscated at his death, 407.
—— Geoffrey, *v.* Lincoln.
—— Walter de Gray, *v.* Gray.
York, John canon of, (a native of Rome,) ordered by the pope to inquire respecting the insurrection against the Italian clergy, iv. 241.
York, William de S. Barbara, dean of, *v.* Durham.
York, James sheriff of, excommunicated for seizing the goods of archbishop Geoffrey, iii. 154.

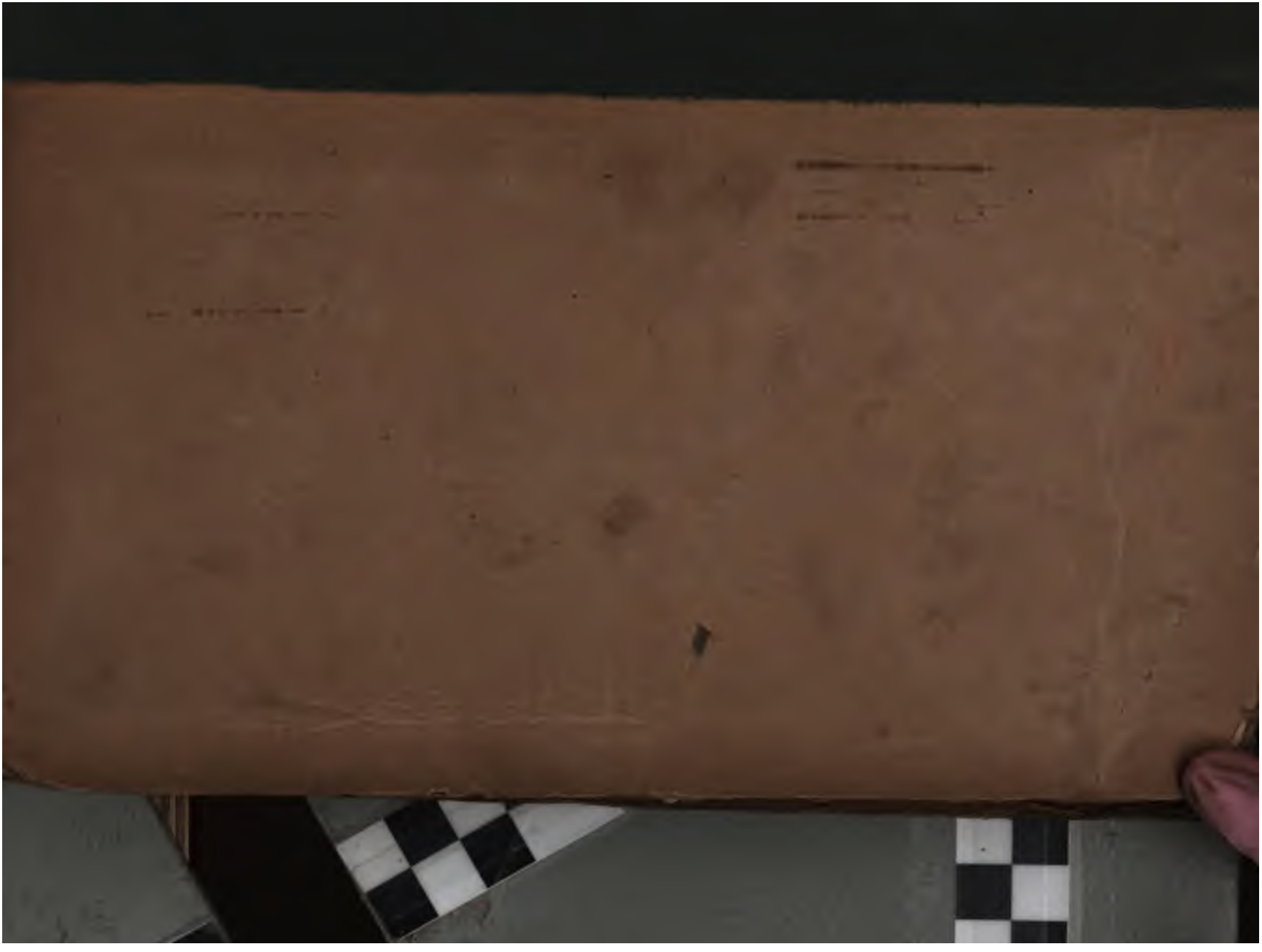
Ypres, William de, an adherent of king Stephen, taken prisoner, ii. 229.
Yric of Northumbria raised to the throne by rebels, i. 402; is deserted on the approach of Eadred, and murdered, *ib.*
Yric, or Egric, made earl of Northumbria by Cnut, i. 453, 460, and banished, 465.
Yvo (S.), invention of, i. 435.

Z.

Zacharias, pope, i. 227, sends to Pepin requesting the restoration of S. Benedict's relics, 229.
Zenghi, a Turk, takes Edessa, ii. 233.
Zeno, the emperor, his cruelty, i. 38.

FINIS.

LONDON:
Printed by S. & J. Bentley, Wilson, and Fley,
Bangor House, Shoe Lane.

Stanford University
Stanford, Califor

In order that others may
please return it as soon as
not later than the date due.